The original of this book is in the Cornell University Library.

There are no known copyright restrictions in the United States on the use of the text.

http://www.archive.org/details/cu31924074466735
CAESAR’S GALLIC WAR

BOOKS I–IV

AND SELECTIONS FROM V–VII

WITH INTRODUCTION, NOTES, AND VOCABULARY

BY

JOHN C. ROLFE, Ph.D.

HEAD OF THE DEPARTMENT OF LATIN IN THE UNIVERSITY OF PENNSYLVANIA

AND

ARTHUR W. ROBERTS, Ph.D.

HEAD OF THE CLASSICAL DEPARTMENT IN THE BROOKLINE HIGH SCHOOL

NEW YORK

CHARLES SCRIBNER’S SONS

1910
PREFACE

In preparing this book the editors have tried not to lose sight of the fact that Caesar is commonly put into the hands of young students, immediately after finishing the Beginner's Book, with or without the preliminary reading of a few chapters of easier Latin. They believe that during the second year of Latin study the pupil should gain the ability to read and to translate more readily, and that he should add to the vocabulary which he may fairly be expected to have acquired during the first year. They believe thoroughly in learning the meanings of words, but they have left the details to the teacher. They would urge that the pupils be taught to read the Latin correctly and readily, not so much for its own sake, as because it is a most valuable aid to correct translation. The long vowels have, therefore, been marked throughout the Text and Vocabulary. At this stage, too, the pupil should learn to translate into good idiomatic English.

During the second year the pupil should extend his knowledge of Latin syntax, but he should not be expected to master the entire subject. For their views on that subject the editors would refer to the Note at the beginning of the Grammatical Introduction (p. xxxix). This has been prepared in part on account of the large number of Grammars now in use, which makes it necessary to include in the Notes a great number of references, or to make an arbitrary choice; and, in part, to
indicate approximately the amount of grammar which the editors believe it wise to attempt to teach during the second year of Latin study.

In deference to the usual custom, the Introduction contains an account of the Roman Art of War, which, although brief, will be sufficient, it is hoped, to meet the needs of the young student of Caesar. The editors believe that too much time should not be given to this subject, but that the main object of the work of the second year should be to learn to read and to translate Latin. Anything which can be done in addition to this to increase the student's interest in the subject is most desirable; but the principal aim should not be lost sight of.

The Vocabulary has been carefully and independently made on the basis of Meusel's \textit{Lexicon}, and as a means of fixing the meanings of words in the mind the English derivatives have been given in many cases; see the Note at the beginning of the Vocabulary. Some of these English words may not be among the most familiar, but it will do the student no harm to add to his acquaintance with his native tongue, as well as to his Latin word-list.

In preparing the Notes the editors have relied for the most part on personal experience in the classroom, and they have attempted to give such help as in their opinion a beginner most needs. That they should have repeated some things which have been said by others seems inevitable. Valuable help has occasionally been afforded by the German editions of Kraner, Dittenberger, and Doberenz, and in the Introduction by those of Dinter and Reinhard. Many of the illustrations and plans are taken from Reinhard; others from Rich's
Dictionary of Antiquities. The standard historians, particularly Merivale, have been freely used in the preparation of the Life of Caesar.

For the benefit of those who are able to read more than the traditional four books, or who wish to substitute other parts of the Gallic War for a part of these, selections from the last three books have been made. These have been prepared especially for translation at sight.

JOHN C. ROLFE,
ARTHUR W. ROBERTS.
NOTE

A complete bibliography of literature relating to Julius Caesar seems undesirable in this place. The editors, therefore, content themselves with a very short list in the hope that pupils will actually read the books contained in it. They will find that it greatly increases their interest in the Gallic campaigns and the writer of them to become acquainted with what others have written of him and of them. The books should be readily found in any good library.


The size of Colonel Dodge’s book may deter pupils from attempting the whole of it, but some of its chapters are to be heartily recommended by themselves. Of particular value and interest are the chapters on Caesar’s Method (23), The Man and the Soldier (44), and A Comparison of Alexander, Hannibal, and Caesar (45). The pupil will also do well to become acquainted
with the parts of Mommsen’s and Merivale’s Histories of Rome relating to Caesar.

All teachers of Caesar will certainly wish to acquaint themselves with the large but entertaining volumes by T. Rice Holmes, entitled:

(1) Caesar’s Conquest of Gaul.

(2) Ancient Britain and the Invasion of Julius Caesar.

The appendices of these volumes will surely attract and hold the close attention of any student of Caesar.
## CONTENTS

### INTRODUCTION

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. Life of Gaius Julius Caesar</td>
<td>i</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. The Roman Army in Caesar's Time</td>
<td>x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. The Gauls</td>
<td>xxxiii</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. The Grammar of Caesar</td>
<td>xxxix</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### I. General Rules

- Subject (§ 80), Predicate (§ 81), Appositives (§ 82), Agreement (§ 83–85) : xl

### II. Syntax of Nouns

1. The Accusative Case: xlii
   - Object (§ 86), Subject of Infinitive (§ 87), Two Accusatives (§ 88–90), Duration of Time and Extent of Space (§ 91), Place to Which (§ 92–94)

2. The Genitive: xliv
   - General (§ 95), Possessive (§ 96), Subjective (§ 97), Objective (§ 98), Partitive (§ 99), Appositional (§ 100), Quality (§ 101–103), With Adjectives (§ 104), With Verbs (§ 105)

3. The Dative: xlviii
   - Indirect Object (§ 106–107), In the Passive (§ 108), Reference (§ 109), Possession (§ 110), Separation (§ 111), Agency (§ 112), Service (§ 113), With Adjectives (§ 114)

4. The Ablative: li
   - Separation (§ 115), Agency (§ 116), Comparison (§ 117–118), Means (§ 119), Price (§ 120), With Certain Verbs (§ 121), Cause (§ 122), Manner
CONTENTS

(123), Accompaniment (124), Degree of Difference (125), Attendant Circumstances (126), Accordance (127), Quality (128), Specification (129), Absolute (130)

5. Relations of Place (131–136) .................................... lvii

6. Relations of Time (137–139) ..................................... lix

7. Dates (140) ......................................................... lx

The Vocative (141) .................................................... lxi

III. PREPOSITIONS .................................................... lxii

With the Ablative (142), With Ablative and Accusative (143), With the Accusative (144)

IV. ADJECTIVES ......................................................... lxvii

Varieties (145), Agreement (146), Special Uses (147–152)

V. PRONOUNS ........................................................... lxx

Personal (153), Reflexive (154–155), Intensive (156–157), Relative (158), Indefinite (159)

VI. VERBS

Impersonal Use (160) ............................................... lxxii

1. Tenses

   Force of the Tenses (161–169) ................................ lxxii
   Sequence of Tenses (170–173) ................................ lxxxv

2. The Independent Subjunctive (174) ........................... lxxvii

3. The Use of the Moods in Dependent Clauses
   a. Purpose Clauses (175–177) ................................ lxxvii
   b. Result Clauses (178) ....................................... lxxviii
   c. Characteristic Clauses (179) .............................. lxxix
   d. Temporal Clauses

         Postquam, etc. (180), Dum (181–183),
         Priusquam (184), Cum (185) ........................... lxxxix
   e. Causal Clauses (186–188) ................................ lxxxii
   f. Conditional Sentences (189–191) ....................... lxxxiii
   g. Concessive and Adversative Clauses

         (192–194) ............................................. lxxxiv
CONTENTS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>h. Relative Clauses (195)</td>
<td>lxxxv</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>i. Substantive Clauses General (196), Quod = “as to” (197),</td>
<td>lxxxv</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Indirect Question (198), “Purpose” (199), “Result” (200), Quominus (201), Quin (202), With Verbs of Fearing (203)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Indirect Discourse</td>
<td>lxxxviii</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>General Rules (204–208), Conditional Sentences (209), Implied Indirect Discourse (210)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subjunctive by Attraction (211)</td>
<td>xci</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. The Imperative (212)</td>
<td>xci</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. The Infinitive</td>
<td>xci</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>As Subject and Object (213), Historical (214)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. The Participle</td>
<td>xcii</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tenses (215–216), Special Uses (217–218)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. Gerund and Gerundive (219–222)</td>
<td>xciv</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. Supine (223–224)</td>
<td>xcv</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VII. Figures of Rhetoric and Grammar</td>
<td>xcvii</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hendiadys (225), Litotes (226), Asyndeton (227)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

TEXT

1. Books I–IV                                                          | 1    |
2. Selections for Sight-reading (Books V–VII)                          | 114  |

NOTES                                                                 | 183  |

VOCABULARY
## MAPS AND PLANS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Gaul in the Time of Caesar</td>
<td>opposite 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Campaign Map for the Year 58 B.C.</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Battle between Caesar and the Helvetians</td>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Battle between Caesar and Ariovistus</td>
<td>43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Campaign Map for the Years 57, 55, and 54 B.C.</td>
<td>47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Battle on the Axona</td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Battle on the Sabis</td>
<td>59</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Siege of the Fortress of the Aduatuci</td>
<td>64</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Campaign against the Veneti</td>
<td>78</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Siege of Alesia</td>
<td>164</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Caesar’s Fortifications at Alesia</td>
<td>167</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Caesar’s Bridge over the Rhine</td>
<td>328</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

xiii
# LIST OF ILLUSTRATIONS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Illustration</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Battle between Caesar and Ariovistus</td>
<td>38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Caesar before the Druids</td>
<td>151</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Caesar’s Triumphantal Entry into Rome</td>
<td>vii</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coins</td>
<td>74</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gallic Collar of Gold</td>
<td>xxxiv</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gallic War Trumpets</td>
<td>xxxv</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Julius Caesar</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Julius Caesar, Frontispiece</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Julius Caesar</td>
<td>70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Roman Coin</td>
<td>74</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Roman Military Antiquities:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Aries simplex</em></td>
<td>xxx</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Ballista</em></td>
<td>xxxii</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Beak (rostrum)</em></td>
<td>305</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Bucinat</em></td>
<td>xxvii</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Camp</em></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Camp</em></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Catapulta</em></td>
<td>xxxii</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Centurion</em></td>
<td>xiii</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Chariot (essedum)</em></td>
<td>340</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Cloak (sagum)</em></td>
<td>xix</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Cuirass (lorica)</em></td>
<td>xv</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Falx muralis</em></td>
<td>307</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Gubernator</em></td>
<td>303</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Helmet</em></td>
<td>xv</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Imperator</em></td>
<td>xii</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Javelin (pilum)</em></td>
<td>xvi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Legionary Soldier</em></td>
<td>xv</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Light-armed Soldier</em></td>
<td>xvii</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Marching Order</em></td>
<td>xiii</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Plutei</em></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Shield (scutum)</em></td>
<td>xvi</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

xv
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Illustration</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Siege Works</td>
<td>xxx</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Slinger (funditor)</td>
<td>xviii</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Soldier on the March</td>
<td>xx</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Soldier's Pack (sarcina)</td>
<td>xx</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Standards (signa)</td>
<td>xxiii</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sword (gladius)</td>
<td>xvi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Testudo</td>
<td>xxix</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Testudo arietaria</td>
<td>xxix</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tragula amentata</td>
<td>xvii</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Triplex acies</td>
<td>xxii</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tower (turris ambulatoria)</td>
<td>xxx</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tower (turris in nave excitata)</td>
<td>68</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Transport (navis oneraria)</td>
<td>90</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vinea</td>
<td>xxxi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>War Galley (navis longa)</td>
<td>302</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yard (antenna)</td>
<td>306</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yoke (iugum)</td>
<td>341</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
INTRODUCTION

LIFE OF GAIUS JULIUS CAESAR

1. Rome, which is reported by tradition to have been founded by Romulus in the year 753 B.C., to have expelled Tarquin the Proud, the last of its kings, in 510 B.C., and to have established a government under the direction of magistrates called consuls, maintained a republic from that time on until the beginning of the empire under Augustus Caesar. This republic, however, was certainly not at all times a government by the people, and in the time of Julius Caesar had practically become an oligarchy, in which, though the forms of a republic still continued, the real power was in the hands of a few men, to whom the magistrates were largely or wholly subservient.

2. Of these oligarchs Julius Caesar was the one to whom fortune or native ability and far-sightedness in political matters, or perhaps all three combined, gave the sole mastery of the state. Though he retained this power but for a short time and fell by the hands of assassins, still so strong was the hold he had secured on the hearts of his countrymen, and so firmly had he impressed upon them the habit of obedience to the control of one man, that the formal establishment of an empire to replace the worn-out republic became a much easier task for his kinsman Augustus.
3. As is natural, men have not agreed about Julius Caesar. Some choose to attribute to him an almost superhuman intelligence, which, even in early youth, enabled him to see the inevitable fate of the Roman republic, and to govern his own conduct and shape the events of his times in such a way, that he arrived at the goal of his ambition in perfect accordance with his own preconceived plan. Others believe that he had no thought of advancing beyond those who had preceded him, but that the course of events determined for him his political career, and at last put within his reach the chief power, which he was not slow to grasp.

4. Whichever of these views we prefer to accept, we must look upon Caesar's campaigns in Gaul as contributing very largely to the final outcome. These gave him political prominence at Rome, well advertised as he was by his own descriptions of his campaigns (the Commentaries), afforded him military prestige, and furnished him with a body of devoted veterans, whose training had been gained in fighting Rome's most determined western foes, veterans to whom their commander was their country. Besides all this, the spoil which he won and the power he possessed of bestowing desirable positions upon influential Romans, or upon their sons and connections, gave him opportunities of placating opponents and winning friends; all of which he turned to good account in securing the coveted prize when the opportune break in friendly relations between himself and Pompey occurred.

5. Gaius Julius Caesar was born of noble parentage, probably at Rome, in the year 100 B.C. (or, according to some, in 102). Thus he was six years younger than the great Roman orator Cicero, who alone surpassed
him as a speaker and advocate; six years younger, too, than Pompey, who was to be his great military rival and political opponent. Caesar belonged to one of the few remaining noble or patrician houses, but for all that he early in life became favorably inclined towards the popular or democratic party, the party of the people. If this was due to marvellous foresight on his part, we must suppose him to have perceived that the people were quite ready to accept a single ruler and master from whom they were likely to receive what they wished for; but that the nobles, on the other hand, did not wish to have their own power lessened by the accession to absolute rule of one of their own number. Others find the explanation of Caesar's friendliness for the people's interests in the fact that he married the daughter of Cinna, the great popular leader who had been the colleague of Marius in the consulship. Sulla, the dictator and chief representative of the aristocratic faction, greatly displeased at this marriage, commanded Caesar to divorce his wife. This he refused to do, and in consequence was persecuted by Sulla and well-nigh lost his life.

6. Perhaps we may find in Caesar's connection with Marius a still stronger reason for his affiliation with the party of the people. Marius had gained the greatest military renown, and was the favorite of the Roman populace. Though of plebeian origin, he had won the consulship, had defeated Jugurtha, the African prince, who had been more than a match for other Roman leaders, and had been re-elected to the consulship for a number of years. This successive re-election (contrary to law and precedent) was due to the great terror inspired in the Romans by the Cimbri and Teutones, who had overrun
the greater part of Europe and defeated Roman armies, and so Marius, Rome’s greatest general, was kept in office until he met and destroyed these two tribes in 102 and 101 B.C. Marius had married an aunt of Caesar, and it is not impossible that the young boy’s imagination was fired by hearing of his uncle’s successes against these fierce Gallic tribes and that he became possessed of a longing to complete the subjugation of Gaul to Rome which his uncle had begun. Caesar’s admiration for Marius, the representative of the popular party, may have been chiefly responsible for his original leaning towards the same party, his marriage with Cinna’s daughter may have strengthened it, and his own experiences with Sulla may have determined his subsequent attitude.

7. His course once chosen, Caesar never wavered. He sought to ingratiate himself with the people in every way and made himself their favorite. Trained by the best teachers of oratory of his time, he became the rival of Cicero and the other leaders of the day in the forum. When aedile, he impoverished himself, to an extent hitherto unknown even at Rome, in his efforts to delight the people with the public shows and games he gave for their amusement. His debts grew enormously, until there was no alternative for him but success or ruin. So desperate was his condition financially and such the feeling towards him personally at Rome of many of the nobles, that he was thought to be really the mainspring of Catiline’s conspiracy. When, as praetor, he sought to substitute a milder punishment for the proposition of Silanus (the consul-elect) that the conspirators be put to death, and suggested that they be kept under guard in various cities of Italy, he appeared as the supporter of the law for the violation of which Cicero afterwards
was exiled. And yet Cato’s pointed suggestion of his connection with the conspiracy, amounting almost to an accusation, might have cost Caesar his life had not Cicero personally protected him with his consular power.

8. As propraetor Caesar was so admirable an administrator that he was enabled to pay off his tremendous accumulation of debt, and gain fortune for himself, while having his first experience in a military command. Some years prior to this, he had advocated the claims of Pompey to the extraordinary power which the tribune Gabinius proposed to confer upon him by the so-called Gabinian law, which gave Pompey supreme command for three years over the entire Mediterranean and its shores for fifty miles inland. He had also supported the tribune Manilius, who, a short time later, while Pompey was still possessed of the powers conferred by the Gabinian law, wished to give him the command of the entire east and of the war with Mithradates. Of his attitude towards these measures it can only be said that Caesar well knew that his hour was not yet come, that he would only weaken his own growing influence if he opposed Pompey at this time, and that such extraordinary power placed in the hands of one man was a spectacle with which he wished the Romans to become familiar. Pompey, too, great and popular as he was after his military successes in the east, needed the support which Caesar could give him in securing the ratification of his acts in Asia, and it was at about this time, through Caesar’s influence, that Pompey was brought into friendly relations with Crassus, the representative of the money power at Rome, and that the agreement was brought about which has taken the name in history of the “First Triumvirate.”
9. This private understanding, for it was no more than that in the eye of the law, despite its name, was effected in the year 60 B.C. In the middle of this year Caesar had voluntarily left his proconsulate in Further Spain before a successor arrived, and returned to Rome as a candidate for the consulship. He had also demanded the reward of a triumph for his military successes in Spain; but since he could not enter the city before receiving it, his opponents in the city compelled him to choose between sacrificing his rights as a candidate for a triumph and his chance for the consulship; for it was required of each candidate for the consulship that he present himself in the forum before the people on three stated occasions. His enemies were disappointed in their expectations. Instead of accepting the triumph, Caesar at once relinquished all thought of that, and came to the forum to advance his claims to the consulship. He secured the office, and, after a struggle with his colleague Bibulus, whose election had been secured by the nobles, attained complete mastery of affairs. He won the affections of the people by his shows and gifts, and they, dissatisfied with the senate’s intentions for his proconsular government, offered him for five years the united government of Cisalpine Gaul and Illyricum. Then the senate added to this extraordinary command the government of Transalpine Gaul also, probably because they knew that the people would add this to his original province if they did not. Thus Caesar had at last secured a commission which rivalled those conferred upon Pompey by the Gabinian and Manilian laws.

10. The influence of Caesar was sufficient to hold together Pompey and Crassus, though jealousies arose
during the years of his first appointment to Gaul. He brought about their election as consuls in 55 B.C. and, through the tribune Trebonius, the assignment for the five years following, of Pompey to Spain, and of Crassus to Syria. In return for this his own governorship of the Gauls and Illyricum was extended for a second period of five years. The death of Julia, whom Pompey had married, and who was beloved by both father and husband, and the fate of Crassus, who led an expedition against the Parthians and lost his own life in the rout of his army, removed two ties between Pompey and Caesar which had promoted the friendly adjustment of differences. Once separated, there could be but one outcome, one or the other must be supreme in the state. The civil war followed, the downfall of Pompey and his party, and Pompey’s death by assassination in Egypt, whither he had fled.

11. Caesar then defeated the remnants of the sena-
torial party in Egypt, in Africa, and in Spain, and was often in the most critical extremity. It is maintained by some that his character suffered by his connection with foreigners, that he was much more inclined to be a despot, and that he alienated the favor of the people by his assumption of oriental ways. Whatever the truth about this may be, the great reforms he undoubtedly planned could not be carried out, for he was assassinated in the Senate-house on the Ides of March, 44 B.C., by a number of conspirators of noble rank led by Brutus, the nephew of Cato, and by C. Cassius.

12. The relation which the subjugation of Gaul bears to Caesar's whole career is thus seen to be of the utmost importance. We must read the history of these campaigns keeping in mind the importance to Caesar of a faithful, efficient army whose allegiance to their commander was superior even to their patriotism. The history of his campaigns, told by himself and read widely or reported at Rome, had much to do with keeping their favorite in the eyes of the Roman populace during his absence. The "thanksgiving" festivities granted or held at Rome in honor of his victories still further enhanced his favor in the eyes of the people, while the immense spoil served to win him friends among the higher class, who thereby attached themselves to his fortunes and jealously guarded his interests at Rome, doubtless under direction from Caesar's camp in Gaul.

13. Although his campaigns in Germany and in Britain did not contribute much, if anything, to the wealth or power of Rome, they had an indirect result which added largely to Caesar's fame. They opened up two absolutely new fields with which Roman cupidity and ambition might busy themselves, and though the first
commander did not accomplish much in the way of permanent occupation or subjugation, still his was the glory of discovery, and the unknown possibilities of the new lands added perhaps a greater prestige to his name, and wider influence to his authority at Rome than even his victories over the Gauls, the traditional foes and terror of the Romans. As Cicero in a well-known passage tells us, other Roman generals had at times kept back the hordes of Gauls from invading Italy, and Marius had crushed two tribes bent on invasion. Yet even Marius had not ventured to follow the Gauls to their homes, but had remained content with this amount of achievement. Caesar had made it unnecessary that Rome should depend upon the Alps as a natural boundary and barrier against her dreaded foes.

14. It was in the spring of the year 58 B.C. that Caesar entered Gallia Transalpina. He tells the story of the seven campaigns which followed in the seven books of his Commentaries; an eighth book (commentary) was added, written by A. Hirtius, one of his lieutenants. The story is told as if Caesar the historian were entirely distinct from Caesar the general, whose exploits he is describing. His task was a most difficult one, in which he was often in imminent danger of failure. His enemies at Rome were at all times active to embarrass him, and but for the very arbitrariness with which he increased his legions in defiance of Roman law and precedent, he would hardly have succeeded. Without his devoted army, or divested of the robes of office, his life would been sacrificed to his enemies' jealousy and hatred. The story of the civil war, the steps by which he was gradually brought to leave his province and march upon Rome, has no direct connection with the
Commentaries, but should be carefully read, as well as the history of affairs within the city during Caesar's Gallic campaigns, by all who wish to have a clear, comprehensive view of the character and position of Caesar, and to understand the relation of these Gallic campaigns to his career.

THE ROMAN ARMY IN CAESAR'S TIME

15. There is an evident struggle among modern nations in times of peace, to avail themselves of inventions or discoveries, in the hope that when employed in war these will give them an advantage over rival nations. This struggle affords us the necessary clue to the successes of the Romans in overcoming peoples who were certainly no less brave than themselves, were often their superiors physically, and who apparently made war their chief occupation. We know, for example, that in the early days of the republic the Gauls once took and burned Rome. Caesar afterwards used the spoils won from the Gallic nation to enlarge the forum and otherwise beautify the city. As his campaigning went on, he recruited his army very largely from Gaul, and of the army with which he marched upon Rome perhaps the majority were not of Italian birth and had never seen the city. He had, to be sure, acted very independently in Gaul, not consulting the senate with reference to raising or recruiting his legions, and conferring Roman citizenship even upon a whole legion at once. We see, then, that it was the equipment of their army, the discipline of the Romans, and the art of war as practised by them which had such far-reaching results, and not any unusual physical prowess or superior valor which enabled them
to overcome all opponents. As briefly as possible let us examine into this.

THE ARMY AND ITS SUBDIVISIONS

16. The Roman legion originally meant nothing more than army, conscription, or levy; that is, a number of troops called out for a definite purpose at a single time. In the earliest times its strength lay in cavalry, each member of which provided his own horse and equipment. But at a later period, and throughout Caesar’s time, the cavalry, furnished entirely by subject states, consisted chiefly of Gauls, Germans, and Spaniards, while the Romans fought on foot with the exception of the officers.

17. At its highest figure the legion reached perhaps 6000 men in number. This number, by subdivision into the component parts of a legion, gives us 100 men for the century (cf. centum, hundred). There were ten cohorts in a legion, of 600 men each; three maniples in a cohort, of 200 men each; two ordines or centuries in a maniple, of 100 men each. As a matter of fact, however, the number 6000 was seldom reached, and 3600 may be assumed as the standard. This gives by subdivision 360 men for the cohort, 120 for the maniple, 60 for the century. It may be noted that while the term “centurion” is in constant use by Caesar in describing the commanders of the tactical units of the legion, he practically never employs the term “centuria” for the body of men, but uses “ordo” instead.

18. The number of cavalry attached to each legion amounted to 300. This consisted of allies, as has been said, and had its own native leaders, but was also under
the superior command of a Roman officer, a praefectus equitum. This division, called an ala, was subdivided into ten turmae, squadrons, and each of these again into three decuriae.

19. The officers. Next to the commanding officer of the army (imperator) stood his legati, his aids or adjutants. Generally there were not more than three of these, but Caesar had ten in Gaul. They were in charge of divisions of the army in battle, were always responsible to the general, who had all credit for their successes, as indeed he had to bear all the blame for their failures. Though his wishes were generally followed, the nomination of the legates and the determination of their number rested with the senate. They were sometimes despatched upon independent operations, and towards the end of the republic might receive the honor of a triumph.

20. Each general had with him one quaestor, a regular state official elected for one year. He looked after the maintenance and pay of the soldiers, the valuation and sale of booty and prisoners, and financial matters generally. Sometimes he served as a military officer.

21. There were also officers known as military tribunes (tribuni militum), six in each legion, each of
whom commanded the legion for two months. All of them at the end of the republic were of the equestrian order and elected by the people, but frequently named by the general himself. Caesar selected his own, and chiefly for political reasons. Hence he had little regard for their services in war, but increased his own influence at Rome by favors of this sort, appointing the sons or other relatives and friends of influential men. The command of the legions in battle was assigned to the *legati* by Caesar instead of to the tribunes.

22. There were also *praefects*, originating in the *praefecti sociorum*, but continued when there were no longer any Italian federated contingents in the Roman army. These were used for any service whatsoever by the general, to command auxiliary troops, or any divisions of his army.

23. The most important of the officers, though the lowest in rank, were the *centurions*. These corresponded to our non-commissioned officers in that they rose from the ranks, and could ordinarily never hope to rise any higher.* Still, as there were sixty of them in each legion, and their rank varied from the lowest (who was probably the centurion of the second ordo of the third maniple of

* This is of course not altogether true of our army.
the tenth cohort) to the highest (who was the centurion of the first ordo of the first maniple of the first cohort), while between these extremes there were fifty-eight grades of promotion, they might easily pass many campaigns before reaching their goal, which was the chief centurionship. When a centurion reached this point, he was called *primus pilus, primipilus,* or *primi pili centurio.*

24. How the promotion took place is a matter of some disagreement, which it is not worth while entering into here. It seems probable that the centurions, ten in each legion, who were in command of cohorts, formed a superior grade among the centurions; these (the *centuriones primorum ordinarum*) alone among the centurions were ever summoned to the council of war. (*B. G.* 1, 41.)

25. The *evocati.* Certain of the soldiers were treated with peculiar consideration and exempted from many of the duties of the camp, such as building entrenchments, sentry duty, and the like, and besides received higher pay than the common soldiers. These were the evocati, men who had served the full time demanded by the state, and who were prevailed upon by their former general, or by such inducements as have been mentioned, to take the field again. It cannot be supposed that the presence of each *evocatus* was due to the personal solicitation of the general, for the numbers of these were often very large. They were said to stand on an equal footing with the centurions in pay and rank. They either fought in one body under command of a *praefectus evocatorum,* or scattered through the legions. When whole legions or cohorts remained in service beyond the stipulated time, they were called not *evocati,
but *veterani*. This term *veterani* is often used loosely to describe legions of men who could no longer be termed *tirones*, which was the name applied to raw recruits.

26. **The equipment of the soldier for defence.** In Caesar's time this consisted of the helmet, cuirass, and shield.

27. For the earlier *helmet*, which was of *bronze* and later of iron, was substituted a lighter form (*galea*) for the legionary soldier, while the heavier (*cassis*) was retained for the cavalry. It was worn only in battle, and on the march was carried on the breast, suspended from the neck. It was often surmounted by a crest.

28. The *cuirass* (*lorica*) was originally made of leathern straps (*lorata*), and seems to have been worn even by the common soldier in Caesar's army; it had an iron plate nine inches square, to protect the breast. There were also several more elaborate kinds, one made of iron rings, *lorica serta*, another covered with scales of...
metal, the *lorica squamata*, and another made of massive plates of metal which were bound together with hinges and clasps, *lorica segmentata*.

29. The shield (*scutum*) took the place of an earlier round shield. It was oblong, not flat, but cylindrically curved, made of boards covered with leather, with a metal rim above and below, while in the middle of it was a rounded boss of iron (*umbo*) terminating in a point; this boss served to turn aside spears or other missiles, and in close fighting might serve as an offensive weapon in itself. The shield was ornamented in various ways, and was provided with a cover which of course was removed when the shield was in use.

30. Offensive weapons. These were two for the legionary soldier: a sword and a javelin.

31. The sword (*gladius*) was short, perhaps two feet long, straight, had two edges, and was an instrument suited to thrusting, but not to cutting. It was worn usually in the girdle, but on the right side, not on the left, as with us. This was owing
to the presence of the shield on the left arm, which would naturally impede somewhat the drawing of the sword if it were hung on that side.

32. The javelin (pilum) was chiefly a weapon for hurling. It had a wooden shaft four and a half feet long, with an iron head embedded in the wood of the shaft just far enough to make the total length of the missile (the wooden shaft and the projecting iron head) six and three-fourths feet. This iron point was of soft iron, so that when it was hurled into a shield or cuirass, it would bend and interfere with the wearer's movements, and could not easily be withdrawn or cast back. Many of these have been found.
in the neighborhood of the ancient Alesia (modern Alise St. Reine).

33. The light-armed troops (velites) carried several light javelins for casting, provided with a strap (amentum), by the help of which they could be hurled with greater force. They also carried a sword and a small round shield (parma). However, we have no mention of Roman velites after the war with Jugurtha, and so we are to assume that all light-armed (levis armaturae) troops mentioned in Caesar were auxiliary troops furnished by allied tribes, kings, and provinces.

34. The auxiliary troops (auxilia). In most countries where the Romans carried on war a division of their army was furnished from the non-Roman residents; also contingents were often supplied by allied kings and peoples. These usually fought in their national way and wore their own style of armor, but were sometimes disciplined in the Roman fashion. They formed the light-armed divisions of the Roman armies, the Romans furnishing the heavy-armed legionaries. The most important of these auxiliary troops were slingers (funditores) and archers (sagittarii), the slingers hurling stones or pointed bullets of lead. The most
famous of the archers came from Crete and the best
slingers from the Balearic islands.

35. The name *alarii* was early given to these aux-
iliary troops because they were placed upon the wings,
but the same name was continued later whatever their
position or service.

36. Clothing of the Roman soldier. It seems to us
hardly credible that the *toga* was once worn in war as
well as in peace by the Romans. However, it was very
early discarded for the much more suit-
able *sagum* or, as it is called in *B. G. V*,
42, *sagulum*. This
was open in front, reached only to the
knee, and was clasped at the shoulder by a
pin or buckle. The
soldier wore a *tunic* (*tunica*) under this,
and a *girdle* (*cingu-
num*) over the *tunic*.
The *tunic* was a
sleeveless shirt of wool. The *sagum* was for cold or
wet weather, like the overcoat to-day, and it was laid
aside in battle. The soldier also wore either *sandals*
(*calcei*) or *boots* (*caligae*) reaching halfway to the knee.

37. The baggage of the Romans.—This consisted of
two parts: first the heavy baggage, called the *impedi-
menta*, or baggage train, which was carried on wagons
or pack-animals. This consisted largely of tents, engines of war, and the like.

38. The other part, that which did most to make the life of a Roman soldier burdensome, was his personal pack. This was called sarcina. It needs no more than a consideration of the weight and bulk of this burden to make clear to us the use of the terms *impeditus* and *expeditus* applied to the legions, and to understand why a legion in heavy marching trim was almost incapable of resistance. If a battle seemed imminent, the packs were taken off and collected in one place. They were left in camp if the army marched out to battle. Thus the dependence of the army upon its camp is most evident.

39. The soldier's pack (sarcina) consisted of a supply of wheat sufficient to last for two weeks or longer,
several stakes, a saw, spade, axe, and cooking utensils. To enable the men to carry them more easily, Marius had introduced the custom of binding these (vasa and cibaria) in a bundle (sarcina) to a pole, or to one of the stakes carried over the right shoulder. In his left hand the soldier must carry his offensive weapons, his shield hanging from his left arm, and his helmet over his breast. The weight of his pack often ran up to 45 pounds (our weight).

40. The battle and the battle-order. — If a choice of position were possible, the Romans would select a side hill sloping toward the enemies’ position. If the latter could be induced to make the attack, so much the better, as that would draw them toward the Roman position. The Romans depended chiefly upon the weight and force of their charge to break the enemies’ line, and a short run down hill before hurling the pila contributed much to the effectiveness of this. When the enemies’ line was thus broken or at least made to falter, the Romans drew their swords and leaped upon their foes with the utmost fierceness, after which the enemy seldom rallied.

41. The earlier line of battle seems to have been a solid phalanx eight rows deep. Later the favorite line

was called the triplex acies. It is not agreed just what this means. It has long been thought to be an arrangement of the ten cohorts of a legion in such a way that
four occupied the first line, leaving spaces between each two equal to the breadth of a cohort. The next three cohorts occupied the second line, standing just behind these open spaces. Three more cohorts formed the third line, somewhat similarly placed with reference to the second line. In case of the defeat or weariness of the first line, it was thought that the second charged through the intervals. The third line served as a reserve for the second.

42. According to others, the triplex acies was an army with three divisions, a right, left, and centre; a duplex acies was one with a right and left wing, and a simplex acies consisted of one body of troops.

43. The marching order. Ordinarily each legion marched in simple column followed by its baggage train. The cavalry would be drawn up on the sides or in the rear. But when the army approached an enemy, such interruptions of the marching column by the baggage of single legions left many vantage-points for attack, and it was more usual for several legions to march in advance, in battle order (expeditae), followed by the entire baggage train of the army, with the remaining legions in the rear. With a column marching on either side of the baggage train, it was not difficult to assume an attitude of defence if attacked, by forming the so-called orbis, presenting an unbroken line from all sides (similar to a hollow square), and surrounding the baggage train.

44. Exploratores; speculatores. In each army there were bodies of troops called exploratores, for the most part bands of cavalry, who swept through a country to
effect a recognizance. These must not be confounded with the *speculatores*, who were individuals employed as spies, or scouts.

45. **The standards (signa).** The *legionary standard (signum legionis)* was established by Marius in his second consulship and continued in use thereafter. It consisted of an eagle with outspread wings upon a wooden lance, holding in his claws thunderbolts of silver, or even of gold. The bearers (*aquiliferi*) were in the habit of wearing bearskins over their helmets and armor, and were selected by the centurions from among the strongest and the bravest of the soldiers.

46. There was no standard of the cohort. Within the cohort, however, there were three standards, one for each maniple. In fact, it is the tradition that the name *manipulus* itself is derived from the earliest *field-sign*, a handful of hay. Later they used poles with fixed
insignia, figures of animals, chiefly. Still later came javelins with a manus at the point, a suggestion of manipulus, and metal devices below.

47. The vexilla were flags consisting of square pieces of cloth, used for different purposes. They were of different colors, were fastened to the crosspiece of a pole, and served sometimes as standards for the turmae of cavalry and for the auxilia. If divisions of a legion were sent off on special service, they were provided with special vexilla, as the signa remained with the legion. As a signal for battle a large red vexillum was placed upon the general’s tent.

48. The aquilae or signa legionum were carried by the aquiliferi in the first cohorts of the legions. In camp they were kept near the general’s tent, in a spot looked upon as sacred and as an asylum. In peace they were kept in the aerarium, in charge of the quaestors.

49. The standards were regarded with peculiar veneration, as something holy. A standard-bearer who abandoned a standard, or lost it through his own fault, was put to death, and loss of the standard was a disgrace to the whole legion. To incite the troops to desperate valor, the standard was at times carried forward, or even thrown into the ranks of the enemy or within a rampart. No risk was too great for the men to take in order to recover it.

50. Many expressions are used including the word signa to describe movements of the legion: e.g. signa inferre, to attack; signa promovere or proferre, to advance the entire line; signa convellere, efferre, tollere, to break up camp; signa referre, to retreat; signa conferre, to fight, engage hand to hand; signa statuere, to halt; signa convertere, to wheel about.
51. The Roman camp. The importance of its camp to a Roman army can hardly be overestimated. Never even for a single night did an army venture to spend the night unprotected by a rampart and ditch. The amount of labor this required of the Roman soldier was tremendous. No matter how fatiguing his long day's march had been, he must do his share of the work of preparation of the camp for the night. Here the packs must be left under guard when the army moved out to battle. In this the army might successfully resist any assault, unless the odds against them were overwhelming. It is interesting then to examine the general plan of a Roman camp without going into minute details.
52. The camp was usually square, placed if possible on the side of a gently sloping hill. It was the intention that the porta praetoria, placed in the middle of the front towards the enemy, should be the lowest portion of the camp; that the porta decumana, directly across from this at the rear, should be the camp's highest point. A street (called via decumana) 50 feet wide connected these. Nearly midway ran a cross street, the principal street of the camp, 100 feet wide, dividing the camp into two parts, and ending in two gates, porta principalis dextra and sinistra (the street was called via principalis). The whole inner part of the camp was separated from the wall by an open space perhaps 200 feet wide, which served to protect the men from the shots of an enemy; here also large bodies of troops could march, baggage wagons be placed, and the like. The wall itself consisted of a rampart, a mound of earth, most of the material for which was furnished from a trench just in front of it. The normal breadth and depth of this trench is said to have been twelve by nine feet. As the breadth of the trench was the more important feature and the depth may be assumed to have always stood in a fixed proportion to this, we may infer that whenever only one dimension of the trench is given, the width is meant.

53. The outer slope of the wall was covered with turf; or branches of trees bound together, or bushes. Palisades were often set up on the wall, and sometimes wooden towers.

54. The tents (pelles, tentoria, tabernacula) were made, for the most part, of leather. Ten men usually slept together in one, and were called contubernales.

55. The gates of a camp were simply openings, never
closed except temporarily during an attack. They were defended by short intrenchments in the shape of a quarter circle swinging (viewed from without) toward the left, so that an attacking body of troops would be obliged to expose its unprotected right side to the defenders in forcing an entrance.

56. Between the front of the camp and the via principalis ran the via quintana, which, parallel to the via principalis, divided the space intervening between it and the front of the camp into two equal parts. Smaller streets separated from one another the smaller quadrangular spaces occupied by the tents.

57. On the via principalis, nearly at the point where the decumana maxima (a street 50 feet wide running from the porta praetoria to porta decumana, interrupted only by the praetorium) reached it, began the space known as the praetorium, containing the tent of the
commander, itself often termed the praetorium, also a tribunal made of earth and covered with turf, an ara, and the auguratorium. On one side of the praetorium was the forum, where the assemblies (contiones) of soldiers were convened. On the other side was the official headquarters of the quaestor, the quaestorium. To the space between these two places and the sides of the camp the body-guard of the commander was assigned. Just in front of the praetorium, quaestorium, and forum, and bordering directly upon the via principalis, were the tents of the military tribunes.

58. There were of course some differences between summer and winter camps, but perhaps the most important was the substitution in the latter of regular wooden huts in place of tents, to insure greater comfort and protection against the weather.

59. Usually one or two cohorts as outposts against the enemy stood before the gates of the camp in statione. Stationes were entire divisions, vigiliae were night posts consisting of four men each, as the night was divided into four watches of (approximately) three hours each, from sunset until sunrise. As the hours varied in length according to the season of the year, so the watches must have been longer or shorter. Vigilia is used to
designate time, prima, secunda, tertia, etc. A bucinator gave the signal for the ending of a vigilia.

60. Custodes were watchmen put in charge of some particular object; a praesidium was a detachment sent to occupy a place, as a city or fort; or an escort. The place occupied was also called praesidium.

61. Sieges and siege works. The Romans were skilful and painstaking in siege operations, and the labor involved was prodigious. In case a place could not be taken directly by assault, by filling up the trenches and breaking down the gates, a second mode of attack consisted of blockading; this was employed when the place was strongly fortified but not well provided with provisions. A third method (formal

assault through siege-works) was resorted to when a town was strongly fortified and well provisioned.
62. The chief element in the last method of attack was the *agger*. This was a huge mound begun at some distance (not less than 400 or 500 feet, out of reach of the enemy's missiles) and gradually advanced to the wall. It was built of earth, basket-wood, and timbers. It was liable to be set on fire because of these timbers. There were towers either upon the agger or at either side of it, several stories in height, often with a battering-ram (*aries*) in the lower story, and the upper occupied by artillery. The towers were supplied with bridges to drop upon the wall and provide a passage for an attacking party. The mound (*agger*) itself was usually built of the same height as the wall,
that the assailants might be on the same level as the defenders. The towers had to be protected from fire by skins which were hung over them and by other coverings. The movable towers were called turres ambulatoriae.

63. The workmen had to be protected during the building of the agger, first by stout movable sheds called musculi, under cover of which the ground was levelled. Then the material for the agger was brought through rows of sheds called vineae, open at either end, much more roomy (16 to 20 ft. long, 8 ft. high, 7 ft. wide) than the musculi and less strongly built. They, too, were covered with hides to protect them against fire.
64. Besides these shelters there were large movable shields on wheels (plutei), set up in front of the operations upon the agger, and meant to protect archers and slingers, who discharged their missiles from this cover and were ready to frustrate, by a sortie, any attempt of the besieged to interrupt the operation of building. The turres ambulatoriae were usually placed at or near either end of this line of light-armed troops.

65. Tormenta, or heavy artillery. The Roman artillery under different names consisted of a number of huge machines of the crossbow variety provided with strong elastic cords of animals' hair. Some (called catapultae or scorpiones) hurled arrows, and their missiles flew in an almost horizontal direction. Others, called ballistae, usually cast stones, but occasionally beams, in
a curve of forty-five degrees. They were seldom used in the field before imperial times, but were constantly employed in attacking or defending strong places.

THE GAULS

66. It has been said that Alexander the Great of Macedon would never have felt the need of new worlds to conquer had chance or fate led the direction of his campaigns westward instead of eastward. A more obstinate foe than any he encountered in the east he would have found within the limits of the western part of the Grecian peninsula. Thus many are inclined to rate more highly the victories of Caesar’s army over the Gauls in the west than those gained by Pompey’s over the eastern nations. They claim that this earlier training ground had much to do with the result of the civil war between these two commanders; for, leaving out of consideration the comparative ability of the two generals, Caesar’s forces, though inferior in numbers, had most of them been trained in a more serious school of war.

67. Caesar’s achievement in subjugating Gaul was certainly a great one, for the Romans’ traditional fear of the Gauls had to be overcome before success against them could be hoped for. This terror was due to the fact that the Gauls had once really burned Rome, something which no other enemy, not even Hannibal the Carthaginian, had ever succeeded in doing, and was also due partly to the fact that they were a nation of much greater physical power, of larger stature, and of more formidable appearance than the Italian race.
68. How completely this fear of the Gauls dominated the minds of the Romans appears from this. After Caesar's successes in Gaul, when all knew that the country had yielded to Rome's power, it needed only the mere report that Caesar intended to march upon Rome to spread through the city a wild terror. From his long residence among the Gauls the Romans imagined that he had become quite as brutal as they, and that his occupancy of the city was as much to be dreaded as that of the Gauls themselves.

69. The Romans themselves admitted that the valor of the Gauls in pitched battles was equal to their own. But the quality of stubborn endurance, which was always characteristic of the Romans, was lacking in them. To this was due much of their weakness. Furthermore, at the outset the Gauls were far inferior to the Romans in the art and in the equipments of war. Their quickness in imitation, however, enabled them to learn much of the Roman method of fighting as the years of struggle went on. But more than all other causes their lack of union among themselves contributed to the Roman success. Caesar cleverly turned to his own account the jealousies between members of the same tribes, and rivalry for leadership among the tribes themselves.

70. In almost every state, clan, or family there were two parties (see selections from VI, ch. 11 ff.). Caesar usually identified himself with the portion of the family which was "out of office," placed it in power through his support, and so secured for himself in every state a body of adherents.
71. The Romans were not the only invaders of the country. In much the same way the Germans had succeeded in getting a foothold there. One of the two chief factions of Gaul had invited Ariovistus and his Germans to help them against the other. In consequence they had been forced to give him lands for his followers and had later come to be completely under his influence. Diviciacus, an Aeduan chief, had visited Rome and sought for help. The Romans, at the motion of Caesar himself, had put him off, and had sent words of friendship to Ariovistus, naming him "king" and "friend," and offering him gifts. The reason is obvious. Word had come that one of the Gallic tribes, the Helvetii, was about to march through that part of southern Gaul upon which Rome had imposed her authority, calling it the "Province." Caesar wished to meet his foes separately, and the more pressing danger was enough for the present. The march of the Helvetii must be stopped. Ariovistus might be faced later. Thus strategy on the Romans' part and lack of unity of purpose among the Gauls combined to bring about the overthrow of the latter. It was impossible to rouse in them a strong national feeling, one which would make them ready to devote themselves or their property to the general welfare. Had it been possible to secure this union and spirit of self-sacrifice among them, Vercingetorix would surely have worsted the Romans. His personal patriotism and his ability as a leader deserved success, but the national weakness made all his efforts futile.
72. Very briefly let us touch upon the first points of connection between the Gauls and the Romans and bring the story down to the time of Caesar's appointment in 58 b.c., the year following his consulship, to the proconsular government of Gaul.

73. Back in the fourth century of her existence Rome had been taken by the Gauls under Brennus and burned. At that time the Gauls were the most dreaded nation in Europe, and the disgrace of this destruction rankled in the minds of the Romans so much, and their fears of the Gauls became so great, that they are said to have kept a sum of money in the capitol which was to be used only in case the Gauls should once more invade Italy. They looked upon the anniversary of the day on which had occurred their terrible defeat at the Allia River as one of evil omen.

74. In order to cope with these larger and fiercer enemies from the north, the Romans were obliged to improve their fighting implements. Camillus is said to have introduced the use of metal in strengthening the shield and helmet, and a longer pike for thrusting, as well as hurling. Thus equipped, they were more ready to interfere in the affairs of Gaul as soon as matters within their own part of the Italian peninsula were well in hand; for it must be remembered that the Italy of to-day includes one of the Gallic provinces of the Romans—Gallia Cisalpina.

75. On the southern shore of Gaul the Greeks had settled and established the flourishing colony of Massilia, the modern Marseilles. This colony had a difficult task to maintain itself in the face of hostility of the neighboring tribes. Under such conditions other states hired mercenary troops, but the Massilians de-
pended for their support almost entirely upon the friendship of the Romans. They themselves established numerous colonies along the coast of Gaul, and this close relation with their ally Rome was of mutual advantage. The most available of the Alpine passes was near them, and a hold upon this for future convenience could not but be desired by the Romans. In defending the Massilians the Romans gradually came to subjugate all the territory bounded by the Massilian holdings on the coast, the Alps, and the Rhone. Next, by a continual process of interference and absorption, they came to dominate the Salluvii and Allobroges, who lived in modern Savoy, and other tribes. At last the title of “The Province” was employed for this whole territory, a name which has been perpetuated in the modern French appellation “Provence.” Later, Roman commanders crossed the Rhone and pushed this acquisition of territory as far as the Pyrenees, founding at Narbo Martius (the modern Narbonne) a Roman colony to maintain the Roman supremacy. The importance of Massilia as a trading centre was lessened by the growth of this new colony, from which, in later times, the whole province took its distinguishing name, Gallia Narbonensis.

76. Shortly after this the Cimbri and Teutones swept over Gaul, overcoming all except the Belgae, who successfully resisted them. One of the divisions of the Helvetii joined these tribes, and with them defeated a Roman army and compelled it to pass under the yoke. The Romans were vanquished in other battles also, but the Gauls, without entering Italy, moved away into Spain.

77. It was during this period of terror at Rome that
Marius was made consul for three successive years, since the Romans looked upon him as their greatest general, and wished to be sure of his leadership against these Gallic enemies whenever the attack should come. He justified this confidence by first annihilating the Teutones at Aquae Sextiae (102 B.C.) and then the Cimbri at Vercellae, in 101 B.C., associating himself in command with the other consul, Catulus.

78. At the time of the Catilinarian conspiracy the terror of a new Gallic war entered into the minds of the Romans. The Allobroges had sent an embassy to Rome to complain of the oppressive treatment which they received from Roman officials. The conspirators attempted to draw them into the conspiracy, but without success, though the people hearing of the attempt were much alarmed. The ambassadors then betrayed the conspirators indirectly to Cicero and greatly helped in their downfall. The Romans, quite characteristically, denied the Gauls’ claims for relief, and the next year overcame them in an ineffectual attempt at rebellion. Meantime the rivalry between the Arverni and the Sequani, on the one hand, and the Aedui on the other, who of all the Gallic tribes were always the closest friends of the Romans, led to the invitation into Gaul of Ariovistus, the Suabian leader, with his horde of Germans. Then followed the defeat, first of the Aeduans, and their dependents, and after that the subjection of the Sequani to their own ally Ariovistus.

79. Then it was that Diviciacus, the Aeduan chief, visited Rome and spent a year there. He was a Druid, representing the religion which prevailed in Gaul and Britain at this time, and learned in all the wisdom of his sect. Caesar is reported to have become very
intimate with him, and to this intimacy we must ascribe much of Caesar's knowledge of the people he was afterwards to overpower and subjugate. This old Druid became the companion and confidant of Caesar in his Gallic campaigns, and we are compelled to believe that the fidelity which he displayed to the interests of Caesar and the Romans was based upon a sincere belief that his people would be better off under Roman rule than if left to themselves. But, as we have seen, owing to the movement of the Helvetii the Romans were fearful of another Gallic uprising; and so, in 59 B.C., Diviciacus was refused help against Ariovistus, whom they chose rather to honor. In this way, for the present, they were willing to treat this German who had made subjects of their own Gallic allies.

This then is the condition of affairs in Gaul when Caesar began his proconsular command in the year 58 B.C.

**THE GRAMMAR OF CAESAR**

**Note.**—While reading Caesar the student should not be expected to master all the details of Latin syntax. He should add to the knowledge that he has gained in this subject during his first year an acquaintance with the constructions most common in Caesar's *Gallic War*, or the portion of that work which he reads, leaving further details for his last two years in the high school.

Accordingly, no attempt has been made to present an exhaustive treatment of Caesar's syntax, but only the more usual constructions have been included. Others are explained in the Notes, with or without references to the Grammars.

An effort has been made to make the rules as simple as possible, without undue attention to exceptional and special uses, with which the student may familiarize himself at a later stage in his reading. The editors have been somewhat conservative in the retention of familiar terms such as Partitive Genitive and the like.
I. General Rules

80. The subject of a finite verb is in the Nominative case. A. 339; B. 166; G. 203; H. 387; H.B. 335; W. 289.

Gallia est omnis divisa in partes tres, Gaul as a whole is divided into three parts. 1. 1.

81. A predicate noun, denoting the same person or thing as the subject, is in the Nominative case. A. 284; B. 168; G. 211; H. 393; H.B. 319, II; W. 290.

Is pagus appellabatur Tigurinus, that canton was called Tigurinus. 1. 12. Cuius pater ... a senatu ... amicus appellatus est, whose father was called a friend by the senate. 1. 3.

82. A noun or pronoun which describes another, and denotes the same person or thing, is called an appositive. An appositive is put in the same case as the word which it describes. A. 282; B. 169, 1 and 2; G. 321; H. 393; H.B. 319, I; W. 291.

Boios ... socios sibi adsciscunt, they unite the Boii to themselves as allies. 1. 5.

Persuadet Castico, Catamantaloedis filio, Sequano, he persuades Casticus, the son of Catamantaloedes, the Sequanian. 1. 3.
Convocatis eorum principibus, in his Diviciaco et Lisco, having called together their chiefs, among them Diviciacus and Liscus. 1. 16.

83. An appositive to the subject is in the Nominative case.

Ambarri, necessarii et consanguinei Aeduorum, the Ambarri, kinsmen and blood relations of the Aeduans. 1. 11.

84. The case of a relative pronoun is determined by its construction within its own clause. It agrees

1 A. = Allen and Greenough; B. = Bennett; G. = Gildersleeve-Lodge; H. = Harkness; H.B. = Hale-Buck; W. = West.
with its antecedent in gender, person, and number. A. 305; B. 250; G. 614; H. 396; H.B. 322; W. 299.

Constituerunt ea quae ad proficiscendum pertiuerent comparare, they determined to get together the things which had to do with their departure. 1. 3.
Numerus eorum qui arma ferre possent, the number of those who were able to bear arms. 1. 29.

a. The relative sometimes agrees with a predicate nominative, instead of with its antecedent.

Ad occupandum Vesontionem, quod est oppidum maximum Sequanorum, to seize Vesontio, which is the largest town of the Sequani. 1. 38.

85. A verb agrees with its subject in person and number. A. 316; B. 254, 1; G. 211; H. 388; H.B. 328, 1; W. 296.

Helvetii id quod constituerant facere conantur, the Helvetians attempt to do that which they had resolved on. 1. 5.

In compound forms of the verb the participle agrees with the subject also in gender and in case. A. 316, n.; B. 254, 2; G. 211; H. 388, 1; H.B. 328, 2; W. 297, 4.

Gallia est omnis divisa in partes tres, Gaul as a whole is divided into three parts. 1. 1.

Note. — When there are two subjects, the verb is commonly in the plural, but in some cases a singular verb is used. A collective noun regularly takes a singular verb, but a plural verb may be used.

Orgetorigis filia atque unus e filiis captus est, the daughter of Orgetorix and also one of his sons was taken. 1. 26.

Gallos a Belgis Matrona et Sequana dividit, the Marne and Seine separate the Gauls from the Belgians. 1. 1.
Civitate persuasit ut . . . exirent, he persuaded the state (i.e. the citizens) to go forth. 1. 2.
II. Syntax of Nouns

1. The Accusative Case

86. The direct object of a verb is in the Accusative case. A. 387; B. 172 and 173; H. 404; G. 330; H.B. 390; W. 308. The object may be (a) The Person or Thing Affected, or (b) The Result Produced by the action of the verb.

(a) Quarum unam partem incolunt Belgae, one part of which the Belgians inhabit. 1. 1.
(b) Caesar duas legiones in citeriore Gallia novas conscripsit, Caesar levied two new legions in hither Gaul. 2. 2.

Note. — Some intransitive verbs become transitive when compounded with a preposition, and some verbs which are intransitive in English are transitive in Latin. A. 388, a and b; B. 175, a and b; H. 405, 1 and 406; G. 330, r. and 331; H.B. 391, 1 and 2; W. 309 and 311.

Hanc (sc. paludem) si nostri transirent hostes exspectabant, the enemy were waiting to see whether our men would cross this. 2. 9. Liscus ... quod antea tacuerat proponit, Liscus disclosed that about which he had previously kept silent. 1. 17.

87. The subject of an infinitive is in the Accusative case. A. 397, e; B. 184; H. 415; G. 343, 2; H.B. 398; W. 322.

Ita Helvetios a maioribus suis institutos esse, that the Helvetions had been so trained by their elders. 1. 14. Eas res iactare nolebat, he did not wish these matters to be discussed. 1. 18.

Note. — For the subject of an historical infinitive, see 214.

88. Many verbs meaning make, choose, call, show, and the like take two Accusatives of the same person or
thing. A. 393; B. 177, 1; H. 410; G. 340; H.B. 392; W. 317.

Magistratni praeerat quem vergobretum appellant Aedui, he held the office which the Helveticans call vergobretus. 1. 16.

89. Some verbs, meaning ask, demand, and the like, take two Accusatives, one of the person and one of the thing. A. 396; B. 178; H. 411; G. 339; H.B. 393; W. 318.

Interim cotidie Caesar Aeduos frumentum flagitare, meanwhile Caesar daily demanded the grain from the Aeduans. 1. 16.

90. Transitive verbs sometimes take a second Accusative when compounded with trans. A. 395; B. 179; G. 331; H. 413; H.B. 386; W. 320.

Certior factus est, tres iam partes copiarum Helvetios id flumen traduxisse, he was informed that the Helvetians had already led three-quarters of their forces across that river. 1. 12.

Note. — One of the objects is retained in the passive, while the other becomes the subject.

Reperiebat Belgas Rhenum traductos (esse), he learned that the Belgians had been led across the Rhine. (Dir. Disc., Belgae Rhenum traducti sunt.) 2. 4.

91. Duration of Time and Extent of Space are denoted by the Accusative. A. 423 and 425; B. 181; H. 417; G. 335 and 336; H.B. 387, I and II; W. 324.

Cuius pater regnum in Sequanis multos annos obtinuerat, whose father had been king among the Sequani for many years. 1. 3.

Nullam partem noctis itinere intermisso, having broken their journey during no part of the night. 1. 26.

Note. — The Accusative of Extent is sometimes used adverbially. A. 397; B. 176, 3; H. 416, 2; G. 334; H.B. 387, III; W. 316.
INTRODUCTION

Cum equitatu nihil possent, since they are not at all strong in cavalry. 2. 17.
Esse nonnullos quorum auctoritas apud plebem plurimum valeat, that there were some whose influence with the commons was very strong. 1. 17.

92. Place to Which is usually denoted by the Accusative with the preposition ad, in, or sub. A. 426, 2; B. 182, 2; H. 418; G. 337, r. 1; H.B. 385; W. 325, 1.

In fines Vocontiorum die septimo pervenit, he arrived in the territories of the Vocontii on the seventh day. 1. 10.
Ad fines Belgarum pervenit, he arrived at the frontier of the Belgians. 2. 2.
Ipsi . . . sub primam nostram aciem successerunt, they themselves advanced up to our van. 1. 24.

93. But the Accusative of Limit of Motion, without a preposition, is used with names of towns and with domum, meaning home. A. 427, 2; B. 182, 1; H. 418 and 419; G. 337; H.B. 385, b; W. 325, 2.

Se Romam ad senatum venisse auxilium postulatum, that he had gone to Rome to the senate, to ask for help. 1. 31.
Eorum qui domum redierunt, of those who returned home. 1. 29.

94. Motion to the vicinity of a town is indicated by the Accusative with the preposition ad. A. 428, a; B. 182, 3; H. 418, 4; G. 337, 4; H.B. 385, a; W. 325, 1.

Ad Genavam pervenit, he came to the neighborhood of Geneva. 1, 7.

2. The Genitive

95. A noun or pronoun which limits another, and does not denote the same person or thing, is put in the Genitive. A. 342; B. 195; H. 439; G. 360; H.B. 339; W. 347.
To this general rule the student may apply for the present all the uses of the Genitive not included in §§ 96–103.

Postridie eius diei, the day following that day. 1. 23.
Honoris Diviciaci causa, for the sake of doing honor to Diviciacus. 2. 15.
Aliquem locum medium utriusque, some place midway between each. 1. 34.
Angustias itineris et magnitudinem silvarum, the narrowness of the roads and the great size of the forests. 1. 39.

96. The Possessive Genitive denotes possession or ownership. A. 343; B. 198; H. 439; G. 362; H.B. 339; W. 353.

Qui ipsorum lingua Celtae appellantur, who in their own language are called Celts. 1. 1.
Ipsi in eorum fiuibus bellum gerunt, they themselves wage war in their territories. 1. 1.

97. The Subjective Genitive denotes the person who acts or feels. A. 343, n. 1; B. 199; H. 440, 1; G. 363, 1; H.B. 344; W. 350.

Esse nonnullos quorum auctoritas apud plebem plurimum valeat, that there were some whose influence with the commons was very strong. 1. 17.
Militum concursu ... repulsi, hoc conatu destiterunt, driven back by the coming of the soldiers, they gave up this attempt. 1. 8.

98. The Objective Genitive denotes the object of an action or feeling. It is not always translated into English with “of.” A. 347; B. 200; H. 440, 2; G. 363, 2; H.B. 354; W. 351.

Regni cupiditate inductus, led by desire for royal power. 1. 2.
Uti suæ pristinae virtutis memoriam tenerent, that they should retain the memory of their old-time valor. 2. 21.
INTRODUCTION

Note. — The difference between the subjective and the objective genitive may be seen in the following clause, in which both are used: pro veteribus Helvetiorum iniuris populi Romani, on account of the ancient wrongs inflicted by the Helvetians (subjective) on the Roman people (objective). 1. 30.

99. A Genitive signifying the whole may be used to limit a word indicating a part. This is ordinarily called the Partitive Genitive. A. 346; B. 201; H. 441; G. 367; H.B. 346; W. 355.

Eorum una pars initium capit a flumine Rhodano, one part of these begins at the river Rhone. 1. 1.

Hominem honestissimum provinciae Galliae, the most distinguished man of the province of Gaul. 1. 53.

Quantum loci acies... occupare poterat, as much room as an army could occupy (literally, “as much of place as”). 2. 8.

Satis esse causae arbitrabatur, he thought there was sufficient (of) reason. 1. 19.

100. A Genitive is sometimes used instead of an appositive (see § 82) and is then called an Appositional Genitive. A. 343, d; B. 202; H. 440, 4; G. 361; H.B. 341; W. 348.

Triplicem aciem instruxit legionum quattuor veteranarum, he drew up a triple line (consisting of) four veteran legions. 1. 24.

Equitatunm ad numerum quattuor milium, horsemen to the number of four thousand. 1. 15.

Note. — The genitives in §§ 99 and 100 are sometimes confounded. In the former, the Partitive Genitive, the genitive denotes the Whole, of which a Part is taken; in the latter, the Appositional Genitive, the genitive and the noun which it limits denote the same thing.

101. The Genitive, modified by an adjective, may be used to denote a Characteristic or Quality of a person or thing. A. 345; B. 203; H. 440, 3; G. 365; H.B. 355; W. 354.
Esse homines feros magnaeque virtutis, that the men were savage and of great valor. 2. 15.
Levis armaturae pedites, light-armed soldiers. 2. 24.

102. When the Genitive of Quality denotes a measure of distance or time, it is sometimes called the Genitive of Measure. A. 345, a; B. 203, 2; G. 365, 2; H. 440, 3; H.B. 355; W. 354.

Murus in altitudinem pedum sedecim... perducit, he constructs a wall to the height of sixteen feet. 1. 8.
Cum tridui viam processisset, when he had gone three days' march (tridui = trium dierum). 1. 38.

103. When the Genitive of Quality denotes indefinite value, it is sometimes called the Genitive of Value. A. 417; B. 208, 3; G. 379; H. 440, 3; H.B. 356; W. 361.

Tanti (sc. preti) eius apud se gratiam ostendit, he showed him that his influence with him was with so much (literally, “was of so great value”). 1. 20.

NOTE.—Many of the above varieties of the genitive may be used in the predicate. There is no genitive known as the Predicate Genitive, but we may have a Predicate Genitive of Possession, etc.

104. The Genitive is used with adjectives signifying desire, knowledge, familiarity, memory, participation, power, fulness, and the opposites of these. A. 349, a; B. 204; H. 451, 1; G. 374; H.B. 354; W. 352.

Qui rei militaris peritissimus habebatur, who was considered most skilled in military science. 1. 21.
Cupidum novarum rerum, desirous of revolution. 1. 18.

105. The Genitive is sometimes used with verbs meaning remember and forget (memini, reminiscor; and
INTRODUCTION

Reminisceretur ... veteris incommodi populi Romani, let him bear in mind the ancient disaster to the Roman people. 1. 13.
Si veteris contumeliae oblivisci vellet, if he were willing to forget the ancient insult. 1. 14.

a. Interest is also followed by the Genitive.

Docet quantopere rei publicae intersit, he shows how greatly it is for the interest of the commonwealth. 2. 5.

3. The Dative

106. The indirect object of a verb is in the Dative case. A. 361; B. 187; G. 345; H. 424; H.B. 365; W. 326.

Reliqui sese fugae mandarunt, the rest gave themselves up to flight. 1. 12.
Id hoc facilius eis persuasit, he persuaded them of this (literally, "this to them") the more easily. 1. 2.

107. The Dative of the indirect object is also used.

a. With many verbs of special meanings, such as favor, help, injure, please, displease, command, obey, serve, resist, indulge, spare, pardon, threaten, believe, persuade, and the like. A. 367; B. 187, II; G. 346; H. 426, 1 and 2; H.B. 362; W. 330.

Omnes fere finitimos ... suae virtuti invidere, that almost all their neighbors envied their valor. 2. 31.
Ut victis ac summotis resisterent, that they might resist those who were beaten and driven off (the field). 1. 25.

b. With many verbs compounded with ad, ante, con-(com-), in, inter, ob, post, prae, pro, sub, super, and circum. A. 370; B. 187, III; G. 347; H. 429; H.B. 376; W. 332.
THE GRAMMAR OF CAESAR

Cum virtute omnibus praestarent, since they surpassed all in valor. 1. 2.

Uti toti Galliae bellum inferrent, that they might make war on all Gaul. 1. 30.

Note.—Observe that not all of the verbs under 107, a and b, govern a dative; for example, Helvetii reliquos Gallos virtute praecedunt, the Helvetians surpass all the rest in valor. 1. 1; qui cum eum in itinere convenissent, when they had met him on the road. 1. 27. Those which govern the dative must be learned by observation and experience.

108. Verbs which govern a Dative can be used only impersonally in the passive. A. 372; B. 187, II, b; G. 346, r. 1; H. 426, 3; H.B. 364, 2; W. 331.

His persuaderi ut diutius morarentur... non poterat, these could not be persuaded to remain longer. 2. 10.

Quibus rebus quam matutrinere occurrundum (esse) putabat, he thought that these difficulties ought to be met as soon as possible. 1. 33.

109. The Dative of Reference denotes the person to whom a statement or action refers or to whom it is of interest.¹ A. 376; B. 188; G. 352; H. 425, 2; H.B. 366; W. 335.

Docebat quam veteres et quam iustae causae necessitudinis ipsis cum Helvetiis intercederent, he pointed out what old and what legitimate causes for friendship existed between them (the Romans) and the Helvetians (literally, “for them with the Helvetians”). 1. 43.

Si sibi purgati esse vellent, if they wished to be free from guilt in his eyes (literally, “with reference to him”). 1. 28.

a. The Dative of Reference is sometimes about equivalent to a Possessive Genitive. A. 377; B. 188, 1, n.; G. 350, 1; H. 425, 4, n.; H.B. 374.

¹ Hence it is sometimes called the Dative of Interest,
Sese omnes flentes Caesari ad pedes prierunt, *all in tears threw themselves at Caesar's feet.* 1. 31.

110. The Dative may be used with the verb *sum* to denote the Possessor. A. 373; B. 190; G. 349; H. 430; H.B. 374; W. 340.

Demonstrant sibi nihil esse reliqui, *they show him that they have nothing left* (literally, “nothing is to them of remainder”). 1. 11.
Qui dicerent sibi esse in animo, *to say that they have in mind.* 1. 7.

111. The Dative of Separation is used with compounds of *ab, de, ex, ad,* and *dis-* usually of persons only. A. 381; B. 188, 2. d; G. 347, r. 5; H. 427; H.B. 371; W. 337.

Omnibus equis Gallis equitibus detractis, *having taken away all their horses from the Gallic cavalry.* 1. 42.
Scuto a novissimis uni militi detracto, *having taken a shield from one of the soldiers in the rear.* 2. 25.
Hostibus spes potiundi oppidi discessit, *the hope of getting possession of the town departed from the enemy.* 2. 7.

112. The Dative of Agency is used regularly with the Second Periphrastic Conjugation. A. 374, and a; B. 189; G. 354; H. 431; H.B. 373; W. 339.

Caesar non exspectandum sibi statuit, *Caesar decided that he must not wait* (more literally, “that it must not be waited by him”). 1. 11.

Omnibus Gallis idem esse faciendum, *that all the Gauls would have to do the same thing* (more literally, “that the same thing would have to be done by all the Gauls”). 1. 31.

113. The Dative of Service or Purpose is used to denote the end or purpose towards which an action is directed, or for which something exists. A. 382; B. 191; G. 356; H. 433; H.B. 360; W. 342 and 343.
Ut aliquem locum colloquio deligeret, that he should choose some place for a conference. 1. 34.

Haec sibi esse curae, that these things were his care (literally, "were for a care to him"). 1. 40.

Note.—The Dative of Purpose is sometimes used with another dative, as in the second example, when the construction is often called that of the Two Datives; sometimes without another dative, as in the first example. When it is used with esse, it is equivalent in force to a predicate nominative or accusative.

114. Many adjectives meaning friendly, unfriendly, similar, dissimilar, equal, near, fit, and the like take the Dative. A. 384; B. 192, 1 and 2; G. 359; H. 434, 2; H.B. 362; W. 333.

Proximi sunt Germanis, they are nearest to the Germans. 1. 1.

Fecerunt ut consimilis fugae profectio videretur, they made their departure seem very like a flight. 2. 11.

Secundiore equitum proelio nostris, the cavalry battle being more favorable to our men. 2. 9.

Qui locum idoneum castris deligant, who were to select a place fit for a camp. 2. 17.

4. The Ablative

115. The Ablative of Separation is used sometimes with and sometimes without a preposition. A. 400–402; B. 214; G. 390, 1 and 2; H. 462 and 463; H.B. 408; W. 374–377.

Ubi murus defensoribus nudatus est, when the wall was stripped of defenders. 2. 6.

Satis habebat... hostem rapinis... prohibere, he considered it sufficient to keep the enemy from plundering. 1. 15.

Ab oppidis vim hostium prohibere, to keep the violence of the enemy from their towns. 1. 11.

Qui fines Sequanorum ab Helvetiis dividit, which separates the territories of the Sequani from the Helvetians. 1. 8.

Note.—Whether a preposition is to be used or not must be learned mainly by observation. Verbs of freeing, depriving, and
lacking, and the corresponding adjectives, regularly omit the preposition. Of verbs meaning to keep from, remove, withdraw, some take the preposition, and others omit it, the same verb often having both constructions (as in the second and third examples). Other verbs of separation usually take the ablative with a preposition. The preposition is very commonly used of persons.

For the Ablative of Place from Which, see 134 and 135.

116. The Agent, or doer of an action, is expressed by the Ablative with a or ab. A. 405; B. 216; G. 401; H. 468; H.B. 406, 1; W. 379.

Si obsides ab eis sibi dentur, if hostages should be given him by them. 1. 14.

Cuius pater a senatu populi Romani amicus appellatus erat, whose father had been called friend by the senate of the Roman people. 1. 3.

Note. — For the Dative of Agency, see 112.

117. An Ablative translated by than is often used with a comparative and called the Ablative of Comparison. A. 406; B. 217, 1; G. 398; H. 471; H.B. 416; W. 380.

Eo cum celerius omni opinione venisset, when he had come to that place more quickly than any one expected (literally, “more quickly than all expectation”). 2. 3.

Quae castra . . . amplius milibus passuum octo in latitudinem patebant, this camp extended more than eight miles in width. 2. 7.

118. Plus, minus, amplius, and longius are often used with the force of plus quam, minus quam, etc., instead of being followed by the Ablative of Comparison. A. 407, c; B. 217, 3; G. 296, r. 4; H. 471, 4; H.B. 416, d; W. 382.

Ut milium amplius quinquaginta circuitu . . . exercitum duceret, that he might lead his army by a detour of more than fifty miles. 1. 41. (Milium is Genitive of Measure; see 102.)
Reliquum spatium, quod est non amplius pedum MDC, the remaining space, which is not more than 1600 feet. 1. 38. (Pedum is Genitive of Measure, used predicatively; see 102 and 103, Note.)

Note.—Sometimes, however, the Ablative of Comparison is used: Non amplius quinis aut senis milibus passuum. 1. 15.

119. The Ablative is used to express the Means by which, or the Instrument with which, an action is accomplished. A. 409; B. 218; G. 401; H. 476; H.B. 423; W. 386.

Una pars continetur Garumna flumine, Oceano, finibus Belgarum, one division is bounded by the Garonne River, the Ocean, and the territories of the Belgians. 1. 1.

Id Helvetii ratibus ac lintibus junctis transibant, this the Helvetii were trying to cross by a bridge of rafts and boats (literally, “by rafts and by boats joined together”). 1. 12.

Note.—The Ablative of Means or Instrument is very common in Latin and is used in many cases where a different construction (i.e. a different preposition) is used in English. For instance:—

Frumento quod navibus subvexerat, the grain which he had brought in ships (literally, “by ships”). 1. 16.

Fere cotidianis proeliis cum Germanis contendunt, they contend with the Germans in almost daily battles. 1. 1.

Ut magis virtute contenderent quam dolo aut insidiis niterentur, that they rather fought with valor than relied on treachery and ambushes (literally, “strove by means of treachery”). 1. 13. Superioribus victoriis freti, relying on their former victories (literally, “supported by”). 3. 21.

120. Price is expressed by the Ablative. A. 416; B. 225; G. 404; H. 478; H.B. 427; W. 395.

Portoria . . . parvo pretio redempta habere, that he had bought up the custom-house duties at a low price. 1. 18.

Uti . . . Germani mercede arcesserentur, that the Germans were hired as mercenaries (lit. “were summoned by a price”). 1. 31.
121. The deponents utor, use, fruor, enjoy, fungor, perform, potior, get possession of, vescor, eat, and their compounds, take the Ablative. A. 410; B. 218, 1; G. 407; H. 477; H.B. 429; W. 387.

Eo . . . frumento uti minus poterat, he was not able to use that grain. 1. 16.  
Impedimentis castrisque nostri potiti sunt, our men got possession of the baggage and the camp. 1. 26.

122. The Ablative of Cause gives the cause or reason for an action. A. 404; B. 219; G. 408; H. 475; H.B. 444; W. 384.

Quod sua victoria tam insolenter gloriarentur, as for their boasting so arrogantly on account of their victory. 1. 14.  
Qui mobilitate et levitate animi novis rebus imperiis studebant, who on account of the changeableness and fickleness of their character were desirous of a revolution. 2. 1.

Note.—Cause is also expressed by the ablative with ex; for example, quo gravius homines ex commutatione rerum doleant, that men might feel the deeper grief in consequence of a change of fortune (literally, “of affairs”). 1. 14.

123. The Ablative, regularly with cum, is used to express the Manner of an action, like an adverb. Cum may be omitted when the ablative has an adjective modifier. A. 412; B. 220; G. 399; H. 473, 3; H.B. 445; W. 390.

Diviciacus multis cum lacrimis Caesarem complexus, Diviciacus embracing Caesar with many tears (i.e. tearfully). 1. 20.  
Incredibili celeritate ad flumen decucurrerunt, with wonderful speed they rushed down to the river (i.e. very swiftly). 2. 19.

124. The Ablative of Accompaniment is ordinarily used with the preposition cum, but in military expressions the ablative alone may be used, when it is modi-
fied by an adjective. A. 413; B. 222; G. 392; H. 473, 1 and 474; H.B. 418 and 420; W. 392.

In ulteriorem Galliam . . . cum his quinque legionibus ire contendit, he hastened to march into Further Gaul with these five legions. 1. 10.

Caesar equitatu praemisso subsequebatur omnibus copiis, Caesar sent forward the cavalry and followed with all his forces. 2. 19.

125. The Ablative of Degree of Difference is used with comparatives and words implying comparison, including expressions of distance. A. 414; B. 223; G. 403; H. 479; H.B. 424; W. 393.

Quod paucis ante mensibus Harudum milia hominum XXIII ad eum venissent, because a few months before twenty-four thousand of the Harudes had come to him (literally, "before by a few months"). 1. 31.

Hic locus aequo fere spatio a castris utriusque aberat, this place was about an equal distance away from the camp of each (literally, "was distant by an equal space"). 1. 43.

126. The Ablative is used to indicate the Attendant Circumstances of an action or situation. B. 221; H. 473, 3; H.B. 422; W. 391.

Qui minus facile eam rem imperio nostro consequi poterant, who were less easily able to accomplish this under our rule. 2. 1.

Equites Ariovisti pari intervallo constiterunt, the cavalry of Ariovistus took their position at an equal distance (away). 1. 43.

127. The Ablative is used to denote that in Accordance with which anything is done. A. 418, a; B. 220, 3; G. 397; H. 475; H.B. 414; W. 391.

Negat se more et exemplo populi Romani posse iter ulli per provinciam dare, he says that he cannot in accordance with the custom and the usual procedure of the Roman people give any one a passage through the province. 1. 8.
INTRODUCTION

Consuetudine sua Caesar sex legiones expeditas ducebat, according to his custom Caesar was leading six legions in light marching order. 2. 19.

128. A noun in the ablative, modified by an adjective, may be used to denote a Quality or Characteristic. A. 415; B. 224; G. 400; H. 473, 2; H.B. 448; W. 394.

Hominis inimico animo, men of hostile disposition. 1. 7.
Quod nondum bono animo in populum Romanum venerantur, because they did not yet seem well disposed towards the Roman people (literally, “seem of good mind,” the predicate use of the construction). 1. 6.

129. The Ablative of Specification is used with verbs and adjectives to denote the respect in which anything is done or exists. A. 418; B. 226; G. 397; H. 480; H.B. 441; W. 396.

Quod ... civitas ... hominum multitudine praestabat, because the state excelled in population (literally, “in the number of its men”). 2. 15.
Hi omnes linguas, institutis, legibus inter se differunt, all these differ from one another in language, institutions, and laws. 1. 1.

130. A noun or pronoun in the ablative, accompanied by a predicate noun, adjective, or participle in the same case, may be loosely connected with the rest of the sentence. This is called the Ablative Absolute.

The Ablative Absolute is generally the equivalent of a clause expressing time, condition, cause, means, or other attendant circumstances, and should be translated by such a clause. A. 419 and 420; B. 227, also 1 and 2; G. 409 and 410; H. 489; H.B. 421; W. 397-399.

Time. — Eo opere perfecto, praesidia disponit, when that work was finished, he set guards. 1. 8.
Condition. — Quod illo licente contra liceri audate nemo, because if he bid, no one dared to bid against him. 1. 18.
Opposition of "Concession." — Propter latitudinem fossae murique altitudinem paucis defendantibus (oppidum) expugnare non potuit, on account of the breadth of the ditch and the height of the wall he was unable to take the town, though the defenders were few. 2. 12.

Means. — Ut aequato omnium periculo spem fugae tolleret, that by making the danger of all equal he might take away the hope of flight. 1. 25.

Manner. — Incitato equo se hostibus obtulit, he rushed upon the enemy with his horse at full speed. 4. 12.

5. Relations of Place

Note. — For Place to Which, see 92 and 93.

131. Place Where is regularly denoted by the Ablative with the prepositions in and sub. A. 426, 3; B. 228; G. 385; H. 483; H.B. 433; W. 401.

Factum (periculum) etiam nuper in Italia, a test had also been made recently in Italy. 1. 40.

Qui principatum in civitate obtinebat, who held the chief place in the state. 1. 3.

132. The preposition is omitted with the general designations of place, loco, locis, and parte, and with other words when they are modified by totus. A. 429, 1 and 2; B. 228, b; G. 388; H. 485, 2; H.B. 436 and a; W. 402, 2.

Qui . . . alieno loco cum equitatu Helvetiorum proelium committunt, who join battle with the cavalry of the Helvetians in an unfavorable place. 1. 15.

Vulgo totis castris testamenta obsignabantur, wills were signed and sealed generally in the whole camp. 1. 39.

a. Also in some idiomatic expressions, such as memoria tenere, "to hold in memory," castris se tenere, "to keep oneself in one's camp," where the idea of Means (119, Note) is perhaps present, as well as that of Place.
133. Names of towns express Place Where by the Locative. "At home" is also expressed by the Locative form *domi*.

The Locative has in the singular of the first and second declensions the same form as the Genitive; elsewhere the same form as the Ablative. A. 427, 3 and footnote; B. 228, a and 232; G. 386; H. 483; H.B. 449; W. 402, 1 and 403.

Quod proelium *Admagetobriae* factum sit, *a battle which was fought at Admagetobria*. 1.31.

*Romae* dierum viginti supplicatio redditur, *at Rome a thanksgiving of twenty days was kept*. 7.90.

Cum ipse gratia plurimum *domi* . . . posset, *when he himself had great power at home*. 1.20.

134. Place From Which is regularly denoted by the Ablative with the preposition *ab, de, or ex*. A. 426, 1; B. 229; G. 390; H. 461; H.B. 409; W. 404.

Qui nuntii *ab Iccio* veneerant, *who had come as messengers from Iccius*. 2.7.

Castra *ex eo loco* moveant, *they move their camp from that place*. 1.15.

Ut *de finibus euis* exirent, *that they should go out from their territories*. 1.2.

135. The preposition is omitted with names of towns, with *domo*, "from home," and sometimes with other words, especially when governed by verbs compounded with *ab, ex, or de*. A. 427, 1; B. 229, 1; G. 390, 2 and 391; H. 462; H.B. 451; W. 405.

Erant omnino itinera duo, quibus itineribus *domo* exire posseunt, *there were only two routes by which they could go forth from home*. 1.6.

Germani suas copias *castris eduxerunt, the Germans led their troops from the camp*. 1.51.
136. Motion from the vicinity of a town is expressed by the Ablative with a preposition (cf. 94).

Ab Ocelo . . . in fines Vocontiorum pervenit, he came from the neighborhood of Ocelum into the territories of the Vocontii. 1.10.

6. Expressions of Time

Note.—For the Accusative of Duration of Time see 91.

137. Duration of Time is occasionally denoted by the Ablative. A. 424, b; B. 281, 1; G. 393, r. 2; H. 417, 2; H.B. 440.

Ea tota nocte continenter ierunt, they continued to march all that night. 1.26.
Ariovistus his omnibus diebus exercitum castris continuit, all this time (literally, "all these days") Ariovistus kept his army in camp. 1.48.

Note.—The Ablative of Duration of Time and that of Time When do not differ greatly in some cases. See omni tempore, p. 8, l. 5, and the note. In the first example continenter shows that we have the former.

138. Time When or At Which is denoted by the Ablative. A. 423; B. 230; G. 393; H. 486; H.B. 439; W. 406.

Postero die castra ex eo loco movent, the following day they move their camp from that place. 1.15.
Qui bello Cassiano dux Helvetiorum fuerat, who had been the leader of the Helvetians at the time of the war with Cassius. 1.13.

139. Time Within Which is denoted by the Ablative. A. 423; B. 281; G. 393; H. 487; H.B. 439; W. 407.

Factum eius hostis periculum patrum nostrorum memoria, a test of that foe had been made within the memory of our fathers. 1.40.
Diebus circiter quindecim ad fines Belgarum pervenit, within about fifteen days he came to the country of the Belgians. 2.2.
7. Dates


140. The Romans designated each year by the names of the consuls for that year. The days of the month were reckoned backward from three points, the Kalends (Kalendae), Nones (Nōnae), and Ides (Īdūs). The Kalends were the first day of every month. The Nones were the fifth and the Ides the thirteenth, except in March, May, July, and October, when they were the seventh and fifteenth, respectively. The names of the months were adjectives, agreeing with Kalendae, Nonae, and Idus. They are as follows: Ianuarius, Februarius, Martius, Aprilis, Maius, Iūnius, Quintilis (later Iūlius), Sextilis (later Augustus), September, October, November, December.

The day before the points in the month from which time was reckoned was pridie Kalendās, pridie Nōnās, or pridie Īdūs; but the day before that was called not the second day before the Kalends, etc., but the third (ante diem tertium Kalendās Iānuāriās), because the Romans counted the day from which they began to reckon. Thus, in December the Kalends of January counted one day, the 31st of December a second (pridie Kalendās Iānuāriās), and the 30th of December was the third day before the Kalends.

Therefore, in order to turn Roman dates into English, when a day before the Kalends is given, add two to the number of days in the preceding month, and subtract the given number; when a day before the Nones or Ides is given, add one to the day on which the Nones or Ides fall, and subtract the given number. In the
time of Caesar’s Gallic War, March, May, July, and October had 31 days and the rest 29.

For example:

ante diem V. Kal. April., L. Pisone, Aulo Gabinio consulibus,

on the 28th of March (31 + 2 − 5), 55 B.C. 1. 6.

The expression ante diem V. Kalendas Aprilis, although the usual form, is not strictly grammatical. Die quinto ante Kalendas Aprilis, ‘on the fifth day before the Kalends of April,’ became by attraction ante diem quintum Kalendas Aprilis, where Kalendas is governed by ante diem quintum as if by a preposition.

The day from sunrise to sunset was divided into twelve hours, which of course differed in length at different seasons of the year, designated as hōra prima, secunda, etc. The night was divided into twelve hours from sunset to sunrise (prīma hōra noctis, etc.) and also into four watches (vigilia prīma, etc.).

141. The Vocative is the case of direct address. A. 340; B. 171; G. 201, 1, r. 1; H. 402; H.B. 400; W. 307.

Desilite, commilitones, leap down, fellow-soldiers. 4. 25.

III. PREPOSITIONS


142. The following prepositions govern the Ablative only: ab (ā), cum, de, ex (ē), prae, prō, sine.

1. (a) Ab is used with verbs, nouns, and adjectives to denote motion from, separation, source, and distance, literally and figuratively.

Ab Allobrogius in Segusiavos exercitum ducit, he led his army from (the country of) the Allobroges into (that of) the
Segusiani. 1. 10. A Sequanis impetrat, he obtains from the Sequani. 1. 9. Oppidum vacuum a defensoribus, a town empty of defenders. 2. 12. Milia passuum tria ab eorum castris, three miles from their camp.

(b) Ab is used to denote the point of view from which, with the force of place where.

A Sequanis et Helvetiis, on the side of the Sequani and Helvetians. 1. 1. Ab latere aperto, on the open flank. 1. 25. A dextro cornu, on the right wing. 1. 52.

(c) Ab with the Ablative is used in expressions of time in the sense of from . . . (on) and after.

Ab hora quarta . . . ad solis occasum, from the fourth hour until sunset. 3. 15. A puereis, from boyhood. 4. 1. A decimae legionis cohortatione, after encouraging the tenth legion. 2. 25.

(d) For ab with the Ablative of Agent see 116.

2. (a) Cum denotes accompaniment, association, and intercourse (friendly and unfriendly).

Dies quam constituierat cum legatis, the time that he had agreed on with the envoys. 1. 8. Cum equitatu . . . proelium committunt, they join battle with the cavalry. 1. 15. Unum imperium . . . cum ipsis, one (and the same) government with themselves. 2. 3.

Note. — With the personal and relative pronouns cum regularly follows its case and forms a single word with it. Quiduscum. 1. 1.

(b) For cum with the Ablative of Accompaniment see 124; with the Ablative of Manner, 123.

3. (a) De denotes motion down from or from.

De navibus desiliendum . . . erat, they had to jump down from the ships. 4. 24. De agris demigrare, to move out from their towns. 4. 19.

(b) De has the meaning about, concerning, or with respect to.
De re publica agere, to confer about the commonweal. 1. 34. De populo Romano meritos, deserved of (i.e. with respect to) the Roman people. 1. 11. De eius advenutu certiores facti, informed of (i.e. concerning) his arrival. 1. 7.

(c) De with the Ablative is used in expressions of time when.

De media nocte, at midnight. 2. 7. De tertia vigilia, in the third watch. 1. 12.

(d) De with the Ablative denotes cause and manner, and sometimes has the force of a partitive genitive.

Qua de causa . . . , for which reason. 1. 1. De improviso, unexpectedly. 2. 3. Pauci de nostris, a few of our men. 1. 15.

4. (a) Ex (e) is used with verbs, nouns, and adjectives to denote motion out of or from, separation, and source, literally and figuratively.

Tres (legiones) ex hibernis educit, he leads three legions out of winter quarters. 1. 10. Ex captivis comperit, he found out from captives. 1. 22. Sororem ex matre . . . , his sister on his mother’s side (from his mother). 1. 18.

(b) Ex denotes the point of view from which with the force of place where; cf. 1 (b).

Una ex parte, on one side. 1. 2. Ex vinculis causam dicere, to plead his cause in bonds. 1. 4.

(c) Ex with the Ablative is used in expressions of time from . . . (on) and after.

Dies . . . ex eo die quintus, the fifth day after that day. 1. 42. Ex eo tempore fuga comparata . . . , having prepared for flight from that time on. 4. 18.

(d) Ex with the Ablative may denote cause, accordance, manner, or respect, and material, and may be equivalent to a partitive genitive.
Ex eo . . ., on that account. 1. 20. Ex communi consensu, with (i.e. in accordance with) the common consent. 1. 30. Magna ex parte, in a great measure. 1. 16. Naves factae ex roboire, ships made of oak. 3. 13. Unus e filiis, one of his sons. 1. 26.

5. Prae means compared with.

Prae magnitudine corporum suorum, in comparison with the great size of their own bodies. 2. 30.

6. (a) Pro means before, in place.

Pro portis castrorum, before the gates of the camp. 4. 32.

(b) Pro means for (= on behalf of, instead of, on account of, in return for, as, as if, considering).

Pro his, in their behalf. 2. 14. Pro velis, for sails. 3. 13. Quod non vidisset pro viso renuntiasse, had reported as seen that which he had not seen. 1. 22. Pro maximis . . . officis, in return for very great services. 1. 43. Pro multituidine hominum, considering the size of their population. 1. 2.

7. Sine means without.


143. In and sub govern the Ablative or the Accusative, with a difference of meaning.

1. (a) In with the Accusative is used with verbs, nouns, and adjectives to denote motion to or towards, literally and figuratively.

In Italian, into Italy. 1. 10. Proximum iter in ulteriorem Galliam, the shortest road into Farther Gaul. 1. 10. In dedicationem accipere, to receive into surrender. 1. 28. In ipsum Cae-sarem . . . incidit, he fell in with Caesar himself. 1. 53.

(b) In with the Accusative is used in some expressions where there is no idea of motion in English.

In altitudinem pedum sedecim, of sixteen feet in height. 1. 8. In longitudinem, in length. 1. 2.
(c) In with the Accusative means against, towards, in regard to (of feeling or effort).

Spatium pilae in hostes coniciendi, room for hurling their pikes against the enemy. 1. 52. Bono animo in popum Romanum, kindly disposed toward the Roman people. 1. 6.

(d) In with the Accusative denotes time, with the meaning until or for.

Rem in hiemem producere, to protract the campaign until winter. 4. 30. In tertium annum, for the third year (from date). 1. 3. In reliquum tempus, for the future. 1. 20.

(e) In with the Ablative denotes time, with the meaning in or during.

In consulatu suo, in his consulship. 1. 35. In itinere, during the march. 1. 3.

(f) In with the Ablative denotes the place where (see 131), figuratively as well as literally.

In conspectu exercitus nostri, in the sight of our army. 1. 11.

(g) In with the Ablative may mean among. It may also denote cause, circumstances, manner, or respect.

In his fuit Ariovistus, among these was Ariovistus. 1. 53. In tanto imperio populi Romani turpissimum, shameful, when the Roman people were so powerful. 1. 33. In occulto, secretly. 1. 32.

2. (a) Sub with the Accusative denotes motion up to or so as to come under a place.

Exercitum sub ingum miserat, he had sent the army under the yoke. 1. 12. Sub primam nostram aciem, up to our van. 1. 24.

(b) Sub with the Accusative denotes time, with the meaning towards or about.

Sub vesperum, towards evening. 2. 33. Sub occasum solis, at about sunset. 2. 11.
(c) Sub with the Ablative denotes rest under or at the foot of, literally or figuratively.

Sub monte, at the foot of a mountain. 1. 21. Sub illorum dicione, under their sway. 1. 31.

144. All the prepositions not mentioned in 142 and 143 govern the Accusative only. Namely, Ad, Adversus, Apud, Ante, Circum, Cis, Ob, Per, Post, Prope (Propius), Secundum, Trans, and those ending in -a and -ter (Circiter, Citra, Contra, Extra, Inter, Intra, Praeter, Propter, Supra, Ultra).

1. (a) Ad denotes motion to or towards (see 92), figuratively as well as literally.

Cum ad has suspicione certissimae res accederent, when to these suspicions undoubted facts were added. 1. 19. Ad salutem contendere, to hasten to (a place of) safety. 3. 3. Paratus ad dimicandum, prepared for fighting. 2. 21.

(b) Ad denotes rest at or near a place.

Ad Genavam, at Geneva. 1. 7. Ad Hispaniam, near Spain. 1. 1.

(c) Ad with expressions of number means up to or about.

Ad numerum quattuor milium, to the number of four thousand. 1. 15. Numero ad duodecim, about twelve in number. 1. 5.

(d) Ad denotes time with the meaning until or up to.

Ad multam noctem, until late at night. 1. 26. Ad hoc tempus, up to the present time. 2. 17.

(e) Ad with the Accusative may mean according to or in respect to.

Ad altitudinem fluminis, according to the depth of the river. 4. 17. Ad celeritatem, in respect to speed. 2. 26.
2. **Inter** means *between, among, within,* and is used of place and of time.

_Unum (iter erat) inter montem Iuram et flumen Rhodonum, one route was between the Jura Mountains and the river Rhone.* 1.6. Quod tempus inter eos committendi proeli convenerat, which time had been agreed on among them for joining battle. 2.19. Qui inter annos quattuordecim tectum non subisseit, who had not been under a roof within twenty years.

3. (a) **Per** denotes motion *through* or *over.*

*Per fines Aeduorum, through the lands of the Aedusans.* 1.12. Se per munitiones deicere, to throw themselves over the fortifications. 3.26. Per teemonem, along the pole. 4.33.

(b) **Per** means *through* (=with the help or agency of, by means of, on account of), with respect to.

*Per exploratores . . . certior factus, informed through scouts.* 1.12. Per vim, by force. 1.14. Per se, so far as he was concerned. 1.41. Per anui tempus, on account of the time of year. 3.9.

4. For the meanings of adversus, ante, apud, circiter, circum, cis, citra, extra, infra, intra, ob, post, propter, secundum, supra, trans, and ultra, see the Vocabulary.

IV. **Adjectives**

145. An adjective agrees with the noun which it limits in gender, number, and case. Adjectives may be attributive, appositive, or predicate. The first modify nouns directly; the second are joined to nouns in the manner of an appositive (see 82); the last modify a noun through the medium of a verb, usually *esse.*

A. 286 and 285, 1; B. 233, 2 and 234; G. 289; H. 333, 2 and 3 and 394; H.B. 320, I, II, and III; W. 293.
INTRODUCTION

Equitatum omnem . . . praemittit, he sends forward all the cavalry. (Attributive adjective.) 1. 15.

Helvetii continentur . . . monte Iura altissimo, the Helvetians are bounded by the Jura Mountain, of great height. (Appositive adjective.) 1. 2.

Horum omnium fortissimi sunt Belgae, of all these the Belgians are the bravest. (Predicate adjective.) 1. 1.

146. An Attributive Adjective which modifies two or more nouns usually agrees in gender and number with the nearest. A. 286, a; B. 235, A, 1 and B, 1; G. 290; H. 395, 1; H.B. 323; W. 294, 1 and 295.

Non eadem alacritate ac studio . . . utebantur, they did not show the same eagerness and zeal. 4. 24.

Vir et consili magni et virtutis, a man of great judgment and valor. 3. 5.

147. In Latin an adjective is often used where the English employs an adverb. A. 290; B. 239; G. 325, n. 6; H. 497, 1; H.B. 245; W. 412.

Qui creatur annuus, who is elected annually. 1. 16.

Praecipites fugae sese mandaruut, they gave themselves up headlong to flight. 2. 24.

148. Adjectives meaning first and last are used adverbially with the force shown in the following examples. A. 290; B. 241, 2; G. 325, n. 6; H. 497, 3; H.B. 243; W. 417.

En princeps poenas persolvit, this (state) was the first to pay the penalty. 1. 12.

Legiones sex, quae prinae venerant, six legions which had been the first to come. 2. 19.

149. Some adjectives, mostly superlatives, may be used to denote a part of an object. A. 293; B. 241, 1; G. 291, n. 2; H. 497, 4; H.B. 244; W. 416.
Cum summus mons a Labieno teneretur, when the top of the mountain was held by Labienus. 1. 22.
Ad extremas fossas castella constituit, at the ends of the ditch he placed redoubts. 2. 8.

150. The Comparative and the Superlative of adjectives and adverbs are often translated by too, rather, very, etc., instead of by more and most. A. 291, a, b, and c; B. 240, 1 and 2; H. 498; H.B. 241, 1; W. 414.

Cupidius novissimum agmen insecuti, having followed the (enemy’s) rear too eagerly. 1. 15.

Flumine Rheuo, latissimo atque altissimo, by the river Rhine (which is) very broad and very deep. 1. 2.

151. Quam with the Superlative denotes the highest possible degree. A. 291, C; B. 240, 3; G. 303; H. 159, 2; H.B. 241, 4; W. 414, 4.

Quam maximum numerum, as great a number as possible. 1. 3.

Note.—The full form occurs in 1. 7, quam maximis potest itineribus, by the longest possible marches.

152. Adjectives may be used as nouns in two ways:—

a. The meaning of the noun is determined by the gender of the adjective. A. 288; B. 236–238; G. 204, and notes; H. 494 and 495; H.B. 249–252; W. 409.

Legatos ad eum mittunt nobilissimas civitatis, they send to him as envoys the noblest men of the state. 1. 7.

Qui dicerent se suaque omnia in fidem . . . populi Romani mittere, to say that they intrusted themselves and all their possessions ("things") to the protection of the Roman people. 2. 3.

b. The meaning of the noun is determined by some word understood, with which the adjective agrees.

Caesar eius dextram (sc. manum) prendit, Caesar grasps his right hand. 1. 20.
INTRODUCTION

Multa in ea genera ferarum (sc. bestiarum) nasci constat, it is well known that many kinds of wild animals are born there. 6. 25.

Note. — Conversely, a noun may be used as an adjective.
Victoribus Sequanis, to the victorious Sequani. 1. 31.

V. Pronouns

153. The Personal Pronoun is omitted when it is the subject of a finite verb, unless it is emphatic for some reason. A. 295, a; B. 242, 1; G. 304; H. 500; H.B. 257; W. 419.

Is . . conjunctionem nobilitatis fecit, he made a conspiracy of the nobles. 1. 2.
Ego certe meum rei publicae . officium praestitero, I at any rate will do my duty to the state. 4. 25.

154. The Reflexive Pronoun se and the corresponding adjective suus in principal clauses refer to the subject of the main verb. A. 299; B. 244, 1, I; G. 309; H. 503; H.B. 262, 1; W. 421, 1.

Se in castra receperunt, they returned ("betook themselves") to camp. 2. 11.
Caesar suas copias in proximum collem subducit, Caesar led his troops to the nearest hill. 1. 22.

155. Se and suus in dependent sentences may refer to the subject of the verb of the dependent sentence (direct reflexive) or to the subject of the principal sentence (indirect reflexive).

Tribunos militum monuit, ut . . sese legiones coniungerent, he directed the tribunes of the soldiers that the legions should join themselves together (direct reflexive). 2. 26.
His uti coquirerent . . si sibi purgati esse vellent, imperavit, he ordered these to hunt them up, if they wished to be free from blame in his eyes (indirect reflexive). 1. 28.
Note.—The various uses of se and suus are illustrated in the following sentence.

(Ariovistus dixit) quod sibi Caesar denuntiaret se Aeduorum iniurias non neglecturum, neminem secum sine sua pernicie contendisse, (Ariovistus said) that with regard to Caesar's threatening him that he would not neglect the wrongs done to the Aeduans, no one had contended with him without being destroyed. 1. 36.

Sibi refers to the subject of the main verb of saying which introduces the indirect discourse (indirect reflexive); se refers back to the subject of denuntiaret (indirect reflexive); secum refers to the same person as sibi (indirect reflexive); while sua refers to the subject (neminem) of its own clause (direct reflexive).

156. The Intensive ipse is used to emphasize the word with which it agrees, or as an emphatic pronoun. A. 298, d; B. 249, 1; G. 311; H. 509; H.B. 267; W. 428.

Ipsi in eorum finibus bellum gerunt, they themselves carry on war in their own territories. 1. 1.

a. Ipse is very often translated by another word than “self.”

In ipsis fluminis ripis proeliabantur, they were fighting right on the banks of the river. 2. 23.

157. Ipse is sometimes used as an Indirect Reflexive (see 155), when two reflexives are needed, or when se or suus would not be clear. A. 300, b; B. 249, 3; G. 660, 5; H. 509, 6; H.B. 263.

Cur de sua virtute aut de ipsius diligentia desperarent, why should they despair of their own valor or of his care? 1. 40.

Erat ei praeceptum a Caesare ne proelium committeret, nisi ipsius copiae prope hostium castra visae essent, he had been commanded by Caesar not to join battle, unless his (Caesar's) forces should be seen near the camp of the enemy. 1. 22.

For the construction of the Relative Pronoun, see 84.
158. The Relative at the beginning of a sentence is often best translated by a personal or a demonstrative pronoun. A. 308, f; B. 251, 6; G. 610, r. 1; H. 510; H.B. 284, 8; W. 304, 2.

Quod ubi Caesar rescit, when Caesar learned this. 1. 28.
Quarum omnium rerum summa erat, the sum total of all these things was. 1. 29.

a. Sometimes the Relative serves as a connective with the preceding sentence and should be translated by a personal or demonstrative pronoun with a conjunction.

Qui si iuvissent, for if they should aid them. 1. 26.

159. The Indefinite Pronoun quisque is used idiomatically with superlatives to indicate a class. A. 313, b; B. 252, 5, c; G. 318, 2; H. 515, 2; H.B. 278, 2, b.

Nobilissimi cuiusque liberi, the children of all the most distinguished men. 1. 31.
Antiquissimum quodque tempus, priority of time (the earliest time in each case). 1. 45.

VI. VERBS

Note.—For the agreement of verbs, see 85 and the Note.

160. Verbs are sometimes used impersonally, with or without a clause as subject. A. 207 and 208; B. 138; G. 208; H. 302; H.B. 287; W. 233.

Rogare ut ... id sibi facere liceat, they asked that it might be allowed them to do this. 1. 7. (The subject of liceat is the clause id facere.)
Ita ... diu et acriter pugnatum est, thus the battle raged long and fiercely (literally, “it was fought”). 1. 26.

1. Tenses

Note.—Each tense expresses two things: the period of the action, whether present, past, or future; and the stage of the action, whether going on, completed, or undefined.
161. The Present Tense is used of an action going on in the present, or of a general truth. A. 465; B. 259; G. 227; H. 532, 1 and 2; H.B. 468, 1 and 1, b; W. 445 and 446, 1.

Hi omnes lingua institutis legibus inter se different, all these differ from one another in language, customs, and laws. 1. 1.

Omnes homines libertati student, all men desire liberty. 3. 10.

162. The Historical Present may be used in narration to refer to past events. A. 469; B. 259, 3; G. 229; H. 532, 3; H.B. 491, 1; W. 447, 1.

Dict montem . . . ab hostibus teneri, he said that the mountain was held by the enemy. 1. 22.

Legatos ad eum mittunt. Cuius legationes Divico princeps fuit, they sent envoys to him. Of this embassy Divico was the head. 1. 13.

Note.—Except in vivid narration the Historical Present is usually translated into English by a past tense.

163. The Imperfect may denote an action going on, or repeated, in past time. A. 470; B. 260, 1 and 2; G. 231; H. 534, 1 and 3; H.B. 468, 2; W. 448.

Qui eo tempore principatum in civitate obtinebat, who at that time was holding the chief place in the state. 1. 3.

Quod pro vallo carros obiecerant et in nostros venientes tela conicierant, because they had heaped up the carts as a rampart and were hurling weapons at our men as they came up. 1. 26.

a. It is not always desirable to use the progressive form in English.

164. The Imperfect may be used of an act undefined in past time, especially in descriptions. Here it is to be translated, not by the progressive form, but as a simple past. A. 471, a; B. 260, 1, a; G. 231; H. 534, 2; W. 449, 5.
INTRODUCTION

Id natura loci sic muniebatur, this was so strengthened by its situation. 1. 38.

Allobroges, qui trans Rhodanum vicos possessionesque habebant, the Allobroges, who had villages and possessions on the other side of the Rhone. 1. 11.

165. The Future is used of an act going on, or undefined in future time. A. 472; B. 257; G. 242; H. 536; H.B. 468, 3; W. 450.

Note. — Sometimes the first periphrastic conjugation is used, instead of the simple future, of as a past future.

Frumentum omne, praeter quod secum portaturi erant, comburent, they burned all the grain except what they were going to carry with them. 1. 5.

166. The Perfect Indefinite denotes an act undefined in the past. A. 473; B. 262, B; G. 239; H. 537, 2; H.B. 468, 4, a; W. 452, 2.

Is ita cum Caesare egit, he argued as follows with Caesar. 1. 13.

Caesar non solum publicas sed etiam privatras injurias ulius est, Caesar avenged not only wrongs done to the state but also personal ones. 1. 12.

Note. — The Perfect Definite is sometimes called the Historical Perfect.

Note. — On account of the meaning of the verbs, the perfects odi, memini, novi, and consuevi have the force of presents. Thus novi means “I have learned,” and hence “I know.”

167. The Perfect Definite is like the English Present Perfect, and is used of an action completed in present time. A. 473; B. 262, A; G. 239; H. 537, 1; H.B. 468, 4; W. 452, 1.

Ita uti supra demonstravimus, as we have shown above. 2. 1.

168. The Pluperfect Indicative, like the English Past Perfect, denotes an act completed in the past. A. 477; B. 263; G. 241; H. 539; H.B. 468, 5; W. 457.
Quod ante tacuerat proponit, he revealed that about which he had previously kept silent. 1. 17.

Hic pagus... L. Cassium consulem interfecerat, (the inhabitants of) this canton had killed the consul Lucius Cassius. 1. 12.

NOTE. — The Pluperfects noveram, memineram, oderam, and consueveram have the force of a simple past. See 166, second note.

169. The Future Perfect denotes an action completed in the future. It is sometimes used in Latin where the English less exactly employs a future or a present. A. 478 and n.; B. 264 and a; G. 244 and 2; H. 540 and 2; H.B. 468, 6 and 491; W. 459.

NOTE. — Except in 4. 25, where the Fut. Perf. has the force of an emphatic Future (see Notes), this tense occurs only in Ind. Disc. where it is changed to a Perf. or Pluperf. Subjunctive.

170. The tenses are divided into Primary (or Principal) and Secondary (or Historical) tenses, the former denoting present or future action, and the latter past action.

The Primary and Secondary tenses of the Indicative and of the Subjunctive are as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Indicative Primary</th>
<th>Subjunctive Primary</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Present</strong></td>
<td><strong>Present</strong> (used of incomplete or future action).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Future</strong></td>
<td><strong>Perfect</strong> (used of completed or previous action).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Perfect Definite</strong> (translated with “have”).</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Future Perfect</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Indicative Secondary</th>
<th>Subjunctive Secondary</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Imperfect</strong></td>
<td><strong>Imperfect</strong> (used of incomplete or future action).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Perfect Indefinite</strong> (translated by a simple past).</td>
<td><strong>Pluperfect</strong> (used of completed or previous action).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Pluperfect</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

A. 482; B. 267, 1; G. 225; H. 198; H.B. 476, ftn. 2; W. 161.
INTRODUCTION

171. In dependent clauses in the Subjunctive primary tenses regularly follow primary tenses and secondary tenses follow secondary tenses. A. 483; B. 267, 2; G. 509; H. 543 and 544; H.B. 476; W. 462.

**Primary Tenses**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Indicative</th>
<th>Subjunctive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>quaero, I ask.¹</td>
<td>quid faciat, what he is doing or will do² (present or future, incomplete action).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quaeram, I shall ask.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quaesivi, I have asked.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quaesivero, I shall have asked.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Secondary Tenses**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Indicative</th>
<th>Subjunctive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>quaerebam, I asked or was asking.</td>
<td>quid faceret, what he was doing or would do³ (present or future, incomplete action).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quaesivi, I asked.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quaesiveram, I had asked.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

172. The Perfect Subjunctive is sometimes used as a secondary tense, or after a secondary tense. A. 485, b; B. 268, 6; G. 513; H. 550; H.B. 478; W. 469.

Temporis tanta fuit exiguitas, ut ad galeas induendas ... tempus defuerit, so short was the time, that they had no time to put on their helmets. 2. 21.

Cum ab hora septima ad vesperum pugnatum sit, adversum hostem videre nemo potuit, although the battle lasted from the seventh hour until evening, no one could see one of the enemy in retreat. 1. 26.

¹ The Historical Present (162) may be followed either by a Primary or by a Secondary tense.

² To express “what he will do,” quid facturus sit is often used instead of quid faciat.

³ To express “what he would do,” quid facturus esset is often used instead of quid faceret.
173. In Indirect Discourse (see 204) Caesar frequently uses primary tenses of the subjunctive after a past verb of saying for vividness or for variety. Sometimes the regular sequence of tenses is observed in the same speech.

Ariovistus respondit . . . quod multitudinem Germanorum in Galliam traducat, id se sui muniendi . . . facere; eius rei testimonium esse, quod nisi rogatus non venerit et quod bellum non intulerit sed defendiderit . . . quid sibi vellet? cur in suas possessiones veniret. 1. 44.

2. The Independent Subjunctive

174. The Hortatory Subjunctive is used in the first person plural in exhortations. The negative is ne.

A. 439; B. 274; G. 263, 1; H. 559, 1; H.B. 501, 2; W. 482.

In consilio capiendo omnem Galliam respiciamus, in forming our plans let us have regard to the whole of Gaul. 7. 77.

Note.—Other uses of the Independent Subjunctive are few in number and are found only in indirect discourse.

3. Use of the Moods in Dependent Clauses

a. Purpose Clauses

175. Clauses of Purpose, or Final Clauses, are introduced by ut (utō), ne, and quo, and take the subjunctive.

A. 531, 1; B. 282, 1; G. 545, 1 and 3; H. 568; H.B. 502, 2; W. 506.

Legatos ad Dumnorigem . . . mittunt, ut eo deprecatore a Sequanis impetrarent, they sent envoys to Dumnorix, that through his intercession they might obtain their request from the Sequani. 1. 9.

Ibi tormenta collocavit, ne hostes suos circumvenire possent, he placed his artillery there, that the enemy might not be able to surround his troops. 2. 8.
176. With comparatives quo is usually used instead of ut. A. 531, 2, a; B. 282, 1, a; G. 545, 2; H. 568, 7; H.B. 502, 2, b; W. 507.

Praesidia disponit ... quo facilius ... prohibere possit, he stations garrisons, that he may be able the more easily to prevent them. 1. 8.

177. A Relative Pronoun, equivalent to ut is, ut ii, etc., or a relative adverb, is often used with the Subjunctive to express purpose. A. 531, 2; B. 282, 2; G. 545, 1; H. 590; H.B. 502, 2; W. 586.

Omnem equitatem, qui (ut ii) novissimum agmen moraretur, praemisit, he sent all the cavalry ahead, to delay the rear (of the enemy). 2. 11.
Diem dicit, qua die (ut ea die) ... omnes conveniant, they appoint a time at which all were to assemble. 1. 6.

Note.—Purpose may also be expressed by the gerund, or gerundive (219), or by the supine (223); but never by the infinitive (as in English).

Note.—For substantive clauses of Purpose see 199.

b. Result Clauses

178. Clauses of Result are introduced by ut and ut non, and take the subjunctive. The main clause often, but not always, contains a word meaning “so” or “such” (tantus, talis, tot, tam, is, etc.). A. 537; B. 284; G. 552; H. 570; H.B. 513, 4; 519, 3; 521, 2; W. 527 and 528.

Id natura loci sic muniebatur, ut magnum ad ducendum bellum daret facultatem, this was so strengthened by its situation, that it offered a great opportunity for prolonging the war. 1. 38.
A superiore parte silvestris, ut non facile in trorsus perspici posset, wooded on the upper part, so that it could not easily be seen into (i.e. “so thickly wooded that it could not,” etc.). 2. 18.
c. Characteristic Clauses

179. A relative clause which is used to express a quality or characteristic of an antecedent not otherwise defined is called a Clause of Characteristic, and is put in the Subjunctive. A. 535, a and b; B. 283, 1 and 2; G. 631, 1 and 2; H. 591, 1 and 5; H.B. 521, 1 and a; W. 587 and 588, 2.

Characteristic clauses are especially common after expressions of existence and non-existence (*est qui, sunt qui*, etc.), and after *unus* and *solus*.

Erant omnino itinera duo, quibus itineribus domo exire posse, there were only two routes by which they could leave their home. 1. 6.

*Unum se esse . . . qui adduci non potuerit ut iuraret, that he was the only one who could not be induced to take an oath. 1. 31.*

(Potuerit would be subjunctive in the direct discourse.)

d. Temporal Clauses

180. Temporal Clauses introduced by *postquam* (*posteaquam*), *ut*, *ubi*, and *simul ac* (*atque*) take the Indicative, usually the perfect. A. 543; B. 287, 1; G. 561; H. 602; H.B. 557; W. 530 and 531.

Eo postquam Caesar pervenit, obsides . . . poposcit, after Caesar came there he demanded hostages. 1. 27.

Ubi de eius adventu Helvetii certiores facti sunt, legatos ad eum mittunt, after the Helvetians had been informed¹ of his arrival, they sent envoys to him. 1. 7.

Note. — Observe the various meanings and uses of *ut*: with the subjunctive in final and result clauses, meaning "in order that" or "so that"; in temporal clauses with the perfect indicative, meaning "when"; and in clauses with the indicative, meaning "as."

¹ In English the past perfect is often used in such clauses. In Latin the perfect is the rule.
INTRODUCTION

Ut arbitrantur Helvetii, as the Helvetians think. 1.4.

With the indicative it means "when" or "as"; with the subjunctive, "in order that" or "so that."

181. Temporal Clauses introduced by *dum*, "while," take the Historical Present of the Indicative. A. 556; B. 293, I; G. 570; H. 604, 1; H.B. 559; W. 533 and 447 (1).

Dum paucos dies ad Vesontionem moratur . . . timor omnem exercitum occupavit, while he was delaying a few days near Vesontio, fear seized the entire army. 1. 39.

Dum haec in colloquio geruntur, Caesari nuntiatum est, while this was going on in the conference, it was announced to Caesar. 1. 46.

182. Temporal Clauses with *dum* and *quoad*, "as long as," take the Indicative.2

Ipse . . . quoad potuit, fortissime restitit, he himself resisted vigorously, as long as he could. 4. 12.

Dum longius aberant Galli, plus multitudine telorum proficiebant, as long as the Gauls were some distance away, they accomplished more with their flood of javelins. 7. 82.

183. Temporal Clauses with *dum* and *quoad*, "until," usually denote anticipation or expectancy, and take the Subjunctive. A. 553; B. 293, III, 2; G. 572; H. 603, II, 2; H.B. 507, 5; W. 533.

1 In such cases the time represented by the verb of the main clause and that represented by the verb of the *dum*-clause are *not of equal extent*, but the action denoted by the verb of the main clause takes place at some time during the time denoted by the verb of the *dum*-clause.

2 In such cases the time denoted by the verb of the main clause and that denoted by the verb of the temporal clause are *of equal extent* (cf. Note on 181). The same tense is usually used in both the main clause and in the *dum*- (*quoad*-) clause. A. 555; B. 293, II; G. 569; H. 603, I; H.B. 550; W. 533.
Ut spatum intercederet, dum milites convenirent, legatis respondit, that a space (of time) might intervene, until the soldiers should assemble (i.e. for the soldiers to assemble). he replied to the envoys, etc. 1. 7.

Exspectare vero, dum hostium copiae augmentur . . . summae dementiae esse indicabat, but to wait until the forces of the enemy should be increased, he thought would be (an act) of the greatest folly. 4. 13.

184. Temporal Clauses introduced by Priorquam take the Indicative to denote an actual fact, the Subjunctive to denote anticipation or expectancy. A. 551, a, b, c; B. 291 and 292; G. 574 and 577; H. 605; H.B. 507, 4 and 550, b; W. 534.

Nec prius fugere destiterunt quam ad flumen Rhenum . . . per- venerunt, and they did not cease to flee, until they came to the river Rhine. 1. 53.

Caesar prior quam se hostes ex terrore ac fuga recipere, in fines Suessionum . . . exercitum duxit, Caesar led his army into the lands of the Suessiones before the enemy could recover from their panic flight. 2. 12.

185. Temporal Clauses introduced by cum, "when," take the Indicative to denote the time when an action takes place, and the Subjunctive to denote the circumstances under which an action takes place.

With the imperfect and pluperfect tenses the Subjunctive is almost always used; with the other tenses the Indicative. A. 545 and 546; B. 288; G. 579, 1 and II; H. 600; H.B. Index under cum-clauses; W. 536.

Fere cotidianis proeliis cum Germanis contendunt, cum aut suas finibus eos prohibent, aut . . ., they contend in almost daily battles with the Germans, either keeping them out of their territories, or . . . 1. 12. (The cum-clause is here explanatory.)

Hic pagus unus, cum domo exisset . . . L. Cassium consulem
interfecerat, this one canton, having left its home, had caused the death of the consul Lucius Cassius. 1.

Note. — The Imperfect and Pluperfect Indicative are rare. See Notes on 1. 40 and 3. 14.

_Cum-_causal and _cum-_concessive, translated by “since” and “although,” always take the Subjunctive (see 186 and 192).

e. Causal Clauses

186. _Cum-_causal takes the Subjunctive. A. 549; B. 286, 2; G. 586; H. 598; H.B. 525; W. 542.

Diutius cum sustinere nostrorum impetus non posse, alteri se . . . in montem receperunt, since they were no longer able to resist the attacks of our troops, the one division retreated to the mountain. 1. 26.

Praesertim cum . . . eorum precibus adductus bellum susceperit . . . multo etiam gravius . . . queritur, especially since he undertook the war led by their entreaties, he complained the more bitterly. 1. 16.

187. Causal Clauses introduced by _quod_ and _quoniam_ take the Indicative, unless the reason is given as that of some other person than the speaker or writer, or unless a verb of saying is implied, in which case the Subjunctive is used. A. 540 and a; B. 286, 1; G. 540 and 541; H. 588; H.B. 555 and a; W. 544–546.

Dumnorix . . . Helvetiis erat amicus, quod ex ea civitate Orgetorigis filiam in matrimonium duzerat, Dumnorix was a friend of the Helvetians, because he had married the daughter of Orgetorix from that state. 1. 9.

Multo etiam gravius quod _sit destitutus_ queritur, _he complains the more bitterly because he has been deserted by them._\(^1\) 1. 16.

\(^1\) Caesar often writes of himself as if he were another person (see 14). The Subjunctive is one of implied Indirect Discourse (see 210).
188. Relative Clauses denoting *cause* take the Subjunctive. A. 595, e; B. 283, 3; G. 633 and 634; H. 592 and 593, 2; H.B. 523; W. 586, 4 and 7.

Cotta qui cogitasset haec posse accidere ... nulla in re communi saluti deerat, Cotta, since he had thought that this might happen, did everything possible for the safety of all. 5. 33.

f. Conditional Sentences

189. In Conditional Sentences with nothing implied as to the fulfilment of the condition, which are expressed positively (or vividly), any tense of the Indicative may be used in either the condition or the conclusion. A. 515 and 516, 1; B. 302; G. 595; H. 574; H.B. 579; W. 553.

Si qui ex reliquis excellit dignitate, succedit, if any one of the rest is superior in rank, he succeeds. 6. 13.
Si quando ... suis fortunis desperare coeperant ... sua deportabant omnia, if ever they had begun to despair of their fortunes, they carried away all their goods. 3. 12.

190. Conditional sentences with nothing implied as to the fulfilment of the condition, which are expressed less positively (or vividly), take the present or perfect Subjunctive in the condition, and the present Subjunctive in the conclusion.¹ A. 516, 2; B. 303; G. 596; H. 576; H.B. 580; W. 555.

Si qui ex reliquis excellat dignitate, succedat, if any one of the rest should be superior in rank, he would succeed.

191. Conditions and conclusions contrary to fact take the imperfect Subjunctive to denote present time and the pluperfect Subjunctive to denote past time.¹ A. 517; B. 304; G. 597; H. 579; H.B. 581; W. 557.

¹ These occur in Caesar only in Indirect Discourse (see 209).
Si qui ex reliquis excelleret dignitate, succederet, if any one of the rest were superior in rank, he would succeed.

Si qui ex ceteris superior fuisse dignitate, successisset, if any one of the rest had been superior in rank, he would have succeeded.

g. Concessive and Adversative Clauses

192. *Cum* concessive or adversative takes the Subjunctive. A. 549; B. 309, 3; G. 587; H. 598; H.B. 525; W. 572.

Hos cum Suebi... finibus expellere non potuissent, tamen vectigales sibi fecerunt, although the Suebi had been unable to drive them out of their territories, yet they made them their dependents. 4. 3.

Quorum erat quinque milium numerus, cum ipsi non amplius octingentos equites haberebant, the number of these was five thousand, while they themselves had not more than 800 horsemen. 4. 12.

193. Concessive Clauses introduced by *etsi* (*tametsi*) take the same moods and tenses as conditional sentences. A. 527, c; B. 309, 2; G. 604; H. 585 and 586; H.B. 582, 8; W. 572.

In his locis... etsi... maturae sunt hiemes, tamen in Britanniam profisceretur, although the winters are early in these regions, nevertheless he hastened to set out to Britain. 4. 20.

Caesar etsi idem... fore videbat, tamen... legiones in acie pro castris constituit, although Caesar saw that the same thing would happen, nevertheless he drew up the legions in line of battle before the camp. 4. 35.

194. Relative Clauses denoting Concession take the Subjunctive. See 188.

Cicero, qui omnes superiores dies milites in castris continuisset, septimo die quinque cohortes frumentatum mittit, although Cicero had kept the soldiers in camp on all the previous days, on the seventh he sent five cohorts to forage. 6. 36.
h. Relative Clauses

195. Relative Clauses are regularly in the Indicative. G. 624; H. 589, 1; H.B. 543; W. 585.

Allobroges, qui trans Rhodanum vicos possessionesque habebant, fuga se . . . recipiant, the Allobroges, who had villages and possessions across the Rhone, fled. 1. 11.

In fines Ambianorum pervenit, qui se suaque omnia sine mora dediderunt, he came into the territories of the Ambiani, who surrendered themselves and all their goods without delay. 2. 15.

Note. — Relative clauses of purpose (177), characteristic (179), cause (188), and concession (194) are put in the subjunctive.

i. Substantive Clauses

196. Substantive Clauses are used like nouns, as the subject and object of verbs and in some other constructions. They are in the Indicative except as mentioned below. A. 561; B. 294; H.B. 238; W. 498.

His omnibus rebus unum repugnabat, quod Diviciaci fidel . . . cognoverat, to all these things one fact was opposed, namely, that he knew the loyalty of Diviciacus. 1. 19.

Gallis magno ad pugnam erat impedimento, quod . . . non poterant, it was a great hindrance to the Gauls in battle, that they were not able, etc. 1. 25.

197. Quod introducing a substantive clause sometimes means as to the fact that, as to. The mood is the Indicative. A. 572, 1; B. 299, 1; G. 525, 2; H. 588, 3, n.; H.B. 552, 2; W. 549.

Quod rem Caesari enuntiaret, as to his reporting the matter to Caesar. 1. 17. (The subjunctive is due to Indirect Discourse.)

198. Indirect Questions are substantive clauses. They are introduced by interrogative words, and sometimes by si, “whether,” and take the Subjunctive.
INTRODUCTION

A. 573 and 574; B. 300, 1; G. 467; H. 649, II; H.B. 537, b; W. 590.

Eius rei quae causa esset miratus, wondering what was the cause of that thing. 1. 32.
Qualis esset natura montis . . qui cognoscerent misit, he sent men to find out what the nature of the mountain was. 1. 21.
Si perrumpere possent conati, having tried (to see) whether they could break through. 1. 8.

a. Double indirect questions are introduced by utrum or -ne in the first member, and by an in the second. "Or not" is translated by necne.

Ut . . . intellegere posset utrum apud eos pudor . . an timor valeret, that he might know whether shame or fear would prevail with them. 1. 40.
Ut declararent utrum proelium committi ex usu esset necne, that they should declare whether it was advantageous for battle to be joined or not. 1. 50.

199. Verbs meaning to ask, demand, persuade, advise, command, are followed by object clauses in the Subjunctive, usually introduced by ut and ne. A. 563; B. 295; G. 546; H. 564; H.B. 502, 3; W. 512.

(Orgetorix) civitati persuasit, ut de finibus suis cum omnibus copiis exirent, Orgetorix persuaded the state to go forth from its territories with all its forces. 1. 2.
Caesar . . . suis imperavit, ne quod omnino telum in hostes reicerent, Caesar ordered his men not to throw back any weapon at all at the enemy. 1. 46.


200. Substantive Clauses resembling result clauses are used as the subject and object of certain verbs, and as appositives. They are introduced by ut (negative ut . . non) and take the Subjunctive. A. 568; B. 297; G. 553, 1 and 4; H. 571; H.B. 521, 3; W. 521.
His rebus fiebat, ut minus late regarentur, it happened on account of these things that they roamed less widely. 1. 2.

Obsides uti inter seco dent perfecti, he brought it about that they exchanged hostages. 1. 9.

Futurum ut reliquae contra consistere non auderent, (that) it would come to pass that the remaining nations would not dare to oppose. 2. 17.

Note.—In some cases the idea of result has been entirely lost, as in poenam sequi oportebat, ut igni cremaretur, the law required that the punishment of being burned to death should follow. 1. 4.

201. Substantive clauses in the subjunctive, introduced by quominus, are used as the objects of verbs meaning hinder, prevent, refuse, etc. A. 558, b; B. 295, 3; G. 549; H. 568, 8; H.B. 502, 3, b; W. 507.

Neque recusaturos quominus perpetuo sub illorum dicione . . . essent, and that they would not refuse to be forever under their sway. 1. 31.

Naves vento tenebantur, quominus in eundem portum venire possent, the ships were prevented by the wind from being able to come to the same harbor. 4. 22.

202. Substantive clauses in the Subjunctive, introduced by quin, are used with verbs and expressions of doubt and uncertainty, when these are negatived. A. 558; B. 298; G. 556; H. 594, II; H.B. 521, 3; W. 575.

Neque abest suspicio . . . quin ipse sibi mortem consciverit, and the suspicion is not lacking that he committed suicide. 1. 4.

Tum vero dubitandum non existimavit quin ad eos proficisceretur, then truly he thought that there ought to be no doubt about setting out against them. 2. 2.

203. Verbs of Fearing are followed by the Subjunctive introduced by ut, “that not” and ne, “that” (or “lest”). A. 564; B. 296, 2; G. 550; H. 567; H.B. 502, 4; W. 516.
INTRODUCTION

Nam ne eius supplicio Diviciaci animum offenderet verebatur, for he feared that by punishing him he might offend the mind of Diviciacus. 1. 19.

Rem frumentariam, ut satis commode supportari posset, timere dicebant, they said that they feared that supplies could not be brought there readily. 1. 39.

Note. — The introductory words ut and ne are chosen rather with reference to the desire of the subject of the verb of fearing than with reference to his fear. Thus in the first example Caesar did not desire to offend the mind of Diviciacus, but feared that he might do so; in the second they desired that supplies be brought, but feared that they could not.

4. Indirect Discourse

204. In Indirect Discourse principal declarative sentences are put in the Infinitive with Subject Accusative. The tenses of the infinitive denote time present, past, or future to that of the verb of saying, thinking, or knowing which introduces the Indirect Discourse. A. 580 and 584; B. 314 and 317; G. 650 and 653; H. 642 and 644; H.B. 591 and 593; W. 599 and 608.

Angustos se fines habere arbitrabantur, they thought that they had narrow limits. 1. 2. Direct discourse: angustos fines habe-mus.

(Dixit) se (eos) eodem loco quo Helvetios habiturum, he said that he would hold them in the same estimation as (he did) the Helvetians. 1. 26. Direct discourse: eodem loco vos quo Helvetios habebo.

Cum id . . illum uno die fecisse intellegerebant, when they knew that he had done that in one day. 1. 13. Direct discourse: id ille uno die fecit.

205. Imperative sentences in Indirect Discourse are put in the Subjunctive. The tense depends on that of the verb of saying, according to the rule of the Se-
quence of Tenses (171).  A. 588; B. 316; G. 652; H. 642, 4; H.B. 538; W. 599 and 602.

(Dixit) cum vellet, congrederetur, he said that he might fight when he wished.  1. 36.  Direct discourse: cum vis, congredere.
(Dixit) uterque cum equitatu veniret, he said that each was to come with his cavalry.  1. 42.  Direct discourse: uterque cum equitatu veniamus.

206.  Real questions in Indirect Discourse are usually put in the Subjunctive.  Rhetorical questions, asked merely for effect, are put in the infinitive with subject accusative.  A. 586; B. 315, 1 and 2; G. 651; H. 642 and 2; H.B. 537 and 591, a; W. 601 and 603.

Num etiam recentium iniuriarum . . . memoriam deponere posse, could he lay aside the recollection of the recent wrongs also.  1. 14.

207.  Subordinate Clauses in Indirect Discourse are put in the Subjunctive if they are not already in that mood.  The tense is determined by that of the verb of saying, according to the rule of the Sequence of Tenses (171-173).  A. 580 and 585; B. 314 and 318; G. 650 and 651; H. 643 and 644; H.B. 534, 2 and 535; W. 605 and 608.

Sibi minus dubitationis dari, quod eas res, quas legati Helvetii commemorassent, memoria teneret, he felt less hesitation, because he remembered those things which the Helvettian envoys had related.  1. 14.  Direct discourse: Mihi minus dubitationis datur, quod eas res, quas . . . commemoraverunt, memoria teneo.

Esse nonnullos, quorum auctoritas apud plebem plurimum valeat, qui privatim plus possint quam ipsi magistratus, that there are some whose influence with the commons is very great, who as
private individuals have more power than the magistrates themselves. 1. 17. Direct discourse: Sunt nonnulli, quorum...valet, qui...possunt.

208. Subordinate clauses which are not thought of as a part of the Indirect Discourse are in the Indicative. A. 583; B. 314, 3; G. 655, 2; H. 643, 1; H.B. 535, d; W. 607.

Cum id quod ipsi diebus viginti...confecerant, ut flumen transirent, illum uno die fecisse intellegerent, since they knew that he had crossed the river in one day (a thing which it had taken them twenty days to do). 1. 13.

Condruos, Eburones, Caeroesos, Paemanos, qui uno nomine Germani appellantur, arbitrari ad XL milia, they thought that the Condruí, Eburones, Caeroesi, and Paemani, who are called by the single name Germans, (would furnish) about 40,000.

209. Conditional sentences in Indirect Discourse follow the general rules, the condition becoming subjunctive, if it is not already in that mood, and the conclusion being put in the infinitive with subject accusative.

But conditions contrary to fact retain the past tenses of the subjunctive even after a primary tense, and in the conclusion take the future infinitive with fuisse. A. 589; B. 319–322; G. 656–659; H. 646–648; H.B. 534, 1, b and 536; W. 613–619.

(Dixit) si id ita fecisset, sibi populoque Romano perpetuam amicitiam...cum eo futurum, he said that if he did this, there would be lasting friendship with him on the part of himself and the Roman people. Direct Discourse: si id feceris (fut. perf.),...perpetua amicitia erit.

Si pacem populus Romanus cum Helvetiis faceret, in eam partem ituros Helvetios, ubi eos Caesar constitueret, if the Roman people would make peace with the Helvetians, they would go where Caesar should establish them. Direct Discourse: si pacem...facient...ibunt...constituerit (fut. perf.). 1. 13.
Si quid ipsi a Caesare opus esset, sese ad eum venturum fuisse, that if he wanted anything from Caesar, he would have come to him. Direct Discourse: si quid opus esset, venissem. 1. 34.

210. The Subjunctive is used in clauses in which Indirect Discourse is implied. A. 592; B. 323; G. 662; H. 652; H.B. 535, 1, a. W. 620.

Caesar Aeduos frumentum quod essent pollicii flagitare, Caesar demanded of the Aeduans the grain which (as he reminded them) they had promised. 1. 16.

Aciam instructam habuit, ut si vellet Ariovistus proelio contendere, ei potestas non deesset, he kept his army drawn up, that if Ariovistus wished to fight a battle, the opportunity might not be lacking. 1. 48. Caesar’s thought was, si Ariovistus proelio contendere volet (velit), ei potestas non deerit.

211. A dependent clause attached to a subjunctive or infinitive clause, and forming an essential part of it, may be put in the Subjunctive by Attraction. A. 593; B. 324, 1 and 2; G. 663; H. 652; H.B. 539; W. 620.

Utī commeatu qui ex Sequanis supportaretur Caesarem intercluderet, that he might cut off Caesar from the supplies which were coming from the Sequani. 1. 48.

Dat negotium Senonibus . . . utī ea quae apud eos gerantur cognoscant, he gives instructions to the Senones to find out what is going on in their country. 2. 2.

5. The Imperative

212. The Imperative is used in commands or exhortations.

Desilite, commilitones, leap down, fellow-soldiers. 4. 25. A. 448; B. 281; G. 266; H. 560; H.B. 496; W. 495.

6. The Infinitive

Note. — The Infinitive is a verbal noun. As a noun it may have an adjective in agreement; as a verb, it may govern cases, has
tense and voice, and may be modified by adverbs. The tenses of the Infinitive denote time present, past, or future to that of the main verb.

For the Infinitive in Indirect Discourse see 204.

213. The Infinitive, with or without a subject accusative, may be used as the subject or object of a verb or as an appositive.\(^1\) A. 452; B. 327, 328, 330, and 331; G. 422 and 423; H. 609; H.B. 585–587; W. 622–625.

Commodissimum visum est mittere, it seemed most convenient to send. 1. 47.
Moribus suis Orgetorijem ex vinculis causam dicere coegerunt, according to their custom they forced Orgetorix to plead his cause from bonds. 1. 4.
Panlatim Germanos assuescere Rhenum transire ... periculosa videbat, he saw that for the Germans gradually to become accustomed to crossing the Rhine would be dangerous. 1. 33.

214. The Historical Infinitive, with its subject in the Nominative, is sometimes used in narration instead of a past tense of the Indicative. A. 463; B. 335; G. 647; H. 610; H.B. 595; W. 631, 1.

Interim cotidie Caesar Aeduos frumentum flagitare, meanwhile Caesar every day asked the Aedusans for the grain. 1. 16.
Nihil Sequani respondere, sed in eadem tristitia permanere, the Sequani made no reply, but remained in the same sorrowful silence. 1. 32.

7. The Participle

Note. — The participle is a verbal adjective. As an adjective it agrees with the noun which it limits; as a verb it governs cases, has tense and voice, and may be modified by an adverb.

215. The tenses of the participle denote time, present, past, or future, to that of the main verb: A. 489; B. 336; G. 282; H. 640; H.B. 600; W. 646.

\(^1\) When the infinitive is used as the object of auxiliary verbs without a subject accusative, it is sometimes called the Complementary Infinitive.
Cum flentes pacem petissent, when they had asked for peace, weeping. 1. 27.
Timore perterriti Romani discedunt, the Romans withdrew because they had been frightened. 1. 28.

Note. — As is seen in the second example, the context often gives to the participle an idea of time, cause, condition, concession, and the like.

216. The Future Passive participle denotes capability or necessity, and is commonly used with the verb sum. A. 500; B. 337, 7; G. 283; H. 640; H.B. 600, 3; W. 646.

Acies erat instruenda, the line of battle had to be drawn up. 2. 20.
Ariovistus tantos sibi spiritus sumpserat, ut ferendus non videtur, Ariovistus had taken on himself such arrogance that he seemed unbearable. 1. 33.

Note. — The Latin has no present passive participle, and no perfect active participle, except in the case of deponent verbs. With other verbs the ideas expressed in English by these participles must be expressed in Latin by the Ablative Absolute (130), or by a clause introduced by a conjunction (dum, cum, etc.).

Note. — The perfect participles of deponent verbs are usually active in meaning, but they sometimes have a passive meaning.

Depopulatis agris, since their fields had been devastated. 1. 11.
Legiones sex opere dimenso castra munire coeperunt, six legiones, after the work had been measured off, began to fortify the camp. 2. 19.

217. The Perfect Passive participle sometimes contains the leading idea of its phrase and is translated by a verbal noun. So also the future passive participle when used as the Gerundive. A. 497; B. 337, 5; H. 636, 4; H.B. 608, 2.

Iniuria retenorum equitum Romanorum, the wrong of detaining the Roman knights. 3. 10.
218. The Perfect Passive participle with *habere* is often nearly equivalent to a pluperfect, but lays stress rather on the existing state of affairs than on the action of the verb. A. 497, b; B. 337, 7; G. 238; H. 640, 2; H.B. 605, 5.

Portoria redempta habere, that he had the duties bought up. 1. 18.
Quem ex omni provincia . . . coactum habebat, which he had collected from the whole province (lit. "had, collected"), 1. 15.

8. THE GERUND AND GERUNDIVE

Note.—The Gerundive is the future passive participle when it contains the leading idea in its phrase (see 217). The Gerund is a verbal noun. The Gerund and Gerundive are found only in the genitive, dative, accusative, and ablative.

219. The Gerund is used in the genitive to limit a noun or adjective, in the accusative with *ad*, when it often denotes purpose, and in the ablative. A. 504, 506 and 507; B. 338, 1, 3, 4; G. 428, 430, and 431; H. 626, 628, and 629; H.B. 612; W. 639.

Homines bellandi cupidi, men desirous of making war. 1. 2.
In locum iniquum progredi pugandi causa, to advance into an unfavorable place for the purpose of fighting. 2. 10.
Constituerunt ea quae ad proficiscendum pertinere comparare, they resolved to get ready the things that had to do with their departing. 1. 3.
Respondit diem se ad deliberandum sumpturum, he replied that he would take time for deliberating. 1. 7.
Reperiebat etiam in quaerendo Caesar, Caesar also found out on inquiring. 1. 18.

Note.—Observe the second example. *Causa* is used both with the gerund and with the gerundive to denote purpose, with the meaning 'for the sake of' or 'for the purpose of.'

220. Instead of the Gerund governing a noun, the Gerundive in agreement with the noun is commonly
used, especially after a preposition. A. 503; B. 339; G. 427; H. 623; H.B. 613; W. 640.

Data facultate per provinciam itineris faciendi, if given the opportunity of making a march through the province. 1. 7.

Cupiditas belli gerendi, the desire of making war. 1. 41.

Paratiores ad omnia pericula subeunda, more ready for encountering all dangers. 1. 5.

Ea quae ad effeminandos animos pertinent, those things which tend to making their minds effeminate. 1. 1.

De expugnando oppido spein, the hope of capturing the town. 2. 10.

Ne in quaerendis suis (signis) pugnandi tempus dimiteret, lest in seeking his own standard he should lose time for fighting. 2. 21.

221. The genitives mei, tui, sui, nostri, and vestri, which were originally neuter singular, are used in the gerundive construction without reference to gender or number.

Neque sui colligendi hostibus facultatem relinquent, and they leave the enemy no opportunity of collecting themselves. 3. 6.

222. The Gerundive in agreement with the object is used with do, curro, and some other verbs, with the value of an object clause, or to express purpose. A. 500, 4; B. 387, 7, b, 2; G. 480; H. 622; H.B. 612, III; W. 644, 2.

Quod obsides inter eos dandos curasset, because he had caused an exchange of hostages between them. 1. 19.

Pontem in Arari faciendum curat, he caused a bridge to be built over the Arar. 1. 13.

9. THE SUPINE

Note. — The Supine is a verbal noun of the fourth declension, used only in the accusative and ablative singular.

223. The Supine in -um is used with verbs of motion to express the purpose of the motion. A. 509; B. 340, 1; G. 435; H. 633; H.B. 618; W. 654.
Aedui... legatos ad Caesarem mittunt rogatum auxilium, the Aeduans send envoys to Caesar to ask for help. 1. 11.
Legati ad Caesarem gratulatum conuenerunt, envoys came to Caesar to congratulate him. 1. 30.

Note.—Sometimes the supine in -um is used with other verbs if motion is implied. Sororem et propinquas nuptum in alias civitates colocasse = he had sent his sister and other female relatives to other states, to be married. 1. 18.

224. The Supine in -u is used with adjectives as an Ablative of Specification. It is best translated by an infinitive. A. 510; B. 340, 2; G. 436; H. 635; H.B. 619; W. 655.

Perfacile factu esse illis probat conata perfecte, he proves to them that to accomplish their attempts is an easy thing to do. 1. 3.
Optimum factu esse duxerunt... frumento... nostros prohibere, they considered that the best thing to do was to keep our men from grain. 4. 30.

VII. Figures of Rhetoric and Grammar

225. Hendiadys is the expression of one idea through two nouns connected by a conjunction. A. 640; B. 374, 4; G. 698; H. 751, 3, n. 1; H.B. 631, 5; W. 740.

In eos omnia exempla cruciatusque edere, (that) he was visiting upon them every kind of cruelty. 1. 31.
See also the second example under Litotes.

226. Litotes asserts a thing with emphasis by denying the opposite. A. 641; B. 375, 1; G. 700; H. 752, 8; H.B. 632, 1; W. 740.

Non irridicule quidam ex militibus dixit, one of the soldiers said very wittily. 1. 42.
Non sine magna spe magnisque praemiiis domum reliquisse, (that) they had left home with the greatest hope of great rewards. 1. 44.
227. Asyndeton is the omission of the conjunction between words, phrases, or clauses. A. 640; B. 346; G. 473, r.; H. 657, 6; H.B. 305, 1, a; W. 740.

Caesar suas copias in proximum collem subducit, aciem instruxit, Caesar led his troops to the nearest hill (and) drew them up in line of battle. 1. 22.

L. Piso A. Gabinio consulibus, in the consulship of Lucius Piso (and) Aulus Gabinius. 1. 6.
Gaul in the Time of Caesar
CAESAR’S GALLIC WAR

BOOK I

I. THE WAR WITH THE HELVETIANS, 58 B.C.

The Divisions and Peoples of Gaul. Superiority of the Belgae and the Helvetii.


Hôrum omnium fortissimì sunt Belgae, propterea quod à cultû atque hûmânitáte próvinciae longissimé absunt, minimeque ad eós mercatórés saepe commenat atque ea quae ad effémínandós animós pertinent impor-tant, proximique sunt Germanîs, qui trâns Rhênum incolunt, quibuscum continenter bellum gerunt. Quâ de causâ Helvëti quoque reliquis Gallôs virtûte praecédunt, quod ferè cotûdiánis proeliís cum Germanîis contendedunt, cum aut suís finibus eós prohibent aut ipsis in 15 eôrum finibus bellum gerunt.

Eôrum ūna pars, quam Gallôs obtinere dictum est, initium capít à flûmine Rhodonô; continëtur Garumnâ flûmine, Òceanô, finibus Belgûrum; attingit etiam à Sèquanís et Helvëtiís flûmen Rhênum; vergit ad sep-20 tentriônês. Belgae ab extrêmís Galliæ finibus orium-
tur, pertinent ad inferiorem partem fluminis Rhēnī; spectant in septentrionem et orientem solēm. Aqui-
tānia à Garumnī flūmine ad Pŷrenaeōs montēs et eam partem Oceani, quae est ad Hispāniām, pertinent; spectat inter occasum solis et septentrionēs.

*The Helvetians, dissatisfied with the extent of their territories, are persuaded by Orgetorix to migrate.*


Id hōc facilius eīs persuāsit, quod undique locī nātūrā Helvētiō continentur: unā ex parte flūmine Rhēnō, lātissimō atque altissimō, quī agrum Helvētiōm à Ger-māniās dīvidit; alterā ex parte monte Iūrī altissimō, quī est inter Séquanos et Helvētiōs; tertiā, lacū Lemannō et flūmine Rhodanō, quī prōvinciam nostrām ab Helvētiōs dīvidit.

His rēbus fiēbat, ut et minus lātē vagārentur et minus facile finītimīs bellum īnferre possent; quā ex parte hominēs bellandi cupidī magnō dolore afficiēbantur. Prō multitūdine autem hominum et prō glōriā belli atque fortitūdinēs angustōs sé finēs habēre arbitrābantur, quī in longitūdinēm milia passuum ccxl, in lātitū-dinem clxxx patēbant.

*They make their preparations. Orgetorix plans to make himself their king.*

3. His rēbus adductī et auctoritāte Orgetorīgis per-
mōti cōnstituērunt ea quae ad proficiscendum pertinērent comparāre, iūmentōrum et carrōrum quām maximum
CAESAR'S GALLIC WAR

numerum coëmere, sōmentōs quam maximās facere, ut in itinere cōpia frūmentī suppeteret, cum proximīs civitātibus pācem et amicitiam cōnfīrmāre.

Ad eās rēs cōnficiendās biennium sībi satis esse dūxō-runt; in tertium annum profectionēm lēge cōnfīrmant. Ad eās rēs cōnficiendās Orgetorīx dēligitur. Is sībi lēgātiōnem ad civitātēs suscēpit. In eō itinere persuādet Cāsticō, Catamantālocēs filiō, Sēquanō, cuīs pater rēgnōn in Sēquanīs multōs annōs obtinuerat et 10 ā senātū populī Rōmānī amīcus appellātus erat, ut rēgnōn in civitātē suā occupāret, quod pater aust habuerat; itemque Dumnōrīgī Aeduō, frātrī Diviciācī, qui eō tempore princīpātum in civitātē obtinēbat ac maxīmē plēbē acceptus erat, ut idem cōnārētur persuā-det eīque filiam suam in mātrimōnium dat.

Perfacile factū esse illīs probat cōnāta perficere, prop-tercā quod ipse suae civitātēs imperiīm obtentūrus esset: nōn esse dubium, quīn tōtīus Galliāe plūrimum Helvētiī possent; sē suīs cōpiīs suōque exercitū illīs 20 rēgna conciliātūrum cōnfīrmat.

Hāc ērātīōne adductī inter sē fidem et iūs iūrandum dant, et rēgnō occupātō, per trēs potentissimōs ac fir-missimōs populōs tōtīus Galliāe imperiō sēsē potīri posse spērānt.

The plot is detected. Orgetorix escapes trial, but is found dead, probably by his own hand.

4. Ea rēs est Helvētiīs per indicium ēnūntiāta. Mōri-bus suīs Orgetorīgem ex vinculis causam dicere coēgē-runt; damnātum poenam sequī oportēbat, ut ignī cremārētur.

Diē cōnstitūtā causae dictiōnis Orgetorīx ad iūdi-30 cium omnem suam familiam, ad hominum mīlia decem,
undique coēgit et omnēs clientēs obaerātōsque suōs, quōrum magnum numerum habēbat, eōdem condūxīt; per eōs, nē causam dīceret, sē ēripuit.

Cum cīvitās ob eam rem incitāta armīs iūs suum exsequī cōnārētur multitūdinemque homīnum ex agrīs magistrātūs cōgerent, Orgetorīx mortuus est; neque abest suspiciō, ut Helvētīi arbitrantur, quīn ipse sībī mortem cōncīverit.

The Helvetians continue their preparations. They persuade some of their neighbors to join them.

5. Post eīus mortem nihilō minus Helvētīi id, quod cōnstituerant, facere cōnantur, ut eī finibus suīs exēant. 10 Ûbi iam sē ad eam rem parātōs esse arbitrātī sunt, oppida sua omnia, numerō ad duodecim, vīcōs ad quadrīngentōs, reliqua privāta aedificiā incendunt; frūmentum omne, practer quod sēcum portātūrī erant, comburunt, ut domum reditiōnis spē sUBLĀTĀ parātiōrēs ad omnia perī- 15cula subeunda essent; trium mēnsium molīta cibāria sībī quemque domō efferre iubent.

Persuādent Rauracīs et Tulingīs et Latobrigīs fīniti- mis suīs, utī eōdem ūsī cōnsiliō, oppidīs suīs vicīisque exūstīs, ūnā cum eīs proficīscantur; Boiōsque, quī trāns 20Rhēnum incoluerant et in agrum Nōricum trānsierant Nōreiamque oppugnārant, receptōs ad sē sociōs sībī adscīscunt.

Having a choice of two routes, they decide to go by way of the Allobroges and the Roman Province.

6. Erant omnīnō itinerā duō, quibus itineribus domō exīrē possent: ūnum per Sēquanōs, angustum et difficīle, 25inter montem Iūram et flūmeu Rhodanum, vīx quā sin- gulī carrī dūcerentur; mōns autem altissimus impendēbat, ut facile perpauçī prohibère possent; alterum per
provinciam nostram, multō facilius atque expeditius, propterea quod inter finēs Helvētiōrum et Allobrogum, qui nūper pācātī erant, Rhodanus fluit isque nōnnūllis locīs vadō trāusitur.


Caesar hastens to Geneva, to oppose them. They send envoys to him, but he puts them off.

7. Caesarī cum id nūntiātum esset, eōs per provinciam 15 nostram iter facere cōnāri, māturat ab urbe proficisci et quam maximīs potest itineribus in Galliam ulteriōrem contendit et ad Genavam pervenit. Prōvinciae tōtī quam maximum potest mīlitum numerum imperat (erat omnīnō in Galliā ulteriōre legiō īna), pontem, quī erat ad 20 Genavam, iubet rescindī.

Ubi dē eius adventū Helvētiī certiōrēs factī sunt, lēgātōs ad eum mittunt nōbilissimōs cīvitātis, cuius lēgātiōnis Nammeius et Verucloetius prīncipem locum obtinēbant, quī dīcerent sibi esse in animō sine ulla 25 maleficiō iter per provinciam facere, propterea quod aliud iter habērent nūllum; rogāre, ut eius voluntāte id sibi facere liceat.

Caesar, quod memoriā tenēbat L. Cassium cōnsulem occisum exercitumque eius ab Helvētiīs pulsum et sub 30 iugum missum, concēdendum nōn putābat; neque
hominēs inimicō animō, datā facultāte per prōvinciam
itineris faciendi, temperātūrōs ab iniūriā et maleficiō
existimābat. Tamen, ut spatium intercēdere posset,
dum mīlitēs, quōs imperāverat, convenīrent, lēgātīs
respondit diem sē ad dēliberandum sūmptrum; sī quid 5
vellent, adĪd. April. reverterentur.

Caesar at last denies the request of the Helvetians. They try in
vain to cross the Rhine against his will.

8. Interea eā legiōne, quam sēcum habēbat, mīlit-
ibusque, quī ex prōvinciā convēnerant, ā lacū Lemano,
qui in flūmen Rhodanum influit, ad montem Iūrum, qui
finēs Sēquanōrum ab Hēlvetiīs dīvidit, milia passuum 10
decem novem mūrum in altitūdinem pedum sēdecim
fossamque perdūcit. Eō opere perfectō, præsidiā dis-
pōnit, castella commūnit, quō facilius, sī sē invītō trāns-
īre cōnārentur, prohibēre possit.

Ubi ea diēs, quam cōnstituerat cum lēgātīs, vēnit et 15
lēgātī ad eum revertērunt, negat sē mōre et exemplō
populi Rōmānī posse iter ulla per prōvinciam dare, et
sī vim facere cōnentur, prohibītūrum ostendit. Hēlve-
tīi eā spē dēiectī, nāvibus iūncēs ratibusque complūri-
bus factīs, aliī vadīs Rhodanī, quā minima altitūdō 20
flūminis erat, nōnnumquam interdiū, saepius noctū, sī
perrumpere possent cōnātī, operis mūnītiōne et militūm
concursū et tēlīs repulsi hōc cōnātū dēstīrēnt.

Through Dumnorīx they get permission to march through the country
of the Sequani.

9. Relinquēbātur ūna per Sēquanōs via, quà
Sēquanīs invītīs propter angustiās ire nōn poterant. 25
His cum suā sponte persuādēre nōn possent, lēgātōs ad
Dumnōrigem Aeduum mittunt, ut cō dēprecātōre ā
Sēquanīs impetrārent. Dumnorīx grātiā et largītiōne
apud Sēquanōs plūrimum poterat et Helvētiīs erat ami-
cus, quod ex ea civitāte Orgetorīgis filiam in mātrimō-
nium dūxerat; et cupiditāte rēgūi adductus novis rēbus
studēbat et quam plūrimās civitātēs suō beneficiō habēre
obstrictās volēbat. Itaque rem suscipit et ā Sēquanīs
impetrat, ut per finēs suōs Helvētiōs īre patiantur, ob-
sidēsque utī inter sēsē dent, perficit: Sēquanī, nē itinere
Helvētiōs prohibeant, Helvētii, ut sine maleficiō et
iniūriā trānseant.

Foreseeing danger to the province, Caesar marches against the
Helvetians.

10. Caesarī renūntiātur Helvētiīs esse in animō per
agrum Sēquanōrum et Aeduōrum īter in Santōnum
finēs facere, quī nōn longē ā Tolōsātium finibus absunt,
quae civitās est in prōvinciā. Id sī fieret, intellegēbat
magnō cum periculō prōvinciae futūrum, ut hominēs
15 bellicōsōs, populi Rōmānī inimīcōs, locīs patentibus
maximēque frūmentāriīs finitīmōs habēret.

Ob eās causās ei mūniētiōni quam fēcerat T. Labiēnum
lēgātum praefēcit; ipse in Italiam magnīs itinerībus
contendit duāsque ibi legiōnēs conscribit et trēs, quae
20 circūm Aquileiam hiemābant, ex hibernīs ēdūcit et, quā
proximum īter in ulteriōrem Galliām per Alpēs erat,
cum hīs quīnque legiōnibus īre contendit.

Ibi Ceutronēs et Graiocelī et Caturīgēs, locīs superi-
ōribus occupātīs, itinere exercitum prohibēre cōnantur.
25 Complūribus hīs proeliīs pulsīs, ab Ocelō, quod est op-
pidum citeriōris prōvinciae extrēmum, in finēs Vocon-
tiōrum ulteriōris prōvinciae diē septimō pervēnit; inde
in Allobrogum finēs, ab Allobrogibus in Segūsiāvōs
exercitum dūcit. Hī sunt extrā prōvinciām trāns Rho-
30 danum prīmi.
The Helvetians devastate the territories of the Aeduans and their neighbors, who appeal to Caesar for help.

11. Helvetii iam per angustiās et fines Sequanōrum suas cōpiās trādūxerant et in Aeduōrum fines pervēnerant eorumque agrōs populābantur. Aeduī cum sē suaque ab eis dēfendere non possent, lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittunt rogātum auxilium: ita sē omnī tempore 5 dē populō Rōmānō meritōs esse, ut paene in cōnspectū exercitus nostri agrī vāstāri, liberi eōrum in servītūtem abdūci, oppida expugnāri non dēbuerint.

Eōdem tempore quō Aeduī, Ambarrī, necessāriī et cōnsanguineī Aeduōrum, Caesarem certiōrem faciunt 10 sēsē dēpopulātīs agrīs non facile ab oppidīs vim hostium prohibēre. Item Allobrogēs, qui trāns Rhodanum vicīs possēsionēisque habēbant, fugā sē ad Caesarem recipiunt et dēmōnstrant sibi praeter agrī solum nihil esse reliquī. Quibus rebus adductus Caesar nōn exspectāvit, dum sībi statuit, dum omnibus fortūnis sociōrum cōnsūmptīs in Santōnōs Helvētiī pervēnīrent.

The Helvetians try to cross the Arar. Caesar surprises them, and destroys one division of their army.

12. Flūmen est Arar, quod per fines Aeduōrum et Sequanōrum in Rhodanum influit incredibilis lenitāte, ita ut oculis, in utram partem fluat, iūdicāri non possit. 20 Id Helvētiī ratibus ac limtribus iūncēs trānsībant.

Ubi per explōrātōrēs Caesar certior factus est trēs iam partēs cōpiārum Helvētiōs id flūmen trādūxisse, quàrum fērē partem cīrā flūmen Ararim reliquam esse, dē tertīā vigiliā cum legiōnibus tribūs e castrīs prōfectus ad 25 eam partem pervēnit, quae nōndum flūmen trānsierat. Eōs impeditōs et inopīnantēs aggressus magnam partem
eōrum concidit; reliquī sēsē fugae mandārant atque in proximās silvās abdidērant.

Is pāgus appellābātur Tigurinus; nam omnis cīvitās Helvētia in quattuor pāgōs dīvisa est. Hic pāgus ūnus, cum domō exisset patrum nostrōrum memoriā, L. Cassium cōnsulem interfēcerat et eius exercitum sub iugum miserat. Ita sīve cāsū sīve cōnsiliō deōrum inmortalium, quae pars cīvitātis Helvētiae īnsignem calamitātem populō Rōmānō intulerat, ea prīnceps poenās persolvit.

Quī in rē Caesar nōn sōlum públicās, sed etiam privātās iniūriās ultus est, quod eius socerī L. Pīsonis avum, L. Pīsonem lēgātum, Tigurīnī eōdem proeliō, quō Cassium, interfēcerant.

Caesar bridges the Arar and pursues the enemy. They send envoys who speak threateningly and boastfully.


Is ita cum Caesare ēgit: si pācem populus Rōmānus cum Helvētiīs faceret, in eam partem itūrōs atque ibi futūrōs Helvētiōs, ubi cōs Caesar cōnstituisset atque esse voluisset; sin bellō persequī perseverāret, reminiscētur et veteris incommodi populī Rōmānī et prīstinae virtūtīs Helvētiōrum.

Quod imprōvisō ūnum pāgum adortus esset, cum iī qui flūmen trānsissent suīs auxilium ferre nōn posserant, nē ob eam rem aut suae magnopere virtūtī tribueret aut
ipsōs dēspiceret. Sē ita à patribus maiōribusque suīs didicisse, ut magis virtūte contenderent, quam dolō aut īnsidiās nīterentur. Quārē nē committeret, ut is locus, ubi cōnstitissent, ex calamitāte populī Rōmānī et internecīōne exercītūs nōmen caperet aut memoriae prōderet.

Caesar rebukes them for their presumption, and foretells their destruction. He offers terms of peace, which are rejected.

14. His Caesar ita respondit: eō sibi minus dubitātiōnis dari, quod eās rēs quās lēgātī Helvētiī commemorāssent memoriā tenēret, atque eō gravius ferre, quō minus meritō populī Rōmānī accidissent; quī sī alieius iūriae sibi cōnscius fuisse, nōn fuisse difficile cavēre; sed eō dēceptum, quod neque commissum a sē intellegeret quārē timēret, neque sine causā timendum putāret.

Quod si veteris contumēliae obliviāscī vellet, num etiam recentium iūriārum, quod eō invitō iter per prōvinciam per vim temptāssent, quod Aeduōs, quod Ambarrōs, quod Allobrogēs vexāssent, memoriae dépōnere posse? Quod suā victoriā tam insolenter glōriārentur quodque tam diū sē impūne iūriās intulisse admirārentur, eōdem pertinēre. Cōnsuēsse enim deōs immortālēs, quō gra-vius hominiēs ex commūtātiōne rērum doleant, quōs prōscelere eōrum ulciscī velint, his secundiōrēs interdum rēs et diūturniōrem impūnitātem concedere.

Cum ea ita sint, tamen, si obsidēs ab eīs sibi dentur, utī ea, quae polliceantur, factūrōs intelleggat, et sī Aeduīs dē iūriīs, quās ipsīs sociīsque eōrum intulerint, item sī Allobrogibus satisfaciant, sēsē cum eīs pācem esse factūrum.

Dīvīcō respondit: ita Helvētiōs à maiōribus suīs institūtōs esse, utī obsidēs accipere, nōn dare cōnsuērint; 30
The Helvetians continue their march, closely followed by Caesar. They harass the Romans.

15. Posterō diē castra ex eō locō movent. Idem facit Caesar equitātumque omnem, ad numerum quattuor mīlium, quem ex omnī prōvinciā et Aeduīs atque eōrum sociīs coāctum habēbat, praemittit, quī videant, quās in partēs hostēs iter faciant. Quī cupidīōs novissīnum agmen īnsecūtī aliēnō locō cum equitātū Helvētiōrum proelium committunt; et paucī dē nostrīs cadunt.

Quō proeliō sublātī Helvētiī, quod quīngentīs equībus tantām multitūdinem equītum prōpulerant, audācius subsistere nōnnumquam et novissimō agmine proeliō nostrīs laecessere coeptūrant. Caesar suōs ā proeliō continēbat ac satis habēbat in prāesentiā hostem rapīnīs, pābulātiōnibus populātiōnibusque prohibēre. Ita diēs circiter quīndecim iter fēcērent, ut inter novissīnum hostium agmen et nostrum prīnum nōn amplius quīnīs aut sēnis miliibus passuum interesset.

The Aeduans fail to supply the grain which they had promised.

Caesar rebukes them.

16. Interim cotīdiē Caesar Aeduoīs frūmentum, quod essent pūblicē pollicitū, fāgitāre. Nam propter frīgora, quod Gallia sub septentriōnibus, ut ante dictum est, posita est, nōn modo frūmenta in agrīs mātūra nōn erant, sed nē pābulī quidem satis magna cōpia supplēbat; eō autem frūmentō, quod flūmine Ararī nāvibus subvexerat, propterēa minus ūtī poterat, quod iter ab Ararī Helvētiī āverterant, a quibus discēdere nōlēbat. Diem ex diē dūcere Aedui: cōnferri, comportāri, adesse dīcere.
ubi se diūtius dūci intellēxit et diem ĕnstāre, quō die frūmentum militibus mētīrī oportēret, convocātīs eōrum principibus, quōrum magnam cōpiām in castrīs habēbat, in hīs Diviciācō et Liscō, quī summō magistrātuī praerat, quem vergobretum appellant Aeduī, quī creātur 5 annuus et vītae necisque in suōs habet potestātem, graviter eōs accūsat, quod, cum neque eī neque ex agrīs sūmī posset, tam necessāriō tempore, tam propinquis hostibus, ab eis nōn sublevētur; praeīrtim cum magnā ex parte eōrum precibus adductus bellum suscēperit, 10 multō etiam gravius, quod sit dēstitūtus, queritur.

Liscus tells him of a faction of the nobles which is opposed to the Romans.


Caesar suspects that Dumnorix is the chief of this faction.
Liscus admits that he is.

18. Caesar hāc ōrātiōne Lisci Dumnorīgem, Diviciācī frātrem, dēsignāri sentiēbat; sed, quod plūribus prae-
sentibus eās rēs iactāri nōlēbat, celeriter concilium dīmittit, Liscum reīnet. Quaerit ex sōlō ea, quae in conventū dīxerat. Dīcit liberius atque audācius.

5 Eadem sēcrētō ab aliās quaerit; reperit esse vērā: ipsum esse Dumnorīgem, summā audāciā, magnā apud plēbem propter liberālitātem grātiā, cupidum rērum novārum. Complūrēs annōs portōria reliquaque omnia Aeduōrum vectīgālia parvō pretīō redēmpta habēre, proptereā quod illō licite contra licērī audēat nēmō. His rēbus et suam rem familiārem auxisse et facultātēs ad largiendum magnās comparāsse; magnum numerum equitātūs suō sūmptū semper alere et circum sē habēre neque sōlum domī, sed etiam apud finitimās cīvitātēs largiter posse; atque huius potentiae causā mātrein in Biturīgibus homīnī illic nōbilissimō ac potentissimō collocāsse, ipsum ex Helvētiīs uxōrem habēre, sorōrem ex mātre et propinquās suās nuptum in aliās cīvitātēs collocāsse.

20 Favēre et cupere Helvētiīs propter eam affīnitātem, ĉōisse etiam suō nōmine Caesarem et Rōmānōs, quod eōrum adventū potentia eius dēminūta et Dīviciācus frāter in antiquum locum grātiae atque honōris sit resti-tūtus. Si quid accidat Rōmānis, summan in spēn per Helvētiīs rēgni obtinendī venīre; imperiō populī Rō- mānī nōn modo dē rēgnō, sed etiam dē cā, quam habēat, grātiā dēs♣ērāre.

Reperiēbat etiam in quae redō Caesar, quod proelium equestre adversum paucīs ante diēbus esset factum, initiōm eius fugae factum à Dumnorīge atque eius equitibus (nām equitātūī, quem auxiliō Caesari Aeduī miserant, Dumnorīx praeerat); eorum fugā reliquum esse equitātūm perterritum.
Caesar wishes to punish Dumnorix, but first consults his brother, whom he does not wish to offend.

19. Quibus rebus cognitis, cum ad hās suspiciōnēs certissimae rēs accēderent, quod per finēs Sēquanōrum Helvétiōs trādūxisset, quod obsidēs inter eōs dandōs cūrāset, quod ea omnia nōn modo iniussū suō et civitātis, sed etiam inscientibus ipsīs fēcisset, quod ā 5 magistrātū Aeduōrum accūsārētur, satis esse causae arbitrābātur, quārē in eum aut ipse animadverteret aut civitātem animadvertere iubēret.

Hīs omnibus rēbus ūnum repugnābat, quod Diviciāci frātris summum in populum Rōmānum studium, sum-10 mani in sē voluntātem, ēgregiam fidem, iūstitiam, temperauntiam cognōverat; nam nē eius suppliciō Diviciāci ā animum offenderet, verēbātur. Itaque priusquam quicquam cōnārētur, Diviciācum ad sē vocāri iubet et, cotidiānis interpretibus remotīs, per C. Valerium Troucillum, 15 princīpem Galliae prōvinciae, familiārem suum, cui summam omnium rērum fidem habēbat, cum eō colloquītur; simul commonefacit quae ipsī prae sente in conciliō Gallōrum dē Dumnōrīge sint dicta, et ostendit quae sēparātim quisque dē eō a pud sē dixerit; petit atque 20 hortātur ut sine offensīōne animi vel ipse dē eō causā cognītā statuat vel civitātem statuere iubet.

Induced by Diviciacus, Caesar contents himself with warning Dum-25 norix, but sets spies over him.

20. Diviciācus multīs cum lacrimīs Caesarem com-plexus obsecrāre coepit, nē quid gravior in frātrem statueret: scīre sē illa esse vēra, nec quemquam ex eō 25 plūs quam sē dolōris capere, propterēā quod, cum ipse grātiā plurimum domī atque in reliquā Galliā, ille minι- mum propter adulēscentiam posset, per sē crēvisset;
quibus opibus ac nervis nōn sōlum ad minuendam grātiam, sed paene ad perniciem suam ūterētur. Sēsē tamen et amōre frāternō et existimātiōne vulgī commovēri. Quod si quid eī ā Caesare gravius accidisset, cum ipse eum locum amīcitiāe apud eum tenēret, nēminem existimātiūrum nōn suā voluntāte factum; quā ex re futūrum utī tōtius Galliae animī ā sē āverterentur.

Haec cum pluribus verbīs fleōns ā Caesare peteret, Caesar eīs dextrām prēndit; cōnsōlātus rogat, finem 10ōrandī faciāt; tantī eīs apud sē grātiam esse ostendīt, utī et reī publicae iniūriam et suum dolōrem eīs voluntāti ac precibus condōnet. Dumnorīgem ad sē vocat, frātrem adhibet; quae in eō reprehenderit ostendit; quae ipse intellegat, quae civitās querātur, propōnit; 15monēt ut in reliquum tempus omnēs suspiciōnēs vītēt; praeterīta sē Dīviciācō frātrī condōnāre dicit. Dumnorigiā cūstōdēs pōnit, ut quae agat, quibuscum loquātur, scīre possit.

Caesar plans an attack on the enemy from two sides at once.


Ipse dē quarē vigiliā eōdem itinerē quō hostēs ierant ad eōs contendit equitātumque omnem ante sē mittit. P. Cōnsidius, qui reī militāris perītissimus habēbātur et 30 in exercitū L. Sullae et posteā in M. Crassī fuerat, cum explōrātōribus praemittitur.
The blunder of a scout makes it necessary to give up the plan. The march continues.

22. Prīmā lūce, cum summus mōns ā Labiēnō tenēretur, ipse ab hostium castris nōn longius mille et quīnqentīs passibus abesset neque, ut posteā ex captīvis comperit, aut ipsīs adventus aut Labiēnī cognitus esset, Čōnsidius equō admissō ad eum accurrit, dicit 5 montem quem ā Labiēnō occupārī voluerit ab hostibus tenērī; id sē ā Gallicīs armīs atque insignibus cognōvisse. Čaesar suās cōpiās in proximum collem subdūcit, aciem įnstruit.


Čaesar turns aside to Bibracte on account of the scarcity of provisions. The Helvetians follow him.

23. Postrīdiē eius diēi, quod omnīnō biduum supererat, cum exercitui frūmentum mētirī oportēret, et quod ā Bibracte, oppidō Aeduōrum longē maximō et cōpiōsissimō, nōn amplius mīlibus passuum XVIII aberat, reī frūmentāriae prōspiciendum existīmāvit; iter ab Helvētiīs āvertit ac Bibracte īre contendit.

Ea rēs per fugitīvōs L. Aemilī, decuriōnis equitum Gallōrum, hostibus nūntiātur. Helvētiī seu quod timōre perterritōs Rōmānōs discēdere ā sē existīmārent, ēō
magis quod pridiē superiōribus locis occupātīs proelium
nōn commīsissent, sīve cō, quod rē frūmentāriā inter-
clūdī posse cōndiderent, commūtātō cōnsiliō atque itinere
conversō nostrōs ā novissimō agmine insequī ac laecessere
coepērunt.

Caesar occupies a hill. The Helvetians defeat his cavalry and prepare
to storm his position.

24. Postquam id animadvertit, cōpiās suās Caesar in
proximum collem subdūcit equitātumque, qui sustinēret
hostium impetum, mīsit. Ipse interim in collem mediō
triplīcēm aciem įnstrūxit legiōnum quattuor veterā-
nārūm; sed in summō iugō duās legiōnēs, quās in Galliā
citeriōre proximē cōnscripserat, et omnia auxilia collocārī
e tōtum montem hominibus complērī, et interē
sarcinās in ūnum locum cōnferrī et eum ab hīs quī in
superiōre aciē cōnstiterant mūnīrī iussit.

15 Helvētiī ēum omnibus suīs carrīs secūti impedīmenta
in ūnum locum contulērunt; īpsi cōnfertissimā aciē,
reiectō nostrō equitātū, phalange factā sub prīmam
nostram aciem successērunt.

The Romans repulse the enemy, but the Boii and Tulingi attack Cae-
sar’s flank. The Helvetians return, and the Romans are assailed
on both sides.

25. Caesar prīmum suō, deinde omnium ex cōnspectū
remōtīs equīs, ut aequātō omnium perīculō spem fugae
tolleret, cohōratātus suōs proelium commīsīt. Mīlitēs ē
locō superiōre pilīs missīs facile hostium phalangem
perfrēgērunt. Ėa disiectā, gladiīs dēstrictīs in eōs
impetum fēcērunt. Gallīs magna ad pugnam erat
impedīmentō, quod plūribus ēorum scūtīs ūnō ictū
pilōrum trānsfixīs et colligātīs, cum ferrum sē ūnflex-

isset, neque evellere neque sinistra impedita satis commodè pugnare poterant, multi ut diu iactato bracchio praeoptarent scutum manu emittere et nudó corpore pugnare.

**Battle between Caesar and the Helvetians**

Tandem vulneribus défessi et pedem referre et, quod 5 mōns suberat circiter mille passuum, eō sē recipere coeperunt. Captō monte et succédentibus nostris, Boiī et Tulingi, qui hominum milibus circiter quīndecim
agmen hostium claudēbat et novissimīs praesidiō erant, ex itinere nostrōs à latere aperto aggressī circumvenīre, et id cōnspicātī Helvētī, qui in montem sēse recēperant, rūrusī instāre et proelium redintegrāre coepērunt. Rōmānī conversa signa bipertitō intulērunt: prīma et secunda aciēs, ut victīs ac summōtīs resisteret; tertia, ut venientēs sustinēret.

After a sharp fight the Romans are victorious and capture the camp. Caesar sets out in pursuit of the enemy.

26. Ita ancipiti proeliō diū atque ācriter pugnātum est. Diūtius cum sustinērē nostrōrum impetus nōn posserit, alterī sē, ut coeperant, in montem recēpērunt, alterī ad impedimenta et carrōs suōs sē contulērunt. Nam hoc tōtō proeliō, cum ab hōrā septimā ad vesperum pugnātum sit, āversum hostem vidēre nēmō potuit. Ad multam noctem etiam ad impedimenta pugnātum est, propterea quod prō vāllō carrōs obiēcerant et ē locō superiore in nostrōs venientēs tēla coniciēbant, et nōnnullī inter carrōs rotāsque mātarās ac trāgulās subiciēbant nostrōsque vulnerābant.

Diū cum esset pugnātum, impedimentīs castrīisque nostrī potītī sunt. Ibi Orgetorigis filia atque ūnus ē filīīs captus est. Ex eō proeliō circiter hominum mīlia centum et trīgintā superfuērunt eāque tōtā nocte continerent iērunt; nūllam partem noctis itinere intermissō, in finēs Lingonum diē quārtō pervēnērunt, cum et propter vulnera militum et propter sepultūram occisōrum nostrī trīduum morātī eōs sequi nōn potuissent. Caesar ad Lingonas litterās nūtiōsque mīsit, nē eōs frūmentō nēve aliā ē re iuvārent; quī sī iūvissent, sē eōdem locō quō Helvētiōs habitūrum. Ipse trīduō intermissō cum omnibus copiis eōs sequi coepit.
The Helvetians surrender. Six thousand men of one canton try to escape.

27. Helvētiī omnium rērum inopīa adductī légātōs dē dēditīōne ad eum misērunt. Qui cum eum in itinere convenissent sēque ad pedēs próiēcissent suppliciterque locūtī flentēs pācem petissent, atque eōs in eō locō quō tum essent suum adventum exspectāre iussissent, pāru-5 ērunt. Eō postquam Caesar pervēnit, obsidēs, arma, servōs quī ad eōs perfūgissent, poposcit.

Dum ea conquīruntur et cōnferuntur nocte intermissā, circiter hominum mīlia sex eius pāgī, qui Verbigenus appellātur, sīve timōre perterritī, nē armīs trāditīs sup-10 pliciō afficere ntur, sīve spē salūtis inductī, quod in tantā multitūdine dēditiciōrum suam fugam aut occultāri aut omnīnō ignōrāri posse existimarent, primā nocte ē castrīs Helvētiōrum ēgressī ad Rhēnum finēsque Germanōrum contendērunt.

Caesar punishes the fugitives. He orders the Gauls to return home, but allows the Aeduans to receive the Boii.

28. Quod ubi Caesar rescīt, quōrum ďer finēs ierant, hīs, utī conquīrērent et redūcērent, si sībī pūrgāti esse vellent, imperāvit; reductōs in hostium numerō habuit; reliquōs omnēs, obsidibus, armīs, perfugīs trāditīs, in dēditioinem accēpit. Helvētiōs, Tulingōs, Latobrīgōs in finēs suōs, unde erant profectī, revertī iussit; et quod omnibus frūgibus āmissīs domī nihil erat quō famem tolerārent, Allobrogibus imperāvit ut eīs frū-20 mentī cōpiam facerent; ipsōs oppida vīcōsque, quōs incenderant, restituere iussit.

Id eā maximē ratiōne fēcit, quod nōluit eum locum unde Helvētiī discesserant vacāre, nē propter bonitātem agrōrum Germanī, qui trāns Rhēnum incolunt, ē suīs
finibus in Helvētiōrum fines transīrent et finitimī Galliae prōvinciae Allobrogibusque essent. Boiës petentibus Aeduīs, quod ēgregiā virtūte erant cognīti, ut in finibus suis collocārent, concessit; quibus illī agrōs dedērunt, quōsque posteā in parem iūris libertātīisque condiciōnem atque īpsi erant recēpērunt.

*The numbers of the enemy before and after the battle.*

29. In castrīs Helvētiōrum tabulae repertae sunt litterīs Graeciōs cōnfectae et ad Caesarem relātae, quibus in tabulis nōminātim ratiō cōnsecta erat, quī numeros domō exīset eōrum quī arma ferre possent et item sēparātim puerī, senēs mulierēsque.

Quārum omnīn rērum summa erat capitum Helvētiōrum mīlia cclxiii, Tulingōrum mīlia xxxvi, Latobrigōrum xiii, Rauracōrum xxiii, Boīorum xxxii; ex hīs quī arma ferre possent, ad mīlia nōnāgintā duo. Summa omnīum fuĕrunt ad mīlia trecenta sexāgintā octō. Eōrum quī domum rediērunt, cēnsū habitō, ut Caesar imperāverat, repertus est numerus mīlium centum et decem.

II. THE CAMPAIGN AGAINST ARIOVISTUS, 58 B.C.

*Caesar receives congratulations from the Gauls. They ask for a conference with him.*

30. Bellō Helvētiōrum cōnfectō, tōtīus ferē Galliae lēgātiī, prīncipēs cīvitātum, ad Caesarem grātulātum convēnérunt; intellegere sēsē, tametū priō veteribus Helvētiōrum inīriiīs populī Rōmāni ab hīs poenas bellō repetīssēt, tamen eam rem nōn minus ex īusu terrae Galliae quam populī Rōmāni accidisse, propterēa quod eō consilio flōrentissimīs rebus domōs suās Helvētiī reliquissent, utī tōtī Galliae bellum īnferrent imperiōque
potiērentur locumque domicilio ex magna cōpiā déligere, quem ex omni Galliā opportūnissimum ac fruētuosissimum iūdicāssent, reliquāaque civitātēs stipendiārias habērent.

Petiērunt uti sibi conciliō totius Galliae in diem certam indicēre idque Caesaris voluntāte facere licēret; sēsē habēre quāsdam rēs, quās ex commūni cōnsēsus ab eō petere vellent. Ea rē permīssā, diem conciliō constituērunt et iūre iūrāndo, nē quis ēnūntiāret, nisi quibus commūni cōnsiliō mandātum esset, inter sē sānxērunt.

The Gauls complain of the oppression of Ariovistus, and ask for Caesar's help against him.

31. Eō conciliō dīmissō, idem princīpes civitātūm qui ante fuerant, ad Caesarem revertērunt petiēruntque uti sibi sēcrētō dē suā omniumque salūte cūm eō agere licēret. Ea rē impetrātā, sēsē omnēs flentēs Caesari ad pedēs prōiēcērunt: nōn minus sē id contendere et labō-15 rāre, nē ea quae dixissent ēnūntiārentur, quam uti ea quae vellent impetrārent; propterea quod, sī ēnūntiā-tum esset, sumnum in cruciātum sē ventūrōs vidērent.

Locūtus est prō his Diviciācus Aeduus: Galliae totius factiōnēs esse duās; hārum alterius princīpātum 20 tenēre Aeduōs, alterius Arvernōs. Hī cum tantopere dē potentātū inter sē multōs annōs contendent, factum esse uti ab Arvernīs Sēquanīisque Germānī mercēde arcesserentur. Hōrum prīmō circiter milia xv Rhēnum trānsisse; postēquam agrōs et cultum et cōpiās Gallō-25 rum hominēs ferī ac barbarī adamasessent, traductōs plurēs; nunc esse in Galliā ad centum et vigintī milium numerum.

Cum hīs Aeduōs eōrumque clientēs semel atque iterum armīs contendisse; magnum calamitātem pulsōs accē-30
pisse, omnem nōbilitātem, omnem senātum, omnem equitātum āmisisse. Quibus proeliūs calamitātibusque frāctōs, qui et suā virtūte et populi Rōmānī hospitiō atque amīcitātā plūrimum ante in Galliā potuissent, 5 coāctōs esse Sēquanīs obsidēs dare nōbilissimōs civitātis, et iūre iūrandō civitātem obstringere sēsē neque obsidēs repetītūrōs, neque auxilium ā populō Rōmānō implōrātūrōs, neque recūsātūrōs quō minus perpetuō sub illōrōm diciōne atque imperiō essent. Unum sē esse ex omni 10 civitāte Aeduōrum qui addūci nōn potuērit ut iūrāret aut liberōs suōs obsidēs dare. Ob ea nōm sē ex civitāte profūgisse et Rōmam ad senātum vēnisse auxiliōm postulātum, quod sōlus neque iūre iūrandō neque obsidibus tenērētur.

15 Sed peius victōribus Sēquanīs quam Aeduīs victīs accidisse, propterēa quod Ariovistus, rex Germānōrum, in eōrum finibus cōnsēdisset tertiamque partem agri Sēquanī, quī esset optimus tōtīus Galliae, occupāvisset et nunc dē alterā parte tertīā Sēquanōs dēcedēre īubēret, propterēa quod paucīs mēnsibus ante Harūdum mīlia hominum vīgintī quattuor ad eum vēnissent, quibus locus ac sēdēs parārētur. Futūrum esse paucīs annīs utī omnēs ex Galliae finibus pellerentur atque omnēs Germānī Rhēnum trānṣīrent; neque enim 20 cōnferendum esse Gallicum cum Germānōrum agrō, neque hanc cōnsuētūdinem victūs cum illā compara-randam.

Ariovistum autem, ut semel Gallōrum cōpiās proeliō vīcerit, quod proelium factum sit Admagetobrigae, su-perbē et crūdēliter imperāre, obsidēs nōbilissimi cuiusque liberōs poscere et in eōs omnia exempla cruciātūsque 25 ēdere, si qua rēs nōn ad nūtum aut ad voluntātem eius facta sit. Hominem esse barbarum, iracundum, temerā-
rium; nōn posse sē eius imperia diūtius sustinēre. Nisi quid in Caesare populōque Rōmānō sit auxili, omnibus Gallīs idem esse faciendum quod Helvētii fēcerint, ut domō ēmigrent, aliud domicilium, alīas sēdēs remōtās ā Germānīs petant fortūnamque, quaecumque accidat, ex-5 periantur.

Haec si ēnūntiāta Ariovistō sint, nōn dubitāre quin dē omnibus obsidibus quī apud eum sint gravissimum supplicium sūnat. Caesarem vel auctōritāte suā atque exercitūs vel recentī victōriā vel nōmine populi Rōmānī dētērrēre posse nē maiōr multitudō Germānōrum Rhēnum trādūcātur, Galliamque omnem ab Ariovistī iniūriā posse dēfendere.

The unhappy lot of the Sequani, who had received Ariovistus into their territories.

32. 'Hāc ōratiōne ab Dīviciācō habitā, omnēs qui aderant magnō flētū auxilium ā Caesare petere coepérunt. 15 Animadvertit Caesar ļūnōs ex omnibus Sēquanōs nihil eārum rērum facere quās cēterī facerent, sed trīstēs capite dēmissō terram intuērī. Eius reā quae causa esset mirātus, ex ipsis quaesit. Nihil Sēquanī respondēre, sed in eādem trīstitiā tacitī permanēre.

Cum ab his saepius quaereret neque īllum omnīnō vocem exprimere posset, īdem Dīviciācus Aeduus respondit: hoc esse miseriōrem et graviōrem fortūnam Sēquanōrum quam reliquōrum, quod sōli nē in occultō quidem querī neque auxilium implōrāre audērent; ab-25 sentisique Ariovistī crūdēlitātem, velut si cōram adesset, horrērent. propterea quod reliquis tamen fugae facultās daretur, Sēquanis vērō, qui intrā finēs suōs Ariovistum recēpissent, quōrum oppida omnia in potestāte eius essent, omnēs cruciātūs essent perferendī.
Caesar promises to intercede with Ariovistus. He thinks his power dangerous to the Roman interests in Gaul.

33. His rebus cognitis, Caesar Gallorum animos verbis confirmavit pollicitusque est sibi eam rem curae futuram: magnam se habere speret et beneficio suo et auctoritate adductum Ariovistum finem iniuriis factum. Hac oratione habitae concilium dimisit. Et secundum ea multae res eum hortabantur quare sibi eam rem cogitandum et suscendi putaret; in primis quod Aeduos, fratres consanguineosque saepenumero a senatu appellatos, in servitute atque in dicio videbat Germanorum tenere eorumque obsidies esse apud Ariovistum ac Sequanos intelligebat; quod in tantis imperiis populi Romanini turpissimum sibi et rei publicae esse arbitrabatur.

Paulatim autem Germanos consuecere Rhenum transeire et in Galliam magnam eorum multitudoinem venire, populum Romanum periculosum videbat; neque sibi homines feros ac barbaros temperaturos existimabat quin, cum omnem Galliam occupasset, ut ante Cimbri Teutonicum fecissent, in provinciam exirent atque inde in Italiam contenderit, praeertim cum Sequanos a provincia nostra Rhodanus divideret; quibus rebus quam naturrime occurrendum putabat. Ipse autem Ariovistus tantos sibi spiritus, tantam arrogantiam sumperat, ut ferendus non videre tur.

Caesar proposes a conference. Ariovistus declines in insolent language.

34. Quam ob rem placuit ei ut ad Ariovistum legatōs mitteret, quia ab eo postularent uti aliquem locum medium utriusque colloquio deligeret: velle se se de re publica et summis utriusque rebus cum eo agere.
Eī légātiōnī Ariovistus respondit: Si quid ipsī ā Caesare opus esset, sēsē ad eum ventūrum fuisset; si quid ille sē velit, illum ad sē venire oportère. Praetereā sē neque sine exercitū in eās partēs Galliae venire audēre quās Caesar possidēret, neque exercitum sīn magnō commeātū atque mōlimentō in ūnum locum contrahere posse. Sibī autem mirum vidērī quid in suā Galliā, quam bellō vīcisset, aut Caesari aut omnīnō populō Rōmānō negotī esset.

Caesar thereupon makes demands, offering friendship if they are accepted, and threatening war in case they are refused.

35. Hīs respōnsīs ad Caesarem relātīs, iterum ad eum 10 Caesar lēgātōs cum hīs mandātīs mittit: Quoniam tantō sūō populīque Rōmānī beneficiō affectus, cum in cōnsulātū sūō, rēx atque amīcus ā senātū appellātus esset, hāc, sibī populīque Rōmānō grātiam referret, ut in colloquium venire invitātus, grāvārētur neque dē com-15 mūnī rē dicendum sibī et cognōscendum putāret, hace esse quae ab eō postulāret: prīrum, nē quam multīi-20 dinem homīnum amplius trāns Rhēnum in Galliām tradūceret; deīnde obsīdes quōs habēret ab Aeduīs redderet, Sēquanīsque permitteret ut quōs illī ha-25 bērent voluntāte eius reddere illīs licēret; nēve Aeduōs iniūriā lacesseret, nēve hīs sociīsque eōrum bellum inferret.

Si id ita fēcisset, sibī populīque Rōmānō perpetuam grātiam atque amīcitiam cum eō futūram; sī nōn 25 impetrāret, sēsē, quoniam M. Messālā M. Pīsōne cōnsulibus senātūs cēnsuisset uti, quicumque Galliām provinciam obtinēret, quod commodō reī pūblicae facere posset, Aeduōs cēterīsque amīcōs populī Rōmānī dēfenderet, sē Aeduōrum iniūriās nōn neglectūrum.
36. Ad haec Ariovistus respondit: Iūs esse belli ut quī vīcissent, eis quōs vīcissent, quem ad modum vellent, imperārent; item populum Rōmānum victīs nōn ad alterius praeścriptum, sed ad suum arbitrium imperāre cōnsuēsse. Si ipse populo Rōmānō nōn praeścriberet quem ad modum suō iūre üterētur, nōn oportēre se ā populo Rōmānō in suō iūre impedīrī. Aeduōs sibi, quōniam belli fortūnam temptāssent et armīs congressī ac superātī essent, stipendiāriōs esse factōs. Magnam Caesarem iniūriam facerē, qui suō adventū vectīgālia sibi dēteriōra faceret. Aeduīs sē obsīdēs reditūrum nōn esse neque hīs neque eōrum sociīs iniūriā bellum illātūrum, si in eo manērent quod convēnisset, stipendiāmque quotannīs penderent; si id nōn fecissent, longē eis frāternum nōmen populī Rōmānī āfutūrum.

Quod sibi Caesar dēnūntiāret sē Aeduōrum iniūrias nōn neglectūrum, nēminem sēcūm sine suā perniciē contendisse. Cum vellet, congrederētur; intellēctūrum quid invictī Germānī, exercitātissīmī in armīs, qui inter annōs quattuordecim tēctum nōn subissent, virtūte possent.

37. Haec eōdem tempore Caesari mandāta referēbantur, et lēgātī ab Aeduīs et ā Trēverīs veniēbant: Aeduī questum, quod Harūdēs, quī nūper in Gallīam trāns-portātī essent, finēs eōrum populārentur: sēsē nē obsidibus quidem datīs pācem Ariovisti redimere potuisse; Trēverī autem, pāgōs centum Suēbōrum ad ripās Rhēnī cōnsēdisse, qui Rhēnum trānsīre cōnārentur; hīs praeesse Nasuam et Cimberium frātres.
Quibus rebus Caesar vehementer commótus mütüran-
dum sibi existimavit, nē, si nova manus Suëborum cum
veteribus cópiis Ariovísti sésec coniünxisset, minus facile
resistì posset. Itaque ré frûmentària quam celerrimè
potuit comparatà, magnís itineribus ad Ariovistum con-
tendit.

The importance of the town of Vesontio for both parties. Caesar
gets possession of it.

38. Cum trídui viam pröcessisset, nuniätum est ei
Ariovistum cum suis omnibus cópiis ad occupandum
Vesonțiönum, quod est oppidum maximum Sequanörum,
contendere tríduique viam a suis finibus pröcessisse. 10

Id nē accideret, magnopere sibi praecavendum Caesar
existimabat. Namque omnium rérum, quae ad bellum
úṣuī erant, summa erat in eō oppidō facultās, idque
nāturā locī sic muniēbātur, ut māgnam ad dúcendum
bellum daret facultātem, propŃerea quod flûmen Dubis,15
ut circinō circumductum, paene tōtum oppidum cīngit;
reliquum spatium, quod est nōn amplius pedum MDc,
quā flûmen intermittit, mōns continet māgnā altitudine,
ita ut rādīces eius montis ex utrāque parte rīpae flū-
minis contingent. Hunc mūrus circumdatus arcem 20
efficit et cum oppidō coniungit.

Híc Caesar magnís nocturnis diurnísque itineribus
contendit, occupātōque oppidō ibi praesidium collocat.

The reports about the size and valor of the Germans create a
panic in Caesar's army.

39. Dum paucōs diēs ad Vesontiönum rei frûmen-
tāriae commeātūsque causā morātur, ex perceñtātiōne 25
nostrōrum vocibusque Gallōrum ac mercātorum, qui
ingenti magnitudine corporum Germanōs, incredibili
virtūte atque exercitātiōne in armīs esse praedicābant
(saepenumerō sēsē cum his congressōs nē vultum quidem atque aciem oculōrum dīcēbant ferre potuisse), tantus subitō timor omnem exercitum occupāvit, ut nōn mediocrēr omnia nōmēs animōsque perturbāret.

5 Hic primum ortus est a tribūnīs militum, praefectīs reliquisque, qui ex urbe amicitiae causā Caesarem secūti nōn magnum in ré militārī úsum habēbant; quōrum alius alīa causā illātā, quam sībi ad proficiendum necessāriam esse diceret, petēbat ut eius voluntāte dis-cēdere licēret; nōnnūlli pudōre adductī, ut timōris suspicīōnem vitārent, remanēbant. Hī neque vultum fingere neque interdum lacrimās tenēre poterant; ab-diti in tabernāculis aut suum fātum querēbantur aut cum familiāribus suis commūne periculum miserāban-tur. Vulgō tōtūs castrīs testāmenta obsignābantur.

Hōrum vōcibus ac timōre paulātim etiam ī quī magnum in castrīs úsum habēbant, militēs centuriō-nēsque, quīque equitātū praerant, perturbābantur. Quī sē ex his minus timidōs existimārī volēbant, nōn sē hostem verērī, sed angustiās itineris et magnitudi-nem silvārum quae intercéderent inter ipsōs atque Ariovistum, aut rem frumentāriam, ut satīs commodē supportāri posset, timēre dīcēbant. Nōnnūlli ētiam Caesarī nūntiābant, cum castra mouērī ac signa ferri iussisset, nōn fore dictō audientēs militēs neque propter timōrem signa lātūrōs.

Caesar upbraids his officers for their lack of confidence. He ridicules their fears, and declares that he will go on.

40. Haec cum animadvertisset, convocātō cōnsiliō omniumque ōrdinum ad id cōnsilium adhibītīs centuriōnibus, vehementer ēōs incūsāvit: primum quod, aut quam in partem aut quō cōnsiliō dūcērentur, sibi
quaerendum aut cōgitandum putārent. Ariovistum sē cōnsule cupidissimē popūli Rōmānī amīcitiam appetīsse; cūr hunc tam temere quīsquam ab officiō discēssūrūm iūdicāret? Sī bi quīdem persuādērī, cognītīs suīs postulātīs atque aequitātē condīciōnum perspectā, eum neque sūm neque popūli Rōmānī grātīam repudiātūrūm.

Quod sī furōre atque āmentiā impulsus bellum intułisset, quīd tandem verērentur? aut cūr dē suā virtūte aut dē ipsis diligentiā dēspērāre? Factum eius hos-tīs periculum patrum nostrōrum memoriā, cum Cimbriō et Tēutōnis ā C. Mariō pulsiō nōn minōrem laudem exer-citus quam ipse imperātor meritus vidēbātur; factum ētiam nūper in Itāliā servīlī tumultū, quōs tamen aliquid ūsus ac disciplīna quae ā nōbis accēpiissent sublevārent. Ex quō iūdicārī posse quantum habēret in sē bonī cōnstantiā, proptereā quod, quōs aliquamdiū inermēs sine causā timuissent, hōs postēa armātōs ac victōrēs superāssent.

Dēnique hōs esse eōsdem Germānōs, quibuscum sae-penumberō Helvētīi congressī nōn sōlum in suīs sed ētiam in illōrum finibus; plērumque superāssent; qui tamen parēs esse nostrō exercituī nōn potuerint. Si quōs adversum proelium et fuga Gallōrum commovēret, hōs, si quaererent, reperīre posse, diūturnitāte bellī dē-fatigātīs Gallīs Ariovistum, cum multōs mēnsēs castrīs sē ac palūdibus tenuisset neque suī potestātem fēcisset, dēspērantēs iam dē pugnā et dispersōs subitō adortum magis ratiōne et cōnsiliō quam virtūte vīcisse. Cui ratiōnī contrā hominēs barbarōs atque imperītōs locus fuisset, hāc nē ipsum quīdem spērāre nostrōs exercitus 30' capī posse.

Qui suum timōrem in reī frūmentāriae simulātiōnem angustiāsque itineris cōnferrent, facere arroganter, cum
aut de officio imperatortis desperare aut praescribere vidérentur. Haec sibi esse curae; frumentum Séquanós, Leucós, Lingonés sumministráre, iamque esse in agris frumenta mätura; dé itinere ipsós brevís tempore iúdicáturós. Quod nón fore dictó audientés neque signa látúri dicantur, nihil sē eā rē commovērī: scire enim, quibuscumque exercitus dictó audiéns nōn fuerit, aut male rē gestā fortūnam défuisse aut aliqūo faci-nore compertō aváritiam esse convictam; suam inno-centiam perpetuā vitā, fēlicitātem Hélvētiórum bellō esse perspectam.

Itaque sē, quod in longiōrem diem collātūrus fuisset, repraesentātūrum et proximā nocte dé quártā vigiliā castra mōtūrūm, ut quam primum intellegere posset útrum apud eōs pudor atque officium an timor plus valēret. Quod sī praetereā nēmō sequātur, tamen sē cum sólā decimā legiōne itūrum, dé quā nōn dubitāret, sibique eam praetōriam cohortem futūram. Huic legiōnī Caesar et indulserat præci pus et propter virtūtem cōnfidēbat maximē.

The soldiers apologize to Caesar. He continues his march against Ariovistus.

41. Hac órātioni habitā mirum in modum conversae sunt omnium mentés, summaque alacritās et cupiditās belli gerendi innāta est; prīncepsque decima legiō per tribunōs militum ei grātiās égit, quod dé sē optimum iúdicium fēcisset, sēque esse ad bellum gerendum para-tissimam cōnfirmāvit. Deinde reliquae legiōnēs cum tribunīs militum et primōrum ordinum centurionibus égérunt utī Caesari satisfacerent: sé neque umquam dubitāsse neque timuisse neque dé summā belli suum iúdicium, sed imperatōris esse existimāvisse.
Ariovistus proposes a conference, stipulating that he and Caesar be attended only by horsemen. Caesar agrees, but substitutes the tenth legion for his Gallic cavalry.

42. Cognitō Caesaris adventū Ariovistus lēgātōs ad eum mittit: quod anteā dē colloquiō postulāset, id per sē fieri licēre, quoniam propīus accessisset sēque id sine perīculō facere posse existimāret. Nōn respuit condicionem Caesar iamque eum ad sānītātem revertī arbitrábatūr, cum id quod anteā potenti dēnegāsset ultrō pollicērētur; magnamque in spem veniēbat prō suīs tantīs populīque Rōmānī in eum beneficiīs, cognitīs suīs postulātīs fore utī pertināciā désisteret:

Dies colloquiō dictus est ex eō diē quīntus. Interim saepe ultrō citrōque cum lēgātī inter eōs mitterentur, Ariovistus postulāvit nē quem pedītem ad colloquium Caesar addūceret: verērī sē, nē per īnsidiās ab eō cir-20 cumvenīrētur; uterque cum equitātū venīret; aliā ratione sēsē nōn esse ventūrum. Caesar, quod neque colloquium interpositā causā tollī volēbat neque salūtēm suam Gallōrum equitātūi committere audēbat, commodissimum esse statuit, omnibus equīs Gallīs equitībus dētrāctīs, eō legiōnāriōs militēs legiōnis decimae, cui maximē cōnfidēbat, impōnere, ut praēsidium quam amīcissimum, si quīd opus factō esset, habēret.
Quod eum fieret, nōn irridiculē quidam ex militibus decimae legiōnis dīxit: plūs quam pollicitus esset Caesarēm facere; pollicitum sē in cohortīs praetōriae locō decimam legiōnem habitūrum, ad equum rescribere.

_Caesar accuses Ariovistus of ingratitude to the Romans. He shows his own obligation to protect the Aeduans._


Ubī eō ventum est, Caesar initiō orātiōnis sua senātūsque in eum beneficia commēmorāvit, quod rēx appellātus esset ā senātū, quod āmicus, quod mūnera amplissimē missa; quam rem et paucīs contigisse et ā Rōmānīs prō magnīs hominum officiīs consuēsse tribuī docēbat; illum, cum neque adītum neque causam postulandi īūstam habēret, beneficiō ac liberālītāte suā ac senātūs ea praemia cōnsecūtum.

Docēbat etiam, quam veterēs quamque īūstae causae necessitūdinis ipsīs cum Aeduīs intercēderent, quae senātūs consultā quotiēns quamque honōrisca in eōs facta essent, ut omni tempore tōtīs Galliāe prīncipātum Aeduī tenuissent, prius etiam quam nostram amīcitiam appētissent. Populi Rōmānī hanc esse consuētūdinem, ut sociōs atque amīcōs nōn modo suī nihil dēperdere, sed grātīa, dignitāte, honōre auctīōrēs velīt esse; quod vērō ad amīcitiam populi Rōmānī attulīs-30 sent, id eīs ēripī quis pati posset?
Postulavit deinde eadem quae légátis in mandátis dederat: nē aut Aeduīs aut eōrum sociīs bellum īnferret; obsīdēs redderet; sī nūllam partem Germānōrum domum remittere possēt, at nē quōs amplius Rhēnum trānsīre paterētur.

Ariovistus claims priority in Gaul. He demands that Caesar leave, threatening him and appealing to his private interests.

44. Ariovistus ad postulāta Caesaris pauca respondit, dē suīs virtūtibus multa praedicāvit: trānsīsse Rhēnum sēsē nōn suā sponte, sed rogātum et accessītum ā Gallīs; nōn sine magnā spē magnīisque praemiīs domum propinquōsque reliquisse; sēdēs habēre in Galliā ab ipsīs concessās, obsīdēs ipsōrum voluntāte datōs; stipendium capere iūre bellī, quod victōrēs victīs impōnere cōnsuērint.

Nōn sēsē Gallīs, sed Gallōs sibi bellum intulisse; omnēs Galliae cīvitātēs ad sē oppugnandum vēnisse ac contrā sē castra habuisse; eās omnēs cōpiās ā sē ūnō proeliō pulsās ac superātās esse. Si iterum experīri velint, sē iterum parātum esse dēcertāre; si pāce ūtī velint, inīquum esse dē stipendiō recūsāre, quod suā voluntāte ad id tempus pependerint.

Amīcitiam populi Rōmānī sibi ōrnāmentō et prae-sidiō, nōn dētrimentō esse oportēre, atque sē hāc spē petīsse. Si per populum Rōmānum stipendium remittātur et dēditīciī subtrahantur, nōn minus libenter sēsē recūsātūrum populi Rōmānī amīcitiam quam appetīerit.

Quod multitūdinem Germānōrum in Galliam trādūcat, id sē suī mūniendi, nōn Galliae impugnandae causā facere; eius reī testimōniō esse quod nisi rogātus nōn vēnerit, et quod bellum nōn intulerit sed dēfenderit. Sē prius in Galliam vēnisse quam populum Rōmānum.
Numquam ante hoc tempus exercitum populi Rōmānī Galliae provinciae finibus egressum. Quid sibi vellet? Cūr in suās possessionēs vēnerit? Prōvinciam suam hanc esset Galliam, sēcūt illam nostram. Ut ipsi con-
cēdī nōn oportēret, si in nostrōs finēs impetum faceret, sīc item nōs esse inīquōs, quod in suō iūre sē interpel-
lārēmus.

Quod frātres ā senātū Aeduōs appellātōs diceret, nōn sē tam barbarum neque tam imperītum esse rērum, ut nōn seīret neque bellō Allobrogum proximō Aeduōs Rōmānīs auxiliōm tulisse, neque ipsōs in hīs contentiōni-
bus quās Aeduī sōcūm etcum Sēquanīs habuissent, auxiliō populi Rōmānī ūsōs esse. Débère sē suspiciāri simulātā Caesarēm amīcitiā, quod exercitum in Galliā habet, sūi opprimēndi causā habēre. Quī nisi dēcēdat atque exercitum dēdūcat ex hīs regiōnisibus, sēsē illum nōn prō amīcō, sed prō hoste habitūrēmus.

Quod sī eum interfēcerit, multīs sēsē nōbilibus prī-
cipibusque populi Rōmānī grātum esse factūrum; id sē ab ipsis per eōrum nūntiōs compertum habēre, quōrum omnium grātiam atque amīcitiam eius morte redimere posset. Quod sī discessisset et liberam possessionēm Galliae sībī trādidisset, magnō sē illum praemīō remū-
nerātūrum et, quae cumque bella gerī vellet, sine ūlō eius labōre et perīculō cōnflectūrum.

Caesar repeats that the Romans must defend their allies. He claims prior rights in Gaul.

45. Multā ā Caesāre in eam sententiam dicta sunt, quārē negotiō désistere nōn posset: neque suam neque populi Rōmānī cōnsuērūdīnem patī utī optimē merentēs sociōs désereret, neque sē iūdicāre Galliam potius esse Ario-
vistī quam populi Rōmānī. Bellō superātōs esse
Arvernōs et Rutēnōs ā Q. Fabiō Maximō, quibus populus Rōmānus ignōvisset neque in prōvinciam redēgisset neque stipendium imposuisset. Quod si antiquissimum quodque tempus spectāri oportēret, populi Rōmānī iūtissimum esse in Galliā imperium; si iūdicium senātūs observāri oportēret, liberam dēbēre esse Galliam, quam bellō victam suīs lēgibus ūtī voluisset.

*The German cavalry make a treacherous attack. Caesар withdraws without retaliating.*

**46.** Dum haec in colloquīō geruntur, Caesāri nūntiātum est equītēs Ariovistī proprius tumulum accēdere et ad nostrōs adequītāre, lapidēs tēlaque in nostrōs coni cercere. Ĉaesār loquentīī finem fēcit sēque ad suōs recēpit suīsque imperāvit nē quod omnīnō tēlum in hostēs rēcereut. Nam etsī sine ūlō periculō legiōnis dēlēctae cum equītātū proelium fore vidēbat, tamen committen-15, dum nōn putābat ut pulsīs hostibus dici possēt eōs ā sē per fidem in colloquīō circumventōs. Posteaquam in vulgūs mīlitum ēlātum est, qua arrogāntīā in colloquīō Ariovistūs ūsus omnī Galliā Rōmānīs interdīxisset impetumque in nostrōs eīus equītēs fēcis sent, eaque rēs colloquium ut dirēmisset, multō maiōr alacritās studiumque pugnandi maiōs exercituī iniectum est.

*Caesar declines another conference. He sends envoys to Ariovistūs, who throws them into chains.*

**47.** Bidūō post Ariovistūs ad Caesarem lēgātōs mīsit: Velle sē dē his rēbus quae inter eōs agī coeptae neque25 perfectae essent agere cum eō; utī aut iterum colloquīō diem eōnstitueret aut, si id minus vellet, ex suīs lēgātīs aliquem ad sē mitteret. Colloquendī Caesārī causa visa
nōn est, et eō magis quod prīdiē eius diēi Germānī retinērī nōn potuerant quīn in nostrōs tēla conicerent. Lēgātum ex suis sēsē magnō cum periculō ad eum missūrum et hominibus ferīs obiectūrum exīstimābat.


Ariovistus declines a general engagement and tries to cut off Caesar’s supplies. His cavalry and their tactics.


Ariovistus hīs omnibus diēbus exercitum castrīs continuēt, equestri proelīō cotīdiē contendit. Genus hōc 30
erat pugnae quō sē Germanī exercuerant. Equitum mīlia erant sex, totidem numerō peditēs vēlōcissimī ac fortissimī, quōs ex omni cōpiā singulī singulōs suae salūtis causā dēlēgerant; cum hīs in proelīs versābantur. Ad cōs sē equitēs recipiēbant; hī, sī quid erat dūrius, concurrēbant; sī qui, graviōre vulnere acceptō, equō dēciderat, circumsistēbant; sī quō erat longius prōdeundum aut celerius recipiendum, tanta erat hōrum exercitātiōne celeritās, ut iūbis sublevātī equōrum cursum adaequārent.

Caesar fortīnes and garrisons a second camp beyond that of the Germans.

49. Ubi eum castrīs sē tenēre Caesar intellēxit, nē diūtius commeātū prohibērētur, ultrā eum locum, quō in locō Germanī cōnsēderant, circiter passūs sexcentōs ab hīs castrīs idōneum locum dēlēgit aciēque triplici instrūctā ad eum locum vēnit. Prīmam et secundam aciem in armīs esse, tertiam castra mūnīre iussit.

Hic locus ab hoste circiter passūs sexcentōs, utī dictum est, aberat. Eō circiter hominum sēdecim mīlia expedita cum omnī equitātū Ariovistus mīsit, quae cōpiāe nostrōs perterrērent et mūnitiōne prohibērent. Nihilō sētius Caesar, ut ante cōnstituerat, duās aciēs hostem prōpulsāre, tertiam opus perficere iussit. Mūnitiōs castrīs, duās ibi legiōnēs reliquit et partem auxiliōrum, quattuor reliquās legiōnēs in castra maiōra redūxit.

Ariovistus fights with a part of his forces, but puts off a decisive battle until the new moon.

50. Proximō diē institūtō suō Caesar ex castrīs utrisque cōpiās suās éduxit, paulumque ā maiōribus
castris prōgressus, aciem įnstrūxit hostibusque pugnandi potestātem fēcit. Ubi nē tum quidem eōs prōdire in-tellēxit, circiter merīdiem exercitum in castra redūxit. Tum dēnum Ariovistus partem suārum cōpiārum, quae castra minōra oppugnāret, mīsit. Ācriter utrīmque sūque ad vesperum pugnātum est. Sōlis occāsū suās cōpiās Ariovistus, multīs et illātīs et acceptīs vulneribus, in castra redūxit.

Cum ex captīvis quaereret Caesar quam ob rem Ariovistus proelīō nōn dēcertāret, hanc reperībat causam, quod apud Germānōs ea cōnsuētūdō esset, ut mātrēs familiae eōrum sortibus et vāticinātiōnibus dē-clārārent utrum proelium committī ex ūsū esset necne; eās ita dīcere: nōn esse fās Germānōs superāre, sī ante novam lūnam proelīō contendissent.

At last the Germans are compelled to fight. Their preparations.

51. Postrīdīē eius diēi Caesar praesidiō utrīsque castrīs quod satis esse vīsum est reliquit, omnēs ālāriōs in cōnspectū hostium prō castrīs minōribus cōnstituit, quod minus multītūdine mīlitum legiōnāriōrum prō hostium numerō valēbat, ut ad speciēm ālāriīs ātērē tur; ipse triplīcī įnstrūctā aciē ūsque ad castra hostium accessit.

52. Caesar singulīs legiōnibus singulōs lēgātōs et quaeōrem praeśēcit, utī eōs testēs suae quisque virtūtis habēret; ipse ā dextrō cornū, quod eam partem minimē firmam hostium esse animadvertērat, proelium 5 commīsit. Ita nostri acriter in hostēs signō datō impetum fēcērunt, itaque hostēs repente celeriterque prōcurrērunt, ut spatium pīla in hostēs coniciendi nōn darētur. Rēiectīs pīlis comminus gladiīs pugnātum est. At Germānī celeriter ex consuētūdine suā phalange factā impetūs gladiōrum excēpērunt. Reperti sunt complūrēs nostri, qui in phalangem insilirent et scūta manibus revellentur et désuper vulnerārent.

Cum hostium aciēs ā sinistrō cornū pulsa atque in fugam coniecta esset, ā dextrō cornū vehementer multītūdine suōrum nostram aciem premēbant. Id cum animadvertisset P. Crassus adulēscēns, qui equitātūi praeerat, quod expeditior erat quam iī qui inter aciem versābantur tertiam aciem labōrātibus nostrī subsidiō mēsit.

The Germans are utterly defeated, and suffer great loss. Caesar recovers his envoys.

53. Ita proelium restitūtum est, atque omnēs hostēs terga vertērunt neque prius fugere dēstitērunt quam ad flūmen Rhēnum, mīlia passuum eō locō ciroter quīnque, pervēnērunt. Ibi perpaucī aut viribus consiōsi trānāre contendērunt aut līntribus inventīs sībi 25 salūtem reperrerunt. In hīs fuit Ariovistus, qui nāvicularēm delīgātam ad ripam nactus eā profūgit; reliquōs omnēs cōnsecūtī equitēs nostrī interfēcērunt.

Duæ fuçrunt Ariovistī uxōrēs, ūna Suēba nātiōne,
Battle between Caesar and Ariovistus

- First Camp of Ariovistus
- Second Camp of Ariovistus
- Caesar's large Camp
- Caesar's small Camp
- The Roman Legionaries
- The Roman Auxiliaries
- Cavalry under Crassus
- The Germans
- Wagons of the Germans

Rappertsweiler
Zellenberg
Ostheim
Bebenheim

Flight of the Germans

Scale of MILES

Romans
Helvetians
quam domŏ sēcum ēdŭxerat, altera Nŏrica, rēgis Voc-
ciōnis soror, quam in Galliā dŭxerat ā frātre nissam;
utraque in ea fugā perīt; duae filiae hārum altera
occīsa, altera capta est.
5 C. Valerius Procillus cum ā cūstŏdibus in fugā
trīnīs catēnīs vincĭto traheŏtur, in ipsum Caesarem
hostēs equitātū perseuerentem incidit. Quae quidem
rēs Caesari nōn minōrem quam ipsa victŏria volup-
tătem attulit, quod hominem honestissimum prŏvinciæ
10Galliae, suum familiārem et hospitēm, ēreptum ē mani-
bus hostium sibi restitūtum vidēbat, neque eius cala-
mitāte dē tantā voluptāte et grātulātiōne quicquam
fortūna dēminuerat. Hic sē praesente dē sē ter
sortibus cōnsultum dīcēbat, utrum īgni statim necārē-
15tur an in aliud tempus reservārētur; sortium beneficiō
sē esse incoluṣem. Item M. Metius repertus et ad
eum reductus est.

On their way home many of the Suebi are slain by the Ubii. Caesar
returns to Hither Gaul.

54. Hŏc proelīo trāns Rhēnum nūntiātō, Suēbī, quī
ad ripās Rhēnī vēnerant, domum revertī coepĕrant;
20quōs Ubīi, quī proximī Rhēnīm incolunt, perterrītōs
insecūtī magnūm ex his numerum occīdērant.

Caesar, ūnā aestāte duōbus maximīs bellīs confectīs,
mātūrius paulō quam tempūs annī postulābat in
hiberna in Sēquanōs exercitum dēdŭxīt; hībernīs
25Labiēnum praeposuit; ipse in citeriōrem Galliam ad
conventūs agendōs prefectus est.
BOOK II

I. THE CAMPAIGN AGAINST THE BELGIANS, 57 B.C.

The Belgians, fearing the Romans and instigated by the Gauls, form a league against Caesar.

1. Cum esset Caesar in citeriore Galliā, ita uti supra dēmōnstrāvimus, crēbri ad cum rūmōrēs afferēbantur, litterīisque item Labiēnī certior fīebat omnēs Belgās, quam tertiam esse Galliae partem dīxerāmus, contrā populum Rōmānum coniūrāre obsidēsque inter sē dare.

Coniūrāndī hās esse causās: prīmum quod verērentur nē omni pācātā Galliā ad eōs exercitus noster addücerētur; deīnde quod ā nōnnullīs Gallīs sollicitārentur, partim quī, ut Germānōs diūtius in Galliā versārī nōluerant, ita populī Rōmānī exercitum hiemāre atque inveterāscere in Galliā molestē ferēbant, partim quī mōbilitāte et levitāte animī novīs imperiīs studēbant; ā nōnnullīs etiam, quod in Galliā ā potentiōribus atque eīs quī ad condūcendōs hominēs facultātēs habēbant vulgō rēgna occupābantur, quī minus facile eam rem imperiō nostrō cōnsequī poterant.

Caesar enrolls new legions and sets out at once against the Belgians.

2. Hīs nūntiīs litterīisque commōtus, Caesar duās legiōnēs in citeriōre Galliā nōvās cōnscripsit et initā aestāte, in ulteriōrem Galliam quī dēdūceret, Q. Pedium lēgātum misit. Ipse, cum prīnum pābulī cōpia esse inciperet, ad exercitum vēnit. Dāt negotium Senonibus
reliquisque Gallis, qui finitimi Belgis erant, uti ea quae apud eós gerantur cognoscant seque de his rēbus certior-rem faciant. Hi cōnstanter omnēs núntiāvērunt manūs cōgi, exercitum in ūnum locum conduci. Tum vērō 5 dubitantum non existimāvit quīn ad eós proficīscerētur. Rē frūmentāriā comparātā castra movet diebusque cirkiter quīndecim ad finēs Belgārum pervēnit.

*The Remi join the Romans; they report an alliance between the Germans and the Belgians.*

3. Eō cum dē improviso celeriusque omni opinio vēnisset, Rēmī, quī proximi Galliae ex Belgis sunt, ad eum lēgātōs Iccium et Andecomborium, primōs civitātis suae, misērunt, quī dicerent sē suaque omnia in fidem atque in potestātem populi Rōmānī permettere, neque sē cum Belgīs reliquīs consēnsisse neque contra populum Rōmānum omnīnō consiūrāsse, 15 parātōsque esse et obsīdēs dare et imperāta facere et oppidīs recipere et frūmentō cēterisque rēbus iuvāre; reliquōs omnēs Belgās in armīs esse, Germānōsque qui cis Rhēnum incolant sēsē cum his consiūnxisse, tantumque esse eōrum omnium furōrem, ut nē Suessiōnēs qui- 20 dem, frātrēs consanguineōsque suōs, qui eōdem iūre et isdem lēgibus ûtantur, ūnum imperium ūnumque magistrātum cum ipsīs habeant, dēterrēre potuerint quīn cum his consēntirent.

*The history of the Belgians. The number of troops furnished by the different tribes.*

4. Cum ab his quaereret quae cīvitātēs quantaeque 25 in armīs essent et quid in bellō possent, sic reperiebat: plērōsque Belgās esse ortōs a Germānis Rhēnumque antiquitus traductōs propter locī fertilitātem ibi consē-disse, Gallōsque qui ea loca incolerent expulisse, sōlōs-
que esse quî patrum nostrârum memoria omnì Galliá vexitâ Teutonös Cimbrósque intrâ finès suös ingredi prohibuerint; quâ ex ré fierí uti eârum rôrum memoria magnam sibi auctoritatem maguósque spiritüs in ré 5 militâri súmerent.

Dê numeró eòrum omnia sê habère explórita Rëmi dicebant, propterea quod propinquitâtibus affinitâti-busque coniunctâ, quantam quisque multitüdinem in commune Belgârum concilio ad id bellum pollicitus sit, cognöverint. Plûrimum inter eòs Bellovaciös et virtûte et auctorîtate et homiñum numeró valère; hös posse cóncicere armâta mília centum; pollicitöös ex eò numeró élêcta mília sexâgintâ tôtiusque bellî imperium sibi postulâre. Snessionës suös esse finitimös; finës lâtissimös ferâceismösque agrös possidère. Apud eòs fuisse règem nostrâ etiam memoriâ Diviciácum, tôtius Galliae potentissimum, qui cum magna partis hárûm regionûm, tum etiam Britanniae imperium obtinuerit; nunc esse règem Galbam; ad hune propter iùstitiam 20 prûdentiamque summam tôtius bellî omnium voluntâte déferrî; oppida habère numeró xii, pollicëri mília armâta quinquagintâ; totidem Nerviös, qui maximë ferî inter ipsös habeantur longissimëque absint; quindecim mília Atrebâtës, Amìånös decem mília, Mori- 25 nös xxv mília, Menapiös vii mília, Caletös x mília, Veliocassës et Viromanduös totidem, Aduatucös decem et novem mília; Condrüsös, Eburôüês, Caeroesös, Pae- manös, qui ûnö nòmine Germâni appellantur, arbitrâri ad xl mília.

Caesar sends Diviciacus to lay waste the land of the Bellovaci. He himself encamps across the river Axona.

5. Caesar Rëmos cohortátus liberáliterque òràtione prosecútus omnem senátum ad sè convenire principum-
que liberös obsidēs ad sē adducī iussit. Quae omnia ab hīs diligenter ad diem facta sunt. Ipse Diviciācem Aeduum magnopere cohortātus docet, quantopere reipublicae communísque salūtis intersit manūs hostium distinērī, nē cum tantā multitūdine ūnō tempore coēnābatur. Quae omnia ab hiis diligentē ad diem facta sunt. Ipse Diviciācum Aeduum magnopere cohortātus docet, quantopere reipublicae communísque salūtis intersit manūs hostium distinērī, nē cum tantā multitūdine ūnō tempore confluēndum sit. Id fierī posse, si suās copiās Aedui in fines Bellovacōrum intrōdūxerint et eōrum agrōs populiāri coēperint. His mandātīs eum ā sē dīmittit.

Postquam omnēs Belgārum copiās in ūnum locum coāctās ad sē venīre vidit neque iam longē abesse ab 10 eīs quōs miserat explōrātōribus et ā Rēmis cognōvit, flūmen Axonam, quod est in extrēmis Rēmōrum finibus, exercitum trādūcere mātūrāvit atque ibi castra posuit. Quae ēs et latus ūnum castrōrum ripēs flūminis mūniēbat, et post eum quae erant tūta ab hostibus reddēbat, et 15 commeātūs ā Rēmis reliquisque civitātibus ut sine periculō ad eum portāri posseunt efficiēbat.

In eō flūmine pōns erat. Ibi praesidium pōnit et in alterā parte flūminis Q. Titūriūm Sabinum lēgātum cum sex cohortibus relinquit; castra in altītūdinem pedum duodecim vallō fossāque duodevīginī pedum mūniōre iubet.

The Belgians attack Bibrāx, a town of the Remi, who appeal to Caesar.

Cum finem oppugnandi nox fœcesset, Icicius Rēmus, summa nōbilitātē et grātiā inter suōs, qui tum oppidō praefuerat, unus ex eis, qui lēgūtī dē pāce ad Caesarem vēnerant, nūntium ad eum mittit: nisi subsidium sibi 5 summittātūr, sēsē diūtius sustinēre nōn posse.

**Battle on the Axona (Aisne)**

Caesar sends help. The Belgians raise the siege and encamp near Caesar.

7. Eō dē mediā nocte Caesar, īsdem ducibus īsus qui nūntiī ab Iciciō vēnerant, Numidās et Crētas sagittāriōs et funditōrēs Baleārēs subsidīō oppidānīs mittit. Quōrum adventū et Rēmis cum spē dēfēsionīs studiūm 10 prōpugnandī accessit, et hostibus ēadem dē causā spēs potiundī oppidī discessit. Itaque paulisper apud oppiūdum morāti agrōsque Rēmōrum dēpopulātī, omnibus
vicis aedificiisque quo adire poterant incēnsīs, ad castra Caesaris omnibus cōpiīs contendērunt et ā mīlibus passuum minus duōbus castra posuērunt; quae castra, ut fūmō atque ignibus significābātur, amplius mīlibus passuum octō in lātitūdinem patēbant.

Caesar, after testing the enemy’s strength, prepares for battle.

8. Cacsar prīmō et propter multītūdinem hostīum et propter eximiam opinīōnem virtūtis proeliō supersedēre statuit; cotīdiē tamen equestribus proeliīs, quid hostīs virtūte posset et quid nostri audērent, periclitābātur.

Ubi nostrōs nōn esse ìnferiōrēs intellēxit, locō prō castrīs ad aciem ĭnstruendām nātūrā opportūnō atque idōneō, quod is collis ubi castra posita erant paululum ex plānitiē ēditus tantum adversus in lātitūdinem patēbat, quantum locī acīēs ĭnstrūcta occupāre poterat, atque ex utrāque parte lateris dēiectūs habēbat et in frontem lēnīter fastīgātus paulātim ad plānitiem redībat, ab utrōque laterē eius collis trānsversam fossam obdūxit circiter passuum quadringleōrum et ad extrēmās fossās castella cōnstituit ibique tormenta collocāvit, nē, cum aciem ĭnstrūxisset, hostēs, quod tantum multi-tūdine poterant, ā lateribus puguantēs suōs circumvenīre possent.

Hoc factō, duābus legiōnibus quās proxīmē cōnscripserat in castrīs relīctīs, ut, si quō opus esset, subsidiō dūcī possent, reliquās sex legiōnēs prō castrīs in acīē cōnstituit. Hostēs item suās cōpiās ex castrīs ēductās ĭnstrūxerant.

The battle is put off. The Belgians try to cross the Axona.

9. Palūs erat nōn magna inter nostrum atque hostīum exercitum. Hanĉ si nostri trānsīrent hostēs exspectābant; nostri autem, si ab illīs initium trānseundi fieret,
ut impedítos aggrederentur paráti in armís erant. Interim proelió equestri inter duás aciés contendébátur. Ubi neutrí tránseundī initium faciunt, secundióre equitum proelió nostrīs, Caesar suōs in castra ređúxit.

5 Hostēs prótinus ex eō locō ad flūmen Axonam contendērunt, quod esse post nostra castra dēmōnstrātum est. Ibi vadīs repertīs partem suārum cōpiārum trādūcerē cōnātī sunt eō cōnsiliō, ut, si possent, castellum cui praeerat Q. Titūrius lēgātus expugnārēnt pontemque intercinderent; si minus potuissent, agrōs Rēmōrum populārēntur, qui magnō nōbis ūsū ad bellum gerendum erant, commeātūque nostrōs prohibērunt.

_Caesar prevents the enemy from crossing the river. They decide to return home._

10. Caesar certior factus ā Titūriō omnem equitātum et levis armāturæ Numidās, funditōrēs sagittāriōsque ponte trādūcit atque ad eōs contendit. Acriter in eō locō pugnātum est. Hostēs impedítos nostrī in flūmine aggressī magnum eōrum numerum occīdērunt; per eōrum corpora reliquōs audācissimē trānsire cōnātēs multitūdine tēlōrum reppulērunt; prīmōs qui trānsī erant equitātū circumventōs interfecērunt.

Hostēs ubi et dē expugnāndō oppidō et dē flūmine trānseundō spem sē fefellisse intelligentērunt neque nostrōs in locum inīquiōrem prōgredi pugnandī causā vidērunt atque ipsōs rēs frumentāria dēficere coept, cōnsiliō 25 convocātō constituerunt optimum esse domum suam quemque revertī, et quōrum in finēs prīmum Rōmānī exercitum intrōdūxissent, ad eōs dēfendendōs undique convenērent, ut potius in suīs quam in aliēnīs finibus dēcertārent et domesticīs cōpiīs reī frumentāriae ūteren- 30 tur. Ad eam sententiam cum reliquis causīs haec
quoque ratiō eōs dēdūxit, quod Dīviciācum atque Aeduōs finibus Beilovacōrum appropinquāre cognōve-rant. His persuāderī ut dīūtius morārentur neque suīs auxilium ferrent nōn poterat.

The Romans inflict heavy losses on the retreating Belgians.


Hī novissimōs adorērī et multā milliā passuum prośe-cūtī, magnam multitūdīnem eōrum fugientium con-ciderunt, cum ab ēxtrēmō agmine ad quōs ventum erat cōnsisterent fortiterque ĵmpetum nostrōrum militum 20 sustinerēnt, priōrēs, quod abesse ā perīcūlō vidērēntur neque ūllā necessitāte neque imperiō continērentur, exaudītō clāmōre perturbātīs ōrdinibus, omnēs in fugā sībi praesidium pōnerent. Ita sine ūllō perīcūlō tantam eōrum multitūdīnem nostrī interfēcērunt quantum fuit 25 diēī spatium; sub occasūmque sōlis sequī dēstiterunt sēque in castra, ut erat imperātum, recēpērunt.

Caesar captures Noviodunum. The Suessiones surrender to him.

12. Postrūdiō eīus diēī Caesar, prīusquam sē hostēs ex terrōre ac fugā recipērunt, in finēs Suessiōnum, quī
proximi Rēmis erant, exercitum dūxit et magnō itinere cōnfectō ad oppidum Noviodūnum contendit. Id ex itinere oppugnāre cōnātus, quod vacuum ā défēnsōri-bus esse audiēbat, propter lātītūdinem fossae mūrique altītūdinem, paucīs défendentibus, expugnāre nōn potuit. Castrīs mūnitīs vīneās agere, quaeque ad oppugnandum ūsui erant, comparāre coepit.

Interim omnis ex fugā Suessionūm multitūdō in oppidum proximā nocte convenit. Celeriter vīneās ad oppidum āctīs, aggere iactō turribusque cōnstitūtīs, magnitūdine operum, quae neque viderant ante Gallī neque audierant, et celeritāte Rōmānōrum permōtī lēgātōs ad Caesarem dē dēditione mittunt et, petenti-bus Rēmis ut cōnservārentur, impetrant.

13. Caesar, obsidibus acceptīs prīmīs civitātīs, atque ipsius Galbae rēgis duōbus filīsīs, armīisque omnibus ex oppidō trāditīs, in dēditionem Suessionūs accēpit exerci-tumque in Bellovacōs dūcit. Quī cum sē suaque omnia in oppidum Brātusvantium contulissent atque ab eō oppidō Caesar cum exercitū circiter mīlia passuum quīnque abesset, omnēs maiōrēs nātū ex oppidō égressi manūs ad Caesarem tendere et vōce significāre coepĕrunt sēsē in eius fidem ac potestātem venire nec contrā popu-llum Rōmānum armīs contendere. Item, cum ad oppi-dum accessisset castraque ibi pōneret, puerī mulierēsque ex mūrō passīs manibus suō mōre pācem ā Rōmānīs petiérunt.

_Diviciacus intercedes with Caesar in behalf of the Bellovaci._

14. Prō hīs Diviciācus (nam post diessum Belgā-rum dimissīs Aeduōrum cōpiās ad eum revertērat) facit verba: Bellovacōs omnī tempore in fidē atque amīcītiā civitātīs Aeduae fuisse; impulsōs a suīs princīpibus,
qui dicerent Aeduós à Caesare in servitütem redactós omnés indignitātēs contumēliāsque perferre, et ab Aeduís défécisse et populō Rōmānō bellum intulisse. Quī eius cōnsilī principēs fuissent, quod intel·legerent quantam calamitātem civitātī intulissent, in Britanniam profūgis. Petere nōn sōlum Bellovacōs, sed etiam prō his Aeduós, ut suā clēmentiā ac mānsuētūdine in eōs ūtātur. Quod si fēcerit, Aeduōrum auctōritātem apud omnēs Belgās amplificāturum, quōrum auxiliīs atque opibus, si qua bella inciderint, sustentāre cōn-10 suērīnt.

*Caesar spares the Bellovacī and the Ambiani.* The Nervii defy him; their characteristics.

15. Caesar honōris Dīviciāci atque Aeduōrum causā sēsē eōs in fidem receptūrum et cōnservāturum dīxit, et quod erat cīvitās magnā inter Belgās auctōritāte atque hominum multitūdine praestābat, sescentōs 15 obsidēs poposcit. Hīs trāditīs omnibusque armīs ex oppidō cōllātīs, ab eō locō in finēs Ambiānōrum pervēnit, qui sē suaque omnia sine morā dēdidē-runt.

Eōrum finēs Nervīi attingēbant; quōrum dē nātūrā mōribusque Caesar cum quaereret, sic reperiēbat: nū-lum adītum esse ad eōs mercātōribus; nihil patī vīni reliquārumque rērum ad lūxuriam pertinentium in-ferrī, quod eīs rēbus relanguēscere animōs eōrum et remittī virtūtem existimārent; esse hominēs ferōs mag-25 naeque virtūtis, increpitāre atque incūsāre reliquōs Belgās, quī sē populō Rōmānō dēdidissent patri-amque virtūtem prōiēcissent; cōnfīrmare sēsē neque lēgātōs missūrōs neque ūllam condiciōnem pācis acceptūrōs.
Caesar learns that the Nervii and their allies are awaiting his arrival across the Sabi.

16. Cum per eorum finēs triduum iter fēcisset, inveniēbat ex captīvis Sabiīm flūmen a castris suis nōn amplius milia passuum decem abesse; trāns id flūmen omnēs Nerviōs consēdisse adventunquē ibi Rōmānōrum exspectāre unā cum Atrebātibus et Viromanduīs, finitiūmis suīs (nam his utrisque persuāserant, utī eandem bellī fortūnam experīrentur); exspectāri etiam ab his Aduatucōrum cōpiās atque esse in itinere; mulierēs, quīque per aetātem ad pugnam inuītēs vidērentur, in eum locum coniēcisse quō propter palūdēs exercitui aditus nōn esset.

The Nervii learn about Caesar’s marching order from spies. They plan to attack him.

17. His rēbus cognitis, explōrātōrēs centurīōnēsque praemittit qui locum idōneum castris dēligant. Cum ex dēditūciīs Belgīs reliquisque Gallīs complūrēs Caesa-
rem secūtī unā iter facerent, quīdam ex his, ut postea ex captīvis cognitum est, eōrum diērum consuetūdine itineris nostrī exercitūs perspectā, noctē ad Nerviōs pervēnērunt atque his dēmōnstrārunt inter singulās legionēs impedimentōrum magnum numerum intercē-
derē, neque esse quicquam negotū, cum prīma legiō in castra vēnisset reliquaeque legiōnēs magnum spatium abessent, hanc sub sarcinis adorīrī; quā pulsā impedimentīisque diēptūs, futūrum ut reliquae contrā consisterē non audērent.

Adiuvābat etiam eōrum consiliūm quī rem dēferēbant, quod Nervii antiquītus, cum equitātū nihil possent (neque enim ad hōc tempus ei rei student, sed quicquid possunt pedestribus valent cōpiās), quō facilius fīnitī-
morum equitatum, si-praedandì causã ad eòs vênissent, impedirent, teneris arboribus incisis atque inflexis crébrisque in látitūdinem rámìs ēnātìs et rubìs sentibusque interiectis, effecerant ut īnstar mūri hae saepēs mūnimentum praebearent, quō nōn modo nōn intrāri, sed nē perspicī quidem posset. His rébus cum īter agminis nostrī impedīretur, nōn omissendum sibi cōnsilium Nervīi exīstimāverunt.

The Roman camp. The enemy form an ambuscade in the woods.


The Nervī suddenly attack the Romans while they are fortifying their camp.

19. Caesar, equitātū praemissō, subsequēbātur omni-bus cōpiīs; sed ratiō ērdōque agminis aliter sē habēbat ac Belgae ad Nervīōs dētulerant. Nam quod hostibus appropinquābat, cōnsuētūdine suā Caesar sex legiōnēs expeditās dūcēbat; post eās tōtiōs exercitūs impedimenta collocārat; inde duae legiōnēs quae proxīmē cōnscriptae erant tōtum agmen claudēbant praesidiōque impedīmentīs erant.

Equitēs nostrī cum funditoribus sagittāriīisque flūmen trānsgressi cum hostium equitātū proelium commīsē-
runt. Cum sē illī identidem in silvās ad suōs recipere
tent ac rūrsus ex silvā in nostrōs impetum facerent, neque nostrī longius quam quem ad finem porrēcta loca 
aperta pertinēbant cēdentēs insequī audērent, interim 5 legiōnēs sex quae prūmae vēnerant opere dimēnsō castra 
mūnire coepērunt.

Ubi prīma impedimenta nostrī exercītūs ab eīs qui in 
silvās abditī latēbant visa sunt, quod tempus inter eōs 
committendī proelī convēnerat, ita ut intrā silvās aciem 10 ōrdinēsque cōnstituerant atque ipsī sēsē cōnfīrmāverant, 
subitō omnibus cōpiīs prōvolāvērant impetumque in nostrōs equitēs fēcērunt. His facile pulsīs ac prōturbā-
tīs, incrēdibilī celeritāte ad flūmen dēcucurrērunt, ut 15 paene ūnō tempore et ad silvās et in flūmine et iam in 
manibus nostrīs hostēs vidērentur. Eādem autem 

celeritāte adversō colle ad nostra castra atque eōs quī 
in opere occupātī erant contendērunt.

Caesar's personal efforts and the discipline of the legions prevent a panic.

20. Caesarī omnia ūnō tempore erant agenda: vēxill-


tum prōpōnendum, signum tubā dandum, ab opere 20 revocandi militēs, quī paulō longius aggeris petendi 


causā prōcesserant arcessendī, aciēs īnstruenda, militēs 


cohortandī, signum dandum. Quārum rērum magnam 


partem temporis brevitās et incursus hostium impediē-


bat.

25 Hīs difficultātibus dueae rēs erant subsidiō, scientia 


atque ūsus militum, quod superiōribus proeliīs exer-


citātī, quid fieri oportēret nōn minus commodē ipsī sibi 


praescribere quam ab aliīs docēri poterant, et quod ab 


opere singulīsque legiōnibus singulōs lēgātōs Caesar 30 discēdere nisi mūnītīs castrīs vetuerat. Hī propter
propinquitatem et celeritatem hostium nihil iam Cae-
saris imperium exspectabant, sed per se quae vidéban-
tur administrabant.

*The Romans hastily prepare for battle.*

21. Caesar necessariis rebus imperátis ad cohortandós
militês quam in partem fors obtulit dēcucurrit, et ad s

**Battle on the Sabis (Sambre)**

![Map of the Battle of the Sabis](image)

legionem decimam dēvēnit. Militês non longiōre
ōratio ne cohortātus quam uti suae prīstīnae virtūtis
memoriam retinērunt neu perturbārentur animō hos-
tiumque impetum fortiter sustinērunt, quod non longius
hostēs aberant quam quō tēlum adigī posset, proelī com-
tendi signum dēdit. Atque in alteram partem item
cohortandī causā prefectus pugnantibus occurrit.
Temporis (tanta) fuit exiguitas hostiumque tam paratus ad dimicandum animus, ut non modo ad insignia accommodanda, sed etiam ad galeas induendas scutisque tegmenta detrahenda tempus defuerit. Quam quisque ab opere in partem casu devenit quaeque prima signa conspexit, ad haec constuit, ne in quaerendis suis pugnandi tempus dimitteret.

Difficulties of the situation.

22. Instructo exercitu magis ut loci natura deiectusque collis et necessitas temporis, quam ut rei militaris ratio atque ordo postulabat, cum diversae legiōnes aliae alia in parte hostibus resisterent saepibusque densissimis, ut ante demonstravimus, interiectis prospectus impediretur, neque certa subsidia collocari nec quid in quaque parte opus esset prōvideri neque ab uno omnia imperia administrari poterant. Itaque in tantâ rerum iniquitate fortūnae quoque eventus variī sequēbantur.

The battle goes on with different results in different parts of the field.

23. Legiōnis nonae et decimae militēs, ut in sinistra parte acie constiterant, pilis ēmissis cursu ac lassitudine examinatōs vulneribusque confectos Atrebātēs (nam eis ea pars obvenerat) celeriter ex locō superiore in flūmen compulerunt et tranīre coēntēs insecūti gladiis magnam partem eōrum impedītam interfecerunt. Ipsī tranīre flūmen non dubitāverunt et in locum iniquum prōgressi rūsuras resistentēs hostēs, redintegrato prōelio, in fugam coniecerunt. Item aliā in parte diversae duae legiōnes, undecima et octāva, prōfligātīs Viromanduīs, quibus cum erant congressī, ex locō superiore in ipsis flūminīs rūpis prōeliābantur.

At tōtīs ferē castrīs ā fronte et ā sinistra parte
The Romans are hard pressed. Caesar's personal valor turns the tide.

25. Caesar à decimae legiōnis cohortātiōne ad dextrum cornū profectus, ubi suōs urgērī signīisque in

---

nūdātis, cum in dextrō cornū legiō duodecima et nōn magnō ab ea intervāllō septima cōnstitisset, omnēs Nerviī conferētissimō agmine duce Boduognātō, qui summam imperī tenēbat, ad eum locum contendērunt; quōrum pars ab āperto latere legiōnēs circumvenīre, pars summum castrōrum locum pētere cœpit.

Rout of the Roman cavalry. The Treveri return home and report Caesar's defeat.

24. Eōdem tempore equitēs nostrī levisque arma-tūrae peditēs, qui cum eis ūnā fuerant, quōs prīmō hostium impetū pulsōs dīixeram, cum sē in castra re-ciperent, adversīs hostibus occurrēbant ac rūrsus aliam in partem fugam petēbant, et cālōnēs, qui ā decumānā portā ac summō iugō collis nostrōs victōrēs flūmen trānsisse cōnspexerant, praedandī causā ēgressī, cum respexissent et hostēs in nostrīs castrīs versāri vidissent, praeclīpitēs fugae sēsē mandābant. Simul eōrum, qui cum impedīmentīs veniēbant, clāmor fremitusque oriēbātur, aliīque aliam in partem perterriti fērebantur.

Quibus omnibus rēbus permōtī equitēs Trēverī, quōrum inter Gallōs virtūtis opīniō est singularīs, qui auxiliī causā à civitāte ad Caesarem missī vēnerant, cum multitudīne hostium castra complōrī nostra, legiōnēs premī et paene circumventās tenērī, cālōnēs, equitēs, funditōrēs, Numidās diversōs dissipātōsque in omnēs partēs fugere vidissent, déspērātīs nostrīs rēbus domum contendērunt; Rōmānōs pulsōs superātōsque, castrīs impedīmentīisque eōrum hostēs potītōs civitātī renūn-tiāvērunt.
únùm locum collātīs duodecimae legiōnis cónfertōs militēs sibi ipsōs ad pugnam esse impedimentō vidit, quártae cohortis omnibus centuriōnibus occisis, signiferō interfecτō, signō āmissō, reliquo rum cohortium omnibus ferē centuriōnibus aut vulnerātīs aut occisis, in hīs prīmipilō P. Sextīo Baculō, fortissimō virō, multīs gravibusque vulneribus cónfectō, ut iam sē sustinēre nōn posset, reliquōs esse tardiorēs et nōnnullōs ā novissimīs désertō proeliō excēdere ac tēla vitāre; hostēs neque ā fronte ex inferiorē locō subeuntēs intermittere et ab utrōque latere īnstāre et rem esse in angustō vidit, neque ūllum esse subsidium quod summittī posset; scūtō ā novissimīs ūnī militī dētractō, quod ipse eō sine scūtō vēnerat, in prīmam aciem prōcessit centuriōnibusque nōminātim appellātīs reliquōs cohortātus militēs signa īnferre et manipulōs laxāre iussit, quō facilius gladiīs uti possent. Cuius adventū spē illātā militibus ac redintegrātō animō, cum prō sē quisque in cōnspectī imperātōris etiam in ex trēmīs suīs rēbus operam nāvāre cuperet, paulum hostium impetus tardātus est.

_Labienus sends the tenth legion to Caesar's help._

26. _Caesar cum septimam legiōnem, quae iūxtā cōnstiterat, ītem urgērī ab hoste vīdisset, tribūnōs militum monuīt ut paulātīm sēsē legiōnēs coniunget īnter hostēs īnferrent. Quō factō cum aliīs aliī subsidium ferrent neque tinērent nē āversī ab hoste circunveniērentur, audāciōs resistere ac fortius pugnāre coepērunt._

_Interim militēs legiōnēm duārum, quae in novissimō agmine praesidiō impedimentīs fuerant, proeliō nūn tiātō cursū incītātō in summō colle ab hostibus cōn-
spiciēbantur, et T. Labiēnus castrīs hostium potītus et ex locō superiōre quae rēs in nostrīs castrīs gerentur cōspicātus, decimam legiōnem subsidiō nostrīs mīsit. Quī cum ex equītum et cālōnum fugā quō in locō rēs esset quantōque in periculō et castra et legiōnēs et 5 imperātor versārētur cognōvissent, nihil ad celeritātem sibi reliquī fēcērunt.

_The Nervii, in spite of valiant fighting, are completely defeated._

27. Hōrum adventū tanta rērum commūtātiō est facta ut nostri, etiam quī vulneribus cōnfectī prōcu-
   buissent, scūtīs innīxī proelium redintegrārent, cālōnēs 10 
   perterritōs hostēs cōspicātī etiam inermēs armātīs 
   occurrerent, equitēs vērō, ut turpītūdinem fugae vir-
   tūte dēlērent, omnibus in locīs pugnae sē legiōnāriīs 
   militibus praeferrent.

   At hostēs etiam in extrēmā spē salūtis tautam virtū-
   tem praesitērunt, ut, cum prīmi eōrum cecidissent, 
   proximī iacentibus insisterent atque ex eōrum corpor-
   bus pugnāreut; hīs dēiectīs et coacervātīs cadāveribus, 
   quī superessent ut ex tumulō tēla in nostrīs conicerent 
   et pilā intercepta remitterent; ut nōn nēquīquam tantae 20 
   virtūtīs homīnēs iūdicārī dēbērent ausōs esse trānsīre 
   lātissīmum flūmen, ascenderé altissīmās ripās, subīrē 
   inīquissīmum locum; quae facilia ex difficillimīs animī 
   magnitūdō redēgerat.

_The Nervii sue for peace and are treated leniently. Their losses._

28. Hōc proelīō factō et prope ad interneciōnem 25 
   gente ac nōmine Nerviōrum redāctō maiōrēs nātū, quōs 
   ūnā cum puerīs mulieribusque in aestuāria ac palūdēs 
   coniectōs dīrexerāmus, hāc pugnā nūntiātā cum victōribus 
   nihil impedītum, victīs nihil tūtum arbitrārentur, om-
nium qui supererant cōnsēnsū lōgātōs ad Caesarem misērunt sēque ei dēdīderunt, et in commemorandā
civitātis calamitāte ex sescentīs ad trēs senātōrēs, ex
hominum mīlibus LX vix ad quīngentōs quī arma ferre
possent sēsē redāctōs esse dixērunt. Quōs Caesar, ut
in miserōs ac supplicēs ūsus misericordiā vidērētur,
diligentissimē cōnservāvit suisque finibus atque oppidis
ūtī iussit et fīnitimīs imperāvit ut ab iniūriā et maleficiō
sē suōsque prohibērēnt.

The Aduatuci collect all their forces into one stronghold. Their history.

29. Aduatuci, dē quibus suprā scripsimus, cum omnibus cōpiīs auxiliō Nerviis venīrent, hāc pugnā nūntiātā

Siege of the Fortress of the Aduatuci

ex itinere domum revertērunt; cūntīs oppidīs castellīsque dēsertīs sua omnia in ķnum oppidum ēgregiē
nātūrā mūnītum contulērunt. Quod cum ex omnibus
in circuitū partibus altissimās rūpēs dēiectūsque habēret, unā ex parte. lenīter acclīvis aditus in lātitūdinem nōn amplius ducentōrum pedum reliquēbātur; quem locum duplici altissimō mūrō mūnierant; tum magnī ponderis saxa et praeacūtās trabēs in mūrō collocābant.

Ipsi erant ex Cimbrīs Teutōnīisque prōgnātī, qui cūm iter in prōvinciam nostram atque Italiam facerent, eīs impedimentīs quae sēcum agere ac portāre nōn poterant citrā flūmen Rhēnum dēpositis, cūstōdiam ex suīs ac praeasidium sex mīlia hominum unā reliquērunt. Hī 1ō post eōrum obitum multōs annōs ā finitimīs exagītātī, cum aliās bellum īnferrent, aliās illātum dēfenderent, cōnsēnsū eōrum omnium pāce factā, hunc sībi domiciliō locum dōlēgērunt.

They intrench themselves and laugh at the Roman siege works.

30. Ac prīmō adventū exercītūs nostri crēbrās ex 15 oppidō excursionēs faciēbant parvuλīisque proeliīs cum nostrīs contendēbant; posteā vāllo pedum duodecim in circuitī quīndecim mīlium passuum crēbrīisque castellīs circummūnītī oppidō sese continēbant.

Ubi vīneis actīs aggere extrūctō turrim procul cōn- 20 stituī vidērunt, prīmum irriδēre ex mūrō atque increpītāre vōcibus, quod tanta māchinātiō ā tantō spatīo īnstituerētur: quibusnam manibus aut quibus viribus praeśertim hominēs tautulae statūrae (nam plērumque hominibus Gallīs prae magnitūdine corporum sūrum 25 brevitās nostra contemptuī est) tantī oneris turrim in mūrō sēsē collocāre posse cōnfinderent?

When they see the tower advance, they offer to surrender, but wish to keep their arms.

31. Ubi vērō movērī et appropinquāre moenibus vidērunt, novā atque inūsītātā speciē commōtī lēgātōs
ad Caesarem dē pāce mīsērunt, quī ad hunc modum locūtī: nōn sē existimārē Rōmānōs sine ope dēvīnā bellum gerere, quī tantae altitūdinīs māchinātiōnēs tantā celeritātē prōmovēre possent, sē suaque omnia eōrum potestātī permittere dixērunt. Unum petere ac dēprecārī: sī forte prō sūa clēmentiā ac mūnsuētūdīne, quam īpsi ab aliīs audīrent, statuisset Aduatucōs esse cōnservandōs, nē sē armīs dēspoliāret. Sību omnēs fērē finitimōs esse inimīcōs ac suae virtūtī invidēre, ā quibus sē dēfendere trāditīs armīs nōn possent. Sību praestāre, sī in eum cīsum dēdūcerentur, quamvis fortūnam ā populō Rōmānō patī, quam ab hīs per cruciātum interfici, inter quōs dominārī cōnsuēssent.

Caesar refuses. They surrender a large part of their arms.

32. Ad haec Caesar respondit: sē magis cōnsuētūdīne suā quam merītō eōrum cīvitātem cōnservātūrum, sī priusquam mūrum ariēs attigisset sē dēdidissent; sed dēditōnīs nūllam esse condicionem nisi armīs trāditīs. Sē id quod in Nervīs fēcisset factūrum, finitimīsque impērātūrum nē quam dēdītīciīs populi Rōmānī 20 iniūriam īnferrent.

Rē nūntiātā ad suōs illī sē quae imperārentur facere dixērunt. Armōrum magnā multitūdīne dē mūrō in fossam quae erat ante oppidum iactā, sīc ut prope summam mūrī aggerisque altitūdinem acervī armōrum 25 adaequārent, et tamen circiter parte tertiā, ut posteā perspectum est, cēlātā atque in oppidō retentā, portīs patefactīs eō diē pāce sunt īsī.

They make a sally, but are defeated. Caesar sells them into slavery.

33. Sub vesperum Caesar portās claudī militēsque ex oppidō exīre iussit, nē quam noctū oppidānī ā militibus
iniūriam acciperent. Illī ante initō, ut intellectum est, cōnsiliō, quod dēditiōne factā nostrōs prae sidia dēduc-tūrōs aut dēnique indigentius servātūrōs cē diderant, partim cum eis quae retinuerant et cē laverant armīs, partim scūtis ex cortice factīs aut vīminibus intactīs, quae subitō, ut temporis exiguitās postulābat, pellibus indūxerant, tertīā vīgiliā quā minimē arduus ad nostrās mūnitionēs ascēn sus vidēbātur omnibus cōpiīs repente ex oppidō ēruptionem fēcérunt.

Celeriter, ut ante Caesar imperā verat, ignibus signi-ficātiōne factā ex proximīs castellīs eo concursum est, pugnātumque ab hostībus ita acriter est, ut ā virīs fortī-ibus in extrēmā spē salūtis inīquō locō, contrā eōs qui ex vāllo turribusque tēla iacerent, pugnārī dē bui t, cum in ūnā virtūte omnis spēs salūtis cō nsisteret. Occīsīs ad 15 homīnum millībus quattuor, reliquī in oppidum reiectī sunt. Postrīdiē eius dieī refrāctīs portīs, cum iam dē-fenderet nēmō, atque intrōnissīs mīlitibus nostrīs, sectionem eius oppidi ūniversam Caesar vēndidit. Ab eis qui ēmerant capitum numerus ad eum relātus est 20 millīum quīnquāgīntā trium.

II. THE CLOSE OF THE CAMPAIGN OF 57 B.C.

Publius Crassus announces the submission of the maritime states.

34. Eōdem tempore ā P. Crassō, quem cum legiōne ūnā miserat ad Venētōs, Venellōs, Osismōs, Coriosolītās, Esubīōs, Aulercōs, Redonēs, quae sunt maritimae civi-tātēs Oceanumque attingunt, certior factus est omnēs 25 eās civītātēs in dicīōnēm potestātemque populi Rōmānī esse redāctās.
Envoys are sent to Caesar from all sides. He goes into winter quarters. A thanksgiving is decreed by the senate.

35. His rebus gestis omnī Galliā pācātā, tanta huīus belli ad barbarōs opinīō perlāta est utī ab eīs nātiōnibus quae trāns Rhēnum incolerent mittentur lēgātī ad Caesarem, quī sē obsidēs datūrās, imperātā factūrās pollicērentur. Quās lēgātiōnēs Caesār, quod in Italiam Ílyricumque properābat, initā proximā aestāte ad sē revertī iussit. Ipse in Carnutēs, Andēs, Turonōs, quaeque civitātēs propinquae ēis locīs erant ubi bellum gesserat légionibus in hīberna déductīs, in Italiam pro-

pectus est. Ob eāsque rēs ex litterīs Caesāris diērum quīndecim supplicātiō dēcrēta est, quod ante id tempus accidit nūlí.
Julius Caesar.
BOOK III

I. PERILOUS EXPERIENCE OF GALBA AMONG THE ALPINE TRIBES, LAST PART OF 57 B.C.

Galba, sent by Caesar with a legion among the Alpine tribes, determines to winter at Octodurus.


Galba secundîs aliquot proeliîs factîs castellîisque mînîbus eôtum expugnâtîs, missîs ad eum undique légâtîs obsidibusque datîs et pâce factâ, cônstituit cohor-tês duâs in Nantuâtibus collocâre et ipse cum reliiquîs eius legiônîs cohortibus in vicô Veragrôrum, qui appellâtur Octodûrus, hiemâre; quî vicûs positus in valle, nôn magnâ adiectă plânitiê, altissîmîs montibus undique continêtur. Cum hîc in duâs partês flûmine dîvididerêtur, alteram partem eius vicê Gallîs concessit, alteram vacuam ab hîs relictam cohortibus ad hiemandum attri-buit. Eum locum vallô fossâque mûnîvit.
The Gauls abandon the town altogether; with allies they prepare to attack Galba; their reasons.

2. Cum diēs hibernōrum complūrēs trānsissent, frūmentumque eō comportāri iussisset, subitō per explōrātōrēs certior factus est ex eā parte vīcī quam Gallīs concesserat omnēs noctū discississe, montēsque quī impendērent ā maximā multitūdine Sēdūnōrum et Veragrōrum tenērī. Id alīquot dē causīs acciderat ut subitō Gallī bellī renovandī legiōnisque opprimendae cōnsilium caperent: primum quod legiōnem, neque eam plēnissīmam, dētrāctīs cohōritis duābus et com-plūribus singillātīm, quū commeātūs petēndī causā missīerant, absentibus, propter paucītātem dēspiciēbant; tum etiam quod propter iniquitātem locī, cum īpsī ex montibus in vāllem dēcurrērent et tēla conicerent, nē prīmum quidem posse impetum suum sustinerī exīstīmābant. Accēdēbat quod suōs ā sē liberōs abstrāctōs obsidium nōmine dolēbant, et Rōmānōs nōn sōlum itinērum causā sed etiam perpetuae possessiōnis culmina Alpium occupāre cōnārī et ea loca finitīmae prōvinciāe adiungere sībī persuāsīm habēbant.

Galba, though surprised, and advised to retreat, decides to resist.

3. Hīs nūntīs acceptīs Galba, cum neque opus hibernōrum mūniōnēsque plēnē essent perfectae neque dē frūmentō reliquōque commeātūs satis esset prōvisum, quod dēditione factā obsidibusque acceptīs nihil dē bellō timendum exīstīmāverat, cōnsiliō celerīter con-vocātō sententiās exquirēre coepest. Quō in cōnsiliō, cum tantum repentīnī periculī praeter opiniōnem accidisset, ac iam omnīa ferē superiorōra loca multitūdine armātōrum complēta cōnspicerentur, neque subsidiō venīrī neque commeātūs supportārī interclūsis itineri-
bus possent, prope iam dēspērātā salūte nōnnūllae huīns modī sententiae dicēbantur, ut, impedimentīs relīctīs ēruptīōne factā, īsdem itineribus quibus eō pervēnissent ad salūtem contenderent. Maiōri tamen partī placuit hoc reservātō ad extrēmum cōnsiliō interim reī even-5 tum experīrī et castra dēfendere.

_The Gauls attack, and owing to their numbers have the advantage._

4. Brevī spatiō interiectō, vix ut eīs rēbus quās cōnstituissent collocandīs atque administrandīs tempus darētur, hostēs ex omnibus partibus signō datō dēcurrere, lapidēs gaesaque in vāllum conicere. Nōstrī prīmō 10 integrīs vīribus fortiter repūgnārē neque ūllum frūstra tēlum ex locō superiōre mittere, et quaecumque pars castrōrum nūdāta dēfēnsōribus premī vidēbātur, eō occurrere et auxiliōm ferre; sed hōc superārī, quod diūtūritātē pugnae hostēs dēfessī proeliō excēdēbant, 15 alīi integrīs vīribus succēdēbant; quārum rērum ā nostrīs prōpter paucitātem fierī nihil poterat, ac nōn modo dēfessō ex pugnā excēdendī, sed nē sauciō quidem eius locī, ubi cōnstiterat, relinquendī ac suī recipiendī facultās dabātur.

_The situation grows desperate. The Romans prepare for a sally._

5. Cum iam amplius hōris sex continenter pugnā- restitution ac nōn sōlum virēs sed etiam tēla nostrōs dēficerent, atque hostēs acerius instārent languidiōribusque nostrīs vāllum scindere et fossās complēre coepissent, rēsque esset iam ad extrēmum perducta cāsum, P. Sex-25 tius Baculus, prīmi pilī centurīō, quem Nervicō proeliō complūribus cōnfectum vulneribus dīximus, et ēt ēm C. Volusēnus, tribūnus mīlitum, vir et cōnsiliō magnī et virtūtīs, ad Gālbaam accurrunt atque ūnam esse spem
The Gauls, taken by surprise, are defeated; Galba retreats.

6. Quod iussi sunt faciunt, ac subitō omnibus portīs ēruptiōne factā neque cognōscendi quid fieret neque suī colligendi hostibus facultātem relinquunt. Ita com-
10 mütātā fortūnā eōs qui in spem potiundōrum castrōrum vēnerant undique circumventōs interficiunt; et ex homi-
nōmum mīlibus amplius xxx, quem numerum barbarōrum ad castra vēnisse cōnstābat, plūs tertiā parte interfectā
reliquōs perterritōs in fugam coniciunt ac nē in locīs
15 quidem superiōribus cōnsistere patiuntur. Sic omnibus
hostium cōpiās fūsīs armīisque exūtīs sē intrā mūnītiōnēs
suās recipiunt.

Quō proelīō factō, quod saepius fortūnam temptāre
Galba nōlēbat, atque aliō sē in hīberna cōnsiliō vēnisse
20 meminerat, aliis occurrisse rébus viderat, maximē frū-
mentī commeātūsque inopiā permōtus, posterō diē om-
nibus eius vici aedificiis incēnssis in prōvinciam revertī
contendit, ac nūllō hoste prohibente aut iter dēmorante
incolūmēm legiōnem in Nantuātēs, inde in Allobrogēs
25 perdūxit ibique hiemāvit.
II. CAMPAIGN OF CRASSUS AGAINST THE VENETI, 56 B.C.

Gaul at peace. Crassus, among the Andes, seeks for a larger food supply.

7. His rebus gestis, cum omnibus de causis Caesar pācātam Galliam existimāret, superātīs Belgīs, expulsīs Germānīs, victīs in Alpibus Sedūuīs, atque ita initiā hieme in Īlyricum profectus esset, quod eās quoque nātionēs adīre et regionēs cognōscere volēbat, subitum s bellum in Galliā coortum est.


The Veneti seize his messengers; the states of the sea-coast unite against the Romans.


Ab his fit initium retinendi Sili atque Velānī, quod per eōs suōs sē obsidēs quōs Crasso dedissent recuperā-tūrōs existimābant. Hōrum auctōritāte finitimi ad-25
ducti — ut sunt Gallorum subita et repentina consilia—
eadem de causâ Trebium Terrasidiumque retinent; et
celeriter missis légátis per suós principés inter se con-
iúrant nihil nisi communî consilió actûros eundemque
omnes fortûnae exitum esse látûros; reliquásque civi-
tâtês sollicitant ut in ea libertâte quam à maióribus
accéperint permanère, quam Rómânorum servitütem
perferre mælìnt.

Omnì órâ maritimâ celeriter ad suam sententiam per-
ductâ communem légatiûnom ad P. Crassum mittunt: si
velit suós recuperâre, obsidés sibi remittât.

Both sides prepare for war. The Veneti rely chiefly on their superior
skill in naval warfare. The peculiar situation of their towns.

9. Quibus dé rébus Caesar à Crasso certior factus,
quod ipse aberat longius, návēs interim longās aedificārī
in flūmine Ligerī, quod īnfluit in Óceanum, rēmigēs ex
prüfōvincia īnstitūī, nautās gubernatórēsque comparārī
iubet. Hís rébus celeriter administrātīs ipse, cum pri-
ènum per annī tempus potuit, ad exercitum contendit.

Veneti reliquaeque ítem civitâtēs, cognitō Caesāris
adventū, simul quod quantum in sē facinus admississent
interlegēbant, légātōs — quod nōmen ad omnes nātionsēs
sācantum inviolātūmque semper fuisset—retentōs à sē
et in vincula coniectōs, prō magnitudine periculi bellum
parāre et maximē ea quae ad úsum nāvīum pertinent
prōvidēre īnstituunt, hoc maiōre spē quod multum
nātūrā locī cōnādēbant. Pedestria esse itinerā concīsa
aeestuāriis, nāvigationēnem impeditām propter īnscientiam
locōrum paucitātemque portuām sciēbant neque nostrōs
exercitūs propter frūmentī inopiam diütius apud sē
morārī posse cōnādēbant; ac iam ut omnia contrā
opiniōnem acciderent, tamen sē plurimum nāvibus
posse, Rōmānōs neque ullam facultātem habēre nāvium neque eōrum locōrum ubi bellum gestūrī essent vada, portūs, īnsulās nōvisse; ac longē aliam esse nāvigātiō-nem in conclusō mari atque in vāstissimō atque aptissimō Ōceanō perspiciēbant.

Hīs initīs cōnsiliīs oppida mūniunt, frūmenta ex agrīs in oppida comportant, nāvēs in Venetiam, ubi Caesarem prīnum bellum gestūrum cōnstābat, quam plūrimās possunt cōgunt. Sociōs sībi ad id bellum Osismōs, Lexoviōs, Namnetēs, Ambianōs, Morinōs, Diablīntēs, Menapiōs ascīscunt; auxilia ex Britannīa, quae contra eās regiōnēs posita est, arcessunt.

*Pride and necessity alike force Caesar to undertake this difficult war.*

10. Erant hae difficultātēs bellī gerendī quās supra ostendimus, sed multa Caesarem tamen ad id bellum incitābant: iniūria retentōrum equitum Rōmānōrum, rebellīō facta post dēditiōnem, dēfectiō datīs obsidibus, tot civitātum coniūratiō, imprīmis nē, hāc parte neglēctā, reliquaē natiōnēs sībi idem licēre arbitrērentur. Itaque cum intellegēret omnēs fērē Gallōs novīs rēbus studēre et ad bellum mōbiliter celeriterque excitārī, omnēs autem homīnēs nātūrā libertātī studēre et condiciōnem servītūtis ōdisse, priusquam plūrēs civitātēs cōnspirārent, partien-dum sībi ac lātius distribuendum exercitum putāvit.

*Fear of a general uprising in Gaul. D. Brutus in charge of the fleet; Caesar with the land forces.*

11. Itaque T. Labiēnum lēgātum in Trēverōs, quī proximī flūmini Rhēnō sunt, cum equitātū mittit. Huic mandat Rēmōs reliquōsque Belgās adeat atque in officiō contīneat, Germānōsque, quī auxiliō ā Belgīs arcessitī dīcēbantur, sī per vim nāvibus flūmen trānsire cōnentur, prohibeāt. P. Crassum cum cohortibus legiō-
nāriīs xii et magno numero equitātūs in Aquitāniam proficisci iubet, nē ex his nātiōnibus auxilia in Galliam mittantur ac tantae nātiōnēs coniungantur. Q. Titūrium Sabinum legātum cum legiōnibus tribus in Venellōs, Coriosolitas Lexoviāsque mittit, qui eam manum diσi
nendam cūret. D. Brūtum adulēscen tem classi Galli-
cīisque nāvibus, quās ex Pictonibus et Santonīs reli-
quīisque pācātīs regiōnibus convenire iusserat, praeficit et cum prīnum possit in Venetōs proficisci iubet. Ipse eō pedestrībus cōpiīs contendit.

The towns difficult for the Romans to reach, easy for the Veneti to retreat from if necessary.

12. Erant eius modī ferē sitūs oppidōrum, ut posita in extrēmis lingulīs prōmunturiīisque neque

Campaign against the Veneti
pedibus aditum habērent, cum ex altō sē aestus incitā-
visset, quod accidit semper hōrārum XII spatiō, neque
nāvibus, quod rūrsus minuente aestū nāvēs in vādīs
afflictārentur. Ita utrāque rē oppidōrum oppugnātiō
impediēbātur; ac si quandō, magnitūdine operis forte
superātī, extrūsō mari aggere ac mōlibus atque hīs
oppidī moenibus adaequātīs, suīs fortūnīs désprērare
eoerant, magnō numerō nāvium appulsō, cuīus reī
sumnam facultātem habēbant, sua dēportābant omnia
sōque in proxima oppida recipiēbant; ibi sē rūrsus 10
īsdem opportūnītātibus locī dēfendēbant.

Haec eō facilius magnam partem aestātīs faciēbant,
quod nostrae nāvēs tempestātibus dētinēbantur, sum-
maque erat vāstō atque aperto mari, magnīs aestibus,
rāūs ac prope nullīs portibus difficultās nāvigandī.

The ships of the Veneti more strongly built, more fitted to stand the
buffeting of the storms and damage from the shoals.

13. Namque ipsōrum nāvēs ad hunc modum factae
armātāeque erant: carīnae aliquidō plāniōrēs quam
nostrārum nāvium, quō facilius vada ac dēcessum
aestūs excipere possent; prōrae admodum ērēctae atque
item puppēs, ad magnītūdinem fluctuum tempestā-
tunque accommodātæ; nāvēs tōtæ factae ex rōborō
ad quamvis vim et contumēliam perferendam; trānstra
ex pedālibus in altitūdinem trabībus cōnfixa clāvis
ferreis digitī pollicis crassītūdine; ancorae prō fūnibus
ferreis catēnīs revinctae; pellēs prō vēlis alūtāeque 25
tenuiter cōnfictae, sīve propter līni inopiam atque
eius ūsūs inscientiam, sīve eō, quod est magis vēri
simile, quod tantās tempestātēs Ōceanī tantōsque
impetus ventōrum sustīnērī ac tanta onera nāvium
regī vēlis non satis commodē posse arbitrābantur.
Cum hís návibus nostrae classí eíus modí congressus erat ut úná celerítáte et pulsú rémórum praestáret; reliqua pró locí nátrúrá, pró vi tempestátum illis essent aptíóra et accommodátióra. Neque enim eí nostro 5 róstró nocère poterant (tanta in eíis erat firmitúdó), neque propter altitúdinem facile télum adigébátur, et eádem dē causá minus commodé cōpulis continébantur. Accédébat ut, cum saevíre ventús coepisset et sē ventó dedissent, et tempestátem ferrent facílius et in vadís 10 cónsisterent tútiius et ab aestú relíctac nihil saxa et cautès timérent; quárum rērum omnium nostrīs nāvibus cásus erat extimēscendus.

The Roman fleet arrives. Brutus by a clever stratagem renders part of the enemy's fleet unmanageable.

14. Complúribus expugnátis oppidís Caesar, ubi intelléxit frústra tantum labórem séúmí, neque hostium 15 fugam captís oppidís reprimí neque eí nocérí posse, statuit exspectandam classem. Quae ubi convénit ac primum ab hostibus visa est, circiter ccxx návés eórum parátissimae atque omní genere armórum ornátiissimae profectae ex portú nostríss adversae cónstitérunt; neque 20 satis Brútó, qui classí praerat, vel tribúinis mítíum centuriónibusque, quibus singuláe návés erant attri-bútæae, cónstábat quid agerent aut quam ratióinem pugnae Ínsisterent. Róstró enim nocérí nón posse cognóverant; turribus autem excítâtis tamen hás altitúdó puppium 25 ex barbarís návibus superábat, ut neque ex ínferióre locó satis commodé télá adigí possent et missa á Gallis gravius acciderent.

Una erat magnó ūsual rēs praeparáta á nostrīs, falcēs praecacūtae insértae affixaeque longuriíis nón absimili 30 fōrmā mūrālium falcium. Hís cum funēs qui antennās
ad mālōs dēstinābant comprehēnsī adductīque erant, nāvigīō rēmis incitātō praerumpēbantur. Quibus abscī-
sis antennae necessāriō concidēbant; ut, cum omnis Gallicis nāvibus spēs in vēlis armamentīsque cōnsis-
teret, hīs ēreptīs omnis úsus nāvium ūnō tempore ūripe-5 rētur. Reliquum erat certāmen positum in virtūte,
quā nostri militēs facile superābant atque eō magis, quod in cōnspectū Caesāris atque omnis exercitūs rēs
gerēbātur, ut nūllum paulō fortius factum latēre pos-
set; omnēs enim collēs ac loca superiōra, unde erat 10
propinquus déspectus in mare, ab exercitū tenēbantur.

Utter defeat of the Venetī.

15. Dēiectīs, ut diximus, antennēs, cum singulās
binae ac ternae nāvēs circumsteterant, militēs summā
vī trānscedere in hostium nāvēs contendēbant. Quod
postquam barbarī fierī animadvertērunt, expugnātīs 15
complūribus nāvibus, cum eī reī nūllum reperīrētur
auxilium, fugā salūtem petere contendērunt. Ac iam
conversīs in eam partem nāvibus quō ventus ferēbat,
tanta subitō malacia ac tranquillitās exstītīt ut sē ex
locō movēre nōn possent. Quae quidem rēs ad negō-20
tium cōnsiciendum maximē fuit opportūna; nam singulās
nostri cōnectātī expugnāvērunt, ut perpaucae ex omni
numeros noctis interventū ad terram pervēnerint, cum
ab hōrā ferē quártā úsequ ad sōlis occāsum pugnārētur.

The Venetī surrender everything. Their punishment.

16. Quō proelīō bellum Venetōrum totiusque ōrae 25
maritimae cōnfectum est. Nam cum omnis iuventūs,
omnēs etiam graviōris aetātis, in quibus aliqūid consili
aut dignitātis fuit, eō convēnerant, tum nāvium quod
ubīque fuerat ūnum in locum coēgerant; quibus ōmis-
sís reliquí neque quō sē recipiēnt neque quem ad modum oppida dēfenderent hābēbant. Itaque sē suāque omnia Cæsāri dēdiderunt. In quōs eō gravius Cæsar vindicandum statuit, quō diligentius in reliquum tempus a barbarīs iūs lēgātōrum cōnservārētur. Itaque omnī senātū necātō reliquōs sub corōnā vēndidit.

III. CAMPAIGN OF TITURIUS AGAINST THE VENELLI

Sabinus, encamped among the Venelli, attacked by Gauls under Viridovix. He gives them the impression of cowardice.

17. Dum haec in Venetīs geruntur, Q. Titūrius Sabinus cum eīs cōpiīs quās ā Cæsāre accēperat in finēs Venellōrum pervēnit. His praerat Viridovix ac summam imperi tenēbat eārum omnium cīvitātūm quae dēfēcerant, ex quibus exercitum magnāsque cōpiās coēgerat; atque hīs paucīs diēbus Aulercī Eburovīcēs Lexoviīque senātū suō interfectō, quod auctōrēs belli esse nōlēbant, portās clausērunt sēque cum Viridovīce coniūnxērunt; magnāque praetereā multitūdō undique ex Galliā perditōrum hominum latrōnumque convēnerat, quōs spēs praedandī studiumque bellandī ab agricūltūrā et cotidiānō labōre revocābat.

Sabinus idōneō omnibus rēbus locō castrīs sēsē tenēbat, cum Viridovīx contrā eum duōrum mīlium spatīō cōnsēdīsset cotūdiēque pōrōdctīs cōpiīs pugnāndī potes-tātem faceret, ut iam nōn sōlum hostībus in contemptiōnem Sabinus venīret, sed etiam nostrōrum militūm vōcibus nōn nihil carperētur; tantamque opióiiōnem timōris praebuit ut iam ad vāllum castrōrum hostēs accēdere audērent. Id eā dē causā faciēbat, quod cum tantā multitūdīne hostīum, praesertim eō absente quī
summam imperi tenēret, nisi aequō locō aut opportūnītāte aliquā datā, lēgātō dīmicandum nōn existimābat.

He outwits the Gauls with the help of a pretended deserter.

18. Hūc cōnfīrmātā ōpiniōne timōris idōneum quendam hominem et callidum dēlēgit, Gallum, ex eīs quōs auxīlii causā sēcum habēbat. Huic magnīs praemiīs 5 policitationibusque persuādēt utī ad hostēs trānseat, et quid fierī velīt ēdocet. Quī ubi prō perfugā ad eōs vēnit, timōrem Rōmānōrum prōpōnit; quibus angustīs ipse Cæsar ā Venetīs premātur docet; neque longius abesse quīn proximā nocte Sābinus clam ex castrīs exercitum ēducat et ad Cæsarem auxili ferendī causā proficiscātur. Quod ubi auditum est, conclāmant omnēs occasiōnem negotī bene gerendī āmittendam nōn esse; ad castra īrī oportēre.

Multae rēs ad hoc cōnsilium Gallōs hortābantur: 15 superiōrum diērum Sābinī cunctātiō, perfugae cōnfīrmātiō, inopia cibāriōrum, cui reī parum diligenter ab eīs erat prōvisum, spēs Venetīcī bellī, et quod fērē libenter hominēs id quod volunt crēdunt. Hīs rēbus adductī nōn prius Viridovicem reliquośque ducēs ex 20 conciliō dīmittunt quam ab hīs sit concessum arma utī capiant et ad castra contendant. Quā rē concessā laetī, ut explōratā victōriā, sarmentis virgultīisque collectīs quibus fossās Rōmānōrum compleant, ad castra pergunt.

The attack of the enemy turned into a rout by the Romans.

19. Locus erat castrōrum ēditus et paulātim ab īmō acclīvis circiter passūs mille. Hūc magnō cursū contendērunt, ut quam minimum spatī ad sē colligendōs armandōsque Rōmānis darētur, examinātique pervēnē-
CAESAR'S GALIC WAR

runt. Sabīnus suōs hortātus cupientibus signum dat. Impeditīs hostibus propter ea quae ferēbant onera, subito duābus portīs ēruptiōnem fierī iubet. Factum est opportūnitāte locī, hostium inscienteī ac dēfatigātiōne, virtūte mīlītium et superiōrum pugnārum exer-
citātiōne, ut nē primum quidem nostrōrum impetum ferrent ac statim terga verterent. Quōs integris virī-
bus mīlitēs nostrī cōnsecūti magnum numerum eōrum occurredunt; reliquōs equitēs cōnsectāti, paucōs quī ex
10 fugā ēvāserant reliquērunt.

Sic unō tempore et dē nāvāli pugnā Sabīnus et dē Sabīnī victūriā Caesār est certior factus, cīvītātēsque
omnēs sē statim Titūriō dēdiderunt. Nam ut ad bella
suscipiēnda Gallōrum alacer ac prōmptus est animus,
15 sic mollis ac minimē resistēns ad calamitātēs perfe-
rendās mēns eōrum est.

IV. CAMPAIGN OF CRASSUS IN AQUITANIA

Crassus in Aquitania. Attacked on the march by the Sotiates.

20. Eōdem ferē tempore P. Crassus cum in Aqui-
tāniam pervēnisset, quae est, ut ante dictum est, et regiōnum lātitūdine et multitūdine hominum tertia
pars Galliae aestimanda, cum intellegēret in eōs locīs
sibi bellum gerendum ubi paucīs ante annīs L. Valerius
Praecōnīnus lēgātus exercitū pulsō interfectus esset,
atque unde L. Mānlius prōcōnsul impedimentīs āmissīs
prōfūgisset, nōn mediocrem sībi diligeniām adhi-
bendam intellegēbat. Itaque rē frūmentāriā prōvisā,
auxiliīs equitātūque comparātō, multīs praetereā virīs
fortibus Tolōsā et Carcasōne et Narbōne, quae sunt
cīvitātēs Galliae prōvinciae finitimae hīs regiōnibus,
nominatim evocatis in Sotiatum fines exercitum intro-
duxit.

Cuius adventū cognitō Sotiatēs magnis cōpiās coāctās
equitātuque, quō plurimum valēbant, in itinere agnō
nostrum adortī primum equestre proelium commīsērunt; 5
deinde equitātu suō pulsō atque insequentibus nostrīs,
subitō pedestrés cōpiās, quās in convalle in ĭnsidiās
collocāverant, ostendērunt. Hī nostrōs disiectōs adortī
proelium renovārunt.

Crassus defeats them and captures their chief town.

21. Pugnātum est diū atque ācriter, cum Sotiatēs 10
superiōribus victoriās frētī in suā virtūte tōtīus Aquit-
tāniae salūtem posītām putārent, nostri autem quid
sine imperātōre et sine reliquis legiōnibus adulēscen-
tulō duce efficere possent perspicī cuperent; tandem
cōnfecūt vulneribus hostēs terga vertērunt. Quōrum 15
magnō numerō interfecūtō Crassus ex itinere oppidum
Sotiātum oppugnāre coepit. Quibus fortīter resisten-
tibus vīneās turresque ēgit. Illī, aliās ēruptiōne temptātā,
aliās cūniculīs ad aggerem vīneāsque āctīs (cuius reī sunt
longē perītissī Aquītānī, propterēā quod 20
multīs locīs apūd eōs aerāriae sectūraeque sunt) ubi
diligentēa nostrōrum nihil hīs rēbus prōfīci posse intel-
lexērunt, lēgātōs ad Crassum mittunt, sēque in dēdi-
tiōnem ut recipiat petunt. Quā rē impetrātā, arma
trādere iussī faciunt.

22. Atque in eam rem omnium nostrōrum intentīs
animīs, aliā ex parte oppidi Adiatunnus, qui summam
imperi tenēbat, cum dēvōtīs, quōs illī solduriōs appel-
lant, —quōrum haece est condicio, utī omnibus in vítā
commodis ënâ cum eis fruantur, quorum sê amicitiae dëdiderint; sî quid hîs per vim accidat, aut eundem cäsurn ënâ ferant aut sibi mortem consciscant; neque adhuc hominum memoria repertus est quisquam qui, eö interfecstô cuius sê amicitiae dëvövisset, mortem recüsâret,—cum hîs Adiatunnus éruptionem facere cônâtus, clâmôre ab eä parte münitionis sublâtô, cum ad arma militês concurrissent vehementerque ibi pugna-tum esset, repulsus in oppidum tamen uti eädem dëdi-
tionis condicione ùterëtur à Crassô impetrâvit.

*Other tribes, even some from Spain, trained in Roman methods by Sertorius, combine against Crassus.*

23. Armîs obsidibusque acceptîs Crassus in finès Vocâtium et Tarusâtium profectus est. Tum vërô barbarî commôtî, quod oppidum et nâtûrâ locî et manû münitum paucis diëbus quibus eö ventum erat expug-
nâtum cognôverant, lëgâtós quôqueversus dîmittere, coniûrâre, obsidès inter sê dare, cópiâs parâre coepe-

Quod ubi Crassus animadvertit suäs copiâs propter exiguitâtëm nôn facile didûcî, hostem et vagârî et viäs obsidërê et castrës satis praesidî relinquere, ob eam causam minus commodë frûmentum commeâtumque sibi supportâri, in diës hostium numerum augëri, nôn cûnc-
tandum existimāvit, quīn pugnā dēcertāret. Hāc rē ad cōnsilium dēlātā, ubi omnēs idem sentīre intellēxit, posterum diem pugnae cōnstituit.

Crassus wishes to fight at once; the enemy adopt a policy of delay. The Romans attack the enemy.

24. Prīmā lūce prōductīs omnibus cōpiās duplīcī aciē institūtā, auxiliis in medium aciēm coniectīs, quīd hostēs sō cōnsilī caperent exspectābat. Illī, etsī propter multitūdinem et veterem bellī glōriam paucitātemque nostrōrum sē tūtō dīmicātūrōs existimābant, tamen tūtius esse arbitrābantur, obsessīs viīs, commeātū interclūsō sine ūllō vulnere victoriā potīrī, et, sī propter inopiam rei frūmentāriae Rōmānī sēsē recipere coeipissent, impeditōs in agmine et sub sarcastīs insufficientīs animō adorīri cōgitābant. Hōc cōnsiliō probātō a ducibus, prōductīs Rōmānōrum cōpiās, sēsē castrīs tenēbant. Hāc rē perspectā Crassus, cum suā cunctātiōne atque opiniōne tīmōris hostēs nostrōs mīlitēs alacriōres ad pugnam effēcissent atque omnium vocēs audīrentur exspectāri diūtius nōn oportēre, quīn ad castra īrētur, cohortātus suōs omnibus cupientibus ad hostium castra contendit.

The attack unsuccessful at first. Word brought of an easier point of attack.

25. Ibi cum aliī fossās complērent, aliī multīs tēlīs coniectīs défēnsōrēs vāllō mūnitōniābusque dépellerent auxiliārēsque, quibus ad pugnam nōn multum Crassus cōnfidēbat, lapidibus tēlisque subministrāndīs et ad aggerem caespitibus comportandīs speciem atque opiniōnem pugnantium praebērent; cum item ab hostibus cōnstanter ac nōn timidē pugnārētur tēlaque ex locō superiōre missa nōn frustrā acciderent, equitēs cir-
cumitís hostium castrís Crassō renúntiáverunt nón eádem esse diligentíá á decumáná portá castra múñíta facilemque adítum habère.

The enemy attacked in the rear. A bloody rout follows.

26. Crassus equitum praefectós cohortátus, ut magnís praemíís pollicitatóníibusque suós excitárent, quid fieri velí est. Illí, ut erat imperátum, èductís eís cohortíbus quae praesidió castrís relíctae intritae á labóre erant et longióre itinere circumductís, nó ex hostium castrís cónspici possent, omnium oculís mentíbusque ad pugnam intentís celeríter ad eás quás díxi-mus múnitionès pervénérunt, atque hís prórutís prius in hostium castrís cónstitérunt quam plánē ab hís vidéri, aut quid reí gerérétur cognósci posset.

Tum vérò clámóre ab eá parte audító, nostri redinte-grátís víribus, quod plérumque in spé victóriæ accidere cónsuévit, ácrius impugnáre coepérunt. Hostës undique circumventí, déspérátis omnibus rēbus, sē per múnitionès déicere et fugā salútēm petere contendérunt. Quós equitátus apertissimís campís cónsectátus, ex 20 milíum L numeró, quae ex Aquítāniā Cantabrísque convénisse cónstábát, vix quártā parte relíctā, multā nocte sē in castra recépit.

Aquitania submits to the Romans.

V. CAESAR’S CAMPAIGN AGAINST THE MORINI

Caesar marches against the Menapii and Morini. They surprise him.


29. Reliquīs deinceps diēbus Caesar silvās caedere īstītuit et, nē quis inermibus imprūdentibusque mīlitibus ā latere impetus fierī posset, omnem eam māteriam 20 quae erat caesa conversam ad hostem collocābat et prō vāllō ad utrumque latus extruēbat. Incrēdibilī celeritātē magnō spatiō paucīs diēbus cōnfectō, cum iam pecus atque extrēma impedimenta ā nostrīs tenērentur, ipsī dēnīōrēs silvās peterent, eius modī sunt tempestātēs 25 cōnsecūtae utī opus necessāriō intermitterētur et continuātiōne imbrium diūtius sub pelibus mīlites con-
tinēri non possent. Itaque vāstātīs omnibus eōrum agrīs, vicīs aedificiīisque incēnīs, Caesar exercitum redūxit et in Aulercīs Lexoviīisque, reliquis item civitātibus quae proxīmē bellum fēcerant, in hibernīs 5 collocāvit.
I. CAMPAIGN AGAINST THE USIPITES AND TENCTERI, 55 B.C.

German tribes, driven by the Suevi, cross the Rhine. Customs of the Suevi.

1. Ea quae secūta est hieme, qui fuit annus Cn. Pompeiō, M. Crassō cōnsulibus, Usipetēs Germānī et item Tencterī magnā cum multitūdine hominum flūmen Rhēnum trānsiērunt; non longē a mari quō Rhēnus īnfluit. Causa trānseundi fuit quod a Suebīs ċomplūres annōs exagītātī bellō premēbantur et agrī cultūrā prohibēbantur.

Suebōrum gēns est longē maxima et bellicōssima Germānōrum omnium. Hi centum pāgōs habēre dicuntur, ex quibus quotannis singula mīlia ārmātōrum bel-īō landī causā suīs ex finibus ēdūcunt. Reliqui, quī domī mānsērunt, sē atque illōs alunt; ēhī rūrsus īn vicem annō post īn ārmīs sunt, illī domī remanent. Sic neque agrī cultūrā nec ratiō atque āsus bellī intermittitur.

Sed privātī ac séparātī agrī apud ēōs nihil est, neque longius annō remanēre ēnō īn locō colendī causā licet. Neque multum frūmentō, sed maximam partem lacte atque pecore vivunt, multumque sunt īn vēnātiōnibus; quae rēs et cibī genere et cotīdiānā exercitātiōne et libertātē vitae—quod ā puerīs nūllō officīo aut discīplīnā assūēfactī nihil omnīnō contra voluntātem faci-
unt,—et vires alit et immēnī corporum magnītūdine hominēs efficit. Atque in eam sē cōnsuētūdinēm ad-
dūxērunt, ut locīs frīgīdissimīs neque vestītūs praeter
pellēs habērent quicquam, quārum propter exiguitā-
tem magnā est corporis pars aperta, et lavērentur in
flūminibus.

*Their dislike for traffic; skill in horsemanship; avoidance of wine.*

2. Mercātōribus est aditus magis eō, ut quae bellō
cēperint quibus vēndant habeant, quam quō ūllam
rem ad sē importāri désiderent. Quīn etiam iūmentīs,
10 quibus maximē Gallī dēlectantur quaeque impēnsō
parant pretiō, Germānī importātīs nōn ūtuntur, sed,
quae sunt apūd eōs nāta, parat atque dēformīa, haec
cotīdīānā exercitātiōne, sumī ut sīnt labōris, efficiūnt.

*Equestribus proelīs saepe ex equis désiliunt ac pedi-
15 bus proeliantur, equōsque eōdem remanēre vēstigiō as-
suēfēcērunt, ad quōs sē celerīter, cum ūsus est, recipiunt;
neque eōrum mōribus turpius quicquam aut inertiās
habētur quam ephippiīs ūtī. Itaque ad quemvīs nu-
merum ephippiātōrum equitum quamvīs paucī adīre
20 audēnt. Vinum ad sē omnīnō importāri nōn patiuntur,
quod eā rē ad labōrem ferendum remollēscere hominēs
atque effēmināri arbitrantur.*

*Their peculiar pride. Suevi and Ubīi compared.*

3. Publicē maximam putant esse laudem quam
lātissimē ā suīs finibus vacāre agrōs; hāc rē significārī
25 magnum numerum civitātum suam vim sustinēre nōn
posse. Itaque ūnā ex parte ā Suēbīs eīreīter mīlia
passuum c agrī vacāre dicuntur. Ad altērām par-
tem succēdunt Ubīī, quōrūm fuit civitās ampla atque
flōrēns, ut est captus Germānōrūm; iī paulō, quamquam
sunt eisdem generis, sunt ceteris hūmāniōrès, propterea quod Rhēnum attingunt, multumque ad eós mercātōrès ventitant, et ipsī propter propinquitātem Gallicis sunt mōribus assuēfactī. Hōs cum Suēbī multī saepe bellīs expertī propter amplitūdinem gravitātemque cīvitātīs finibus expellere nōn potuissent, tamen vectīgālēs sibi fēcērunt ac multō humiliōrès īnfirmiōrèsque redēgērunt.

The Usipites and Tencteri, unable to force a passage of the Rhine, resort to a ruse. Its success.

4. In eādem causā fuērunt Usipetēs et Tencteri, quōs supra diximus, qui complūrēs annōs Suēbōrum vim sustinuerunt; ad extrēmum tamen agrīs expulsi et multīs locīs Germāniae triennium vagātī ad Rhēnuin pervēnērunt, quās regionēs Menapiī incolēbant. Hī ad utramque rīpam flūminis agrōs, aedificia, vīcōsque habēbant; sed tantae multitūdinis adventū perterritī ex eīs aedificiis quae trāns flūmen habuerant, dēmigrāverant, et cīs Rhēnum dispositīs praesidiīs Germānōs trānsīre prohibēbant.

Illi omnia expertī, cum neque vi contendere propter inopiam nāvium neque clam trānsīre propter cūstōdiās Menapiōrum possent, rēvertī sē in suās sēdēs regionēs que simulāvērunt, et trīduī viam prōgressī rūrsus revertērunt atque, omnī hoc itinere ūnā nocte equitātū cōnfectō, īnsciōs inopinantēsque Menapiōs oppressērunt, qui dē Germānōrum discessū per explōrātōrès certōrès factī sine metū trāns Rhēnum in suōs vīcōs remigrāvērant. His interfecēs nāvibusque eōrum occupātīs, priusquam ea pars Menapiōrum, quae citrā Rhēnum erat, certior fieret, flūmen trānsiērunt atque omnibus eōrum aedificiis occupātīs reliquam partem hiemis sē eōrum cōpiis aluērunt.
The fickleness of the Gauls. Their way of securing information.


Caesar with the army. The Germans, invited by the Gauls, advance further into the country.

15 6. Quā cōnsuētūdine cognītā Caesar, nē graviōrī bellō occurreret, mātūrius quam cōnsuērat ad ēxerci-tum proficiscitur. Ēō cum vēnisset, ea quae fore sus-picātus erat facta cognōvit: missās lēgatiōnēs ā nōnnullīs cīvitātibus ad Germānōs ĭnvītātōsque eōs utī ā Rhenō discēderent; omnia quae postulāssent, ā sē fore parāta.

Quā spē adductī Germānī lātius iam vagābantur et in finēs Eburōnum et Condusōrum, qui sunt Trēve-rōrum clientēs, pervēnerant. Prīncipibus Galliāe ēvo-cātīs Caesar ea quae cognōverat dissimulānda sībi existimāvit, eōrumque animīs permulsīs et cōnfīrmātīs equītātūque imperātō bellum cum Germānīs gerere cōnstituit.
Caesar's advance. German ambassadors boastfully offer friendship and demand lands.

7. Re frumentāriā comparātā equitibusque dēlēctīs, iter in ea loca facere coepit quibus in locīs esse Germānōs audiēbat. Ā quibus cum paucōrum diērum iter abesset, légātī ab īis vēnērunt, quōrum haec fuit ōratiō: Germānōs neque priōrēs populō Rōmānō bellum inferre neque tamen recūsāre, si lcessantur, quin armīs contendant, quod Germānōrum cōnsuētūdō sit ā maiōribus trādita, quīcumque bellum īnferant, resistere neque déprecāri. Haec tamen dīcere, vēnisse invītōs, ēiectōs domō; si suam grātiam Rōmānī velint, posse 10 eīs ītīlēs esse amīcōs; vel sībi agrōs attribuēant vel patiantur eōs tenēre quōs armīs possēderint; sēsē ūnīs Suēbīs concēdere, quibus nē diū quidem immortālēs parēs esse possint; reliquum quidem in terrīs esse nēminem, quem nōn superāre possint.

The Germans bidden to settle among the Ubii.

8. Ad haec Caesar quae visum est respondit; sed exitus fuit ōratiōnīs: sībi nūllam cum īs amīcitiam esse posse, si in Galliā remanērent; neque vērum esse quī suōs finēs tuēri nōn potuerint aliēnōs occupāre; neque ūllōs in Galliā vacāre agrōs quī dāri tantae praesertim multitūdinī sine iniūriā possint; sed licēre, si velint, in Ubiōrum finibus cōnsìdere, quōrum sīnt légātī apud sē et dē Suēbōrum iniūriīs querantur et ā sē auxilium petant; hoc sē Ubiīs imperātūrum.

They vainly seek to delay the Roman advance.

9. Lēgātī haec sē ad suōs relātūrōs dīxērunt et rē 25 dēliberātā post diem tertium ad Caesarem reversūrōs; interea nē propius sē castra movēret, petiērunt. Nē
id quidem Caesar a se impetrari posse dixit. Cognoverat enim magnam partem equitatus ab eis aliquot diebus ante praedandi frumentandique causae ad Ambivaritos trans Mosam missam; hos expectari equites atque eius rei causae moram interponi arbitrabatur.

Description of the course of the Meuse and of the Rhine.

10. Mosa profluit ex monte Vosego, qui est in finibus Lingonum, et parte quaedam ex Rheno recepta, quae appellatur Vacalus, insulam efficit Batavorum, neque longius inde milibus passuum LXXX in Oceanum influit. Rhenus autem oritur ex Lepontiis, qui Alpes incolunt, et longo spatio per fines Nantuatium, Helvetiorum, Sequanorum, Mediomatricum, Tribocorum, Treverorum citatus fertur; et ubi Oceano appropinquavit, in pluris diffuit partes multis ingentibusque insulis effectis, quam pars magna a feris barbarisque nationibus incolitur, —ex quibus sunt qui piscibus atque ovibus avium vivere existimantur, —multisque capitibus in Oceanum influit.

Again a three days’ delay is sought. Caesar refuses.

11. Caesar cum ab hoste non amplius passuum XII milibus abesset, ut erat constitutum, ad eum legati revertuntur; qui in itinere congressi magnopere ne longius progrederetur orabant. Cum id non impe-trassent, petebant uti ad eos equites qui agmen antecessissent praemitteret, eosque pugna prohiberet, sibique ut potestatem faceret in Ubiost legatos mittendi; quorum si principes ac senatus sibi iure iurando fidem fecisset, eaque condicio quae a Caesaris ferritur se usuros ostendebant; ad hae res consciendis sibi tridui spatium daret. Haec omnia Caesar eodem illo pertinere arbitra-
bātur, ut trīduī morā interpositā equitēs eōrum, quī abessent, reverterentur; tamen sēsē nōn longius mīlibus passuum III aquātiōnis causā processūrum cō diē dīxit; hūc posterō diē quam frequentissimī convenīrent, ut dē eōrum postulātīs cognōscēret. Interim ad praefec-tōs, qui cum omni equitātū antecesserant, mittit quī nūntiārent nē hostēs proeliō lacesserent; et si ipsī lacesserentur, sustinērent quoad ipse cum exercitū propius accessisset.

_A cavalry engagement. Mutual devotion of Piso and his brother._

12. At hostēs, ubi prīnum nostrōs equitēs cōnspexē-10 runt, quōrum erat v mīlibum numerus, cum ipsī nōn amplius DCCC equitēs habērent, quod iī qui frūmen-tandī causā ierant trāns Mosam nōndum redierant, nihil timentibus nostrīs, quod lēgātī eōrum paulō ante ā Caesare discesserant atque is diēs indūtiīs erat ab 15 hīs petītus, impetū factō celeriter nostrōs perturbāvē-runt; rūrsus eis resistentibus, cōnsuētūdine suā ad pedēs désiliērunt, suffossisque equīs complūribusque nostrīs dēiectis, reliquōs in fugam coniēcērunt atque ita perter-ritōs ēgērunt ut nōn prius fugā désisterent quam in 20 cōnspectum agminis nostrī vēnissent.

_In eō proeliō ex equitibus nostrīs interficiuntur III et LXX, in hīs vir fortissimus, Pisō Aquitānus, amplissimō genere nātus, cuius avus in civitāte suā rēgnūm obtinuerat, amīcus ā senātū nostrō appellātus. Hīc 25 cum frātrī interclūsō ab hostibus auxilium ferret, illum ex perīculō ēripuit, ipse equō vulnerātō dēiectus, quoad potuit fortissimē restitit; cum circumventus multīs vulneribus acceptīs cecidisset, atque id frāter, quī iam proeliō exesserat, procul animadvertisset, incitātō equō 30 sé hostibus obtulit atque interfectus est._
13. Hoc factō proeliō Caesar neque iam sibi lēgātōs audiēndōs neque condiciōnēs accipiēndās arbitrābātur ab eis qui per dolum atque īnsidiās petītā pāce ultrō bellum intulissent; exspectāre vērō dum hostium cōpiae augērentur equitātusque reverterētur, summae dēmentiae esse iūdicābat; et cognitā Gallōrum īnfirmātēs, quantum iam apud eōs hostēs ūnō proeliō auctōritātis essent cōnsecūtī sentiēbat; quibus ad cōnsilia capienda nihil spati dandum exīstimābat.

10 Hīs cōnstitūtīs rēbus et cōnsiliō cum lēgātīs et quae-stōre commūnicātō, nē quem diem pugnae praetermitte-ret, opportūnissima rēs accidit, quod postrīdē eius diēī māne eādem et perfidiā et simulātiōne ūsī Germānī frequentēs, omnibus prīncipibus maiōribusque nātū adhibītūs, ad eum in castra vēnērunt, simul, ut dicē-bātur, suī pūrgandī causā quod, contrā atque esset dictum et ipsī petissent, proelium prīdē commiśissent, simul ut, sī quid possent, dē indūtiīs fallendo impetrārent. Quōs sibi Caesar oblātōs gāvisus illōs retinērī iussit; ipse omnēs cōpiās castrīs ἐdūxit equitātumque, quod recentī proeliō perterritum esse exīstimābat, agmen subsequī iussit.

Caesar surprises the German camp.

14. Acīē triplicī īnstitūtā et celeriter vīs mīliūm itinere cōnfectō, prius ad hostium castra pervēnīt quam quid agerētur Germānī sentīre possent. Quī omnibus rēbus subitō perterritī, et celeritāte adventūs nostrī et discessū suōrum, neque cōnsili habēndī neque arma capiendī spatiō datō perturbātur, cōpiāsne adversus hostem ἐdūcere an castra dēfendere an fugā salūtem
petere praestāret. Quŏrum timor cum fremitū et concursū significārētur, militēs nostrī prīstīnī diēī perfidiā incitātī in castra irrūpērunt. Quō locō quī celeriter arma capere potuērunt paulisper nostrīs restitērunt atque inter carrōs impedimentaque proelium commī-5 sērunt; at reliqua multitūdō puerōrum mulierumque (nam cum omnibus suīs domō exesserant Rhēnumque trānsierant) passim fugere coepit; ad quōs cōnsectan-
dōs Caesar equitātum mīsit.

*Complete rout of the Germans. Those in Caesar’s camp prefer to remain.*

15. Germānī post tergum clāmōre auditō, cum suōs 10 interfici vidērent, armīs abiecētīs signīisque militāribus relīctīs sē ex castrīs ēiēcērunt, et cum ad cōnfluentem Mosae et Rhēnī pervēnissent, reliquā fugā dēspērātā, magnō numerō interfectō, reliquī sē in flūmen prae-
cipitāvērunt, atque ibi timōre, lassitūdine, vī flūminis 15 oppressī periērunt. Nostri ad ūnum omnēs incolumēs, perpaucīs vulnerātīs, ex tantī bellī timōre, cum hostium numerus capitum ccccxxx milium fuisset, sē in castra recēpērunt. Caesar eīs quōs in castrīs retinuerat dis-

**II. CAESAR’S INVASION OF GERMANY**

*Caesar, urged by the Ubīi, plans to cross the Rhine.*

16. Germānicō bellō cōnfectō multīs dē causīs Caesar statuit sibi Rhēnum esse trānseundum; quārum 25 illa fuit iūstissima, quod, cum vidēret Germānōs tam
facile impellī ut in Galliam venīrent, suīs quoque rēbus eōs timēre voluit, cum intellegērent et posse et audēre populi Rōmānī exercitum Rhēnum trānsire.

Accessit etiam quod illa pars equītātūs Usipetum et Tēncterōrum, quam suprā commemorāvī praedandī frūmentandīque causā Mosam trānsisse neque proeliō interfuisset, post fugam suōrum sē trāns Rhēnum in finēs Sugambrōrum recēperat sēque cum eīs coniūnxerat. Ad quōs cum Caesar nūntiōs mīsisset quī postulārent eōs quī sibi Galliaeque bellum intulissent sībi dēderent, responderunt: populi Rōmānī imperium Rhēnum finīre; sī sē invitō Germānōs in Galliam trānsīre nōn aequum existimāret, cūr suī quicquam esse imperī aut potestātis trāns Rhēnum postulāret?

15 Ubiī autem, quī únī ex Trānsrhenānīs ad Caesarem lēgātōs miserant, amīcitiam fēcerant, obsidēs dederant, magnopere ōrābant ut sībi auxiliūm ferret, quod graviōter à Suēbīs premerentur; vel sī id facere occupātiōnibus reī públicae prohibērētur, exercitum modo Rhēnum trānsportāret; id sībi ad auxiliūm spemque reliqui temporis satis futūrum. Tantum esse nōmen atque opiniōnem eius exercitūs, Ariovistō pulso et hōc novissimō proeliō factō, etiam ad ultimās Germānōrum nātiōnēs, utī opiniōne et amīcitiā populi Romānī tūtī esse posent. Nāvium magnam cōpiam ad trānsportandum exercitum pollicēbantur.

He builds a bridge.

17. Caesar his dē causīs quās commemorāvī Rhēnum trānsire dēcrēverat; sed nāvibus trānsīre neque satis tūtum esse arbitrābātur, neque suae neque populi Rōmānī dignitātīs esse statuēbat. Itaque, etsī summa difficultās faciendi pontis prōpōnēbātur propter lātitū-
He enters the territory of the Sugambri, who have fled.

18. Diēbus decem quibus māteria coepta erat comportāri, omni opere effectō exercitus trāducitur. Caesar 30 ad utramque partem pontis firmō praesidiō relictō, in
finēs Sugambrōrum contendit. Interim ā complūribus civitātibus ad eum lēgātī veniunt; quibus pācem atque amicitiam perentibus liberāliter respondet obsīdōsque ad sē addūcī iubet. At Sugambrī ex eō tempore quō pōns īnstituī coeptus est fugā comparātā, hortantibus eīs quōs ex Tencterīs atque Usipetibus apud sē habēbant, finibus suīs exsesserant suaque omnia exportāverant sēque in sōlitūdinem ac silvās abdiderant.

He reaches the Ubii. The Suevi await his attack, but he withdraws and cuts down the bridge.

19. Caesar paucōs diēs in eōrum finibus morātus, omnibus vīcis aedificiīisque incēnsīs frūmentīisque sucīsis, sē in finēs Ubiōrum recipit; atque eīs auxilium suum pollicitus, sī ā Suēbīs premerentur, haec ab eīs cognōvit: Suēbōs, posteāquam per explōrātorēs pontem fierī comperissent, mōre suō conciliō habitō nūntiōs in omnēs partēs dimīsīsse, utī dē oppidīs dēmigrārent, liberōs, uxōrēs suaque omnīa in silvīs dépōnerent, atque omnēs quī arma ferre possent unum in locum convenīrent; hunc esse dēlēctum medium fērē regiōnum eārum quās Suēbī obtinērent; hīc Rōmānōrum adventum exspectāre atque ibi dēcertāre cōnstituīsse. Quod ubi Caesar comperit, omnibus eīs rēbus cōnfectīs quàrum rērum causā trādūcere exercitum cōnstituerat, ut Germanīs metum iniceret, ut Sugambrōs ulcīserētur, ut Ubiōs obsidīōne liberāret, diebus omnīnō XVIII trāns Rhēnum cōnsumptīs, satis et ad laudem et ad utilitātem prōfectum arbitrātus, sē in Galliam recipit pontemque rescīdit.
III. CAESAR’S INVASION OF BRITAIN

Caesar plans a short invasion of Britain. The Gallic traders know little of that country.

20. Exiguā parte aestātis reliquā Caesar, etsī in his locīs, quod omnis Gallia ad septentrīōnēs vergit, mātūrae sunt hiemēs, tamen in Britanniam proficisci contendit, quod omnibus ferē Gallicīs bellīs hostibus nostrīs inde sumministrāta auxilia intellegēbat et, si 5 tempus annī ad bellum gerendum dēficeret, tamen magnō sibi ūsūi fore arbitrābātur, si modo īnsulam adisset, genus homīnum perspexisset, loca, portūs, aditūs cognōvisset; quae omnia ferē Gallīs erant in-cognīta. Neque enim temere praeter mercātōrēs illō 10 adit quisquam, neque eīs ipsīs quicquam praeter ōram marītimam atque ēās regiōnēs quae sunt contrā Gallīās nōtum est.

Itaque vocātīs ad sē undique mercātōribus, neque quanta esset īnsulae magnītūdō, neque quae aut quan-15 tae nātiōnēs incolerent, neque quem ūsum bellī habē- rent aut quibus īnstitūtīs ūterentur, neque quī essent ad maiōrem nāvium multitūdīnem idōneī portūs, reperīre poterat.

A scout sent ahead; ships gathered. Commius returns to Britain with ambassadors sent to Caesar.

Interim consilio eius cognitō et per mercātōrēs per-
lātō ad Britannōs, a complūribus insulae civitātibus ad
eum lēgātī veniunt qui polliceantur obsidēs dare atque
imperīō populī Rōmānī obtemperāre. Quibus auditīs,
liberalīter pollicitus hortātusque ut in eā sententiā
permanērent, eōs domum remittit; et cum eīs ūnā
Commium, quem ipse Atrēbātibus superātīs rēgēm ibi
constituerat, cuius et virtūtem et consilium probābat
et quem sibi fidēlem esse arbitrābātur cuiusque auctō-
ritās in hīs regiōnibus magnī habēbātur, mittit. Huic
imperat quās possit adeat civitātēs hortēturque ut
populi Rōmānī fidem sequantur, sēque celeriter eō
ventūrum nūntiet. Volusēnus perspectīs regiōnibus
omnibus quantum eī facultātis dāri potuit qui nāve
ēgredī ac sē barbarīs committere nōn audēret, quintō
dīē ad Caesarem revertitur, quaeque ibi perspexisset
renūntiat.

The Morini submit to Caesar. Troops sent among the Menapii.

22. Dum in hīs locīs Caesar nāvium parandārum
causā morātur, ex magna parte Morinōrum ad eum
lēgātī vēnērunt qui sē dē superiōris temporis consiliō
excūsārent, quod hominēs barbarī et nostrae consuetū-
dinis imperītī bellum populō Rōmānō fēcissent, sēque
ea quae imperāsset factūrōs pollicērentur. Hoc sibi
Caesar satis opportūnē accidisse arbitrātus, quod neque
post tergum hostem relinquēre volēbat neque bellī ge-
rendī propter annī tempus facultātem habēbat neque
hās tantulārum rērum occupātiōnēs sibi Britanniae
antepōnendās indicābat, magnum eīs numerum ob-
sidum imperat. Quibus adductīs eōs in fidem recēpit.

30 Nāvibus cireiter LXXX onerāriūs coāctūs, quot satis
esse ad duās trānsportandās legiōnēs exīstimābat, quod
praeterea nāvium longārum habēbat quaestōrī, légātīs praefectūisque distribuit. Huc accēdēbant xviii onerāriae nāvēs, quae ex eō locō ā mīlibus passuūm viii ventō tenēbantur quō minus in eundem portum venīre possent; hās equitibus distribuit. Reliquum exercitūm Q. Titūriō Sabinō et L. Aurunculeiō Cottaē légātīs in Menapiōs atque in eōs pāgōs Morinōrum ā quibus ad eum légātī nōn vēnerant dūcendum dedit; P. Sulpicium Rūfum légātum cum eō praeṣidiō quod satis esse arbitrabātur portum tenēre iussit.

The start for Britain. An unfavorable landing place.

23. His cōnstitūtīs rēbus, nactus idōneam ad nāvigandum tempestātem tertiā ferē vigiliā nāvēs solvit equitēisque in ulteriōrem portum prōgredi et nāvēs cōnscedere et sē sequī iussit. Ā quibus cum paulō tardius esset administrātum, ipse hōrā diēī circiter quārtā cum prīmis nāvibus Britanniam attigīt atque ibi in omnibus collibus expositās hostium cōpiās armātās cōnspexit. Cuius locī haec erat nātūra atque ita montibus angustīs mare continēbātur, utī ex locīs superiōribus in litus tēlum adigi posset. Hunc ad ēgrediendum nēquaquam idōneum locum arbitratūs, dum reliquaēnāvēs eō convenīrent ad hōram nōnāni in ancorīs exspectāvit

Interim légātīs tribūnīisque mīlitum convocātīs, et quae ex Volusēnō cognōvisset et quae fierī vellet ostendit, monuitque, ut reī militāris ratiō, maximē ut mariī timae rēs postulārent (ut quae celerem atque instābilem mōtum habērent), ad nūtum et ad tempus omnēs rēs ab eīs administrārentur. Hīs dīmissīs et ventum et aestum ūnō tempore nactus secundum, datō signō et sublātīs ancorīs, circiter mīlia passuum vii ab eō locō prōgressus apertō ac plānō litore nāvēs cōnstituit.
Difficulties of landing. Advantages of Britons in combat.

24. At barbari cōnsiliō Rōmānōrum cognitō, prae
missō equitātū et essedāriīs, quō plērumque genere in
proelīs uti cōnsuērunt, reliquis cōpiīs subsecūtī nostrōs
nāvibus ēgredī prohibēbant. Erat ob hās causās summa
difíciltās, quod nāvēs propter magnītūdinem nisi in
altō cōnsītūtī nōn poterant; mīlitibus autem, ignōtīs
locīs, impedītīs manibus, magnō et gravi onerī armō-
rum oppressīs, simul et dē nāvibus désiliēndum et in
fluctibus cōnsistentīm et cum hostibus ērat pugnandum;
cum illī aut ex āridō aut paulum in aquam prōgressī,
onribus membrīs expeditīs, nōtissimīs locīs, audācter
tēla conicerent et equōs ĵnsūēfactōs incitārrent. Quibus
rēbus nostri perterritī atque huius omnīnō generīs pug-
nae ĵmperītī nōn ēadem alacritātē ac studiō, quō in
pedestribus utī proelīs cōnsuērunt, ütēbantur.

The Roman war galleys and engines of the greatest assistance. The
valor of a standard bearer.

25. Quod ubi Caesar animadvertit, nāvēs longās,
quārum et speciēs erat barbarīs inūsitātior et mōtus ad
ūsum expeditōr, paulum removērī ab onerāriūs nāvibus
et rēmis incitārī et ad latus apertura hostium cōnsītūtī,
atque ĵndē fundīs, sagittīs, tormentīs hostēs prōPELLI ac
summovere iussit; quae rēs magnō ĵsuī nostrīs fuit.
Nam et nāvium figurā et rēmōrum mōtū et inūsitātō
genere tormentōrum permōtī barbarī cōnsītērunt ac
paulum etiam pedem rettulērunt.

25 Atque nostrīs mīlitibus cunctantibus, maximē propter
altitūdinem maris, quī decimae legiōnis aquilam ferēbat
obtestātus deōs ut ea rēs legiōnī fēliciter ēvenīret,
“Dēsilīte,” inquit, “commilitōnēs, nisi vultis aquilam
hostibus prōdere; ego certē meum reī püblicae atque
imperatòri officium praestitero.” Hoc cum vōce magnā
dīxisset, sē ex nāve prōiēcit atque in hostēs aquilam
ferre coepit. Tum nostri cohortātī inter sē nē tantum
dēdeceus admitterētur, ünivēsī ex nāvī dēsiluērunt.
Hōs item ex proximīs nāvibus cum cōnspexissent, sub-
secūtī hostibus appropinquāvērunt.

Fierce fighting. The enemy, at first successful, routed. A landing
effecte.

26. Pugnātum est ab utrīisque ācriter. Nostri
tamen, quod neque ōrdinēs servāre neque firmiter
insistere neque signa subsequī poterant atque aliā
ex nāvī, quibuscumque signīs occurrerat sē aggregābat, 10
magnopere perturbābantur; hostēs vērō nōtīs omnibus
vadīs, ubi ex lītore aliquo singulārēs ex nāvī égredien-
tēs cōnspexerant, incitātūs equīs impeditōs adoriēbantur,
plūrēs paucōs circumsistēbant, aliī ā latere apertō in
ūniversōs tēla coniciēbant.

Quod cum animadvertisset Caesar, scaphās longārum
nāvium item speculātōria nāvigia mīlitibus complēri
iussit, et quōs labōrantēs cōnspexerat, hīs subsidia
summittēbat. Nostri simul in āridō cōnstitērunt, suīs
omnibus cōnsecūtīs in hostēs impetum fēcērunt atque 20
eōs in fugam dedērunt; neque longius prōsequī potuē-
runt, quod equitēs cursum tenēre atque īnsulam capere
nōn potuerant. Hōc ūnum ad prīstinam fortūnam
Caesari dēfuit.

Ambassadors come, bringing Commius. Peace made.

27. Hostēs proeliō superātī, simul atque sē ex fugā 25
recēpērunt, statim ad Caesarem lēgātōs dé pāce mīsē-
runt; obsidēs datūrōs quaeque imperāssēt factūrōs
esse polliciē sunt. Ūnā cum hīs lēgātīs Commius
Atrebās vēnit, quem supra dēmōnstrāveram ā Caesare
in Britanniam praemissum. Hunc illīō nāvī ēgressum, cum ad eōs ōrātōris modō Caesaris mandāta dēferret, comprehenderant atque in vinula coniēcerant; tum proelīō factō remīsērunt et in petendā pāce eius reī culpam in multitūdinem contulērunt, et propter imprudentiam ut ignōscerētur petīvērunt.

Caesar questus quod, cum ultrō in continentem lēgātīs missīs pācem ā sē petīssent, bellum sine causā intulēssent, ignōscere imprūdentiae dīxit obsidēsque imperāvit; quōrum illī partem statim dedērunt, partem ex longinquōribus locīs arcessītam paucīs diēbus sēsē datūrōs dīxērunt. Interea suōs remigrāre in agrōs iussērunt, principēsque undique convenīre et sē civitātēsque suās Caesari commendāre coēperunt.

*Ships carrying cavalry overtaken by a storm when near Britain.*

28. His ōrībus pāce cōnfirmātā, post diem quārtum quam est in Britanniam ventum, nāvēs xvīī dē quibus suprā dēmōnstrātum est, quae equītēs sustulerant, ex superiōre portū lēnī ventō solvērunt. Quae cum appropinquārent Britanniae et ex castrīs vidērentur, tanta tempestās subitō coorta est ut nūlla eārum cursum tenēre posset; sed aliae ēōdem unde erant profectae referrentur, aliae ad īnferiōrem partem īnsulae, quae est propius sōlis occāsum, magnō suō cum periculō dēicerentur; quae tamen ancorīs iactīs cum fluctibus complērentur, necessāriō adversā nocte in altum prōvectae continentem petīrunt.

*Many vessels at anchor wrecked or severely damaged by a storm.*

29. Eādem noctē accidit ut esset lūna plēna, quī diēs maritimōs aestūs maximōs in Ōceanō efficere cōnsuēvit,
nostrisque id erat incognitum. Ita únō tempore et longās nāvēs, quās Caesar in āridum subdūxerat, aestus complōbat, et onerāriās, quae ad ancorās erant dēligātāe, tempestās afflictābat, neque īlla nostrīs facultās aut administrandī aut auxiliandi dābatur. Complūribus nāvibus frāctīs, reliquaē cum essent—fūnibus, ancorīs reliquisque armāmentīs āmissīs—ad nāvigandum inūtilēs, magna (ūd quod necesse erat accidere) tōtīs exercitūs perturbātiō facta est. Neque enim nāvēs erant aliae quibus reportāri possent et omnia deerant quae ad 10 reficiendās eās erant ūsui, et, quod omnibus cōnstābat hiemāriī in Galliā oportēre, frūmentum hīs in locīs in hiemem prōvisum nōn erat.

The Britons plan rebellion.

30. Quibus rēbus cognītīs prīncipēs Britanniae, qui post proelium ad Caesarem convēnerant, inter sē collo-15 cūtī, cum et equītēs et nāvēs et frūmentum Rōmānīs deesse intellegērent, et paucitātem mīlitum ex castrōrum exiguitāte cognōscerent,—quae hōc erant etiam angustīōra quod sine impedimentīs Caesar legiōnēs trāus-20 portāverat,—optimum factū esse dūxērunt, rebellīōne factā, frūmentō comeātūque nostrīs prohibēre et rem in hiemem prōducere; quod hīs superātīs aut rēditū interclūsīs nēminem posteā bellī inferendī causā in Britanniam trānsitūrum cōnfidēbant. Itaque rūrsus consiliātiōne factā paulātīm ex castrīs discēdere et suōs clam ex agrīs dēducere coepērunt.

Caesar, suspicious of them, collects a large food-supply and repairs most of the ships.

31. At Caesar, etsī nondum eōrum consilia cognō-25 verat, tamen et ex eventū nāvium suārum, et ex eō quod
One legion attacked while foraging. Caesar comes to its relief.

32. Dum ea geruntur, legione ex consuetudine una frumentatum missa, quae appellabatur septima, neque ullā ad id tempus bellī suspiciōne interpositā, cum pars hominum in agrīs remanēret, pars etiam in castra ventitāret, iī qui prō portīs castrōrum in statione erant Caesari nūtiāvērunt pulverem maiōrem quam consuetūdō ferret in eā parte vidēri quam in partem legiō iter fēcisset. Caesar id quod erat suspicātus, aliiquid novī ā barbarīs initum consili, cohortēs quae in stationibus erant sēcum in eam partem proficiscī, ex reliquis duās in stationem cohortēs succedere, reliquis armāri et confestim sēsē subsequí iussit.

Cum paulō longius ā castrīs prōcessisset, suōs ab hostibus premī atque aegrē sustinēre et confertā legiōne ex omnibus partibus ō tele conicī animadvertit: Nam quod omnī ex reliquis partibus demessō frumentō pars una erat reliqua, suspicātī hostēs hūc nostrōs esse ventūrōs noctū in silvis délitterant; tum dispersōs dēpositūs armīs in metendō occupātōs subītō adortī, paucīs interfectīs reliquis incertīs ordinibus perturbāverant, simul equitātū atque essedīs circumdederant.
Methods and skill of the Britons in chariot-fighting.

33. Genus hoc est ex essedis pugnac. Primo per omnès partès perequitant et tēla coniciunt atque īpsō terrōre equōrum et strepitū rotārum ērīnēs plērumque perturbant; et cum sē inter equitum turmās insinuāvērunt, ex essedis dēsiliunt et pedibus proeliāntur. Aurī-5 gae interim paulātim ex proeliō excēdunt atque ita currūs collocant ute, si illī ā multitūdine hostium prē- mantur, expeditum ad suōs receptum habēant. Ita mōbilitātem equitum, stabilitātem peditum in proelīs praēstant; ac tantum ēsū cotīdiānō et exercitātiōne efficiunt ute in dēclīvi ac praecipiti locō incitātōs equōs sustinēre et brevī moderāri ac flectere, et per tēmōnem percurre et in iugō īnsistere et sē inde in currūs citissimē recipere cōnsuērint.

Caesar returns safely to camp.

He defeats the enemy before the camp.

35. Caesar etsi idem quod superiōribus diēbus acciderat fore vidēbat — ut, si essent hostēs pulsi, celeritate periculum effugerent, — tamen nactus equītēs circiter xxx, quōs Commius Atrebās, dē quō ante dictum est, sēcum trānsportāverat, legiōnēs in aciē prō castrīs constituit. Commissō proelīō diūtius nostrōrum militum impetum hostēs ferre nōn potuērunt ac terga vertērunt. Quōs tantō spatiō secūtī quantum cursū et viribus efficere potuērunt, complūres ex eis occidērunt; deinde omnibus longē lātēque aedificiīs incēnsīs sē in castra recēpērunt.

Peace made again. Caesar sails back to Gaul.

36. Eōdem diē lēgātī ab hostibus missī ad Caesarem dē pāce vēnērunt. Hīs Caesar numerum obsidīum quem ante imperāverat duplicāvit, eōisque in continentem ad-15 dūcī iussit; quod, ē propinquā diē aequinoctī, īnfirmīs nāvibus hieī nāvigationēm subiciendam nōn existimābat. Ipse idōneam tempestātem nactus paulō post medium noctem nāvēs solvit; quae omnēs incolūmēs ad continentem pervēnērunt; sed ex eīs onerāriae duae 20 eōsdem portūs, quōs reliquaе, capere nōn potuērunt et paulō infrā dēlātae sunt.

IV. CAMPAIGN AGAINST THE MORINI AND MENAPII

Soldiers from two ships attacked by the Morini. The latter defeated.

37. Quibus ex nāvibus cum essent expositī militēs circiter ccc atque in castra contenderent, Morīni, quōs Caesar in Britanniam proficiscēns pācātōs reliquerat,
spe prædæe adductī primō nōn ita magnō suōrum numerō circumstetērunt ac, sī sēsē interficī nōllent, arma pōnere iussērunt. Cum illī orbe factō sēsē dē-fenderent, celeriter ad clāmōrem hominum circiter mīlia vi convēnērunt. Quā rē nūntiātā Caesār omnem ex 5 castrīs equitātūm suīs auxiliō misit.

Interim nostri mīlitēs impetum hostium sustinuērunt atque amplius hōris quattuor fortissimē pugnāvērunt, et paucīs vulnerībus acceptīs complūrēs ex his occi-dērunt. Posteā vērō quam equitātūs noster in cōn-10 spectum vēnīt, hostēs abiecētīs armīs terga vertērunt magnusque cōrūm numeros est occīsus.

Labienus subdues the Morini. The country of the Menapii laid waste. Winter quarters established.

38. Caesar posterō diē T. Labiēnum lēgātum cum eīs legiōnibus quās ex Britannīā redūxerat in Morīnōs, quī rebellīōnem fēcerant, mīsit. Quī cum propter siccītātēs 15 palūdum quō sē recuperērent nōn habērent (quō perfugīō superiōre anno erant īsi) omnēs fērē in potestātem La-biēnī pervēnērunt. At Q. Titūrius et L. Cotta lēgātī, qui in Menapiōrum finēs legiōnēs dūxerant, omnibus eōrum agrīs vāstātīs, frūmentīs succīsis, aedificiīs 20 incēnsīs, quod Menapiī sē omnēs in dēnsissimās silvās abdiderant, sē ad Caesarem recēpērunt.

Caesar in Belgīs omnium legiōnūm hīberna cōnstituit. Eō duae omnīnō civitātēs ex Britannīā obsidēs misērunt, reliquae neglēxērunt. Hīs rébus gestīs ex 25 litterīs Caesāris diērum xx supplicātiō à senātū dēcrēta est.
I. CAESAR'S SECOND INVASION OF BRITAIN, 54 B.C.

Chapters 1-7. Caesar again plans to invade Britain, and has a large number of ships built during the winter season. He determines to take to Britain with him a number of Gallic chiefs as hostages for their tribes. One of these men, Dumnorix the Aeduan, resists this and is slain by Caesar's orders.

The start made from Portus Itius. The large number of ships alarms the Britons, who leave the shore undefended.

8. Hís rēbus gestīs, Labiēnō in continentī cum III legiōnibus et equitum mīlibus duōbus relīctō, ut portūs tuērētur1 et reī frūmentāriae prōvidēret, quaeque in Galliā gerentur cognōsceret cōnsiliumque prō tempore sē et prō rē2 caperet, ipse cum quīnque legiōnibus et parī numerō equitum, quem in continentī reliquēbat, ad sōlis occāsūm nāvēs solvit; et lēnī Āfrico3 prōvectus mediā cīrcītēr nocte ventō intermissō, cursum nōn tenuit; et longius4 delātus aestū ortā lūce sub sinistrā Britanniam relīctam cōnspexit. Tum rūrsus aestūs

1 tuērētur: for its meaning compare its participle, tutus, commonly used as an adjective.
2 prō tempore et prō re: i.e. as the time and situation required. See 142, 6, b. References like this are to the Introduction.
3 Africo: sc. (vento), southwest wind. Africo is really an adjective.
4 longius: too far, i.e. the tide carried Caesar too far to the eastward, beyond the point where the coast turned to the north.
commutatiōnem secūtus rēmīs contendit ut eam partem īnsulae caperet quā optimum esse ēgressum superiōre acēstāte cognōverat. Quā in rē admodum fuit militum virtūs laudanda, quī vectōriūs gravibusque nāvigiis nōn intermissō rēmigandi labōre longārum nāvium cur sum adaequārunt. Accessum est ad Britanniam omnibus nāvibus meridiānō fērē tempore; neque in cō locō hostīs est vīsus; sed, ut posteā Caesar ex captīvis cognōvit, cum magnae manūs eō convēnissent, multitūdine nāvium perterrītæ, quae cum annotinis privātīisque, ĭō quās suī quisque commodī causā fēcerat, amplius dccc ūnō erant visae tempore, ā lītore discesserant ac sē in superiōrā loca abdiderant.

Caesar lands his army, leaves a guard for the ships, and marches inland. He engages with the enemy, who flee unpursued.

9. Caesar, exposītō exercitū et locō castrīs īdōneō captō, ubi ex captīvis cognōvit quō in locō hostium cópiae consēdissent cohortibus x ad mare rēlictīs et equītibus cccc qui praesidiō nāvibus essent, dē tertiā vigiliā ad hostēs contendit, eō minus veritus nāvibus, quod in lītore mollī atque apertō déligātās ad ancorās relinquēbat. Eī praesidiō nāvibusque Q. Ātrium prae fēcit. Ipse noctū prōgressus milia passuum circiter xii hostium cópiās conspicātus est. Illī equitātū atque essedīs ad flūmei prōgressī ex locō superiōre nostrōs

1 ēgressum: landing-place; a substantive, not a participle.
2 virtus, pluck.
3 vectōriūs: cf. veho, carry. These ships are contrasted with the naves longae, the war galleys.
4 meridiānō: an adjective derived from medius and dies.
5 annotinis, of the year before.
6 commodum, -i, u., advantage, convenience.
7 exposītō, landed. Participle of exponō, land.
8 mollīs: i.e. sandy, without rocks.
prohibère et proelium committere coepérunt. Repulsī
ab equitātū sē in silvās abdidērunt, locum nactī ēgregiē
et nātūrā et opere mūnītum, quem domesticī bellī
causā, ut vidēbātur, iam ante praeeparāverant; nam
5 crēbris arboribus succēsis omnēs introitus erant prae-
clūsī. Ipsum ex silvīs rāri prōpugnābant nostrōsque
intrā mūnītiōnēs ingredi prohibēbant. At militēs legi-
ōnīs septimae, testūdine factā et aggere ad mūnītiōnēs
adiectō, locum cēpérunt eōsque ex silvīs expulērunt
10 paucīs vulneribus acceptīs. Sed eōs fugientēs longius
Caesar prōsequī vetuit, et quod locī nātūram ignōrā-
bat, et quod, magnā parte diēī cōnsūmptā, mūnītiōnī
castrōrum tempus relinquī volēbat.

The next day word comes of a great disaster to his ships.

10. Postridīē eius diēī māne tripertītō militēs equi-
tēsque in expeditiōnem misit, ut eōs qui fügerant
persequerentur. Hīs aliquantūm itineris prōgressīs,
cum iam extremī essent in prōspectū, equitēs ā Q. Ātrīō
ad Caesarem vēnērunt qui nūntiārent, superiōre
nocte maximā coortā tempestāte, prope omnēs nāvēs
20 afflēctās atque in lītus eīectās esse; quod neque
ancorae funēsque sustinērent neque nautae gubernātōrēsque

1 domestici: civil, among themselves.
2 introitus: a noun derived from intro, in, within, and eo, go.
3 praeclusi: participle of a compound verb, from claudo, close.
4 ex silvis rari propugnabunt: fought, i.e. (cast weapons) in small par-
ties protected by the woods.
5 et...et: not only...but also.
6 tripertito: an adverb derived from tres and pars.
7 in expeditiōnem: i.e. on a rapid march, lightly equipped.
8 extremi: in all probability this refers to the rear of the enemy,
though some would like to have it signify the last of the troops sent in
pursuit, showing how short a distance they must have travelled when word
came of the disaster.
9 sustinerent: held; used intransitively.
Afterward, he has all ships drawn up on shore, a wall built to protect them.

*Cassivellaunus now in command of Britons.*

11. His rebus cognitis Caesar legiones equitatumque revertit atque in itinere desistere iubet, ipse ad navēs revertitur; eadem fere quae ex nūntiis cognōverat cōram perspicet, sic ut amissīs circiter XL navibus reliquae tamen refici posse magnō negotiō vidērentur. Itaque ex legiōnibus fabrōs deligit et ex continentī aliōs accessī iubet; Labiēnō scribit ut quam plurīmās possit, ēis legiōnibus quae sint apud eum, navēs insti-

Subductīs navēs castrisque ēgregiē mūnitiē eādem cōpiās quās ante praesidiō navibus relinquit, ipse eōdem unde redierat proficiscitur. Eō cum vēnisset, maiōrēs iam undique in eum locum cōpiāe Britānōrum convenerant, summā imperī bellique administrāndi commūni cōnsiliō permīssā Cassivellaunō; cuius finēs ā maritimīs civitātibus flūmen dīvidit, quod appellātur Tamesis, ā mari circiter mīlia passuum LXXX. Huic superiōre tempore cum reliquis civitātibus continentia bella intercesserant; sed nostrō adventū permōti Britanni hunc tōtī bellī imperiōque praefēcerant.

---

1 *concursu*: colliding.
2 *coram*, with his own eyes.
3 *fabros*, carpenters.
4 *instituat*: the same as *aedificet*.
5 *continentia*: from the adjective *continens*, constant.
The inhabitants of Britain, their origin and customs.

12. Britanniae pars interior ab eis incolitum quōs nātōs in insula ipsā memoriā prōditumő dicunt; maritima pars ab eis qui praedae ac bellī interferéndī causā ex Belgīō trānsiērunt (qui omnēs ferē eis nōminibus cīvitātum appellantur quibus ortī ex cīvitātibus eō pervēnērunt) et bellō illāō ibi remānsērunt atque agrōs colere coepērunt. Hominum est infinita multitūdō crēberrimaque aedificia ferē Gallicīs cōnsimilia, pecoris magnus numerus. Útuntur aut nummō 3 aureō aut tāleōs 4 ferreis ad certum pondus exāminātīs. Nāscitur ibi plumbum album in mediterrāneīs regionibus, in maritimīs ferrum, sed eīs exigua est cōpia; aere útuntur importātō. Māteria cuiusque generis ut in Galliā est praeter fāgum atque abietem. Leporem et gallīnam et ānserem gustāre fas nōn putant; haec tamen alunt animī voluptātīisque causā. Loca sunt temperātiōra quam in Galliā, remissīoribus frīgoribus.

The shape and size of the island.

13. Insula nāturā triquetra, cuius ūnum latus est contrā Galliām. Huius lateris alter angulus, quī est ad Cantium, quō ferē omnēs ex Galliā nāvēs appellantur, ad orientem sōlem, inferior ad merīdiem spectat. Hōc latus pertinet circiter mīlia passuum d. Alterum

---

1 prōditum: sc. esse; it has been handed down (by tradition).
2 dicunt: its subject is the indefinite “they.”
3 nummus, -i, m., money.
4 talea, -ae, f., rod.
5 examinātis, tested.
6 plumbum, -i, n., lead; plumbum album (white lead), tin.
7 materia, -ae, f., timber.
8 fagus, -i, f., beech.
9 abies, -etis, f., fir.
10 lepus, -oris, m., hare.
11 gallina, -ae, f., hen.
12 ānser, -eris, m., goose.
13 gustō, -are, etc., taste.
14 quo . . . appelluntur: where (whither) . . . land.
vergit ad Hispāniam atque occidentem sōlem; quā ex parte est Hibernia īnsula, dimidiō¹ minor, ut existimātur, quam Britannia, sed pari spatiō trānsmissūs atque² ex Galliā est in Britanniam. In hoc mediō cursū³ est īnsula quae appellātur Mona; complūrēs 5 præterēa mīnōrēs subiectae⁴ īnsulae existimantur; de quibus īnsulis nōnnūlli scrīpsērunt diēs continuōs xxx sub brūmam⁵ esse noctem. Nōs nihil dē eō percontatioṇibus⁶ reperiēbāmus, nisi certīs ex aquā mēnsūris⁷ breviōrēs esse quam in continentī noctēs vidēbāmus. Huius est longitūdō lateris, ut fert illōrum opīniō, DCC mīlium. Tertium est contrā septentriōnēs; cui partī nūlla est obiecta terra, sed eius angulus lateris maximē ad Germāniam spectat. Hoc mīlium passuum DCCC in longitūdinem esse existimātur. Ita omnis īnsula est in 15 circuitū vīciēs centum mīlium passuum.

Superiority of the people of Kent. Habits of the interior tribes.

14. Ex hīs omnibus longē sunt hūmānissimi, quī Cantium incolunt, quae regiō est maritima omnis, neque multum ā Gallicā differunt consuētūdine. Interiōrēs plērique frūmenta nōn serunt,⁸ sed lacte⁹ et carne¹⁰ vivunt pellibusque sunt vestīti. Omnēs vērō sē Bri-

---

¹ dimidium, -i, n., half.
² atque, as; this means that Ireland was thought to be just as far from Britain as Gaul was.
³ In hoc mediō cursu, halfway across.
⁴ subiectae: i.e. near by (lying close at hand).
⁵ brumam: i.e. brevissimam diem, used here for winter.
⁶ percontatio, -onis, f., inquiry.
⁷ ex aqua mensūris: the Romans had an arrangement (called the clepsydra) for measuring time by using water in much the same way as we use sand in the hour-glass.
⁸ sero, serere, sevi, satum, sow, plant.
⁹ lac, lactis, n., milk.
¹⁰ caro, carnis, f., flesh, meat.
tannī vitrō inficiunt, quod caeruleum efficit colorem, atque hoc horribiliōres sunt in pugnā aspectū.

A daring attack upon the Romans.

15. Equitēs hostium essedāriique ācriter proeliō cum equitātū nostrō in itinere cōnflīxērunt, ita tamen ut nostrī omnibus partibus superiōrēs fuerint atque eōs in silvās collēsque compulerint; sed complūribus interfectīs cupidius īnsecūtī nōnnūllōs ex suīs āmisērunt. At illī intermissō spatiō, imprūdentibus nostrīs atque occupātīs in mūniōne castrōrum, subitū sē ex silvis ēiēcērunt impetūque in eōs factō quī erant in statīōne prō castrīs collocātī, ācriter pugnāvērunt; duābusque missīs subsidiō cohōribus ā Caesare, atque hīs primīs legiōnum duārum, cum hae perexiguō intermissō locī spatiō inter sē cōnstitissent, novō genere pugnae perterrītis nostrīs per mediōs andācissimē perrūpērunt sēque inde incolumēs recēpērunt. Eō diē Q. Labe- rius Dūrus tribūnus militum interficītur. Illī plurībus summissīs cohōribus repelluntur.

Disadvantages of the Romans in encounters with the Britons.

16. Tōtō hōc in genere pugnae, cum sub oculīs omnīm ac prō castrīs dīmicārētur, intellectūm est nostrōs propter gravitātem armōrum, quod neque īnsequī cēdentēs possent neque ā signīs discēdere audē-

1 vitrum, -ī, n., woad, a blue vegetable dye, used by the Britons to stain themselves.
2 inficiunt, stain.
3 hoc, by reason of this (i.e. the dyeing).
4 essedarii, fighters from chariots.
5 perexiguo, very narrow.
6 incolumis, -e, unharmed.
7 dimico, -are, etc., fight.
8 cedentes, participle of cedo, retreat, used substantively as the object of inequi.
rent, minus aptōs esse ad huius generis hostem; equites autem magnō cum periculō dimicāre, propterea quod illī etiam cōnsultō plērumque cēderent et, cum paulum ā legiōnibus nostrōs remōvissent, ex essedīs désilīrent et pedibus disparī proeliō contenderent. Equestrī autem proeliā ratiō et cēdentibus et īnsequentibus pār atque idem periculum īnferēbat. Accēdēbat hūc ut numquam cōnferti sed rāri magnīisque intervāllis proelīārentur stationēsque dispositās habērent, atque aliī deinceps exciperent, integriēque et recentēs désatiō gātis succēderent.

Three legions are attacked when foraging. The Romans defeat and pursue the Britons.

17. Posterō diē procul ā castrīs hostēs in colloibus cōnstitērunt, rārique sē ostendere et lēnius quam pridē nostrōs equitēs proeliō lācessere coēpērunt. Sed meridiē cum Caesar pābulandī causā trēs legiōnēs atque omnem ēquitātum cum C. Trebōniō lēgātō mīsisset, repente ex omnībus partibus ad pābulātōrēs advolāvērunt, sīc utī sī signīs legiōnibusque nōn absisterent. Nōstrī ācriter in eōs impētū factō reppulērunt neque finem sequendi fēcērunt quoad subsidiō cōnfisi equitēs, cum post sē legiōnēs vidērent, praecipitēs hostēs ēgērunt; magnōque eōrum numerō interfectō neque suī colli-gendi neque cōnsistēndī aut ex essedīs désiliēndī facul-

1 consultō, adv., intentionally, purposely.
2 removissent, had drawn off.
3 Accedēbat hūc ut, It was added to this that; freely, furthermore.
4 cōnferti: opposed in meaning to rāri which immediately follows.
5 deinceps, in turn, by relays.
6 lenius, less fiercely.
7 legiōnibusque non absisterent: i.e. they were now bold enough to attempt battle even with the strongest troops of the Romans, not merely with the cavalry and the foragers.
8 quoad, means the same as dum.
9 cōnfisi: from confido, confidere, confīsus. semi-deponent, trust.
tātem dedĕrunt. Ex hāc fugā prōtīnusquam undique convĕnerant auxilia discessĕrunt, necque post id tempus umquam summis nŏbisceum cŏpiis hostēs contendērunt.

Caesar crosses the Thames in spite of the resistance of the Britons.


The enemy are troublesome in small skirmishes. Plundering is difficult for Romans.

19. Cassivellaunus, ut supra dēmŏnstrāvimus, omni depositā spē contentiōnis, dīmissī amplīoribus cŏpiis, milibus circiter īv essedāriōrum relictīs itinera nostra servābat; paulunque ex viā excēdēbat locīisque impe-

1 protinus, immediately.
2 sudis, -is, f., stake.
3 prae, prefixis, and defixa, both from figo, figere, fix, set; the compound with praef has reference to those stakes set in the edge of the bank, and that with de to those set in the bed of the stream.
4 flumine: Caesar is thought to have crossed the Thames between Kingston and Brentford, eight or ten miles southwest of London.
5 cum, although.
6 dimitto, send away; leave, abandon. Note the different meanings.
ditis ac silvestribus sēsē occultābat atque eis regionibus quibus nōs īter factūrōs cognōverat pecora atque hominēs ex agrīs in silvās compellēbat; et cum equītātus noster libērius praedandī vāstandīque causā sē in agrōs eiēcerat, omnibus viās sēmitīsque pessedāriōs ex silvīs ēmittēbat et magnō cum perīculō nostrōrum equītum cum eīs cōn-
fligēbat atque hoc metū lātius vagāri prohibēbat. Relinquebātūr ut neque longius ab agmine legiōnum discēdī Caesar paterētur, et tantum in agrīs vāstandīs incendiūsque faciendīs hostibus nocērētur quāntum in labōre atque itinere legiōnāriī militēs efficere poterant.

Caesar makes terms with the Trinobantes.

20. Interim Trinobantēs, prope fīrmissima eārum regionum civitās, ex quā Mandubracius adulēscēns Caesaris fidem secūtus ad eum in continentem vēnē-
rat—cuius pater in eā civitāte rēgnum obtinuerat interfectusque erat ā Cassivellaunō, ipse fugā mortem vitāverat, — lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittunt pollicen-
turque sēsē ei dēditūros atque imperāta factūrōs; petunt ut Mandubracium ab iniūriā Cassivellauni dēfendat, atque in civitātem mittat qui præsit impe-
riumque obtineat. Hīs Caesar imperat obsidēs XL frūmentumque exercituī Mandubraciumque ad eōs mittit. Illī imperāta celeriter fēcērunt, obsidēs ad numerum frūmentumque mīsērunt.

1 semita, -ae, f., path.  
2 hoc metu: for metu huius rei.  
3 tantum, (only) so much.  
4 noceretur, harm was done; impersonal, as always in the passive.  
5 labore atque itinere: laborious marches; only his heavy-armed soldiers could safely engage in pillage, and they of course could not march far, nor do the work easily.  
6 fidem secūtus, seeking for the protection.  
7 vitaverat: vito, avoid, has no connection with vita, life, or vivo, live.

Failure of an attack upon the naval camp. Cassivellaunus asks for and is allowed terms of peace.

22. Dum haec in hīs locīs geruntur, Cassivellaunus ad Cantium, quod esse ad mare suprā dēmōnstrāvimus, quibus regiōnibus quattuor rēgēs praerant, Cingetorīx, Carvilius, Taximagulus, Segovax, nūntiōs mittit atque eis imperat utī coāctis omnibus cópiis castra nāvālia dē imprōvisō\(^2\) adoriantur\(^3\) atque oppugnent. Hī cum ad castra vēnissent, nostrī ēruptiōne factā multīs eōrum interfecīs, captō etiam nōbili duce Lugotorīge, suōs 25 incolumēs redūxērunt. Cassivellaunus hōc proelīō nūntiātō, tot dētrimentīs\(^4\) acceptīs, vāstātīs finibus, maximē etiam permōtus dēfectiōne civitātum, légātōs

---

1 impeditas, tangle, dense.  
2 de improviso, suddenly.  
3 adoriantur, -i, adortus, attack.  
4 detrimentum, -i, u., defeat, reverse.
per Atrebātem Commium dē dēditioāe ad Caesarem mittit. Caesar cum cōnstituisset hiemāre in continentī propter repentīnōs Galliae mōtus neque multum aestātīs superesset, atque id facile extrahi posse intel···legeret, obsidēs imperat, et quid in annōs singulōs vectīgālis populō Rōmānō Britannia penderet, cōnstituit; interdicit atque imperat Cassivellaunō nē Mandubraciō neu Trinobantibus noceat.

Caesar by making two voyages carries his army back to Gaul.

23. Obsidibus acceptis exercitum redūcit ad mare, nāvēs inventō refectās. His dēductīs, quod et captī vōrum magnum numerum habēbat et nōnnūlla tempestāte dēperierant nāvēs, duōbus commeātibus exercitum reportāre īnstituit. Ae sic accidit, utī ex tantō nāvium numerō tot nāvigātiōnibus neque hoc neque superiōre annō ūlla omnīnō nāvis quae militēs portāret désiderārētur at ex eis quae inānēs ex continentī ad eum remitterentur, priōris commeātūs exposītīs militibus, et quās postea Labiēnus faciendās cūrāverat numerō LX, perpaucēs locum caperent, reli··quae ferē omnēs rēicerentur. Quās cum aliquamdiū Caesar frūstrā exspectāset, nē annī tempore ā nāvigātiōne exclūderētur, quod aequinōctium suberat, necessāriō angustius militēs collocāvit, ae summā tranqui·

1 repentīnus, -a, -um, sudden.
2 extrahō, -ere, -traxi, -tractum, draw out, waste.
3 in annōs singulōs, each year.
4 vectigālis, n. tribute; a partitive genitive depending on quid.
5 interdico, forbid.
6 interdicit atque imperat: equivalent to one emphatic verb, i.e. expressly commands.
7 dēductīs, launched.
8 commeātus, -us, m., trip, voyage.
9 désiderō, -are, etc., lose.
10 angustius: i.e. more closely than usual.
litate consecuta, secundă initā cum solvisset vigiliā, primā lūce terram attigit omnēisque incolumēs nāvēs perdūxit.

* * * * * * * *

II. THE WAR WITH AMBIORIX, CHIEF OF THE EBURONES.

He is successful by strategy against Titurius, but he fails against Cicero.

The Gauls, after an unsuccessful attack upon the camp of Cotta and Titurius Sabinus, demand a conference.

26. Diebus circiter xv quibus in hiberna ventum est, initium repentīni tumultūs ac dēfeciōnis ortum est ab Ambiorīge et Catuvolcō; quī cum ad finēs rēgni sui Sabinō Cottaequē praestō fuissent frūmentumque in hiberna comportāvissent, Indūtiomāri Trēverī nūntiīs impulsī suōs concitāvērunt subitōque oppressīs lignātoribus magnā manū ad castra oppugnanda vēnērunt. Cum celeriter nostri arma cēpissent vāllumque ascendissent, atque īnā ex parte HISPĀNĪS equītūs emissīs equestri proelīo superiōrēs fuissent, dēspērātā rē hostēs suōs ab oppugnātiōne redūxērunt.

15 Tum suō mōre conclāmāvērunt utī alīquī ex nostrīs ad colloquium prōdiret: habēre sē sē quae dē rē commūni dīcere vellent, quibus rēbus contrōversiās minuī posse spērārent.

1 Ambiorīge: the king of the Eburones, among whom Cotta and Sabinus had their winter quarters.
2 praesto esse, be at hand, meet.
3 concitaverunt: cf. the English excite.
4 lignatoribus: cf. lignum, wood, firewood.
5 desperātā re, hopeless of success.
6 utī, (asking) that, etc.
7 alīquī: used as a substantive here for alīquīs.
Ambiorix, first acknowledging his obligations to Caesar, says that he was forced by his league with other Gallic tribes to make this attack. He pretends that there is to be an uprising of all the Gauls on this day and professes his willingness for the Romans to escape to Cicero or to Labienus.

27. Mittitur ad eós C. Arpineius eques Rōmānus, familiāris Q. Titūri, et Q. Iūnius ex Hispāniā quīdam, qui iam ante missū Caesaris ad Ambiorigem ventītāre consuērat; apud quōs Ambiorīx ad hunc modum locūtus est:

Sēsē prō Caesaris in sē beneficiis plūrimum ei confiterī debère,1 quod eius operā stipendiō2 liberātus esset quod Aduatucīs, finītimīs suīs, pendere consuēsset, quodque eī et filius et frātris filius ā Caesare remissī essent, quōs Aduatucī obsidium numerō missōs apud sē in servitūte et catēnīs3 tenuissent; neque id quod fēcerit dē oppugnātiōne castrōrum aut iūdiciō aut voluntāte suā fēcisse, sed coāctū civitātis, suaque esse eius modī imperiā4 ut nōn minus habēret iūris in sē multitūdō5 quam ipse in multitūdinem.

Cīvitāti porro6 hanc fuisset belli causam, quod repentiāe Gallōrum coniūrātiōnī resistere nōn potuerit. Id sē facile ex humilitāte suā probāre posse, quod nōn adeō sit imperītus rērum ut suīs cōpiīs populum Rōmānum superāri posse cōnfidat. Sed esse Galliae commune20 consilium; omnibus hībernīs Caesaris oppugnāndīs7

1 Sese . . . confiteri debere, he admitted that he owed. Notice that confiteri is not a complementary infinitive with debere, but is itself the verb of the principal clause.
2 stipendium, -i, n., tribute.
3 catena, -ae, f., chain.
4 imperia, authority, lit., his commands.
5 multitudo, people; i.e. those whose ruler he appeared to be.
6 porro, furthermore.
7 omnibus . . . hibernis, for attacking, etc.; dat. of the gerundive to express purpose, instead of the usual ad and acc.
hunc esse dictum diem, nē qua legiō alterī legiōnī subsidō venīre posset. Nōn facile Gallōs Gallīs negāre potuisse, praeertim cum dē recuperandā communī libertātē cōnsilium initum vidērētur.

5 Quibus quoniam prō pietāte satisfecerit, habēre nunc sē rationem offici prō beneficiis Caesaris; monēre, ērāre Titūriūm prō hospitiō, ut suae ac militum salūtī cōnsulat. Magnam manum Germanōrum conductam Rhēnum trānsisse; hanc affore bīduō.

10 Ipsōrum esse cōnsilium, velintne prius quam finitimi sentiant, ēductōs ex hibernīs mīlitēs aut ad Cicerōnem aut ad Labiēnun dēdūcere, quōrum alter mīlia passuum circiter L, alter paulō amplius ab eis absit. Illud sē pollicēri et iūre iūrandō cōnfirmare tūtum sē iter per suōs finēs datūrum. Quod cum faciat, et civitātī sēsē cōnsulere, quod hibernīs levētur, et Caesarī prō eius meritis grātiam referre. Hāc orātiōne habitā discēdit Ambiorīx.

The Romans hold a council. Cotta advocates defending the camp.

28. Arpineius et Iūniius quae audierant ad lēgātōs dēferunt. Illī repentīnā rē perturbātī, etsī ab hoste ea

1 recuperanda, winning back.
2 prō pietate, to shōw his loyalty to his country; on the score of patriotism.
3 habere rationem, take account of, pay heed to.
4 officium, -i, n., duty.
5 prō (beneficiis), in return for; but prō (hospitio) just following is like prō (pietate) above.
6 conductam: participle of conducō, bring together, with mercede understood, i.e. hired.
7 Ipsōrum esse cōnsilium, The question for them to determine was, etc., lit., the deliberation of themselves was.
8 ad Cicerōnem: observe that Ambiorīx does not promise safe arrival for the Romans at either of these camps. See just below: tūtum iter per suōs finēs. He would protect them only in his own territory. Certainly the Romans might well hesitate if they believed that Cicero and Labienus also were to be attacked the same day.
9 levo, -are, etc., lighten; relieve.
dicēbantur, tamen nōn neglegenda existimābant, maxi-
mēque hāc rē permovēbantur, quod cīvitātem ignōbilem
atque humilem Eburōnum suā sponte populō Rōmānō
bellum facere ausam vīx erat crōdendum. Itaque ad
cōnsilium rem dēferunt magnaque inter eōs existi-
5 versia. L. Aurunculeius complūrēsque tribūnī
mīlitum et prīmōrum ōrdinum centuriōnēs nihil temere
agendum, neque ex ĭbīrnīs iniussū Caesāris discēden-
dum existimābant; quantāsvīs cōpiās etiam Germānō-
rum sustinērī posse mūnītīs ĭbīrnīs docēbant; rem 10
esse testimōniō, quod prīnum hostium impetum multīs
ultrō vulneribus illātīs fortissimē sustinuerint; rē frū-
mentāriā nōn premī; intercā et ex proximīs ĭbīrnīs et
ā Caesare conventūra subsidia; postrēmō, quid esse
levius aut turpius quam auctōre hoste dē summīs rēbus 15
capere cōnsilium?

Titurius is for retreat. "The Germans would soon join the Gauls.
To retreat was safe; to stay meant famine."

29. Contra ea Titūrius sērō factūrōs clāmitābat, cum
maiōrēs manūs hostium adiūntēs Germānīs convēnī-
sent, aut cum aliqūid calamitātīs in proximīs ĭbīrnīs
esset acceptum. Brevēm cōnsulendī esse occasiōnem.
Caesarem sē arbitrārī profectum in Italiam; neque 20
aliter Carnūtēs interficiendi Tasgetī cōnsilium fuisse
captūrōs, neque Eburōnēs, si ille adesset, tantā cum
contemptiōne nostrī ad castra ventūrōs esse. 4 Sēsē nōn

1 quid esse levius: a question implying its own answer, subjunctive in
the direct, but infinitive in the indirect discourse; 206.

2 sērō, too late.

3 Caesarem: subject accusative of profectum (esse) depending upon
se arbitrari.

4 venturos esse: we should expect here venturos fuisse, as this repre-
sents the apodosis of a condition contrary to fact in the direct discourse
hostem auctorem, sed rem spectare; subesse Rhēnum; magnō esse Germānīs dolōri Ariovisti mortem et superiōres nostrās victōriās; ārdere Galliam tot contumeliis acceptis sub populi Rōmānī imperium redactam, superiōre gloriā rei militāris exstinctā. Postrēmō, quis hoc sibi persuādēret sine certā spē Ambiorīgem ad eiusmodī consilium descendisse? Suam sententiam in utramque partem esse tūtam: si nihil esset dūrius, nūllō cum periculō ad proximam legiōnem perventūrōs; si Gallia omnis cum Germānīs consentiēret, ūnam esse in celeritāte positam salūtem. Cottae quidem atque eōrum quī dissentīrent consilium quem habère exitum in quō si nōn praesēns periculum, at certē longinquā obsidiōne famēs esset timenda.

Cotta remains firm. Titurius holds him responsible for possible future disaster.

30. Hāc in utramque partem disputātiōne habitā cum ā Cottā primīisque ordinibus ācriter resisterētur, "Vincite," inquit, "si ita vultis," Sabinus, et id clāriōre vōce, ut magna pars mīlitum exaudīret; "neque is sum," inquit, "quī gravissimē ex vōbis mortis periculō terrear: hi sapient; si gravius quid acciderit, abs tē rationem reposcent; quī, si per tē liceat, perendinō diē cum

1 ārdere, was in a blaze, i.e. was infuriated.
2 contumelia, -ae, f., insult, affront. descendisse, had resorted.
3 in utramque partem, in either event.
4 esse in . . . positam, depended on.
5 See p. 129, fn. 1. exitum, outcome.
6 longinqua obsidione, through a prolonged siege.
7 in utramque partem, on either side.
8 primis ordinibus: here used for the chief centurions.
9 sapient: from sapio, -ere, cf. sapientia.
10 abs (for ab) tē rationem reposcent, they will call you to account, lit., will demand an accounting from you.
11 perendino die, in two days' time.
proximis hibernis coniuncti communem cum reliquis belli casum sustineant, nón refiecti et relegati longè à ceteris aut ferro aut fæme intereant."

A general appeal is made to both to agree. Cotta yields. Noisy preparations and a disorderly start.

31. Consurgitur ex cōnsiliō; comprehensunt utrumque et orant né suā dissēnsiōne et pertinaciā rem in summum periculum dédūcant; faciēm esse rem, seu maneant seu proficiscantur, si modo ūnum omnēs sentiant ac probent; contra in dissēnsiōne nūllam sē salūtem perspicere. Rēs disputātiōne ad medium noctem perdūcitur. Tandem dat Cotta permōtus manūs; superat āt sententia Sabini. Prōnūntiātur primā lūce itūrōs.

Consūmitur vigiliis reliqua pars noctis, cum suā quisque mīles circumspiceret, quid sēcum portāre posset, quid ex īnstrumēntō hibernōrum reliquere cōgerētur. Omnia excōgitantur quārē nec sine perī culō maneātur et languōre mīlitum et vigiliis periculum augeātur. Primā lūce sīc ex castrīs proficiscuntur ut quibus esset persuāsum nōn ab hoste sed ab homine amīcissimō cōnsilium datum, longissimō agmine maximīisque impedimentīs.

The Romans are entrapped in a valley by the enemy.

32. At hostēs, posteaquam ex nocturnō fremitū vigiliīisque dē profectione eōrum sēnsērunt, collocātīs

1 communem... casum sustineant, bear (meet) the common fortune of war.
2 relegati, banished.
3 dat manus, i.e. yields.
4 consumitur vigiliis, is passed without sleep.
5 īnstrumēntō, equipment.
6 Omnia excōgitantur quārē, etc.: apparently we are to understand that omnia refers to all this that they were doing; going without sleep, etc., was calculated to make the Romans incapable of successful resistance in the camp or out of it.
7 ut quibus esset persuāsum, like men who were convinced that, etc.
insidiis bipertito in silvis opportūnō atque occultō locō ā milibus passuum circiter duōbus, Rōmānorum adventum exspectābant; et cum sē maius pars agminis in magnum convallēm dēmisisset, ex utrāque parte eius vallis subitō sē ostendērunt novissimōsque premere et primōs prohibēre ascēnsū atque iniūquissimō nostrīs locō proelium committere coepērunt.

*Titurius* is dismayed, *Cotta* self-possessed. The baggage is abandoned. Confusion of the Romans.

33. Tum dēnum Titūrius, qui nihil ante prōvidisset, trepidāre et concursāre cohortēisque dispōnere, haec tamen ipsa timidē atque ut eum omnia déficere vidērentur; quod plērumque eis accidere cōnsuēvit qui in ipsō negotiō cōnsilium capere cōguntur. At Cotta, qui cōgitāset haec posse in itinere accidere atque ob eam causam profectionis auctor nōn fuisset, nūllā in re commūnī salūtī deerat, et in appellandis cohortandisque militibus imperātōris et in pugnā militis officia praestābat. Cum propter longītūdinem agminis nōn facile per sē omnia obire et quid quōque locō faciendum esset, prōvidēre possent, iussērunt prōnūntiāri ut impedimenta relinquerent atque in orbem cōnsisterent. Quod cōnsilium, etsi in eiusmodi cāsū reprehendendum nōn est, tamen incommmodē cecidit; nam et nostrīs militibus spem minuit et hostēs ad pugnam alacriōrēs effēcit, quod nōn sine summō timōre et dēspērātiōne id factum vidēbātur. Praeterea accidit, quod fieri necesse erat, ut vulgō mīlitēs ā signīs discēderent, quaeque quisque

2 convallēm, for vallem.
3 se demisisset, had descended, had marched down.
4 praestabat, performed.
5 obire, attend to.
6 orbis, -is, n. circle. See Introd. 43, description of a hollow square.
eōrum cārissima habēret, ab impedimentīs petere atque arripere properāret, clamōre et flētū omnia complērentur.

Strategy of the barbarians.

34. At barbarīs cōnsilium nōn dēfuit. Nam ducēs eōrum tōtā aciē prōnūntiāri iussērunt nē quis ā locō discēderet; illōrum esse praedam atque illīs reservārī, quaecumque Rōmānī reliquissent: proinde omnia in victūriā posita existimārent. Erant et virtūte et studiō pugnandī parēs. Nōstrī tametsī ā duce et ā fortūnā dēserēbantur, tamen omnem spem salūtis in virtūte pōnēbant, et quotiēns quacque cohors prōcurrerat, ab ā ā partē māgnus numerus hostium cadēbat. Quā rē animadversā Ambiorīx prōnūntiāri iubet ut procul tēla coniciant neu propius accēdant, et quam in partem Rōmānī impetum fēcerint cēdant; — levitāte armōrum et cotīdiānā exercitātiōne nihil īs nocērī posse,— rūrsus sē ad signa recipiēntēs īsequantur.

The desperate valor of the Romans is unavailing. Cotta wounded.

35. Quō praecceptō ab eīs diligentissimē observātō, cum quaeplām cohors ex orbe excesserat atque impetum fēcerat, hostēs vēlōcissimē refugiēbant. Interim eam partem nūdāri necesse erat et ā latere apertō tēla recipere. Rūrsus, cum in eum locum unde erant prōgressī revertī coeperant, et ab eīs qui cesserant et ab eīs quī proximī steterant circumveniēbantur; sīn autem locum tenēre vellent, nec virtūtī locus reliquēbātur.

---

1 consilium, shrewdness, strategy.  
2 ne quis, that no one.  
3 illōrum esse, etc. (telling them that): a statement placed between the command "ne quis discederet" and the exhortation following "existimarent." What then was the original form of each of these clauses in direct discourse? 204, 205.  
4 proinde, therefore.  
5 quaeplām, any.
neque a tantā multitūdine coniecta tēla cōnferti\(^1\) vitāre poterant. Tamen tot incommodis cōnflictātā, multīs vulneribus acceptīs resistēbant, et magnā parte diēī cōnsūmptā, cum a prīmā lūce ad hōram octāvam pug-5 nārētur, nihil quod ipsī\(^2\) esset indignum committē-

\[\text{Tum T. Balventiō,\(^3\) qui superiōre annō prīnum pīlum dūxerat,}\(^4\) virō fortī et magnae auctōritātīs, utrum-
que femur\(^5\) trāgulā\(^6\) trāicitur; Q. Lūcānius, eiusdem ōrdinis, fortissimē pugnāns, dum circumventō filiō sub-

10 venit, interficitur; L. Cotta lēgātus omnēs cohortēs ōrdinēsque adhortāns in adversum ōs\(^7\) fundā vulner-

ātur.

*Titurius is assured by Ambiorix of his personal safety. Cotta stays with his men.*

36. His rebus permōtus Q. Titūrius, cum procul Ambiorīgem suōs cohortantem cōnspexisset, interpre-
15 tem suum Cn. Pompeium ad eum mittit rogātum, ut sibi militibusque parcat. Ille appellātus respondit: si velit sēcum colloqui, licēre; spērāre ā multitūdine impetrāri posse quod ad militum salūtem pertineat; ipsī vērō nihil nocitum īri, inque eam rem sē suam fidem 20 interpōnere. Ille cum Cottā sauciō\(^8\) commūnicat,\(^9\) si videātur pugnā ut excēdant\(^10\) et cum Ambiorīge ūnā colloquantur: spērāre sē\(^11\) ab eō dē suā ac militum

\(^1\) cōnferti, nominative plural, cf. p. 18, l. 16.
\(^2\) ipsī: ablative governed by indignum.
\(^3\) Equivalent to a genitive modifying femur; 109, a.
\(^4\) prīnum pīlum dūxerat, had been chief centurion of the legion.
\(^5\) femur, femoris, n., thīgh.
\(^6\) tragula, -ae, f., dart.
\(^7\) in adversum os, squarely in the face.
\(^8\) sauciōs, -a, -um, wounded.
\(^9\) commūnicat, consults.
\(^10\) si videātur ut: supply asking from communicat; (asking) whether he agrees (it seems best to him) to their leaving, etc.
\(^11\) sperare se: se, subject accusative.
salūte impetrārī posse. 1 Cotta sē ad armātum hostem itūrum negat atque in eō persevērat.

Sabinus is slain during a conference. Cotta dies fighting. The other Romans kill themselves.

37. Sabinus quōs in praesentiā tribūnōs militum circum sē habēbat et primōrum ordinum centurīōnēs sē sequī iubet et, cum propius Ambiorīgem accessisset, iussus arma abicere, imperātum facit suīisque ut idem faciant imperat. Interim, dum dē condicionibus inter sē agunt longiorque cōnsultō 2 ab Ambiorīge instituitur sermō, paulātim circumventus interficitur. Tum vērō suō mōre victōriam conclāmam atque ululātum 3 tollunt, impetūque in nostrōs factō ordinēs perturbant. Ibi L. Cotta pugnāns interficitur cum maximā parte militum. Reliquī sē in castra recipiunt unde erant égressī. Ex quibus L. Petrosidius aquilifer, cum magnā multitudine hostium premerētur, aquilam intrā vāllum prōicit, ipse prō castrīs fortissimē pugnāns occīditur. Illī aegrē ad noctem oppugnātiōnem sustinent; nocte ad ūnum omnēs dēspērātā salūte sē ipsī interficiunt. Pauci ex proeliō ūlāpsī incertīs itineribus per silvās ad T. Labiēnum lēgātum in hiberna perveniunt atque eum dē rēbus gestīs certiōrem faciunt.

Ambiorīx goes among the Aduatucī and Nervīī.

38. Hāc victōriā sublātus Ambiorīx statim in Aduatucōs proficiscitur. Rē dēmōnstrātā Aduatucīisque concitātīs posterō diē in Nerviōs pervenit, hortāturque nē suī in perpetuum liberandi atque uleīscendi Rōmānōs prō eīs quās accēperint iniūriis occasiōnem dīmittant;

1 impetrari posse: used impersonally.
2 consulto: an adverb.
3 ululatum: a word imitating the sound, like English "howl."
dēmōnstrat nihil esse negoti subitō oppressam legiōnem quae cum Cicerōne hiemet interfici. Facile hāc ērā-
tiōne Nerviīs persuādet.

*Large forces attack Cicero’s winter-quarters.*


*Cicero’s despatches fail to reach Caesar. Incessant labor and energy of Cicero and his men.*

40. Mittuntur ad Caesarem confestim ā Cicerōne litterae, magnīs prōpositīs praemīsī si pertulissent; obsessīs omnibus viīs missī intercipiuntur. Noctū ex 15 māteriā quam mūniōnīs causā comportāverant turrēs admodum cxx excitantur incrēdibili celeritāte; quae deesse operī vidēbantur perficiuntur. Hostēs posterō diē multō maiōribus coāctīs cōpiīs castra oppugnant, fossam complent. Ā nostrīs ēādēm ratiōne quā prīdiē 20 resistitur. Hōc idem reliquīs deinceps fit diēbus. Nūlla pars nocturnī temporis ad labōrem intermittitur; nōn aegrīs, nōn vulnerātīs facultās quiētīs datur. Quaecumque ad proximi diēi oppugnātiōnem opus sunt noctū comparantur; multae praēstäe sudēs, magnus

1 ad Ciceronis hiberna: the location of this camp is disputed. Probably it was near the Sambre river in the country south of Brussels.
2 prōpositīs: prōpono, prōponere, prōposui, prōpositum, offer.
3 pertulissent, deliver (of a letter). The subject "they," meaning the messengers, must of course be supplied from litterae mittuntur.
mūrālium¹ pilōrum numerus instituitur; turres contabulantur,² pinnac³ lōricaequē⁴ ex crātibus attexuntur.⁵ Ipse Cicerō, cum tenuissimā valētūdine⁶ esset, nē nocturnum quidem sibi tempus ad quietem relinquēbat, ut ultrō militum concursū ac vōcibus⁷ sibi parcere cōgerētur.

A conference with the Nervii. The fate of Sabinus is told. Cicero will not treat with them.

41. Tunc ducēs principēsque Nerviōrum, quī alīquem sermōnis adītum causamque amicitiae cum Cicerōne habēbant, colloqui sēsē velle dīcunt. Factā potestāte, eadem quae Ambiorīx cum Titūriō ēgerat commemorant: omnem esse in armis Galliam, Germānōs Rhenum trānsīsse, Caesaris reliquōrumque hibernā oppugnāri. Addunt etiam dē Sabinī morte; Ambiorīgem ostentant fidei facienda causā. Errāre eōs dīcunt, si quicquam ab eīs praesidiō spērent quī suīs rēbus diffidant; sēsē tamen hoc esse in Cicerōnem populumque Rōmānum animō⁸ ut nihil nisi hiberna recūsent, atque hanc inveterāscere⁹ cōnsuētūdinem nōlint; licēre illīs per sē incolumibus ex hibernīs discēdere et quāscumque in partēs velint sine metū proficisci. Cicerō ad haec ūnum modo respondit: nōn esse cōnsuētūdinem populi Rōmānī accipere ab hoste armātō condicionem;

¹ muralium: from muralis, cf. murus. They were heavier than the ordinary pilum.
² contabulantur, are built up.
³ pinna, -ae, f., parapet.
⁴ lōrica, -ae, f., breastwork.
⁵ attexo, attexere, attexui, attextum, weave on.
⁶ valetūdine, health. An ablative of quality. 128.
⁷ concursu ac vocibus, by the gathering of the soldiers and by their appeals.
⁸ hoc esse in ... animo, he felt this way toward, etc., ablative of quality; lit. was of this (such a) mind, etc.
⁹ inveterāscere, become established.
si ab armis discédere velint, sē adiūtōrēcūtantur lēgātōisque ad Caesarem mittant; spērāre sē prō eiusmodiūtitiā quae petierint impetrātūrōs.

The Roman camp is closely hemmed in by the Nervii with a wall and trench.

42. Ab hāc spē repulsi Nervii vāllō pedum x et fossā pedum xv hiberna cingunt. Haec et superiōrum annō-rum cōnsuētūdine ā nōbis cognōverant et quōsdam dē exercitū nactī captīvōs ab hīs docēbantur; sed nūlā ferrāmentōrum cōpiā quae essent ad hunc ēsum idōnea, gladiīs caespītēs circumcēdere, manibus sagulīisque terram exhaūrīre cōgēbantur. Quā quidem ex rē hominum multitūdō cognōsci potuit; nam minus hōris tribus mīlium passuum xv in circuitū mūniτiōnem perfēcērunt. Reliquīisque diēbus turrēs ad altitūdinem vāllī, falcēs testūdinēsque, quās īdem captīvī dociue-rant, parāre ac facere coepērunt.

The weapons of the Gauls set fire to the huts and baggage of the Romans. The latter, sorely beset, resist bravely.

43. Septimō oppugnātiōnīs diē maximō coortō ventō ferventēs fūsilēs ex argillā glandēs fundīs et fervefacta iacula in casās, quae mōre Gallicō stramentīs erant tēctae, iacere coepērunt. Hae celeriter īguem comprē hendērunt et ventī magnitūdine in omnem locum castrōrum distulērunt. Hostēs maximō clāmōre, sic uti
partā iam atque explorātā victorīā, turres testūdinēsque agere et scālis vāllum ascendere coeperunt. At tanta militum virtūs atque ea praesentia animī fuit ut, cum undique flammā torrērentur maximāque tēlōrum multitūdine premerentur suaque omnia impedimenta atque omnēs fortūnās cōnflagrāre intellegērent, nōn modo dēmigrāndi causā dē vāllum dēcēderet nēmō, sed paene nē respiceret quidem quisquam, ac tum omnēs ācerrimē fortissimēque pugnārent.

Hīc diēs nostrīs longē gravissimus fuit; sed tamen hunc habuit ēventum, ut eō diē maximus numerus hostium vulnerāretur atque interficerētur, ut sē sub ipsō vāllum cōnstitāverant recessumque prīmis ultimī nōn dabant. Paulum quidem intermissā flammā et quōdam locō turri adāctā et contingente vāllum, tertiae cohortis centuriōnēs ex eō quō stābant locō recessērunt suōsque omnēs remōvērunt; nūtū vocibusque hostēs si introīre vellent vocāre coepērunt; quōrum prōgredī ausus est nēmō. Tum ex omni parte lapidibus coniectīs dēturbātī, turrisque succēnsa est.

Two rival centurions exhibit great valor. Each saves the other’s life and neither can claim superior courage.

44. Erant in ēa legiōnē fortissimī virī, centuriōnēs, quī iam prīmis ēordinibus appropinquārent, T. Pullō et L. Vorenus. Hī perpetuās inter sē contrōversiās habēbant uter alterī anteferrētur, omnībusque annīs dē locō summīs simultātibus contendēbant. Ex hīs Pullō, cum

1 scala, -ae, f., ladder.
2 se . . . constipaverant, had crowded in; observe mood, and translate ut accordingly.
3 recessum, a chance to withdraw.
4 lapis, lapidis, m., stone.
5 uter, utra, utrum, interrog. adj., which of two.
6 simultas, -atis, f., rivalry, jealousy.


Sic fortūna in contentiōne et certāmine utrumque versāvit ut alter alterī inimīcus auxiliō salūtīque esset, neque diūūdicāri posset uter utrī virtūte anteferendus vidērētur.

---

1 percūtio, percutere, percussi, percussum. strike through, pierce.
2 Dat. for gen., 109, a.
3 verūtum, -i, n., javelin.
4 balteus, -i, m., belt.
5 vagina, -ae, 1., sheath, scabbard.
6 in locum dēiectus inferiōrem concidit, as the ground sloped he lost his footing and fell. How is it to be translated literally?
7 Nomin. pl. masculine, both.
8 utrumque versāvit, attended first one and then the other.
Caesar learns of the peril of Cicero.

45. Quantō¹ erat in diēs gravior atque asperior oppugnātiō, et maximē quod magnā parte mīlitum cōnfectā vulneribus rēs ad paucitātem dēfēnsōrum pervēnerat, tantō² crēbriōres litterae nūntīque ad Caesarem mittēbantur; quōrum pars dēprehēnsa in cōnspectū nostrōrum mīlitum cum cruciātū necābātur. Erat ūnus intus Nervius nōmine Verticō, locō nātus honestō, qui ā prīmā obsidiōne ad Cicerōnem perfūgerat suamque cī fidem praestiterat.² Hic servō spē libertātīs magnīisque persuādet prae.miīs ut litterās ad Caesarem dēferat. Hās illo in iaculō illīgātās effert et Gallus inter Gallōs sine ūllā suspīciōne versātus³ ad Caesarem pervenit. Ab eō dē periculīs Cicerōnīs legiōnisque cognōscitur.

He endeavors to gather three legions.

46. Caesar acceptīs litterīs hōrā circiter undecimā diēi statim nūntium in Bellovacōs ad M. Crassum mittit, 15 cuius hīberna aberant ab eō mīlia passuum xxv; iubet mediā nocte legiōnem proficisci celeriterque ad sē venīre. Exit cum nūntiō Crassus. Alterum ad C. Fabium lēgātum mittit, ut in Atrebātium finēs legiōnem addūcat, quā sībi iter faciendum sciēbat. Scribit Labiēnō, si reī 20 pūblicae commodō⁴ possit facere, cum legiōne ad finēs Nerviōrum veniat. Reliquam partem exercitūs, quod paulō aberat longius, nōn putat exspectandam; equitēs circiter ccccc ex proximīs hibernis cōgit.

¹ Quanto . . . tanto: translate closely with the comparatives: The more . . . the less. 125.
² praestiterat, had kept; i.e. had remained faithful in spite of Caesar’s hard plight.
³ versatus, moving about.
⁴ rei pūblicae commodō, without detriment to the state’s interests; lit. in accordance with the advantage of the state. 127.
Crassus is left with the baggage. Fabius joins Caesar. Labienus remains to face the rebellious Treveri.

47. Hōrā circiter tertiā ab antecursōribus dē Crassi adventū certior factus, eō diē milia passuum xx prōgreditur. Crassum Samarobrīvāe practicīt legiōnemque ei attribuīt, quod ibi impedimenta exercītūs, obsidēs 5 civitātum, litterās publicās, frumentumque omne, quod eō tolerandae hiemis causā dēvexerat, relinquiēbat. Fabius, ut imperātum erat, uōn ita multum morātus in itinere cum legiōne occurrit. Labiēnus interītū Sabīnī et caede cohortium cognītā, cum omnēs ad 10 eum Trēverōrum cōpiāe vēnissent, veritus nē, si ex hibernīs fugae similēm profectiōnem fēcisset, hostium impetum sustinēre nōn possēt, praeśertim quōs recentī victōriā efferrī1 scīret, litterās Caesarī remittit, quantō cum periculō legiōnem ex hibernīs ēductūrūs esset; rem 15 gestam in Eburōnibus perscribit, docet omnēs peditātūs equitātūsque cōpiās Trēverōrum iii milia passuum longē a suis castrīs cōnsēdisse.

Cicero is informed of Caesar's nearness by a message flung into the camp.


1 efferrī, to be elated, jubilant over.
2 opinīone . . . deiectus, disappointed in his expectation.
Hanc Graecis cōnscriptam litterīs¹ mittit, nē interceptā epistulā nostra ab hostibus cōnsilia cognōscantur. Si adire nōn possit, monet ut trāgulam cum epistulā ad āmentum² deligātā intrā mūniōnēs castrōrum abiciat. In litterīs scribit sē cum legiōnibus profectum celeriter affore; hortātur ut prīstinam virtūtem retineat. Gallus periculum veritus, ut erat praeceptum, trāgulam mittit. Haec cāsū ad turrim adhaesit, neque ā nostrīs bīduō³ animadversa, tertīō diē ā quōdam milite cōspicitur; dēmpta⁴ ad Cicerōnem dēfertur. Ille perlectam⁵ in conventū militum recitat maximāque omnēs laetitīā afficit. Tum fūmi⁶ incendiōrum procul vidēbantur, quae rēs omnem dubitātiōnem adventūs legiōnūm expulit.

*The Gauls turn from Cicero and face Caesar. Informed of this, he encamps and awaits their attack.*

49. Gallī, rē cognitā per explōrātōrēs, obsidiōnem relinquent, ad Caesarem omnibus cōpiīs contendunt. Haec erant armāta circiter mīlia LX. Cicerō datā facultāte Gallum ab eōdem Verticōne, quem supra dēmōnstrāvimus, repetit quī litterās ad Caesarem dēferat; hunc admonet iter caute diligenterque faciat; perscrībit in litterīs hostēs ā sē discissesse omnemque ad eum multitudinem convertisse. Quibus litterīs circiter mediā nocte Caesar allātīs suōs facit certīōrēs eōsque ad dimicandum animō cōnfirmat. Posterū diē lūce primā

¹ Graecis ... litterīs: perhaps not in the Greek language, but with Latin words written in Greek characters. Cf. the records of the Helvetīi in Book I, ch. 29.
² āmentum, -i, m., *strap, thong* (of a spear). See 33.
³ See 137.
⁴ dēmpta: demo, demere, dempsi, demptum, *take away.*
⁵ perlectam, *read through* (perlego, -ere).
⁶ fūmus, -i, m., *smoke.*
movet castra, et circiter milia passuum IV progressus trans vallem et rivum multitūdinem hostium côspicātur. Erat magnī perīculī rēs tantulis cōpiōs iniquō locō dimicāre; tum, quoniam obsidiōne liberātum Cicerōnem sciēbat, aequō animō remittendum de celeritātē 1 existimābat; cōnsēdit et quam aequissimō potest locō castra commūnit, atque haec, etsī erant exigua per sē, vix hominum milium VII, praesertim nullīs cum impedimentīs, tamen augustīs viārum 2 quam maximē potest contrahit, eō cōnsiliō ut in summam contemptiōnem hostibus veniāt. Interim speculātōribus in omnēs partēs dīmissīs explōrat 3 quō commodissimē itinere vallem trānsīre possit.

Skirmishes take place. The Roman cavalry purposely retreats. Fear is feigned in the camp.

50. Eō diē parvulīs equestribus proelīs ad aquam factīs, utriquē sēsē suō locō continent: Gallī, quod amplīōrēs cōpiās quae nōndum convēnerant exspectābant; Caesar, si forte timōris simulātiōne hostēs in suum locum élicere 4 posset, ut citrā vallem prō castrīs proelīo contenderet; si id efficere nōn posset, ut explōratīs itineribus minōre cum perīculō vallem rīvumque trānsīret. Prīmā lūce hostium equitātus ad castra accēdit proeliumque cum nostrīs equitibus committit. Caesar cōnsultō equitēs cēdere sēque in castra recipere iubet; simul ex omnibus partibus castra altiōre vāllō mūnīrī portāsque obstruī atque in hīs administrandīs rēbus quam maximē concursārī et cum simulātiōne agī timōris iubet.

1 remittendum de celeritāte: i.e. lessen his speed.
2 angustīs viārum, by narrowing the streets (i.e. those of the camp which had a fixed width). Introd. 52, 55.
3 explorat, he searches to find.
4 élicere, to lure over, draw over.
The Gauls are drawn into a disadvantageous position. The Romans, suddenly opening the gates, attack and vanquish them.

51. Quibus omnibus rébus hostés invitatis còpiás traducunt aciemque iniquō locó constituentes; nostris vērō etiam de vāllō dēductīs, propius accēdunt et tēla intrā mūnitionēm ex omnibus partibus coniciunt prae-
cōnibusque1 circummissīs prōnuntiāriī iubent, seu quis 5 Gallus seu quis Rōmānus velit ante hōram tertiam ad sé trānsīre, sine periculō licēre; post id tempus nōn fore potestātem. Ac sic nostrōs contempsērunt ut obstrūctīs in speciem2 portīs singulis ordīnibus caespitum,3 quod eā nōn posse intrōrumpere vidēbantur, 10 aliī vāllum manū scindere, aliī fossās complēre incipierent. Tum Caesar omnibus portīs ēruptiōne factā equitātūque émissō celeriter hostēs in fugam dat, sic utī omnīnō pugnandī causā resisteret4 nēmō, magnum-
que ex eīs numerum occidit atque omnēs armīs exuit.5 15

Caesar joins Cicero, praises the brave defence, says that the over-
throw of Sabinus is avenged.

52. Longius prósequī veritus, quod silvae palū-
dēsque intercēdēbant neque etiam parvulō detrīmentō illōrum locum relinquī vidēbat, omnibus suis incolumībus eōdem diē ad Cicerōnem pervēnit. Institūtās turrēs, testūdinēs mūnitionēsque hostium admīrātur; 20 productā legiōne cognōscit nōn decimum quemque esse reliquum militem sine vulnere; ex hīs omnibus

1 praeco, -onis, m., herald.
2 in speciem, for show (only). The gateways were not in reality thoroughly blocked.
3 caespes, -itis, cf. p. 138, fn. 3.
4 resisteret: the meaning here is stop, merely, as the addition of pug-
nandi causa shows.
5 exuo, -uere, exui, exutum, deprive.
iūdicat rēbus quantōcum periculōetquantācum virtūtemēs sint administrātae. Cicerōnemprō eius meritor legiōnumque collaudat; centuriōves singillātim tribūnōsque militum appellat, quōrum ēgregiam fuisse virtūtem testimōniō Cicerōnis cognōverat. DēcūsūSabīnīet Cottae certius ex captīvis cognōscit. Posterō dīcōntiōne habītārem gestam prōponent, militēscōnsōlātur et cōnfirmat; quod dētrimentum culpāet temeritàte légātī sit acceptum, hōc aequōre animōferendum docet, quod1beneficīōdeōrum immortalium et virtūte eōrum expiātō incommođō, neque hostibus diūtina lae-
titia neque ipsīs longior dolor relinquātur.

1quod . . . relinquatur: translate the ablative absolutexpiatōincom-
modo (which gives the reason for neque . . . longior dolor relinquatur) as
if it read incommođum expiatum sit et, etc., had been avenged (made
amends for) and (so).
SELECTIONS FROM BOOK VI

A COMPARISON OF THE CUSTOMS OF THE GAULS AND OF THE GERMANS

Party strife among the Gauls.

11. Quoniam ad hunc locum \(^1\) perventum est, nōn alīnum \(^2\) esse vidētur dē Galliae Germāniaeque möribus, et quō differant hae nātiōnēs inter sēsē, prōpōnere.

In Galliā nōn sōlum in omniībus cīvitātibus atque in omnibus pāgis partibusque, sed paene etiam in singulīs \(^5\) domibus factīōnēs sunt, eārumque factīōnum prīcipēs sunt quī summam auctōrītātem ēōrum iūdiciō habēre existimantur, quōrum ad arbitrium iūdiciumque summa \(^3\) omuīum rērum cōnsiliōrumque redet.

Idque eius reī causā antiquitus \(^4\) institūtum vidētur, 10 nē quis ex plēbe cōntrā potentiōrem auxiliī egēret; \(^5\) suōs enim quisque opprimī et circumvenīrī nōn patitur neque, aliter sī faciat, ūllam īnter suōs habet auctōrītātem. Haece eadem ratiō \(^6\) est in summā tōtius Galliae; namque omnēs cīvitātēs in partēs dīvīsae sunt duās.

---

1 ad hunc locum, to this point (in the narrative).
2 alienum, out of place.
3 summa (a noun), the final decision in all matters.
4 antiquitus: an adverb from antiquus.
5 egeo, -ere, need, want.
6 ratio, condition, state of affairs.
The Sequani obtain leadership in Gaul through the Germans. Caesar's arrival gives first place to the Aedui, and second to the Remi.

12. Cum Caesar in Galliam vénit, alterius factiōnis principēs erant Aedui, alterius Sēquani. Hī cum per sē minus valērent, quod summa auctōritās antiquitus erat in Aeduīs magna et eōrum erant clientēlae, Germanōs atque Ariovistum sibi adiūnixerant eōsque ad sē magnīs iactūris pollicitātiōnibusque perdūixerant.

Proelīis vērō complūribus factīs secundīs, atque omnī nōbilitāte Aeduōrum interfectā, tantum potentiā antecesserant, ut magnam partem clientĭnum ab Aeduīs ad sē tradūcerent obsidēisque ab eīs principum filiōs acciperent etPUBLICÉ iūrāre cōgerent nihil sē contrā Sēquanōs consili iniūrōs, et partem finitimī agī per vim occupatam possidērent Galliaeque totius principātum obtīnērent.

15/ Quā necessitāte adductus Dīviciācus auxiliī petendī causā Rōnam ad senātum profectus imperfectā re restīderat. Adventū Caesaris factā commūtātiōne rērum, obsidibus Aeduīs redditīs, veteribus clientēlīs restītūtīs, novīs per Caesarem comparātīs, quod hī qui sē ad eōrūm amicitiam aggregāverant meliōre condiciōne atque aequīre imperiō sē úti vidēbant, reliquis rebus eōrum grātiā dignitāteque amplificātā, Sēquanī princīpātum dimiserant.

In eōrūm locum Rēmi successerant; quōs quod adaequāre apud Caesarem grātiā intellegēbātur, iī qui

1 clientēlae, dependencies, referring to the states subject to them.
2 iactūra, ae, f. (iaco), sacrifice.
3 imperfecta re: abl. abs., without accomplishing his purpose.
4 aggrego (cf. grex), join.
5 adaequare . . . gratia, to stand equally high in Caesar's favor; lit., to equal (the Aedui) in favor with Caesar.
6 160; the subject is quos . . . adaequare.

**Condition of the common people in Gaul. The power of the Druids.**

13. In omni Galliā eōrum hominum qui aliquō sunt numerō atque honōre genera sunt duo. Nam plēbēs paene servōrum habētur locō, quae nīlīl audet per sē, nūllī adhibētur cōnsiliō. Plērique, cum aere aliēnō aut magnitūdine tribūtōrum aut iniūriā potentiōrum premuntur, sēsē in servitūtem dicant nōbilibus, quibus in hōs eadem omnia sunt iūra quae dominīs in servōs. Sed dē hīs duōbus generibus alterum est druidum, alterum equitum.

Illī rēbus dīvinīs intersunt, sacrificia pūblica ac privāta prōcurant, religiōnēs interpretantur; ad eōs magnus adulēscentium numerus disciplīnae causā concurrit, magnōque hī sunt apud eōs honōre. Nam ferē dē omnibus contrōversiīs pūblicīs privātīisque cōnstituunt, et sī quod est admissum facinus, sī caedes facta, sī dē hērēditāte, dē finibus contrōversia est, idem dēcernunt, praemia poenāisque cōnstituunt; sī qui aut privātus aut populus eōrum dēcrētō nōn stetit, sac-

---

1 se . . . dicabant, offered themselves as dependents; lit., in dependency.
2 plebes, the common people; a collective noun in the singular, whence the singular verb, habetur.
3 quibus . . . dominis: 110.
4 equitum, knights.
5 procurant (from cura), take care of.
6 religiones interpretantur, explain religious matters, such as the various rites and ceremonies in particular cases, the interpretation of omens, and the like.
7 hereditas, -tatis. f., inheritance.
8 stetit, abide by; lit., stand by.
rificiis interdicunt. ¹ Haec poena apud eós est gravissima.

Quibus ² est interdictum, hî numerō impiôrum ac sceleratôrum habentur, hîs omnēs dēcēdunt, aditum eōrum sermōnemque dēfugiunt, nē quid ex contāgiōne incommodi accipiant, neque hîs petentibus iūs redditur neque honōs ūllus communicātur.

Hîs autem omnibus druidibus præest ūnus, quī summam inter eōs habet auctoritātem. Hōc mortuō, aut si quî ex reliquis excellit dignitāte succēdit, aut si sunt plūrēs parēs, suffrāgiō druidum dēligitur; nōnnunquam etiam armīs dē principātū contendunt. Hī certō annī tempore in finibus Carnutum, quae regiō tōtius Galliae media habētur, cōnsidunt in locō cōnsecrātō. Hūc omnēs undique quī controversiās habent conveniunt eōrumque dēcrētīs iūdiciāisque pārent.

Disciplina ³ in Britanniā reperta atque inde in Galliam trānslāta esse exēsimātur, et nunc quī diligentiās eam rem cognōscere volunt plērumque illō ⁴ discendi causā proficiscuntur.

The privileges of the Druids; their training and beliefs.

14. Druidēs ā bellō abesse cōnsuērunt neque tribūta ūnā cum reliquis pendant, militiāe vacātiōnem omniumque rērum hābent immūnitātem. Tantīs excitātī prae‐miīs et suā sponte multī in disciplīnām ⁵ conveniunt et 25 ā parentibus propinquisque mittuntur.

¹ sacrificiis interdicunt, exclude him from sacrifices; i.e. excommunicate him. The full form is ei (dat.) sacrificiis (abl. of separation) interdicunt.

² See footnote 1.

³ Disciplina, the system (of training), of the Druids.

⁴ illō: adverb (cf. eo), to that place, thither, i.e., to Britain.

⁵ in disciplīnām, for a course of training; cf. footnote 3 above.
Caesar Before the Druids.
Magnum ibi numerum versum ediscere dicuntur. Itaque annos nonnulli vicēnōs in disciplinā permanent. Neque fās esse existimant ea litteris mandāre, cum in reliquis ferē rebus, publicēs privātīisque ratīōnibus, Graecīs litterīs utantur. Id mihi duābus de causīs instituīsse videntur, quod neque in vulgum disciplīnam efferri velint neque eōs qui discunt litterīs confīsōs minus memoriae studēre; quod ferē plōrisque accidit ut praevidē litterārum diligēntiam in perdescendō ac memorīam remittant.

In prīmis hōc volunt persuādēre, non interīre animās, sed ab aliīs post mortem trānsire ad aliōs, atque hōc maximē ad virtūtem excītārī putant metū mortīs neglectō. Multa praetereā dē sideribus atque eōrum mōtū, dē mundi ac terrārum magnītūdine, dē rērum nātūrā, dē deōrum immortālium vi ac potestāte disputant et iuventūtī trādunt.

The Knights.


1 ediscerē; learn by heart. Note the force of e- and per-, in l. 9.
2 vicēnōs: the distributive corresponding to viginti.
3 ratīōnibus, accounts; cf. Book I, chap. 29 (p. 22, l. 9).
4 studēre, give attention to, train.
5 interīre: note the infin., and be careful in translating it; persuādēre is equivalent to teach or prove.
6 sideribus, the heavenly bodies; the word is more comprehensive than stella.
7 mundi, the universe.
8 ambactus, -i, m., retainer, dependent.
Human sacrifices among the Gauls.

16. Natiō est omnis Gallorum admodum dēdita religiōnibus, atque ob eam causam qui sunt affectī graviōribus morbis quique in proelīs periculīisque versantur, aut prō victīmis homīnēs immolant aut sē immolātūrōs voent, administrisque ad ea sacrificia druidibus útuntur, quod, prō vitā hominis nisi hominis vita reddātur, nōn posse deōrum immortālium nūmen plācārī arbitrāntur, publicēque eiusdem generis habent institūta sacrificia.

Aliī immānī magnitudine simulācra habent, quorum contexta viminibus membra vivīs hominibus complent; quibus succīssīs circumventī flammā exanimantur homīnēs. Supplicia eōrum, quī in furtō aut látrōcinio aut alīquā noxiā sint comprehēnsī, grātiōra dis immortālius esse arbitrāntur; sed cum eius generis cópia déficit, etiam ad innocentium supplicia dēscendunt.

The gods of the Gauls.

17. Deum maximē Mercurium colunt; hūs sunt plūrīma simulācra, hunc omnium inventōrem artium ferunt, hunc viārum atque itinerum ducem, hunc ad quaestūs pecūniāe mercātūrāsque habēre vim maximē

1 religionibus, to religious affairs.
2 morbus, -i, m., disease.
3 immolo, -are, sacrifice, immolate.
4 administer, -tri, m., assistant, helper.
5 nūmen, -inis (nuo, nod), n., power.
6 simulacrum, -i (cf. similis), n., likeness, image. These were great cages of wickerwork (contexta viminibus), made in the shape of the human figure.
7 furtum, -ī, n., theft.
8 látrōcinium, -ī, n., brigandage.
9 noxia, -ae (cf. noceo), f., crime.
10 deum: another form for deorum.
11 quaestus, -us, m., a noun derived from quaero.
12 mercātura, -ae f., cf. mercator.
mam arbitrantur; post hunc Apollinem et Mārtem et Iovem et Minervam. De hīs eandem ferē quam reliquae gentes habent opinionem: Apollinem morbos dépellere, Minervam operum atque artificiorum initia tradere, Iovem imperium caelestium tenère, Mārtem bella regere.

Hūc, cum proelīō dimicāre cōnstituērunt, ea quae bellō cēperint plērumque dévovent; cum superāvērunt, animālia capta immolant, reliquās rēs in ūnum locum cōnferunt. Multīs in cīvitātibus hārum rērum exstruētōs tumulos locīs cōnsecrātīs cōnspicārī licet; neque saepe accidit ut neglectā quispiam religiōne aut capta apud sē occultāre aut posita tollere audēret, gravissimunque ei reī supplicium cum cruciatu cōnstitūtum est.

The Gallic method of reckoning time. Relations of father and son.

18. Gallī sē omnēs à Dīte patre prōgnātōs prae-
dicant idque à druidībus prōditum dīcunt. Ob eam causam spatiā omnis temporis nōn numerō diērum, sed noctium finīunt; diēs natales et mēnsium et annōrum initia sīc observant, ut noctem diēs subsequatūr.

In reliquis vitae institutiis hōc ferē à reliquis differe-
runt, quod suōs liberōs, nisi cum adolēverunt ut mūnus militiae sustinēre possint, pālām ad sē adire nōn pati-
untur filiūmque puerilī āetāte in publicō in conspectū patris assistere turpē dūcunt.

1 capta: used as a substantive, things captured, booty; 152, a.
2 posita: used as a substantive, things set aside, as offerings to the gods.
3 Dīs, Ditis, m., Dīs, god of the underworld, also called Pluto.
4 prōditum: sc. esse.
5 ob eam causam: i.e. because they believe themselves sprung from the god of darkness.
6 ut noctem diēs subsequatur: i.e. the night comes before the day; for example, the new year begins on New Year’s eve, etc.
7 assistere, to appear.
The relations of husband and wife. Funerals.

19. *Viri quantás pecūniaús ab uxoribus dótis* nōmine accēpérunt, tāntās ex suis bonīs, aestimātiōne factā, cum dótibus communicant. Huius omnis pecūniae conjunctum ratio habētur fructūsque servantur; uter eōrum vita superāvit, ad eum pars utriusque cum fructibus superiōrum temporum pervenit.

*Viri in uxorēs, sicuti in liberos, vitae necisque habent potestātem; et cum pater familiae illustriōre locō nātus dēcessit, eius propinquī conveniant et, dē morte si rés in suspiciōnem venit, dē uxoribus in servīle modum quaestionem habent et, si compertum est, igni atque omnibus tormentīs excruciātās interficiunt.*

*Fūnera* sunt pro cultū Gallōrum magnificae et sūmp- tuōsa; omniaque, quae vivēs cordī fuisset arbitrantur, in ignem inferunt, etiam animālia, ac paulō suprā hanc memoriam servī et clientēs quōs ab eis dilēctos esse constābat, iūstīs fūneribus confectis, ūnā cremābantur.

Their regulation of gossip about public affairs.

20. *Quae civitātēs commodius suam rem publicam administrāre existimantur habent légibus sānctum,*

1 dós, dótis, t., dovery. *Pecunias* includes not only money, but also property of all kinds.
2 fructūs, -us, m., income; lit., fruit.
3 in servīle modum: i.e. with torture, since slaves were always examined in that way.
4 Sc. aliquid; freely, if they are found guilty.
5 excruciātās: sc. eas, referring to uxoribus.
6 funus, -eris, n., funeral.
7 pro cultū, considering the (degree of) civilization.
8 cordī, dear; lit., for a heart; 113.
9 supra hanc memoriam: before our time; i.e. before the time covered by the memory of men still living.
10 eis: refers to vivīs above.
11 commodius: almost with the force of a superlative, to best advantage.
12 sanctum (part. of sancio), enacted.
quis quid dē rē pūblicā ā finitimīs rūmōre aut fāmā accepērīt, utī ad magistrātum dēferat nēve 1 cum quō 2 aliō communīcit, quod saepe homīnes 3 temerāriōs atque imperūtōs falsīs rūmōribus terrērī et ad facinus impelli 5 et dē summīs rēbus cōnsilium cāpere cognītum est. Magistrātūs quae visa sunt 4 occultant, quaeque esse ex úsū 5 iūdicāvērunt multitūdīnī prōdūnt. Dē rē pūblicā 6 nisi per concilium loquī nōn conceditūr.

The contrasting customs of the Germans; their gods.

21. Germānī multum ab hāc cōnsuētūdīne dīfferunt. 10 Nam neque drūdēs habēnt, qui rēbus dīvinīs praeśint, neque sacrificiīs student. Deōrum numerō eōs sōlōs dūcunt, quōs cernunt 7 et quōrum apertē opibus iūvāntur, Sōlēm et Vulpānum et Lūnam, reliquōs nē fāmā quidem accēpērunt. Vīta omnīs in vēnātiōnibus atque 15 in studiīs rēī militāris cōnsistit; a parvīs 8 labōrī ac dūritiāe student.

Their assignment of land, and the reasons for their system.

22. Agricūltūrāe nōn student, maiorquē pars eōrum vīctūs 9 in lacte, cāsēō, 10 carne 11 cōnsistit. Neque quīsquam agrī modūm certum aut finēs habēt propriōs, sed 20 magistrātūs ac prīncipēs in annōs singulōs gentibus,

1 neve: the negative corresponding to utī, and that they should not.
2 cum quo aliō, with any one else, a meaning usual with quo after si, nisi, ne, and num.
3 homīnes: subject of terrērī, depending on the imper. cognītum est.
4 quae visa sunt: sc. occultanda, what (it) has seemed best (to conceal).
5 ex usu, advantageous; lit., in accordance with advantage, 142, 4, d.
6 re pūblica, public affairs.
7 cerno, -ere, see.
8 a parvīs, from childhood. Parvīs is used as a noun; lit., from small (children).
9 vīctūs, -us, m., a noun from vivo.
10 caseum, -i, n., cheese.
11 carne: see p. 119, ftн. 10.
cognatio nibus hominum,\textsuperscript{1} quique \textit{una} coierunt,\textsuperscript{2} quantum et qu\textit{o} loc\textit{o} visum est agr\textit{i} attribuunt atque anu\textit{o} post ali\textit{o}\textsuperscript{3} transire cogunt.

Ei\textit{s} re\textit{i} mult\textit{a} s affер\textit{unt} caus\textit{as}: n\textit{e} assidu\textit{a} con-su\textit{et}udine capti studium bell\textit{i} gerendi agricult\textit{ur}a\textsuperscript{4} commutent; n\textit{e} l\textit{a}t\textit{os} fin\textit{es} par\textit{are} studeant potenti\textit{or}-
esque humiliores possessionibus expellant; n\textit{e} accur\textit{at}ius\textsuperscript{5} ad frigora atque aest\textit{us} vitand\textit{o}s aedicisc\textit{e}nt; n\textit{e} qua oriatur pecuniae cupiditas, qu\textit{a} ex re facultates dissensionesque nascuntur; ut animi aequitatem\textsuperscript{6} pl\textit{e}bem contineant, cum su\textit{a}s quisque op\textit{e}s cum potenti\textit{issim}i aequari videat.

\textit{The surroundings of their communities. Their magistrates and chiefs. Their hospitality.}

\textbf{23.} Civitatibus maxima laus est quam latissim\textit{e} circ\textit{um} s\textit{e} v\textit{a}st\textit{atis} finibus solitudines habere. Hoc pro\textit{15 prium}\textsuperscript{7} virtutis existimant, expuls\textit{o}s agr\textit{i}s finitim\textit{os} cedere neque quemquam prope s\textit{e} audere consistere; simul hoc\textsuperscript{8} s\textit{e} fore t\textit{u}ti\textit{ores} arbitrantur, repetuinae incursio\textit{n}is timore sublato. Cum bellum civitas aut illa-tum defendit aut infert, magistrat\textit{us} qui e\textit{i} bell\textit{o} praesint, 20 ut\textsuperscript{9} vitae necisque habeant potestatem, deliguntur. In p\textit{ace} n\textit{ull}us est comm\textit{un}is magistratus, sed princip\textit{es} regio\textit{n}um atque pag\textit{or}um inter su\textit{o}s i\textit{u}s dicunt contro-versiasque minuunt.\textsuperscript{10}

\textsuperscript{1} gentibus, cognationibus hominum, \textit{clans and families. Asyndeton;} see 227. \textsuperscript{2} quique una coierunt: \textit{i.e.} their clients and dependents. \textsuperscript{3} alio: adverb (cf. \textit{eo} and \textit{illo}, \textit{to another place}. \textsuperscript{4} agricultura: 119; we say "exchange for." \textsuperscript{5} accuratius: comparative of an adverb connected with \textit{cura}. \textsuperscript{6} animi aequitate, \textit{contentment}: cf. Eng. equanimity. \textsuperscript{7} proprium, \textit{characteristic, i.e. a sign of. Cf. Book I V, chap. 3 (p. 92, lines 24 ff).} \textsuperscript{8} hoc: ablative of cause. \textsuperscript{9} ut habeant, \textit{having, or who shall have}; lit., \textit{to have}. \textsuperscript{10} minuunt: cf. \textit{minus}.  \section*{Notes:}
Lātrōcinia nūllum habent īnfāmiam quac extrā finūcs ciusque cīvitātis fiunt, atque ea iuventūtis exercendae ac dēsidae\(^1\) minuendae causā fierī praedicant. Atque ubi quis\(^2\) ex principibus in conciliō dixit sē ducem fore, quī sequī velint profiteantur,\(^3\) cōnsurgunt iī qui et causam et hominem probant, suumque auxilium pollicentur atque ā multitūdine collaudantur; qui ex his secūti nōn sunt in désertōrum ac prōditōrum numerō dūcuntur, omniumque īs rērum\(^4\) postea fidēs dērōgātur.\(^5\)

Hospitem violāre fās nōn putant; quī quācumque dē causā ad eōs vēnērunt ab iniūriā prohibent, sānectōs habent, hisque omnium domūs patent vīctusque commūnicātur.

Former superiority of the Gauls to the Germans; how it was lost.

15 24. Ac fuit anteā tempus, cum Germānōs Gallī virtūte superārent, ultrō bella inerrent, propter hominum multitūdinem agrīque inopiam trāns Rhēnum colōniās mitterent. Itaque ea quaeā fertilissima Germāniae sunt loca circum Hercyniam silvam,\(^6\) quam Eratosthenē\(^7\) et quibusdam Graecis fāmā nōtam esse videō, quam illi Orcyniam appellant, Volcae Tectosagēs occupāvērunt atque ibi cōnsēdērunt; quae gēns ad hōc tempus hīs sēdibus sēsē continet summamque habet iūstitiāe et bellicae laudis opīniōnem.

\(^1\) desidia, -ae, f., idleness, sloth.
\(^2\) quis, any one, a meaning usually found only after si, nisi, ne, and num; cf. p. 156, footnote 2.
\(^3\) profiteantur, should volunteer, standing for the imperative or jussive subjunctive of the dir. disc. For the Sequence of Tenses, see 173.
\(^4\) omnium rerum, in all matters; 99.
\(^5\) derogō, -arc, take away, deny.
\(^6\) Hercynian silvam: a large forest of southern Germany.
\(^7\) Eratosthenē: a Greek philosopher and geographer, born in 276 B.C.
Nunc, quoniam in eādem inopiā, egestāte, patientiā qua quā ante Germānī permanent, eōdem vīctū et cultū corporis ātuntur, Gallī autem prōvinciārum propinquitās et trānsmarīnārum rērum nōtitia multa ad cōpiam atque ēsum lāgītur, paulātim assūēfactī superāri multīsque vīctī proeliīs nē sē quidem ipsī cum illīs virtūte comparant.

The Hercynian forest and its wonderful animals. The vast size of the forest.

25. Huius Hercyniae silvac, quae supra dēmōnstrāta est, lātitūdō novem diērum iter expeditō patet; nōn enim aliter finīrī potest, neque mēnsūrās itinerum nōve-10 runt. Oritur ab Helvētiōrum et Nemetum et Rauracōrum finibus rēctāque flūminis Dānūvī regiōne pertinet ad finēs Dācōrum et Anartium; hinc sē flectit sinistrōrsus diversīs ā flūmine regiōnibus multārumque gentium finēs propter magnitūdinem attingit; neque quisquam est huius Germāniae quī sē aut adīsse ad initium eius silvae dīcat, cum diērum iter LX prōcesserit, aut quō ex locō oriātur accēperit; multaque in eā genera fērārum nāscī cōnstat, quae reliquis in locīs

1 qua, as; lit., in which.
2 largitur, give, agreeing in number with one of the two subjects. See 85, note.
3 assuefacti . . . vici: participles agreeing with ipsi, which refers to the Gauls.
4 illīs: i.e. the Germans.
5 expedito, for a light traveller; lit., for one unincumbered. Dative of Reference; 109.
6 neque . . . noverunt: i.e. they do not measure journeys by miles, but by the time required to make them.
7 recta . . . regiōne, parallel with the Danube River; lit., in the direct line of.
8 sinistrōrsus: adverb from sinister, left, and versus = versus.
9 huius Germaniae, this (part of) Germany, i.e. the western part.
10 fērārum (sc. bestiarum), wild beasts. See 145, b.
visa non sint, ex quibus quae maximè differant à cæteris et memoriae prōenda videantur, haec sunt.

The reindeer.

26. Est bōs cervī¹ figura, cuius a mediā fronte inter aurēs ūnum cornū existit excelsius² magisque dērēctum 5 his, quae nōbis nōta sunt, cornibus; ab eius summō sīcut palmae³ rāmīque lātē diffunduntur. Eadem est fēminae marisque nātūra, eadem fōrna magnitudōque cornuum.

The elk.

27. Sunt item quae appellantur alcēs. Hārum est 10 cōnsimilis capris⁴ figura et varietās⁵ pellium, sed magnītūdine paulō antecēdunt⁶ mutilaeque⁷ sunt cornibus et cūra sine nōdis⁸ articulisque⁹ habent; neque quiētis causā prōcumbunt neque, si quō afflictae cāsū conciderunt, ērigere sēsē aut sublevārē possunt. His¹⁰ sunt 15 arborēs prō cubilibus;¹¹ ad eās sē applicant atque ita paulum modo reclinātæe quīetem capiunt. Quārum ex vēstigiis cum est animadversum a vēnātōribus quō sē recipere cōnsuērint, omnēs eō locō aut ā rādīcibus

---

¹ cervus, -i, m., stag.
² excelsius, quite long; lit., quite high. For the translation of the comparative, see 150.
³ palma, -ae, f., palm of the hand, with the fingers outspread.
⁴ capra, -ae, f., she-goat.
⁵ varietas: here means mottled, mottled appearance.
⁶ paulo antecedunt: i.e. they are a little larger than the animal just described, the hos cervi figura, or reindeer.
⁷ mutilae, broken (cf. Eng. mutilated), referring to the stumpy appearance of the horns.
⁸ nodus, -i, m., node, the swelling about the joints of an animal; articulus, -i, m., joint.
⁹ sublevo, -are, help. Sese is governed both by erigere and by sublevare.
¹⁰ his: 110.
¹¹ cubile, -is, n., bed, sleeping place.
subruunt aut accidunt arborēs, tantum ut summa speciēs cārum stantium 1 relinquatur. Huc cum sē cōnsuētūdine reclināverunt, insufficient arborēs pondere affligunt atque ūnā ipsae concidunt.

28. Tertium est genus eōrum qui ūri appellantur. 5 Hi sunt magnitūdine paulō infra elephāntōs, speciē et colōre et figūrā taurī. 2 Magna vis eōrum est et magna vēlōcitās; neque hominī neque ferac quam cōnspexē-runt parcuēnt. Hōs studiōsē foveīs 8 captōs interficiunt; hoc sē labōre durant 4 adulescentēs atque hoc genere 10 vēnātiōnis exercent, et qui plurimōs ex hīs interfēcē-runt, relātīs in pūblicum cornibus quae sint testimōniō, magnam ferunt laudem. Sed assuēscere ad hominēs et mānsuefieri 5 nē parvulī quidem exceptī possunt. Amplītūdō cornūm et figūrā et speciēs multum ā nostrō- 15 rum boum cornibus differt. Haec studiōsē conquisīta ā labris 6 argento circumcludunt 7 atque in amplissimīs epuliōs 8 prō pōculīs 9 utuntur.

1 ut summa . . . relinquatur, so that they look very much as if they were standing firmly; lit., so that the greatest appearance of those (i.e. trees) standing (firmly) is left.
2 128; taurī takes the place of a limiting adjective.
3 fovea, -ae, f., pit, pitfall.
4 duro, -are, verb from durus.
5 mansuefacio, -facere, make tame, tame.
6 a labris, at the lips or edges; a is used as in a dextra, etc. (See 142, 1, b.)
7 circumcludunt: a compound of claudo.
8 epulae, -arum, f. pl., banquet.
9 pulum, -i, u., drinking-cup.
THE SIEGE OF ALESIA

In the year 52 B.C. the Gauls made a last effort to recover their independence. Under the lead of Vercingetorix, they burned their towns and stores of provisions, and laid waste their country in the hope of starving out the Romans. Caesar was reduced to great straits, but after a vain attempt on the fortress of Gergovia he finally defeated Vercingetorix in a great cavalry battle and forced him to take refuge in the fortified town of Alesia.

Caesar lays siege to the town.

68. Fugatō omni equitātū, Vercingetorix cōpiās suās, ut1 prō castrīs collocāverat, redūxit prōtīnisque Alesiam, quod est oppidum Mandubiōrum, iter facere coepit celeriterque impedimenta ex castrīs eōdī et sē subsequī iussit. Caesar impedimentās in proximum collem dēductīs, duābus legiōnibus praeūdīo relictīs, secūtus hostēs quantum2 diēī tempus est passum, circiter tribus mīlibus ex novissimō agmine interfictīs, alterō diē ad Alesiam castra fēcit. Perspectō urbīs sitū perterritīisque hostibus, quod equitātū, quā maximē parte exercitūs cōnfidēbant, erant pulsi, adhortātus ad labōrem mīlitēs Alesiam circumvāllāre3 instituit.

The situation of Alesia. Extent of Caesar’s siege works.

69. Ipsum erat oppidum in colle summō, admodum ēditō locō, ut nisi obsidīōne expugnāri nōn posse videī-

1 ut, just as. 2 quantum: = tantum spati, quantum, as far as. 3 circumvallare: a verb formed from circum and vallum.
retur; cuius collis radices duo duabus ex partibus flumina subluebant. Ante oppidum planitiis circiter milia passuum tria in longitudinem patebat; reliquis ex omnibus partibus collis mediocrì interiecto spatio parì altitudinis fastigiò oppidum cingebant. Sub mūrō quae pars collis ad orientem sōlem spectābat, hunc omnem locum copiae Gallorum complēverant fossamque et māceriam sex in altitudinem pedum praedūxerant.

Eius mūniōnis, quae à Rōmānīs instituēbātur, circuitus undecim milia passuum tenēbat. Castra oppor-10 tūnīs locīs erant posita ibique castella xxiii facta, quibus in castellīs interdiū statiōnēs pōnēbantur, nē qua subitō éruptiō fieret; haec eadem noctū excubitōri-bus ac firmīs praesidiīs tenēbantur.

The Romans, aided by the Germans, win a cavalry battle.

70. Opere institūtō fit equestre proelium in ea plā-15 nitiē quam intermissum collibus tria milia passuum in longitudinem patēre suprā dēmōnstrāvimus. Summā vi ab utrīsque contenditur. Labōrantibus nostrīs Caesar Germānōs summittit legiōnēsque prō castrīs cōnstituit, nē qua subitō irruptiō ab hostium peditātū fiat. Prae-20 sidiō legiōnum additō nostrīs animus augētur; hostēs in fugam coniectī sē ipsī multitūdine impedient atque angustiōribus portīs relictīs coartantur.

1 subluo, -ere, wash.
2 fastigium, fastigi, n., ridge; pari altitudinis fastigio, a ridge of equal height, for paris altitudinis fastigio.
3 maceia, -ae, f., wall.
4 excubitor, -tōris, m., watchman, sentinel.
5 intermissum collibus, between the hills; lit., left by the hills, which surrounded the town except for a plain three miles wide. See chap. 69 (p. 163, l. 2).
6 109, a.
7 angustiōribus portīs relictīs, since the gates left in the wall were rather narrow; 130.
8 coarto, -are, crowd together.
Germani acrius üsque ad mūrōs persequuntur. Fit magna caedes; nōnnullī, reliquit equīs, fossam trānsire et māceriam trānsscendere cōnantur. Paulum legiōnēs Caesar, quās prō vāllō cōnstituerat, prōmovēri iubet. Non minus, qui intrā mūniōnēs erant, perturbantur 5 Gallī; venīrī1 ad sē cōnifestim existimantēs ad arma conclāmant; nōnnullī perterrītī in oppidum irruptīunt. Vercingetorīx iubet portās claudi, nē castra nūdentur. Multīs interfectīs, complūribus equīs captīs, Germānī sēsē recipiunt.

Vercingetorīx sends his cavalry for help. He prepares for a siege.

71. Vercingetorīx, priusquam mūniōnēs à Rōmānis perficientur, cōnsilium capit omnem à sē equitātum noctū dīmittere. Discēdentibus mandat ut suain quibus eōrum cīvitātem adeat omnēsque quī per aeta-tem arma ferre possint ad bellum cōgant. Sua in illōs15 merita prōpōnit obtestāturque ut suae salūtis ratiōnem habeant neu sē optimē dē commūnī libertātē meritum hostibus in cruciatum2 dēdant. Quod sī indiligentiōrēs fuerint, milia hominum dēlecēta3 LXXX ūnā sēcum interitu-ōra4 dēmōnstrat.

Ratiōne initā sē exignē5 diērum XXX habēre frūmentum, sed paulō etiam longius tolerārī6 posse parcendo. Hīs datīs mandātīs, quā erat nostrum opus intermissum7

1 venīrī: used impersonally (160) and with future force; freely, that an attack would be made.
2 in cruciatum, for torture; cf. in disciplinam, p. 150, fn. 5.
3 dēlecēta: agrees with milia, but may be translated as if it were dēlectoreōrum, agreeing with hominum.
4 interitu-ōra: sc. esse; the subject is milia.
5 exignē (adv. from exiguus), barely.
6 tolerārī, be held out; with possē, it would be possible to hold out.
7 qua . . . intermissum: i.e. where there was a gap in our works, since they were not yet finished.
secundā vigiliā silentiō equitātum dimittit. Frūmentum omne ad sē referri iubet, capitis¹ poenam eis qui nōn pāruerint cōnstituit; pecus, cuius magna erat cōpia a Mandubiīs compulsa, virītim² distribuit, frūmentum parcē et paulātim mētīri ĭnstituit. Cōpiās omnēs, quās prō oppidō collocāverat, ĭn oppidum recipit. Hīs ratiōnibus³ auxilia Galliae exspectāre et bellum parat administrāre.

Caesar constructs a double line of works, in front and in the rear of his army.

72. Quibus rēbus coghitis ex perfugīs et captīvis, Caesar haec genera mūnitionēs ĭnstituit. Fossam pedum xx dērēctis lateribus dūxit, ut eius fossae solum⁴ tantundem patēret, quantum summa labra⁵ distārent. Reliquās omnēs mūnitionēs ab ea fossā pedēs cccc redūxit, id hōc cōnsiliō, quoniam tantum esset necessāriō spatium complexus nec facile tōtum opus corōnā⁶ militum cingerētur, nē dē imprōvisō aut noctū ad mūnitionēs hostium multitūdō advolāret aut interdiū⁷ tēla in nostrōs operi dēstinātōs conicere posset.

20 Hōc intermissō spatiō duās fossās xv pedēs lātās eādem altitūdine perdūxit; quārum interiōrem⁸ camppestribus ac dēmissis locīs aquā ex flūmine dērivātā complēvit. Post eās aggerem ac vallum xii pedum

¹ capitis, head, life; with poenam = capital punishment, punishment by death (loss of life).
² virītim (adv. from vir), man by man, to each man.
³ his rationibus, by these methods, in this way.
⁴ solum, bottom.
⁶ corona, a continuous line; lit., a crown or ring.
⁷ interdiū: contrasted with noctū; cf. Book I, chap. 8 (p. 7, l. 21).
⁸ interiōrem: sc. fossam.
exstruxit. Huic loricam pinnasque adiicit grandibus cervis eminentibus ad commissurās pluteorum atque aggeris, qui ascēnsum hostium tardāreunt, et turres totō opere circundedit, quae pedēs LXXX inter sē distārent.

Caesar strengthens his fortifications on the side towards Alesia.

73. Erat eōdem tempore et māteriāri et frumentāri et tantās múniitionēs fieri necesse dēminūtis nostrīs cōpiis, quae longius ā castrīs prōgrediēbantur; ac nōn-numquam opera nostra Gallī temptāre atque ēruptionem ex oppidō plūribus portīs summā vī facere cōnābantur.

1 lōrica: see p. 137, ft. 4. 2 pinnas: see p. 137, ft. 3.
3 cervis, branches of trees; lit., stags, from their resemblance to the horns of that animal.
4 ad commissuras pluteorum, at the junction of the fortifications (including the lōrica and the pinnae) and the rampart (mound).
Quärē ad haec rūrsus operā addenduīn Caesār putāvit, quō minōre numerō militūm mūnitionēs défendī possent. Itaque truncīs arborum aut admodum firmīs rāmis abscessīs atque hōrum délibrātīs ac praeacūtīs cācūminibus perpetuae fossae quīnōs pedēs alae dūcēbantur. Hūc illī stīpitēs dēmissī et ab īnīmō revinctī, nē revellī possent, ā rāmis ēminēbant.

Quīnī erant ĉōrnīs, coniunctī inter sē atque complicātī; quō qui intrāverant, sē īpsi acūtissimīs vāllīs induēbant. Hōs cippōs appellābant. Ante hōs oblīquīs ĉōrdinibus in quincūncem dispositīs scrobēs in altitūdinem trium pedum fodiēbantur paulātim angustiōre ā īnīmum fastīgiō. Hūc teretēs stīpitēs feminīs crassisūdine, ā summō praeacūtī et praeūstī, dēmittēbantur īta ut nōn amplius digitīs quattuor ēx terrā ēminēreut; simul cōnfirmāndī ēst stabiendī causā singulī ā īnīmō solō pedēs terrā excucēbantur; reliqua pars scrobis ād occultandās īnsidiās vīminibus ac vīrgulīs integēbātur. Huius ĉēndis octōnī ĉōrdinēs ĉet nēs ductī ternōs ānt đx pedēs distabant. Id ex simili-

1 Sc. esse; 160.
2 delibrātīs: part. of a verb, delibro, from de and liber, bark (of a tree).
3 cacūmen, -inis, n., top.
4 ā rāmis ēminebant, projected with the branches (only), the rest being underground.
5 se . . . induēbat, impaled himself on.
6 in quincūnca: like the five-spot on dice, ••••••••. Obliquīs . . . dispositīs may be translated, which were arranged in diagonal parallel lines.
7 scrobīs, scrobis, m. and f., pit.
8 angustiōre . . . fastīgiō; i.e. narrower at the top than at the bottom, lit., with a slope (growing) narrower towards the bottom.
9 teres, -etis, smooth.
10 feminīs: another form of the genitive of femur; see p. 134, ftn. 5.
11 singulī . . excucēbantur, they were packed in with earth to the depth of a foot each; more lit., one foot (of) each at the bottom was trodden down with earth.
12 vīrgulīm, -i, n., brushwood.
He strengthens them also on the outside.

74. His rébus perfectís, regionés secítus quam potuit 5 aequissímmás pró 5 locí náíúrá, quattuordecim mília pas-

suum complexus parés eiusdem generis múnítiónnés,

diversás 6 ab híis, contrá extériórem hostem perfécit, ut

e né magná quidem multitúdine múnítiónum præsidia

circumfundi possent; né autem cum perículó ex castrís 10

egrédi cógátur, diérum xxx pábulum frúmentumque

habère omnés convectum 7 inbet.

The Gauls collect reënforcements.

75. Dum haec ad Alesiam geruntur, Gallí, concílió

princípiumi indictó, nón omnés quí arma ferre possent,

ut cěnsuit Vercingetórix, convocándós statuunt, sed 15
certum numerúm cuíque cívitáti imperándum, ně tantá
multitúdine cónfúsá nec moderári nec discernére 8 suós
nec frúmentandí ratiónum habère possent.

Imperant Aeduíis atque eórum clieníibus, Segusiá-
vis, Ambivaretís, Aulercís Brannovicibus, mília xxxv; 20
parem numerúm Arvernís, adíúncítis Eleutétís, Cadú-
rcís, Gabalís, Vellaviís, qui sub imperió Arvernórum esse
cōnsuērunt; Sēquanīs, Senonibus, Biturīgibus, Santonis, Rutēnīs, Carnutibus duodēna mīlia; Bellovacīs x; totidem Lemovīcibus; octōna Pictonibus et Turonīs et Parīsiis et Helvētiis; sēna Andibus, Ambiānīs, Mediomatricīs, Petrocorīs, Nervīs, Morinīs, Nitiobrogibus; v mīlia Aulercīs Cēnomanīs; totidem Atrebātibus; III Veliocassīs; Aulercīs Eburopīcibus III; Rauracīs et Boīis bīna; xxx mīlia universīs civitātibus, quae Ōceanum attingunt quaeque eōrum con-suētūdine Aremoricae ap-
pellantur, quō sunt in numerō Coriosolītēs, Redonēs, Ambibariī, Caletēs, Osismī, Venetī, Lexovīi, Venelli. Ex hīs Bellovacī suum numerum nōn complēverunt, quod sē suō nōmine atque arbitriō 1 cum Rōmānīs bellum esse gestūrōs dicerent neque cuiusquam imperiō obtēm-
perātūrōs; rogātī tamen ā Commiō prō 2 eius hospitiō duo mīlia ūnā 3 misērunt.

The Gauls organize, and set out for Alesia, full of confidence.

76. Huius opera Commī, ut anteā dēmonstrāvimus, fidēlī atque utīli superiōribus annīs erat ūsus in Britanniā Caesār; quībus ille prō meritīs civitātem eius immūnem 4 esse iussērat, iūra lēgēsque reddiderat atque ipsī 5 Morinōs attribuerat. Tamen tanta universae Galliae cōnsēnsiō fuit libertātis vindicandae 6 et prīstīnae bellī laudis recuperandae, ut neque beneficiīs neque amīcitiae memoriā movērentur, omnēsque et animō et 25 opibus in id bellum incumberent. Coāctīs equitum mīlibus octō et peditum circiter ccl, haec 7 in Aeduō-

1 arbitriō: sc. suo, independently; lit., under their own direction.
2 prō, out of consideration for.
3 una, adv., with him.
4 immūnem, free from taxes.
5 ipsī: i.e. to Commius.
6 libertātis vindicandae: gen. depending on consensio. We should say, "in declaring their independence."
7 haec, these (troops), referring strictly to mīlia.
The Gauls in Alesia despair. Critognotus advises resistance to the bitter end.

77. At ii qui Alesiae obsidēbantur, praeteritā diē quā auxilia suōrum exspectāverant, cōnsūmptō omni frūmentō, insciī quid in Aeduīs gerērētur, conciliō coāctō dē exitū suārum fortūnārum cōnsultābant. Ac 15 variīs dictīs sententiīs, quārum pars dēditiōnem, pars, dum vires suppeterent, ēruptiōnem cēsēbat, nōn praetereunda ōrātiō Critognātī vidētur propter eius singulārem et nefāriām crūdēlitātem.

Hic, summō in Arvernīs ortus loeō et magnae habitus 20 auctōritātis, “Nihil,” inquit, “dē eōrum sententia dicēturīs sum, quī turpissīmam servītūtem dēditiōnis nōmine appellant, neque hōs habendōs civīum locō neque ad concilium adhibendōs cēnseō. Cum hīs mihi rēs sit,6

1 recensebantur, were reviewed.
2 numerus inibatur, they were numbered.
3 foris, and without the town. For the asyndeton, see 227.
4 dum vires suppeterent, while they still had strength; lit., while strength held out. The subj. is due to the ind. disc. implied in cēnsebat.
5 nefarius, -a, -um (cf. nefas), abominable.
6 cum his . . . res sit, let me address myself to those; lit., let my business be with those.
qui eruptionem probant; quorum in consilio omnium vestrum consensu pristinae residere virtutis memoria videtur. Animis est ista mollitia, non virtus, paulisper inopiam ferre non posse. Quis se ultero morti offerant, 5 facilius reperiuntur, quam qui dolorem patienter ferant.

Atque ego hanc sententiam probarem—tantum apud mea dignitas potest—si nullo praeterquam vitae nostrae iacturam fieri videre; sed in consilio capiendo omnem Galliam respiciamus, quam ad nostrum auxilium concitavimus. Quid hominum milibus lxxx uno loco interflectis propinquis consanguineisque nostris animis 5 fore existimatis, si paene in ipsis cadaveribus proeliis decertari cogetur? Nolite hos vestros auxiliis exspoliare, qui vestrae salutis causa suum periculum neglexerunt, nec stultitia ac temeritatem vestra aut animi imbécillitatem omnem Galliam prosternere et perpetuae servitutis subicere.

An quod ad diem, non venereunt, de eorum fide constantiisque dubitatis? Quid ergo? Rōmānōs in illis ulteriōribus mūnitionibus animine causā cotidiē exercēri putātis? Si illōrum nūntiīs confirmāri non potestis omnī adītū praesaepīō, hīs ūtimīnī testibus 8 appropinquare eōrum adventum; cuius rei timore exterriti diem noctemque in opere versantur.

1 resideo, -ere, remain, be left.
2 ista, that (characteristic) of yours; ista is for istud, attracted to the gender of the predicate noun mollitia. Ista is the pronoun of the second person, that of yours, with a touch of contempt.
3 tantum . . potest, so much influence (with me) has their position; i.e. that of those who urge that course. 4 iactura: see p. 148, fn. 2.
5 animi: partitive gen. with quid, what do you think will be the feeling?
6 animine: animi and -ne, the interr. particle. Animi causa means for amusement, for fun; lit., for the sake of (gratifying) their feelings.
7 praesaepio, -ire, block. 8 his . . testibus: i.e. the Romans.
9 cuius rei timore, since on account of their fear of this thing, i.e. the coming of the Gauls.
Quid ergō meī cōnsilī est? Facere quod nostrī maiōres nēquaquam pārī bellō Cimbrōrum Teutonum-que fécerunt; quī in oppida compulsi ac similī in-opiā subāctī eōrum corporibus, qui āetāte ad bellum inūtilēs vidēbantur vitānū tolerāvērunt neque sē hostībus trādidērunt. Cuius reī si exemplum nōn habēremus, tamen libertātīs causā īnstitui et posterīs prōdī pul-cherrimum iūdicārem. Nam quīd illī simile bellō fuit? Dépopulātā Gallīā Cimbī magnāque illātā ca-lamitāte finibus quidem nostrīs aliāquād excessērunt atque aliās terrās petīvērunt; iūra, légēs, agrōs, libertātēm nōbis reliquērunt. Rōmānī vērō quīd petunt aliu aut quīd volunt, nisi invidiā adductī, quōs famā nōbilēs potentēsque bellō cognōvērunt, hōrum in agris civitātibusque cōnsīdere atque his aeternam iniiungere servītūtem? Neque enim umquam aliā condiciōne bellā gessērunt. Quod si ea quae in longinquis nātiōnibus geruntur ignōratīs, respicite finitīmam Galliām, quae in prōvinciām redācta, iūre et légibus commūtātīs, securibus subjeccta, perpetuā premītur servītūte.”

The Gauls force the non-combatants to leave the town. The Romans refuse to receive them.

78. Sententiās dictīs, cōnstituunt ut iī qui valē-tūdine aut āetāte inūtilēs sint bellō oppidō excēdant,

1 simili: i.e. similar to what the people of Alesia were now suffering.
2 corporibus: i.e. by (eating) their bodies.
3 cuīus reī exemplum, a precedent for such conduct; more lit., for this thing.
4 institui: sc. id, = exemplum, for it to be established.
5 quīd illī simile bello fuit, what resemblance had that war (with the Cimbri and Teutones) to this in which they were now engaged.
6 aliāquād, after a time, finally.
7 quōs: the antecedent is horum, below.
8 securibus, to the authority (of the Romans), since the fasces and axes were the emblems of power.
9 valetūdine, health; here, ill health.
atque omnia prius experiantur quam ad Critognātī sententiam dēscendant; illō tamen potius ùtendum cōnsiliō, si rēs cōgat atque auxilia morentur, quam aut dēditiōnis aut pācis subenndam condiciōnem.  

5 Mandubīi, quī eōs oppidō recēperant, cum liberis atque uxōribus exīre cōguntur. Hī cum ad mūnītiōnēs Rōmānōrum accessissent, flentēs omnibus precibus ōrābant ut sē in servitiūtem receptōs cibō iuvārent. At Caesar dispositīs in vāllō cūstōdiīs recipī prohibēbat.

The reēnforcements arrive and the besieged prepare for a sortie.

10 79. Interea Commius reliquīque ducēs quībus summa imperī permissa erat cum omnibus cōpiās ad Alesiam perveniunt et colle exteriōre occupātō nōn longius mīlle passibus a nostrīs mūnītiōnibus cōnsidunt. Postero diē equitātū ex castrīs ēductō omnem eam plānitiem, quam in longitūdinem tria mīlia passuum patēre dēmōnstrāvimus, complent pedestrēsque cōpiās paulum ab eō locō abditās in locīs superīōribus cōnstituunt.

Erat ex oppidō Alesiā dēspectus in campum. Concurrunt hīs auxiliīs visīs; fit grātulātiō inter eōs 20 atque omnium animī ad laetitiām excitantur. Itaque prōductīs cōpiās ante oppidum cōnsidunt et proximam fossam crātibus integunt atque aggere explent sēque ad ēruptionem atque omnēs cāsūs comparant.

The Gauls make a desperate attack on Caesar’s works, but are repulsed.

80. Caesar, omnī exercitū ad utramque partem mūnītiōnum dispositō, ut sī āsus veniat, suum quīisque

1 dēpectus, a view, from a height on the land below.
2 concurrunt, they flock together, referring to the Gauls in the town.
3 aggere: i.e. with the earth from the mound.
4 ad utramque partem: i.e. at both the inner and the outer fortifications.
locum teneat et növerit, equitātum ex castris ēdūci et proelium committi iubet. Erat ex omnibus castris, quae summum undique ingum tenēbant, dēspectus atque omnēs militēs intentī pugnae prōventum 1 exspectābant.

Galli inter equitēs rāros 2 sagittāriōs expeditōsque 5 levis armātūrae interiēcerant, quī suīs cēdentibus auxiliō succurrerent et nostrōrum equitūm impetūs sustinērent. Ab his complūrēs dē imprōvisō vulnerātī proelīo excēdēbant. Cum suōs pugnā superiōrēs esse Gallī cōnside- rent et nostrōs multitudine premī vidērent, ex omnibus 10 partibus et iī qui múniōniōbus continēbantur et iī qui ad auxilium convēnerant clāmōre et ululātū 3 suōrum animōs cōnfirmābant. Quod in cōnspectū omnium rēs gerēbātur neque rēctē ac turpiter factum cēlāri poterat, utrōsque et laudis cupiditās et timor ignōminiae ad 15 virtūtem excitābat.

Cum ā meridiē prope ad sōlis occāsum dubiā victoriā pugnārētur, Germānī ūnā in parte cōnfertīs turmīs in hostēs impetūm fēcērunt eōsque propulērunt; quibus in fugam coniectīs, sagittāriī circumventī interfectīque 20 sunt. Item ex reliquis partibus nostrī cēdentēs 4 üsque ad castra īnsecūti sui collīgendi facultātem nōn dedērunt. At iī qui ab Alesiā prōesserant, maestī prope victoriā déspērātā, sē in oppidum recēpērunt.

The Gauls make a second attack. The besieged prepare to help them.

81. Uno diē intermissō Gallī atque hōc spatiō magnō 25 crātiōm, scālārum, 5 harpagōnūm 6 numerō effectō mediā
nocte silentiō ex castrīs ēgressī, ad campestrēs mūnitionēs accēdunt. Subitō clāmōre subūtō, quà significatione quī in oppidō obsidēbantur dē suō adventū cognōscere possent, crātēs prōicere, fundīs, sagittīs, lapidibus nostrōs dē vāllō proturbāre reliquaque quae ad oppugnātiōnem pertinent parant administrāre.

Eōdem tempore, clāmōre exaudītō, dat tubā signum suōs Vercingetorix atque ex oppidō ēducit. Nostrī, ut superiōribus diēbus suus cuique erat locus attribūtus, ad mūnitionēs accēdunt; fundīs librīlibus sudibusque, quās in opere disposuerant, ac glandibus Gallōs prōterrent. Prōspectū tenebrīs adēmpō, multa utrimque vulnera accipiuntur. Complūra tormentīs tēla conciuntur. At M. Antōnius et C. Trebōnius lēgātī, quibus hae partēs ad défendendum obvēnerant, quà ex parte nostrōs premī intellēxerant, his auxilio ex ulteriōribus castellīs dēductōs summittēbant.

The attacking force is repulsed before the besieged can render any assistance.

82. Dum longius a mūnitione aberant Gallī, plūs multitūdine tēlōrum proficiēbant; posteaquam propīus successērunt, aut sē ipsī stimulīs inopīnantēs induēbant aut in scrōbes dēlātī transfodiēbantur aut ex vāllō ac turribus trāiectī pilīs mūralībus interībant. Multīs

1 campestrēs, in the plain, referring to the part of the fortifications between the hills; see p. 163, l. 2.
2 ēducit: sc. suōs, implied in suis.
3 fundīs librīlibus, slings for throwing stones weighing a pound.
4 sudibus: see p. 122, ftn. 2.
5 glandibus, bullets of lead, hurled from slings.
6 stimulīs: see p. 169, footnote 4.
7 sē . . induēbant: see p. 168, footnote 5.
8 scrōbes: see p. 168, footnote 7.
9 pilīs mūralībus: much larger than the ordinary pilum and used in defending walls.
undique vulneribus acceptis, nullâ munitione permurpta, cum lúx appeteret, verití né à latere apertó ex superi-óribus castris¹ eruptione circumvenírentur, sē ad suōs recēpérunt. At interiōrés dum ea quae à Vercingetorige ad eruptionem praeparāta erant prōferunt, prōrēs fossās 5 explent, diūtius in hīs rébus administrandīs morātī prius suōs discessisse cognōvērunt quam mūnitionibus appropinquārent. Ita rē infectā in oppidum revertuntur.

The Gauls then plan an attack on a weak point in the Roman works.

83. Bis magnō cum détrimentō repulsī Gallī, quid agant cōnsulunt; locōrum perítōs adhibent; ex hīs 10 superiōrum castrōrum¹ sitūs mūnitionēsque cognōscunt. Erat à septentriōnibus collis, quem propter magnitūdinem circuitūs opere circumplecti nōn potuērant nostri; necessāriō paene inīquō² locō et lēniter déclivi castra fēcerant. Haec C. Antistius Rēginus et C. 15 Canīnius Rebilus lēgātī cum duābus legiōnibus obtinebant.³

Cognitīs per explōratōrēs regiō nibus, ducēs hostium LX mīlia ex omni numerō delīgunt eārum cīvitātum quae maximam virtūtīs opīniōnem habēbant; quid quōque 20 pactō⁴ agī placeat occultē inter sē cōnstituunt; adeundī tempus définiunt, cum merīdiēs esse videātur. Hīs cōpiīs Vercassivellaunum Arvernum, únūm ex quattuor ducibus, propinquum Vercingetorigis, praeficiunt. Ille ex castris primā vigiliā ēgressus, prope cōnfecū sub 25 lūcem itinere, post montem sē occultāvit militēsque ex nocturnō labōre sēsē reficere iussit. Cum iam merīdiēs

¹ superioribus castris: the part of the Roman camp on the hills, in distinction from the campestres munitiones, p. 178, l. 3.
² paene iniquo, not wholly favorable; lit., almost unfavorable.
³ obtinebant, were holding; note the tense.
⁴ quid quoque pacto, what and how (in what manner).
Vercingetorix makes a sally from the town and there is fighting on all sides.

5 84. Vercingetorix ex arce Alesiae suōs cōnspicātus ex oppidō ēgressus; crātēs, longuriōs, músculōs, falcēs reliquaque quae ēruptiōnēs causā parāverat, prōfert. Pugnātur ūnō tempore omnibus locīs atque omnia temptantur; quae 3 minimē visā pars firma est, hūc concurritur. Rōmānōrum manus tantās mūniōniūbias disīnitur 4 nec facile pluribus locīs occurrīt. Multum ad terrendōs nostrōs valet clāmor qui post tergum pugnantibus existit, quod suum periculum 5 in aliēnā vident virtūte cōnstāre; omnia enim plērumque quae absunt vehemensius hominum mentēs perturbant.

Both armies fight valiantly. The Romans are hard pressed.

85. Caesar idoneum locum nactus, quid quāque in parte ĝerātur cognōscit; labōrantibus summītīt. 6 Utrīsque ad animum occurrīt ūnum esse illud tempus quō maximē contendi conveniēt: 7 Gallī, nisi perfrēgerint munitionēs, dē omni salūte dēspērant; Rōmānī, si rem obtinuerint, finem labōrum omnium exspectant.

1 campestres munitiones: see p. 176, ft. 1.
2 musculus, -i, m., shed, mantlet.
3 quae . . . pars . . . huc: equivalent to ad eam partem, quae.
4 distinetur, is divided, distracted: i.e. the fortifications are so extensive that it is difficult to meet the many attacks at different points.
5 periculum suum, their (escape from) danger.
6 summittit, used intransitively, aids, helps.
7 convenit, impersonal, it is fitting. The subject is contendi.
Maximē ad superiores munītiones labōrātur, quō Vercassivellaunum missum dēmōnstrāvīmus. Inīquum locī ad dēclivitātem fastigium magnum habet mōmentum. Aliī tēla coniciunt, aliī testūdine factā subeunt; dēfatīgātīs invicem integri succēdunt. Agger ab ūni-versīs in munītiones coniectus et ascēnsum dat Gallīs et ea quae in terrā occultāverant Rōmānī contegit; nec iam arma nostrīs nec vīrēs suppetunt.

Caesar sends Labienus to the rescue and encourages his men.

86. His rebus cognītīs, Caesar Labiēnum cum co-hortibus sex subsidiō labōrantibus mittit; imperat, si sustinēre nōn possit, dēductīs cohortibus ēruptiōne pugnet; id nisi necessāriō nē faciat. Ipse adit reliquōs, cohortātur nē labōrī succumbant; omnium superiōrum dimicātiōnum frūctum in eō diē atque hōrā docet cōnsistere.

Interiōrès dēspērātīs campestribus locīs propter magnītūdīnem munītiones loca praeerupta ex ascēnsū temptant; hūc ea quae parāverant cōnferunt. Multītūdine tēlōrum ex turribus prōpugnantēs dēturbant, aggere et crātibus fossās explent, falcibus vāllum ac lōricam rescindunt.

1 ad superiores munitiones: see p. 177, ftn. 1.
2 inīquum...momentum: lit., the unfavorable inclination of the ground to steepness has great influence; i.e. the sloping ground, which made the position of the camp unfavorable to the Romans (see chap. 83, p. 177, l. 14), had a great influence on the result of the contest.
3 deductīs cohortibus ēruptiōne pugnet, he should lead away his troops (to another part of the works) and make a sally; i.e. Labienus is to act on the defensive as long as possible, and when this can no longer be done, to make an attack on the enemy from another point.
4 ex ascensu temptant, try to scale; more lit., try by an ascent; i.e. the enemy, finding the fortifications in the valley too strong, try the part on higher ground.
5 lōricam: see p. 167, footnote 1.
Caesar repulses the enemy and goes to the help of Labienus.

87. Mittit prīmo Brūtum adulēscentem cum cohortibus Caesar, post cum aliīs C. Fabium lēgātuīn; postrēnō ipse, cum vehementius pugnārētur, integrōs subsidio addūcit. Restitūtō proelīō ac repulsīs hostibus, eō quō Labiēnum miserat contendit; cohortēs quattuor ex proximō castellō dēdūcit, equitum partem sē sequī, partem circumīre extrērēs mūnītiōnēs et ā tergo hostēs adorīri iubet.

Labiēnus postquam neque aggerēs neque fossae vim hostium sustinēre poterant, coāctīs ūnā xī cohortibus, quās ex proximīs praesidiīs dēductās fors obtulit, Caesarem per nūntiōs facit certiōrem quid faciendum existimēt. Accelerat Caesar ut proelīō intersit.

The Gauls are defeated with great loss. Those outside of the town take flight.


---

1 quo insigni. consueverat, since he was wont to wear a conspicuous dress in battle; more lit., which (referring to vestitus) conspicuous he was wont to wear.

2 turma, -ae, f., troop or squad of cavalry.

3 ut: causal. The situation of Alesia gave a view of all the surrounding country and of all the siege works of the Romans.

4 haec declivia et convexa, these descending slopes. Hendiadys; see 225.
et princeps Lemovicum, occidit; Vercassivellaunus Arvernus vivus in fugā comprehendet; signa militāria LXXIII ad Caesarem referuntur; pauci ex tantō numerō se incoluntēs in castra recipiunt.

Cōnspicātī ex oppidō acdem et fugam suōrum dēspē 5 rātā salūte cōpiās a mūnitiōnibus redūcunt. Fit prōtinus hāc rē audītā ex castrīs Gallōrum fuga. Quo d nisi crebris subsidiis ac tōtīs diēī labōre militēs essent dēfessi, omnēs hostium cōpiāe dēlērī potuissent. Dē mediā noctē missus equitātūs novissimum agmen cōn-10 sequitur; magnus numerus capitur atque interficitur, reliqui ex fugā in civitātēs discēdunt.

_Book VII, Chapters 87-90_ 181

Alesia capitulates and Vercingetorix is surrendered to the Romans.


Caesar quarters his legions in various parts of Gaul. A thanksgiving is decreed at Rome.

_90._ Hīs rēbus cōnfectīs, in Aeduōs proficiscitur; civitātem recipit. Eō légātī ab Arvernīs missī, quae

1 _Conspicati ex oppido_ = _ī qui in oppido erant conspicati._
2 _proiciuntur, are thrown down_ (from the walls of the town).
3 _capita, individuals_; see p. 22, l. 12.
4 _praedae nomine, as booty_; lit., _in the name of booty._
imperāret sē factūros pollicentur. Imperat magnum numerum obsidum. Legiōnes in hiberna mittit. Captīvōrum circiter xx mīlia Aeduīs Arvernīisque reddit. T. Labiēnum cum duābus legiōnibus et equitātū in Sē-5 quanōs proficiscī iubet; huic M. Semprōnium Rutilum attribuit. C. Fabium lēgātum et L. Minucium Basi-
lum cum legiōnibus duābus in Rōnīs collocat, uē quam ā fīnitimīs Bellovacīs calamītātem accipiant. C. Antis-
tium Rēgīnum in Ambivaretōs, T. Sextium in Biturīgēs,10 C. Canīnium Rebilum in Rutēnōs cum singulīs legiō-
nibus mittit. Q. Tullium Cicerōnem et P. Sulpicium Cabillōnī et Matiscōne1 in Aeduīs ad Ararim reī frū-
mentāriae causā collocat. Ipse Bibracte hiemāre cōn-
stituit. His rēbus ex Caesāris litterīs cognītīs, Rōmae 15 diērum xx supplicātiō redditur.

1 Names of towns; see 133.
NOTES

1 For abbreviations see the list preceding the Vocabulary. The references in black-faced type (e.g., 199) are to the Introduction. Those from 80–227 take the place of the usual references to the Grammars and should be looked up with care, unless the construction is already familiar. Owing to the historical matter given in the Introd. (1–14 and 66–79), the Notes are mainly grammatical and explanatory of the meaning of the Text. The literal translations are intended merely to make the construction clear, and not for actual use.

BOOK I

I. THE WAR WITH THE HELVETIANS

Page 1. Line 1. Chapter I. Gallia . . . omnis: Gaul taken as a whole; i.e., there are three grand divisions of the country known as Gallia. Caesar, however, uses Gallia here not in its broadest sense, but in that of Gallia Ulterior, including neither Cisalpine Gaul nor the Roman Province.—Est . . . divisa: is divided. Not the perfect tense, but divisa is the perf. part. used as a predicate adjective (145).—partes tres: this is the usual order in Caesar, although in Latin generally the cardinal numerals precede the word which they govern.

1. 1–3. quarum . . . appellantur: as is frequently the case, both in English and in Latin, this sentence is shortened by the omission of words which would otherwise occur more than once. For the construction of the sentence it is necessary to supply the missing words, which may be inferred from those which are expressed. The antecedent of the relative is omitted, but it may be supplied from the form of the relative (84). Thus the complete sentence would read: Gallia est omnis divisa in partes tres quarum unam (partem) incolunt Belgae, aliam (partem incolunt)
Aquitani, tertiam (partem incolunt ii) qui ipsorum lingua Celte,
nostra (lingua) Galli appellantur. An understanding of the prin-
ciple on which missing words are supplied is of the utmost impor-
tance. For the case of quarum see 99.

1. 3. ipsorum lingua: in their own language; for the case of
lingua see 119 and the note; for that of ipsorum, which is equiva-
lent to an emphatic sua, 96. The Gauls of course did not speak
Latin, like the Romans, but Celtic, a language descended from
the same parent speech as Greek and Latin. Celtic still sur-
vives in Welsh and in Scotch and Irish Gaelic.

1. 4. lingua, institutis, legibus: in translating we should insert
and between the last two words, but in Latin the conjunction is
often omitted in such groups of words, or the form linguis et in-
stitutis et legibus is used. For the case see 129.—inter se: from
one another; lit., among themselves. Do not translate literally
when the English idiom differs from the Latin. The literal
translation, however, shows the relations of the words to one
another, and must in all cases be understood thoroughly before a
free translation is attempted.

1. 6. dividit: the verb agrees with one of the two subjects, in-
stead of with both, since the Seine and its tributary the Marne
are thought of as one boundary. The fact too that dividit serves
also as the predicate to Garumna undoubtedly influenced the
agreement. See 85 and the Note.

1. 7. Horum omnium: see 99 and cf. quarum in 1. 1, above.
propterea quod: it is not necessary to translate propterea.

1. 8. a cultu atque humanitate: from the civilization and refine-
ment; for the case see 115 and the Note. We might translate
refined civilization (see 225).—provinciae: the Roman province
of Gaul, commonly called merely the Province; see the map of
Gaul (opp. p. 1) and 75.

1. 9. minimeque: minime modifies saepe, and the two words
may be translated very seldom by the common figure of speech
known as litotes; see 226. Note the emphatic position of mi-
minute. This is the second reason given for the superiority of the
Belgians; translate and because, etc.—eos: do not connect this
word, which refers to Belgae, with mercatores, which is nominative.
1. 10. ad effeminandos animos: the gerundive construction, depending on pertinent; see 220.

1. 11. proximique: the third reason (see note on minimeque, l. 9); translate and because, as above. — Germanis: 114.

1. 12. quibuscum: = cum quibus. The prep. cum is frequently appended to personal and relative pronouns. — Qua de causa: and for this reason; for the translation of the relative see 158, a. Note the order; the relative pronoun is regularly the first word in its clause.

1. 13. Helvetii quoque: the Helvetians also, as well as the Belgae. — virtute: see 129 and cf. lingua, etc., in l. 4, above.

1. 14. quod: namely because, a fuller explanation of qua de causa, which refers back to quibuscum continenter bellum gerunt. — fere cotidianis proeliis: in almost daily battles; see 119 and the Note. Since the phrase is equivalent to “continuously,” it might be referred to 123. It must be remembered that these grammatical categories shade into one another, and that occasionally one word contains more than one grammatical idea.

1. 15. cum . . . prohibent . . . gerunt: either repelling . . . or waging. The clause is explanatory of cotidianis proeliis contendunt, and cum should not be translated “when”; see 185. The subject of prohibent is ii understood, referring to the Helvetii.

1. 16. finibus: see 115 and the Note.

1. 17. Eorum: referring to the same peoples as horum omnium in line 7. Caesar returns to the subject after his digression about the valor of the Belgae and the Helvetii. Although eorum refers to the inhabitants of the country, it may better be translated, in connection with una pars, by one part of this territory. — quam . . . dictum est: which it has been stated that the Gauls occupy, or which, as has been said, belongs to the Gauls. In English the personal construction is more common in such cases; in Latin, the impersonal. The clause quam Gallos obtinere is the subject of dictum est; see 213 and 160.

1. 18. initium capit a: begins at; lit., takes its beginning from. — continetur: it is bounded.

1. 19. flumine, Oceano, finibus: for the omission of the conjunction see note on lingua, institutis, legibus, l. 4, above.
— attingit: it reaches or extends to. — a Sequanis et Helvetiis: on the side of the Sequani, etc. That is, in the part of Gaul occupied by the Sequanians and Helvetians. Note that a here does not mean "from"; see 142, 1, b.

1. 20. vergit ad septentriones: it faces towards the north; i.e., the general trend of the country is towards the north. For the literal meaning of septentriones see Vocabulary.

1. 21. ab . oriantur: begin at the remotest boundaries of Gaul, said with reference to the Roman Province. Observe the order in ab . . finibus. It is common to insert a limiting gen. between the adj. and its noun.

Page 3. 2. spectant in: face towards; see note on vergit, p. 1, l. 20, above.

3. 4. ad: near; see 144, 1, b.

3. 7. Chapter 2. Orgetorix: note the emphatic position of the word and the emphasis given to nobilissimus and ditissimus by the word order. — M. Messala consulibus: abl. abs. (130), giving the year when the conspiracy took place; see 140. Messala and Piso were consuls in 61 B.C. Observe that in such expressions the conj. is sometimes omitted in Latin between the names of the two consuls.

3. 8. regni: for royal power; 98. — cupiditate: 119. If inductus had been omitted, we should have an abl. of cause (122). — nobilitatis: of the nobility, i.e., of the nobles or leading men of the state of the Helvetii; see 100 and the Note.

3. 9. civitati: indirect object of persuasit, the direct object being the substantive clause ut . . exirent; see 106.

3. 10. exirent: plural because civitati is a collective noun, = civibus; see 85, Note. For the mood see 199, and for the tense, 171. — perfacile esse . potiri: saying that it was very easy to get possession. Esse is the infin. in ind. disc. (204), the verb of saying being implied in persuasit. Note the intensive force of per- in perfacile and the gender of the word, which modifies potiri as a pred. adj. (145). Potiri is the subject of esse; see 213. — cum praestarent: 186. — virtute: 129; cf. lingua, etc., p. 1, l. 4, above. — omnibus: 107, b.

3. 11. totius Galliae imperio: the rule over all Gaul; for the
case of Galliae cf. regni, l. 8, above; for that of imperio, see 121.

3. 12. Id ... persuasit: he persuaded them the more easily to do this; lit., he persuaded this (ut de finibus suis exirent) to them the more easily. hoc: abl. of cause (122), looking forward to the clause quod ... continentur; cf. propterea quod, p. 1, l. 7 and qua de causa quod, p. 1, l. 12. — eis: for the case cf. civitati, l. 9. — quod ... continentur: 187; for the meaning see p. 1, l. 18.

3. 13. una ex parte: on one side; cf. the meaning of a in a Sequanis, p. 1, l. 19, and see 142, 4, b. — flumine Rheno: for the grammatical construction sc. Helvetii continentur. It is no more necessary to the thought than the equivalent is in English.

3. 14. latissimo atque altissimo: the adjectives are in appositional relation to flumine Rheno, the river Rhine (which is) very broad and very deep; see 145. For the meaning of the superlatives see 150. qui: agrees with Rheno, instead of with flumine. — a Germanis: cf. ab Aquitanis, p. 1, l. 5.

3. 15. altera ex parte: on a second side; see note on una ex parte, l. 13. — altissimo: of great height. The adjective is used like latissimo and altissimo in l. 14.

3. 16. tertia: sc. ex parte. — lacu ... Rhodano: sc. Helvetii continentur, and see the note on flumine Rheno in l. 13.

3. 17. qui: see note on qui in l. 14.

3. 19. His rebus: i.e., the circumstances mentioned in the preceding sentence. For the case see 122. — ut ... vagarentur . . . possent: substantive clauses, subjects of fiebat; for the mood see 200. — minus . . . minus: these words have a negative force; cf. minime saepe, p. 1, l. 9.

3. 20. finitimas: for the case cf. omnibus, l. 10 and the note. — qua ex parte: and for this reason. Notice that the phrase has the same force as qua de causa, p. 1, l. 12, and not one corresponding to that of una ex parte in l. 13. For the trans. of the rel. see 158, a.

3. 21. homines: since they were men, etc., lit., being men. Homines is in apposition with the subject of afficiebantur; see 82. — bellandi: gen. of the gerund, governed by the adj. cupidi; see 220.
3. 22. Pro multitudine hominum: considering their large population; for the lit. meaning of pro see 142, 6, b. — gloria . . . fortitudinis: "their reputation in war and for bravery"; i.e., their reputation for bravery in war, by the figure called hendiadys; see 225. On the genitives see 95.

3. 23. se . . . habere: that they had; see 204.

3. 24. qui . . . patebant: and these (territories) in fact extended only (158, a). As is shown by the mood of patebant, this clause is not a part of the ind. disc. introduced by arbitrabantur, but is a comment made by Caesar; see 208.—in longitudinem: to correspond with our Eng. expression "in length" we should expect the abl. with in. We seem to have a combination of "extended 240 miles in length" and "extended to a length of 240 miles." See 143, 1, b. — milia . . . CCXL: 91.—passuum: with milia; 99. A thousand paces is about equivalent to a mile, and may be so translated. The Roman mile was shorter than ours, being about 4851 feet, instead of 5280.

3. 25. CLXXX: the actual distance is nearer eighty miles. Mistakes in writing numerals are frequently made in copying manuscripts, and it is not unlikely that Caesar wrote LXXX.

3. 26. Chapter 3. auctoritate: the prestige, given by his position and his wealth; see II. 9 fol.—permoti: strongly influenced. For the force of per- cf. perfacile, l. 10.

3. 27. constituerunt: sc. Helvetii. — ea quae . . . pertinent: such things as (in their opinion) were necessary; 210.—proficiscendum: gerund governed by ad; see 219.

3. 28. comparare: the infin. is the object of constituerunt; see 213 and cf. potiri in l. 11. — quam maximum: as great . . . as possible; 151.

Page 4. 1—2. ut . . . suppeteret: 175.

4. 4. Ad eas res conficiendas: gerundive construction; see 220. — biennium: a period of two years, equivalent to duos annos. sibi: 109; may be omitted in translating.—duxerunt: they considered.

4. 5. in tertium annum: for the third year (from that time). The acc. because the date is looked forward to.—profectionem: equivalent in meaning to proficiscendum (p. 3, l. 27). lege: by
law; see 119. — confirmant: historical pres.; see 162. The same is true of the following present tenses.

4. 6. sibi: upon himself; 106.

4. 7. persuadet: see note on confirmant, l. 5.

4. 8. Castico: indirect object of persuadet, the direct object being the substantive clause ut. occuparet below; cf., civitati persuasit ut exirent, p. 3, l. 9. — filio, Sequano: 82.

4. 9. in Sequanis: among the Sequani. — multis annos: 91. — obtinerat: had held. Do not be misled by the corresponding Eng. word.

4. 10. populi Romani: this phrase may be taken both with a senatu and with amicus, had been called by their senate a friend of the Roman people; note its position between senatu and amicus — amicus appellatus erat: a formal token of regard and confidence conferred by a vote of the Roman Senate; for the construction of amicus see 89 and Note on 90.

4. 11. occuparet: for the mood see 199. The historical present may be followed either by a primary or by a secondary tense; 171, fn. 1.

4. 12. habuerat: the mood shows that this is not a part of the ut-clause, but a comment of Caesar's; see note on patebant, p. 3, l. 24. — Dumnorigi: note the case of the word. On what does it depend? Read the sentence carefully through to the end in Latin before attempting to translate it, noting the forms of the words and their relation to one another.

4. 13. obtinebat: observe the tense, and for the meaning see note on obtinerat, l. 9.

4. 14. maxime . . . acceptus: the superlative, instead of "acceptissimus." Do not unite acceptus and erat into a tense-form; cf. divisa est, p. 1, l. 1. — plebi: governed by acceptus; 114. Note the position of the word. — idem: the same thing; i.e., regnum in sua civitate occupare.

4. 15. in matrimonium: in marriage; observe that in Latin the acc. is used with in, the idea being that of a transfer into the married state.

4. 16. Perfacile: note the force of per-; see p. 3, l. 10, above. — factu: the supine in -u; 224. It is not necessary to the thought
and need not be translated; cf. *perfacile esse* . . . *potiri*, p. 3, l. 10. — *conata perficere*: 213 and the preceding note. As a noun *perficere* is the subject of *esse*, and is modified by the adj. *perfacile*; as a verb it has an object *conata*. For the force of *per-* in *perficere* see *Vocabulary*. — *propterea quod*: see note on p. 1, l. 7.

4. 17. *ipse*: *i.e.*, Orgetorix. — *civitatis*: a good example of an objective genitive (governed by *imperium*); see 98. — *obtenturus esset*: *was going to occupy*. The future idea is expressed more clearly than it would have been by *obtineret*; see 171, ftn. 2. For the mood see 207.

4. 18. *non esse dubium*: 204. *Dubium* is a predicate adj. (145), modifying the substantive clause *quin . . . possent*. — *quin . . . possent*: for the mood see 202. — *totius Galliae*: 99. — *plurimum possent*: *were the most powerful people*; lit., *were able most*; see 91, Note.

4. 19. *se . . . suis . . . suo*: note the emphasis given by the repetition of the reflexives. Orgetorix promises to do most of the work himself.

4. 20. *conciliaturum*: sc. *esse*, which is frequently omitted by Caesar. — *confirmat*: do not translate by the corresponding Eng. word; see *Vocabulary*.

4. 21. *inter se . . . dant*: *they exchange*, or *they give one another*; see note on *inter se*, p. 1, l. 4. — *fidem et ius iurandum*: *a pledge confirmed by oath*; lit., *a pledge and an oath*. See note on *gloria belli*, etc., p. 3, l. 22.

4. 22. *regno occupato*: abl. abs., giving the attendant circumstances of *sese potiri posse sperant*; *having made themselves kings* (in their respective states): 130.

4. 23. *totius Galliae*: this phrase does double duty; it modifies *populos* and *imperio*, *through its three strongest peoples they hope to gain dominion over the whole of Gaul*. Cf. *a senatu populi Romani amicus appellatus erat*, in line 10, and note the position of *totius Galliae*. For the case of *totius Galliae* see 98. — *imperio*: 121.

4. 25. *Chapter 3*. *Ea res*: *i.e.*, the fact that Orgetorix was conspiring. The meaning of *res* differs greatly according to the context. Here it may be translated *plot*, or *conspiracy*. — *est*:
to be taken with nuntiata. — per indicium: we should say through informers or spies, instead of "through information," as in Latin.
— Moribus suis: according to their custom; 127.
4. 26. ex vinculis: we should say in chains. The Romans from a different point of view said "from chains." Cf. a Sequanis, p. 1, l. 19, and similar expressions, and see 142, 4, b.
4. 27. damnatum: in case he was condemned. The participle, which agrees with eum understood, is equivalent to a conditional clause; see 215, Note. eum is the object of sequi. — poenam sequi oportebat: sc. eum; the law required that the punishment be inflicted on him; more lit., it was necessary that the punishment follow him. Oportebat is an impersonal verb (160), having for its subject the infin. sequi, with an acc. subject poenam; 213. By a similar idiom we speak of punishment overtaking the guilty. — ut igni cremaretur: of being burned to death; lit., that he be burned to death; a substantive clause in apposition with poenam (200, Note). Igni need not be translated.
4. 29. Die . . . dictionis: on the day appointed for (the) pleading (of) his cause. Note the gender of dies; the word is usually m., but it is sometimes f. in the singular, especially in the sense of a stated or appointed time. Dictionis depends on die and causae on dictionis; both may be referred to 98.
4. 30. familia: this included not only his relatives, but also his (and their) slaves and their families. ad: modifies decem milia; see 144, 1, c.

Page 5. 1. clientes: dependents, retainers, like those of the feudal system in the Middle Ages.
5. 2. quorum: has for its antecedent both clientes and obaera-tos. habebat . . . condueit: note the difference in meaning of the two tenses, the former used of a continued state of things, the latter of a momentary action (164, 166). Do not translate habebat by the progressive form.— eodem: the adverb; see Vocabulary. Here it is equivalent to ad indicium.
5. 3. per eos: through their agency, with their help; 144, 3, b. — ne causam diceret: from pleading his cause; for the constr. see 175.
5. 4. Cum . . . conaretur . . . cogerent: cum-clauses of at-
tendant circumstances; the exact point of time is not important. See 185. — rem: act; see note on ea res, p. 4, l. 25.

5. 6. Orgetorix mortuus est: i.e., he was found dead. — neque abest suspicio: litotes (226). It may be translated, and there is good reason to suspect; cf. minime saepe, p. 1, l. 9.

5. 7. ut: in translating observe the mood of the verb; see 180, Note. — quin . . . consciverit: that he took his own life; note the emphasis of ipse sibi. More lit. the meaning is that he condemned himself to death; see the Vocab. under conscisco. The clause is equivalent to a substantive in apposition with suspicio; for the mood see 202.

5. 9. Chapter 5. nihilo minus: none the less; lit., the less by nothing. For the case of nihilo see 125.

5. 10. facere: is perhaps connected both with constituerat and with conantur; see p. 4, l. 23 and the note. For the construction of facere see 213. — ut . . . exeant: a substantive clause in apposition with id; cf. quin . . . consciverit in l. 7. Translate namely to, etc. The historical present conantur is here followed by a primary tense; cf. occuparet, p. 4, l. 11, and the note.

5. 11. Ubi . . . arbitrati sunt: as soon as they thought; a temporal clause, see 180. The subj. with cum would merely give the attendant circumstances of the action, with no emphasis on the idea of time; cf. cum . . . conarentur, in l. 4.

5. 12. numero ad duodecim: about twelve in number. For the meaning of ad see 144, 1, c, and for the case of numero, 129.

5. 14. praeter quod: = praeter id quod; cf. qui . . . appellatur, p. 1, l. 2, and the note. — secum: = cum se; cf. quibuscum, p. 1, l. 12, and the note. — portaturi erant: were going to take; cf. obtenturus esset, p. 4, l. 17. — ut . . essent: on account of the comparative we should expect quo; see 176. For the tense see note on ut . . exeant, l. 10.

5. 15. domum: 93. The verbal noun reditionis has the force of redeundi. — spe sublata: what does the abl. abs. denote? See 130 and translate accordingly. — ad . subeunda: the gerundive constr., see 220.

5. 16. trium mensium: see 102 and cf. our expression, three months’ supply. It has been calculated that this would be at
least 8000 tons, requiring for its transportation a line of carts reaching for more than twenty miles. — molita cibaria: meal; lit., ground provisions (grain).

5. 17. domo: for the constr. see 135.
5. 18. Rauracis, etc.: 107. — finitimis: 82.
5. 19. uti . . proficiscantur: a subst. clause, object of persuadent; 199. The position of uti shows that usi and oppidis exustis are parts of the subst. clause. Translate, they persuade . . . to adopt the same plan, to burn . . . and to set out.
5. 20. cum eis: we should expect secum (155), but since suis has just been used referring to the Rauraci, etc., eis is used to avoid confusion of meaning. Although Latin is better off than English in the matter of personal pronouns, absolute consistency and clearness are not always possible even in Latin.
5. 22. oppugnarant: = oppugnaverant. — receptos . . . adsciscunt: they received and joined to themselves as allies; lit., they join to themselves as allies, having been received to themselves. The direct object of adsciscunt is Boios, while socios is a pred. acc.
5. 24. Chapter 6. omnino: “in all;” i.e., there were only two routes. — quibus itineribus: by which. Caesar quite often repeats the antecedent in the relative clause, but it need not be translated into English.
5. 25. unum . . alterum: sc. iter erat.
5. 26. vix qua: an exception to the usual order (see note on qua de caus, p. 1, l. 12), by which vix is emphasized. The adv. qua takes the place of the rel. pron. quo with iter as antecedent. — singuli: in single file; lit., one by one, a pred. adj. (145).
5. 27. ducerentur: could be driven. The clause describes the road; see 179. “Could” is implied in the context.
5. 28. perpauci: note the force of per- and cf. perfacile, p. 3, I. 10. — prohibere: block the way; or eos (= Helvetios) may be supplied as the object. — possent: 178. — alterum: sc. iter fuit.

6. 2. propter quod: see note on p. 1, l. 7.
6. 3. nonnullis locis: note the omission of the prep.; see 132.
6. 5. Extremum: said from the Roman point of view, hence
the farthest to the north. — est: the position is unusual. Est would naturally stand before Genava.

6. 6. finibus: governed by proximum; see 114.
6. 7. Allobrogibus: governed by persuasuros (esse), 106, which depends on existimabant. With coacturos (esse) we must supply eos (= Allobroges), since cogo governs the acc. The subst. clause ut . . . paterentur serves as the object both of persuasuros and coacturos; for the mood see 199. Cogo more commonly takes an infin., when it is used alone. Note the use of the pronouns in the sentence: sese refers to the Helvetians, suos to the Allobroges, eos to the Helvetians. See 154 and 155 and the note on cum eis, p. 5, l. 20.

6. 8. bono animo: used predicatively; see 128, second example. — viderentur: for the mood see 207.
6. 9. existimabant: the subject is ii (= Helvetii). For the tense see 163. Do not translate by the progressive form.
6. 10. Omnibus . . . comparatis: determine what is denoted by the abl. abs., and translate accordingly; see 130.
6. 11. dicunt: named; 162. — diem, qua die: for the repetition of die cf. itineraria . . . itineribus, p. 5, l. 24, and the note. For the gender see note on die constituta, p. 4, l. 29, and for the case of die, 138.
6. 12. conveniunt: 177. — Is dies: note the gender. The word is now used in the general sense. — a. d. V. Kal. April.: for ante diem quintum Kalendas Aprilis, = March 28. Read 140. The whole phrase is used as an indeclinable noun, the pred. of erat. For the constr. of the individual words see 140, fifth paragraph. — L. Pisonis . . . consulibus: 58 B.C.; 140, beginning.
6. 14. Chapter 7. Caesari cum . . . nuntiatum esset: begin the trans. with cum and note that one or more words in a cum-clause often precede cum. For the mood see 185 and the note on cum . . . conaretur, p. 5, l. 4. The exact time is unimportant. We may translate, on Caesar's receiving news of this. — eos . . . conari: equivalent to a noun in apposition with id; cf. 213. This is a fuller form for cum nuntiatum esset eos conari.
6. 15. facere: object of conari; 213. — ab urbe: i.e., from Rome, or, more exactly, from the neighborhood of Rome. Caesar
had just finished his consulship, but had not yet started for his province. As proconsul, holding the imperium, or military command, he could not enter the city; see 9.

6. 16. quam maximis potest: a fuller form for the usual quam maximis; see 151 and the Note. Caesar is fond of these fuller forms; cf. propter quod (p. 1, l. 7), id nuntiatum esset, eos . . . conari (l. 14), the repetition of the antecedent of a relative (p. 5, l. 24 and p. 6, l. 11). — itineribus: see note on cotidianis proeliis, p. 1, l. 14.

6. 17. ad Genavam: to the neighborhood of Geneva; cf. ab urbe, l. 15 and see 94. How would "to Geneva" be expressed? See 93. — Provinciae: indir. object of imperat, the direct object being numerum; r07, a. — quam maximum potest: see note on l. 16.

6. 18. omnino . . . una: only one; cf. omnino, p. 5, l. 24.
6. 19. pontem . . . rescindi: that the bridge be destroyed; the infin. with its subject is the object of iubet (213 and 199, Note). — ad Genavam: near Geneva; r44, 1, b. Note the different meaning of ad Genavam in l. 17.

6. 21. Ubi . . . facti sunt: when (i.e., as soon as) the Helvetians were informed. See r80 and note on ubi . . . arbitrati sunt, p. 5, l. 11.

6. 22. legatos: not the object of mittunt, but in apposition with nobilissimos, which is used as a noun (152, a). Translate accordingly.

6. 23. principem: here an adj.
6. 24. obtinebant: do not translate by the progressive form. — qui dicerent: r77. — sibi esse in animo: that they intended; more lit., that they had in mind. For the case of sibi see r10. The subject of esse is facere.

6. 26. haberent: 207. — nullum: note the emphatic position; the emphasis may be given in English by absolutely no. — rogare: sc. se, that they begged. — voluntate: with his consent; r26.

6. 27. liceat: a subst. clause, object of rogare; 200. — facere: subject of liceat.

6. 28. memoria: in memory; for the case see r19, Note. There is also an idea of place; see note on cotidianis proeliis, p.
1, l. 14 and l32, a. — tenebat: the mood shows that this is not part of the ind. disc. Caesar gives the reason as the writer of the narrative, not as the Caesar about whom he is writing; see 208 and 14. — L. Cassium: this was in 107 B.C., when the Cimbri and Teutones attempted to invade Italy.

6. 29. occisum . . . pulsum. missum . . . concedendum: se. esse. — sub iugum missum: a humiliation sometimes inflicted on defeated armies. The "yoke" consisted of two spears set upright in the ground with a third bound across them at right angles, low enough down to compel each man to bow his head as he passed through.

6. 30. concedendum (esse): that permission ought not to be granted; impersonal (160).

Page 7. 1. homines: subject of temperaturos (esse); see 204. — inimico animo: 128. — data facultate: equivalent to a condition; see 130 and trans. accordingly.

7. 2. itineris faciendi: gerundive constr., equivalent in meaning to iter faciendi; 220.

7. 4. quos imperaverat: quos is the direct object of imperaverat, whom he had levied, not "whom he had ordered (to assemble)," which would require quibus; see note on provinciae, p. 6, l. 17. — convenient: should assemble; 183.

7. 5. diem: here means time.— ad deliberandum: 219. — si quid vellent, . . reverterentur: ind. disc., vellet being the verb of a subordinate clause, while reverterentur stands for an imperative. The direct form would be, si quid voletis, revertemini; see 205 and 207.

7. 6. ad Id. April.: for ad Idus Aprilis, on the Ides of April (April 13); see 140.


7. 10. milia . . . decem novem: 91.

7. 11. in altitudinem: see note on in longitudinem, p. 3, l. 24. — pedum sedecim: 102; cf. trium mensium, p. 5, l. 16.

7. 12. disponit: note the force of the prefix; see VOCAB.

7. 13. communit: strongly fortified, the force of the prefix being intensive.— quo facilius . . . possit: 176. — se . . invito: against his will; 130. — transire: object of conarentur.
7. **14. conarentur**: subjunctive representing Caesar's thought, which might be expressed thus, *si transire conabuntur, prohibeo*; see 210.

7. **15. ea dies**: note the gender and see note on *die ... dictionis*, p. 4, l. 29.

7. **16. negat se ... posse**: transfer the negative to the infin., and translate *said that he could not*. — **more et exemplo**: 127.

7. **17. ulli**: here used as a subst.; *cuquam* is more usual.—**per provinciam**: modifies *iter*; cf. *domum reditionis*, p. 5, l. 15.

7. **18. si ... contentur**: 209. The direct form might be either *si conabimini* or *si conemini* (less vivid; 190). — **prohibitum**: sc. *se* as subject and *esse*. For the meaning see note on *prohibere*, p. 5, l. 28.

7. **19. ea spe**: governed by *deiecti*; 115 and Note.—**navibus ... factis**: the abl. abs. denotes means; see 130 and trans. accordingly.

7. **20. alii**: *others*; another *alii* (*some*) is understood before *navibus*. Some attempted to cross by bridges of boats and by rafts, others by the fords. — **minima**: pred. adj.; 145.

7. **21. si ... possent**: 198.

7. **22. et ... et**: the first *et* connects *operis munitione* with *militum concursu et telis*; the second connects *concursu* and *telis*.

7. **23. conatu**: governed by *destiterunt*; 115.

7. **24. Chapter 9. Relinquabatur ... via**: *there remained only the route*.

7. **25. Sequanis invitis**: the abl. abs. is equivalent to a condition; trans. accordingly.—**angustias**: see the description of this route in Chap. 6 (p. 5, ll. 24 ff.).

7. **26. His**: what case? Read the clause through in Latin before attempting to translate it.—**cum ... possent**: 186; note the position of *cum*, and see note on p. 6, l. 14.—**sua sponte**: *by their own efforts*.

7. **27. eo deprecatore**: *through his intercession*; the abl. abs. denotes means; see 130.

7. **28. impetrarent**: here used absolutely, *they might obtain their request*. — **gratia et largitione**: to be taken with *plurimum poterat*; for the case see 122.
1. Helvetii: see 114 and Vocab. under amicus.

2. ex ea civitate: i.e., that of the Helvetians.—in matrimonium duxerat: had married. Duxit alone is sometimes used with the same meaning.


4. suo beneficio . . . obstrictas: under obligations to him for favors; lit., bound by his kindness.

5. rem: the matter; see note on ea res, p. 4, l. 25.

6. ut . . . patiantur: a subst. clause, the object of imperat; for the mood see 199.—obsides: object of dent.

7. uti . . . dent: a subst. clause, the object of perficit; for the mood see 200.—Sequani . . . Helvetii: sc. obsides dant, bound themselves by giving hostages.—ne . . . prohibeant . . . ut . . . transeant: not to prevent . to cross; 175.

8. Chapter 10. renuntiatur: word is brought back (through scouts); note the force of the prefix.—Helvetii esse in animo: cf. sibi esse in animo, p. 6, l. 24; for the case of Helvetii see 110.

9. facere: subject of esse, l. 10; 213.

10. provincia: i.e., the Roman Province of Gaul; 75.—si fieret: 207. In the direct form we might have si fiet or si fiat; cf. si contentur, p. 7, l. 18 and the note.

11. provinciae: governed by periculo (98). What preposition should be used in translating?—futurum: sc. esse; 204.—ut . . . haberet: to have, a subst. clause, subject of futurum. For the mood see 200.

12. populi Romani: to the Roman people; governed by inimicos (98), which is here a noun. Cf. Helvetii erat amicus, l. 1, and the note.—locis: 114.

13. finitimos: as neighbors; 145.—haberet: sc. as subject ea, it, referring to provincia.

14. munitioni: to determine the constr. of this word, read the sentence through in Latin. If necessary, see 107, b.

15. magnis itineribus: by forced marches (119). Since this is equivalent to “with great speed,” the idea of manner is also present. See note on cotidianis proeliis, p. 1, l. 14.
8. 20. hiemabant: 163; note that here the progressive form is better.
8. 25. Compluribus his proeliis pulsis: interlocked order. His is abl. abs. with pulsis, while compluribus and proeliis are to be taken together (119 and the Note). — ab Ocelo: note the preposition, and see 136.
8. 26. citerioris provinciae: i.e., Cisalpine Gaul. — extremum: farthest, from Rome: i.e., the most westerly. See note on extremum, p. 6, l. 5.
8. 27. ulterioris provinciae: we should say "in the farther province." The reference is to the Roman Province; see note on provincia, line 13, and the map of Gaul (opp. p. 1).
8. 29. Hi: i.e., the Segusiavi. The Allobroges were within the limits of the Province; see Map.
8. 30. primi: i.e., the first people, after crossing the frontier of the Province.

9. 3. cum . . . possent: 186.
9. 5. rogatum: to ask; 223. — se . . . meritos esse: ind. disc., introduced by the verb of saying implied in rogatum. Trans. saying that they were, etc. — omni tempore: always; 137. It may be translated "on every occasion," which shows the close relation of the abl. of point of time (138) with that of duration of time.
9. 6. ut . . . debuerint: for the mood see 178; for the tense, 172. Note the (regular) difference between the English and the Latin idiom as seen in the trans. of oppida expugnari non debuerint by "their towns ought not to have been laid waste."
9. 9. quo Aedui: as the Aeduans. With quo sc. tempore (138). Aedui is the subject of (Caesarem certiorem) faciunt understood, but it is not necessary to translate these words.
9. 11. sese . . . prohibere: that they could not keep. "Could" is implied in the context; lit., "did not keep" or "were not keeping"; cf. ducerentur, p. 5, l. 27. — depopulatis agris: the abl. abs. here denotes cause (130); trans. accordingly.
9. 13. habebant: 164. Do not trans. by the progressive form,

9. 14. agri solum: the (bare) soil of their country. Note the quantity of sólum and cf. sólum. What is the meaning of the latter?

9. 15. reliqui: with nihil: for the case see 99. We should say nothing was left. — exspectandum: (sc. esse) that he must not wait; lit., that it must not be waited by him (160).

9. 16. sibi: 112.—dum, omnibus fortunis .. consumptis .. pervenirent: equivalent to dum omnes fortunae consumerentur et pervenirent; for the mood, which would be the same in the dir. disc., see 183. Cf. dum convenirent, p. 7, l. 4.

9. 18. Chapter 12. Arar: there is a river (called) the Arar; 82.

9. 19. incredibili lenitate: transferring ita ut from the following clause, we may translate, of such a remarkably smooth current, that, etc.; for the case of lenitate see 128.

9. 20. in utram partem fluat: subject of possit; 198.

9. 21. lintribus iunctis: i.e., by a bridge made of boats; iunctis modifies only lintribus. — transibant: were (in the act of) crossing; 163.

9. 22. per: 144, 3, b.—factus est: 180.—tres partes: three quarters, or three divisions.

9. 23. flumen: duco by the addition of tra- (=trans-) becomes capable of governing two accusatives; see 90.

9. 24. reliquam esse: were left, describing the state of the quartam partem, while relictam esse would designate the act, "had been left." — de tertia vigilia: in the third watch; see 140, last paragraph.

9. 26. flumen: ierat, being an intransitive verb, takes but one accusative when compounded with trans; cf. flumen in line 23, and the note.

Page 10. 1. in proximas silvas: we should say "in the nearest woods." The acc. is used in Latin because of the idea of motion in (se) abdiderunt.

10. 3. Is pagus: apparently the Helvetians crossed the river in order by cantons.
NOTES—BOOK I

10. 4. divisa est: see note on est divisa, p. 1, l. 1.
10. 5. cum . . . exisset: having gone forth; see 185.—domo:

135.— memoria: 139.
10. 6. interfecerat: in 107 B.C.; see p. 6, l. 28.—sub iugum
miserat: see note on sub iugum missum, p. 6, l. 29.
10. 7. casu: 123. Cum is omitted with a few words even when they are not modified by adjectives.—consilio: 127.
10. 8. quae pars . . ea:= ea pars, quae, a common order in Latin, with which the student should make himself familiar.
10. 9. princeps: was the first to (148). Princeps is here an adjective; cf. p. 6, l. 23.
10. 10. publicas: i.e., to the Roman commonwealth; sc. iniurias.
10. 12. legatum: i.e., L. Piso had been one of the legati, who accompanied Cassius; see 19. —eodem proelio quo: for the translation of quo see note on quo Aedui, p. 9, l. 9. For the case see 138, and cf. bello Cassiano in line 20, below.
10. 14. Chapter 13. reliquas . . . posset: before translating the sentence, read it through in Latin and note the relations of the words to one another. Observe that the introductory conjunction is postponed, and see note on Caesari . . . esset, p. 6, l. 14.
10. 15. faciendum curat: causes . to be built, or has . built; 222.
10. 16. ita: i.e., by means of the bridge.—Helvetii . . mittunt: see the first part of the note on line 14.
10. 17. id: a thing, explained by the clause ut . . . transirent. What kind of a clause is this? See 200 and the Note.—diebus
XX: 139; cf. memoria in line 5.—aegerrime: (only) with the greatest difficulty; 150.
10. 18. ut . . . transirent: see note on id in line 17 and introduce the trans. by namely.—illum: i.e., Caesar. As illum is stronger than the following eum, which also refers to Caesar, and as English has but one pronoun for both, it may be translated by their opponent or by Caesar. Above all do not translate it by “that one.”
10. 20. bello Cassiano: in the war with Cassius (138); i.e.,
the war in which Cassius had been the leader of the Romans. In Latin an adjective is often used where in English we have a prepositional phrase.

10. 22. ita . . . eget: argued as follows; eget is equivalent in meaning to dixit, but with the additional idea of making a proposition. The speech which follows contains most of the principles and most of the difficulties of indirect discourse. If it is carefully studied, the student should have little trouble hereafter with Oratio Obliqua. The direct form would be about as follows: si paccem populus Romanus cum Helvetiis faciet, in eam partem ibunt atque ibi erunt Helvetii, ubi eos constitueris atque esse volueris; sin bello persequi perseverabis, reminiscere et veteris incommodi populi Romani et pristinae virtutis Helvetiorum. Quod improviso unum pagum adortus es, cum ei qui flumen transierant suis auxilium ferre non possent, noli ob eam rem aut tuae magnopere virtutis tribuere aut nos despicere.Nos ita a patribus maioribusque nostris didicimus, ut magis virtute coniendamus quam dolore aut insidiis nilanur. Quare noli committere ut is locus ubi constiterimus ex calamitate populi Romani et internecione exercitus nomen capiat aut memoriam prodat.—si . . . faceret: (saying) that if the Roman people would make; in the direct form, “shall make.” For the mood see 207; for the tense, 171.—pace: note the emphatic position.

10. 23. partem: part of the country, region.—ituros atque . . . futuros: sc. esse; would go and would remain, standing for the fut. ind. of the direct form (204).

10. 24. constituisset atque . . . voluisset: should decide and should wish; 207. The pluperf. tense is due to the Latin idiom which calls for the fut. perf. in the direct form. We should say “where you (Caesar) decide and wish.” The Romans, with a greater regard for the exact relations of time, since the deciding and the expression of the wish are completed at the time of the going and remaining, used the fut. perf., “shall have decided, etc.” The subject of constituisset and voluisset is not populus Romanus, but its representative, Caesar. Caesar is also the subject of perseveraret, etc., in what follows.

10. 25. sin . . . perseveraret: the construction of this clause
is exactly the same as that of si . . . faceret in line 22. The subject, however, is Caesar; in the direct form, "if you persist." — reminisceretur: he must bear in mind, or let him bear in mind; in dir. disc., "remember." The subjunctive here is in a principal clause; 205.

10. 28. Quod: because; the clause is in apposition with rem in ob eam rem (line 30). — unum pagum: see p. 9, ll. 22 ff. — adortus esset: in the direct form "you attacked," or with improviso, "you surprised"; 207.
10. 29. transissent: representing a pluperf. ind. of the direct form. — possent: this word would have been subjunctive in the dir. disc.; see 185.
10. 30. magnopere . . . tribueret: about equivalent in meaning to multum tribueret. Tribueret stands for a prohibition (noli tribuere); see 205 and cf. reminisceretur, l. 25.

Page 11. 1. ipsos: used as an indirect reflexive, since se would be ambiguous; see 157. despicseret: in the same construction as tribueret in l. 30. In the direct form we should have a second infin., depending on noli; see note on p. 10, l. 30. — Se . . . didicisse: that they had learned; 204. For "we have learned" of the direct form.

11. 2. ut . . . contenderent . . . niterentur: these would be subj. in the direct form, but in the present tense; 178.
11. 3. insidiis: governed by niterentur; see 119, Note. — ne committeret: see note on p. 10, l. 30.
11. 4. ubi constitissent: for the fut. perf. of the direct form. The reference is not to the place where the conference was held, but to the place where the Helvetians should make their final stand. For the mood see 207; for the tense, the note on constitissent, p. 10, l. 24.
11. 5. caperet . . . proderet: these verbs would be subj. in the direct form, but in the present tense; 200. — memoriam: sc. eius (calamitatis). The lit. meaning is perpetuate the memory of it, not "hand it down to memory."
11. 7. Chapter 14. His: sc. legatis. — eo: abl. of cause (122), looking forward to the quod-clause; cf. propterea quod and similar
expressions. — sibi ... dari: 204. What would the direct form be? — dubitationis: 99.

11. 8. quod . commemorassent . teneret: for quod . . . commemoravistis . . tenco; 207.

11. 9. memoria: see note on memoria, p. 6, l. 28. — eo gravius ferre, quo minus: sc. se, that he was the more indignant, the less, etc. For the case of eo and quo see 125.

11. 10. merito: 127. — accidissent: 207; for a perf. ind. of dir. disc. — qui si: for if they (i.e., the Roman people); 158, a. Qui is singular, but it is best translated by a plural, since its antecedent is the collective noun populus (Romanus).

11. 11. iniuriae: 104. — sibi: to be taken with conscius; lit., conscious to themselves. It may be omitted in translating. — fuisset: the mood and tense would have been the same in the dir. disc., since it was a condition contrary to fact (si fuisset). See 191 and 209. — fuisse: since this is the conclusion of a condition contrary to fact, we might have expected futurum fuisse (209), but non difficile fuit is nearly equivalent in meaning to potuit, and that verb is frequently found in the indic. in conclusions contrary to fact. — cavere: to be on their guard; the infin. is used absolutely, i.e., without an object (or indirect object). It is the subject of fuisse.

11. 12. eo deceptum: sc. esse and as subject eum (=populum Romanum), they; see note on qui si in line 10. Eo is explained by the following quod-clause; cf. eo in line 7 and the note. — commissum: for quicquam commissum esse. This is a principal clause in ind. disc. depending on intellexeret; that is, we have ind. disc. within the ind. disc. In the direct form of this speech the clause would be unchanged, but in the thought of the Roman people it was neque quicquam commissum.

11. 13. quare timeret: to be afraid about; more lit., of such a nature that (on account of it) they should fear. Quare is relative, with quicquam (understood) as its antecedent; instead of the relative pronoun quo the relative adv. is used. For the mood of timeret see 179. — timendum: sc. esse and sibi, that they ought to fear; more lit., that it ought to be feared by them. A principal clause in ind. disc. with putaret, of the same form in the speech
of Caesar, but representing *nobis non est timendum* in the thought of the Roman people; see note on *commissum* in line 12.

11. 14. *Quod si:* but if. — *contumeliae:* 105. The reference is to the defeat of Cassius. — *vellet:* a condition contrary to fact, having the same form in the dir. disc., except for the person (*si vellem*); 209. — *num:* expects what answer?

11. 15. *iniuriarum:* on what does this word depend? Read the sentence through. — *quod:* namely, (the fact) that. The clauses *quod temptassent* and *quod vexassent* are in apposition with *iniuriarum;* 196. In the direct form the verbs would be indic. — *eo invito:* against his will; lit., he being unwilling. In the direct form, *me invito.* We might have expected *ipso* as the indirect reflexive (157), but see note on p. 5, l. 20.

11. 17. *posse:* 206. — *Quod . . . gloriarentur:* that the fact that they boasted; a subst. clause, subject of *pertinere,* present indic. in the dir. disc.

11. 18. *sua victoria:* 122; referring to the defeat of Cassius.

11. 19. *se . . . intulisse:* ind. disc. within the ind. disc.; cf. line 12. Note that *iniurias tulisse* means “had inflicted injuries” (on the Roman people). — *eodem pertinere:* was consistent with the rest of their conduct; more lit., tended in the same direction. *Eodem* is an adv.

11. 20. *Consuesse:* = *consuevisse;* were accustomed. In the direct form *consuerunt* (*consueverunt*); see 166, second Note. — *quo . . . doleant:* 176. We should expect a secondary tense, as in what precedes, since the ind. disc. is introduced by a secondary tense; but the primary tenses are used from this point to the end of the speech. See 173.

11. 21. *ex commutatione rerum:* namely, from prosperity to adversity; see 143, 4, d. — *quos:* the antecedent is *his,* which should be translated before *quos* in connection with the verb on which it depends. What is this verb?

11. 23. *diuturniorem:* for the trans. of the comparative see 150.

11. 24. *Cum:* 192; note the following *tamen.* — *sibi:* to him (Caesar), an indirect reflexive, referring not to the subject of its own sentence, but to that of the verb of saying at the beginning;
see 155. — dentur: for dabuntur of the dir. disc. We might have expected a fut. perf., which is perhaps avoided because of its cumbersome form in the passive.

11. 25. pollicearunt: for pollicemini of dir. disc., though the subj. might have been used by attraction; 211. — facturos: sc. esse and eos as subject. — intellegat: subj. in the dir. disc.; see 175. — Aeduis: what case and dependent on what verb? Read the sentence through before trying to translate it.


11. 27. satisfaciant: for satisfacietis. Here too we might have expected the fut. perf.; see note on dentur, l. 24. Satisfacient is perhaps present because of the tense of dentur. — sese . . . facturum: for (ego) vobiscum pacem faciam.

11. 30. uti . . . consuerint: 178; for the tense see note on consueesse, line 20.


12. 4. ad numerum: to the number. The use of ad is here different from that in numero ad duodecim; see p. 5, l. 12, and the note. — quattuor milium: 100.

12. 6. coactum habebat: nearly = coegerat. The emphasis is rather on the situation than on the act, "which he had, gathered together," instead of "which he had gathered together," but the actual difference is slight. See 218 and cf. reliquam esse, p. 9, l. 24, and the note. — qui videant: 177. Pres. subj., rather than imperf., because praemittit is historical present; but see 171, ftm. 1.

12. 7. faciant: why subjunctive? What sort of a word is quae, and to what part of speech is the clause quas . . . faciant equivalent? — Qui: trans. by these or they; see 158. — cupidius: too eagerly; see 150. — novissimum agmen: the rear, the last part of the line of march; see 149.

12. 8. alieno loco: 132. Be careful of the meaning of alieno; see Vocab., if necessary.

12. 9. de nostris: of our men; lit., from our men; 142, 2, d.

12. 10. equitibus: 119.

12. 11. propulerant: note the mood; see 187.
12. novissimo agmine: 132; cf. alieno loco, line 8. — proelio: we should be likely to say in English, "provoke to battle"; see 119, Note.

12. continebat habebat: 164. Do not use the progressive form. — in praesentia: at present; see Vocab. under praesentia. — rapinis . . . populationibus: 115.

12. Ita: correlative with the following uti, in such a way that.

12. dies: 91.

12. nostrum primum: sc. agmen, our van; lit., the first part of our line; see 149. — amplius: more; used as a noun, subject of interesset.

12. quinis aut senis milibus: 118, Note. The distributives quinis and senis are used, instead of quinque and sex, because the meaning is five or six miles each day. — passuum: 99; mille is used as a subst. in the plural. — interesset: 178.

12. Chapter 16. Aeduos frumentum . . . flagitare: demanded the grain of the Aeduans; see 89. On flagitare see 214.

12. essent . . . polliciti: 210. Ind. disc. is implied in flagitare; he demanded the grain which (he said) had been promised, or which (as he reminded them) had been promised. — frigora: abstract nouns are not commonly used in the plural; frigora here means cold days, cold weather, or cold climate, as compared with the climate of Italy.

12. sub septentrionibus: in the north; lit., under the (constellation of the) Great Bear.

12. frumenta: note the plural, which is always used by Caesar of the grain growing in the fields, while he uses the singular of the threshed grain. It may be translated crops.

12. pabuli: note the position, the usual one with ne . . . quidem.

12. frumento: grain ready for grinding; see note on frumenta, l. 22. What case is the word and why? Read the sentence through carefully and see 121. — flumine . . . navibus: 119, Note. We should say "up the river in ships."

12. subvexerat: note the force of the prefix, and see the preceding note. — minus: here practically equivalent to non.
12. 26. averterant: see note on propulerant, line 11. The Helvetians had turned to the westward.

12. 27. Diem ex die ducere: sc. eum as the object of ducere, referring to Caesar; put him off day after day. On diem see 91; on the meaning of ex, 142, 4, c; on ducere, 214. — conferri dicere: with the first three infinitives sc. id (=frumentum) as subject, and see 204; with dicere sc. eos (=Aeduos) and see 214.


13. 2. metiri: each soldier received about half a bushel of grain twice a month; see 39. — oporteret: 207. — eorum: i.e., of the Aeduans.

13. 4. in his: among these. — magistratui: 107, b. Observe the difference in the English idiom; we speak of holding an office.

13. 5. vergobretum: a Celtic word, meaning dispenser of justice; see note on p. 1, l. 3. For the constr. see 88.

13. 6. annuus: 147. — in suos: over his people; 143, 1, c.

13. 8. posset: sc. as subject frumentum, and for the mood see 185. Cum is translated when, but it is the situation, not the time, which is important.

13. 9. sublevetur: subj. because it is the reason not of Caesar the writer, but of Caesar the general, about whom he is writing. See note on tenebat, p. 6, l. 28. Note the difference in the tense of sublevetur and of posset, and see 171, ft. 1. — magna ex parte: in a great measure; 142, 4, d.

13. 10. susceperit: 186.


13. 13. Chapter 17. quod: the object of tacuerat; 86, Note. The antecedent of quod is id (understood), referring to the following speech. — esse nonnullos: 204. How should the trans. be introduced?

13. 14. plurimum . . . plus: equivalent to adverbs; see 91, Note. — valeat . . . possint: these verbs would be subj. in the direct form; see 179.

13. 16. oratione: discourse, talk. — ne . . . conferant: from getting together; 175.
13. 17. debeant: sc. conferre.—præstare: ind. disc. within the ind. disc., implied in oratione; (declaring that) it was better. Praestare stands for an impersonal verb præstat of the dir. disc.—iam . . non: no longer.

13. 19. quam: than, with the comparative idea implied in præstare, = melius esse.—neque dubitare: sc. se, and that they had no doubt; lit., that they did not doubt. Do not always translate neque by "nor."

13. 20. superaverint: perf. subj., standing for the fut. perf. indic. of the direct form. See note on p. 10, l. 24.—una cum: along with, together with. Una is an adverb.

13. 21. Aeduis: illi.—sint erepturi: the verb of a subst. clause introduced by quin and object of dubitare. The periphrastic form is used to express the idea of future time more clearly, that they were going to take away, or that they intended to take away. For the mood see 202.—Ab eisdem: the nonnullis of line 13. Liscus here continues, after quoting the words of the nonnulli, beginning with præstare in line 17, where see note.

13. 22. gerantur: 207.

13. 23. Quin etiam: nay more.

13. 24. quod . . coactus enuntiarit: with regard to his being compelled to report; more lit., with regard to the fact that he had reported, being compelled; see 197.—necessariam rem: a vital matter.

13. 25. id . . fecerit: i.e., gave this information to Caesar. Fecerit would be subj. in dir. disc. Why?

13. 26. Chapter 18. Lisci Dumnorigem: in reading observe that there is a sense-pause between these two words, although there is no comma.

Page 14. 1. iactari: to be discussed; more lit., bandied (tossed) about.

14. 2. dimittit . . retinet: 227.—solo: sc. ea, referring to Liscus.—ea: about the things; ea is the object of quærít, but the English idiom is different.

14. 3. dicit: sc. is, referring to Liscus.

14. 5. esse vera: sc. ea, referring to the revelations of Liscus.

14. 6. ipsum esse Dumnorigem: that Dumnorix was the very
man; i.e., the one referred to by Liscus.—summa audacia: sc. hominem, a man of the greatest daring; 128.—magna . . . gratia: note the order of the words; for the case cf. summa audacia.

14. 7. rerum novarum: 104.

14. 8. Complures annos: 91.—portoria: the customs duties, exacted at the frontier on goods exported or imported, including also other tolls of various kinds.

14. 9. vectigalia: revenues; every kind of income not included in portoria.—parvo pretio: 120.—redempta habere: nearly equivalent to redemissae; see note on coactum habebat, p. 12, l. 6. The right of collecting the taxes and duties was sold to the highest bidder by the state. The contractor then frequently collected more than was just, in order to enrich himself. The Romans had the same system, and the publicani, or tax-collectors, the "publicans" mentioned in the Bible, were generally in ill-repute because of their extortion.

14. 10. illo licente: 130.—audeat: for the mood see 207; for the tense, 173.


14. 15. largiter posse: equivalent in meaning to plurimum posse. In using this expression, which is found nowhere else, it is probable that Caesar is indulging in a word-play on largiendum in line 12. The regular form of the adverb would be large.—huius potentiae causa: for the sake of (establishing and maintaining) this power. For the case of potentiae see 98.

14. 16. nobilissimo: do not trans. by the corresponding English word; see Vocabulary.

14. 17. collocasse: = collocavisse, given in marriage.—ex Helvetiae uxorem: equivalent to Helvetiam uxorem. She was a daughter of Orgetorix.—sororem ex matre: his half-sister on his mother's side; i.e., she had the same mother as Dumnorix, but not the same father.

14. 18. propinquas suas: note the gender and trans. accordingly.—nuptum: 223. The idea is "sent to be married," and hence we have the supine in -um and in with the acc. In line 16 the idea is "gave in marriage" with the dat. and in with the abl.
14. 20. **cupere**: was kindly disposed towards. In this sense *cupere*, as well as *favere*, governs a dat.; see 107, a.

14. 21. **odisse**: present in meaning, like *favere* and *cupere*; see 166, second Note. — **etiam**: also or besides, in addition to his feeling towards the Helvetians, which in itself would have led him to oppose the Romans. — **suo nomine**: on his own account; *odisse* . . . *nomine* may be translated, *he had besides a feeling of personal hatred*.

14. 22. **adventu**: 119. The word also has an idea of cause (122) and of time (138). See note on *memoria*, p. 6, l. 28.

14. 23. **gratiae atque honoris**: the genitives are equivalent to adjectives, *his former influential and honorable position*; 95. — **sit restitutus**: was restored; for the mood see 207. For the tense see note on *audeat* in line 10.

14. 24. **si quid accidat Romanis**: a mild expression for "if the Romans should be defeated and driven from the country"; 190 and 209. — **summam in spem** . . . **venire**: he felt very confident of gaining the sovereignty, stronger than *sperare se* . . . *regnum obtenturum esse*.

14. 25. **imperio**: 126. The expression is parallel to *si quid accidat Romanis*, the meaning being "if the Romans should become masters of Gaul."

14. 26. **de ea, quam habeat, gratia**: note the position of the relative clause, which is equivalent to an adj., *his present importance*. What would the mood be in dir. disc.?

14. 28. **quod . . . esset factum**: with regard to the unsuccessful cavalry skirmish that had taken place; lit., as to the fact that . . . had taken place. See 197 and 207.

14. 29. **diebus**: 125.

14. 30. **eius fugae**: of the flight on that occasion; lit., that flight (98). A more natural arrangement in English would be "that Dumnorix had begun the flight in the unsuccessful cavalry skirmish," etc.

14. 31. **auxilio Caesari**: to Caesar's help; 113 and Note.

14. 33. **perterritum**: panic-stricken; note the intensive force of *per-*. 

Page 15. 2. **Chapter 19. certissimae res**: undoubted facts.
— accederent: were added. The thought is expressed by the active in Latin (see Vocab.), but by the passive in English. quod traduxisset, etc.: subst. clauses in apposition with res; for the mood see 207 and note arbitrabantur in line 7. Translate quod by that.

15. 3. obsides . . dandos curasset: he had arranged for an exchange of hostages between them, i.e., the Sequani and the Helvetii. For the construction of dandos see 222.

15. 4. iniussu suo et civitatis: referring to Caesar and the Aeduans. Note that instead of the genitive sui the possessive adjective suo is used. For the case of iniussu see 126.

15. 5. inscientibus ipsis: actually without their knowledge, referring to Caesar and the Aeduans. For the trans. of ipsis see 156, a.

15. 6. magistratu Aeduorum: i.e., Liscus. — satis esse causae: satis is here a noun, subject of esse; for the case of causae see 99.

15. 7. animadverteret . . iuberet: 198. For the meaning of in eum animadvertere see Vocabulary.

15. 9. His omnibus rebus: 107, a; what is the meaning of repugnabat? quod . . cognoverat: that he knew; a subst. clause in apposition with unum. For the tense of cognoverat see 166, second Note; for the mood, 196.

15. 10. summum . . studium: the great devotion. Do not always translate a Latin superlative by an English one.

15. 12. ne . . offenderet: that he might offend; see 203 and the Note.

15. 13. priusquam . . conaretur: 184; the act implied in conaretur is merely looked forward to.

15. 14. cotidianis: here means usual; cf. our expression, "everyday clothes."

15. 16. principem: here means merely a prominent man. — cui: 107, a; fidem habebat is equivalent to a verb meaning trust.

15. 17. omnium rerum: in all respects; lit., in all matters (98).

15. 18. ipso: refers to Diviciacus.

15. 19. sint dicta . . dixerit: see 198. What kind of a pronoun is quae?

15. 20. apud se: in his presence, referring to Caesar; 157.
15. 21. ut... statuat... iubeat: 199. — animi: 98. — ipse: here refers to Caesar. — causa cognita: 130; be careful in translating.

15. 24. Chapter 20. ne quid... statueret: not to pass too severe a sentence: A subst. clause, object of obscurare; 199.

15. 25. scire se: saying that he knew; 204. The verb of saying is implied in obscurare. — illa esse vera: ind. disc. within the ind. disc.; illa refers to the statements made by Liscus and the others. — nec quemandum: and that no one. The usual form of expression in Latin, instead of et neminem. Do not trans. nec by “nor”; see note on p. 13, l. 19. — ex eo: from that fact, i.e., illa esse vera.

15. 26. ipse: Diviciacus.

15. 27. gratia: 122; note that gratia in the first part of the sentence is parallel with propter adventiam in the second. — plurimum... minimum: 91, Note. — ille: Dumnorix.

15. 28. posset: the verb would be subj. in the dir. disc.; see 185. — per se: an indirect reflexive, referring to Diviciacus; 155.

Page 16. r. opibus ac nervis: 121. — gratiam: his (Diviciacus’) influence. Suam after perniciem modifies both gratiam and perniciem. It is an indirect reflexive; see note on per se, p. 15, l. 28.

16. 2. uteretur: note the tense. — Sese: emphatic both in its form and in its position in the sentence.

16. 3. amore fraterno: fraternal affection; fraterno is equivalent to a subjective genitive fratis. — existimatione vulgi: public opinion; i.e., what the people would think. What kind of a genitive?

16. 4. a. Caesare: 116; accidisset has practically the force of a passive, if too severe a sentence should be passed upon him by Caesar; cf. accederent, p. 15, l. 2. — accidisset: representing a fut. perf. indic. of the dir. disc. Si quid gravius accidisset is a mild form of expression for “if he should be condemned to death”; cf. si quid accidat Romanis, p. 14, l. 24.

16. 5. eum locum amicitiae apud eum: such a place in his (Caesar’s) friendship; lit., such a place of friendship with him. This is not an uncommon meaning for the pronoun is. For the
case of amicitiae, see 95.—neminem. non . . . factum: everybody would believe that it was done; 226. What is the lit. trans?

16. 6. sua voluntate: 127.

16. 7. futurum uti . . . averterentur: he would lose the good-will of all the Gauls; lit., it would come to pass that the good-will of all Gaul would be alienated from him. This is a common form of expression in place of the fut. pass. infin. (aversum iri). For the mood of averterentur, which would be the same in the dir. disc., see 200.

16. 8. Haec cum: notice the order. Observe that cum, although an abl. immediately follows, is not the preposition, but the conjunction, as is clear from the mood of peteret (185). Always read a sentence through in Latin before deciding on the meaning of the words that make it up. — pluribus verbis: in many words; lit., in more words (than usual). For the case see 123.

16. 10. faciat: to make; for the mood see 199. Here we have the simple subjunctive without ut, a less common form of this kind of subst. clause. — tanti: so great; lit., of so great value. See 103.—eius apud se: eius refers to Diviciacus, se to Caesar. Be careful in translating apud. — ostendit: he assures him.

16. 11. rei publicae iniuriam . . . condonet: a difficult sentence to translate. Somewhat literally it means, he sacrifices (gives up) the wrong done to the state and his own indignation to his (Diviciacus') desire and entreaties, voluntati and precibus being the indirect objects of condonet. More freely, he pardons the wrong done to the state and lays aside his own feeling of resentment out of regard for his wish and entreaties.

16. 13. adhibet: has his brother present; 227. — reprehendat. . . intellegat, . . . queratur: 198.

16. 15. ut . . . vitet: 199.

16. 16. praeterita . . . Diviciaco . . . condonare: see note on line 11. Praeterita means the past; see 152, a.—Dumnorigi: we should say "over Dumnorix." For the case see 109.

16. 17. agat . . . loquatur: 227; for the mood, 198.

NOTES—BOOK I

16. 20. *sub monte*: be careful in translating *sub*; see 143, 2, c. — *milia* . . . *octo*: 91.

16. 21. *qualis* . . . *misit*: read the sentence through to the end before attempting to translate it. For the mood of *cognoscere* see 177; for that of *esse*, 198. — *qualis in circuitu ascensus*: *i.e.*, what kind of climbing it would be on the side away from the enemy. Caesar planned to ascend the hill without the knowledge of the enemy and so to command their camp. *In circuitu* may be translated, *in case a detour were made.*


16. 23. *De tertia vigilia*: see 140 (last paragraph) and 142, 3, c. — *T. Labienum*: Caesar's ablest and most trusted lieutenant. To determine the construction, read the sentence through.

16. 24. *legatum pro praetore*: *a lieutenant with the powers* (on this occasion) of a commander-in-chief. Note the meaning of *praetor* here, which is not that of the Roman official. — *eis ducibus*: *ducibus* is in apposition with *eis*, which is governed by *cum*; trans. accordingly. The reference is to the men who had been sent to examine the situation (*qui cognoscerent*, line 22).

16. 25. *qui*: the antecedent is *eis*, not *ducibus*; see the preceding note. — *cognoverant*: see 168, Note.

16. 26. *quid sui consili sit*: *what his plan is*; *sui consili* is a predicate gen. of possession, lit., *what belongs to his plan*. See 96 and 103, Note.


16. 30. *L. Sullae*: the well-known leader of the aristocracy and opponent of Marius. He was a very able and experienced general. On account of the blunder which Considius made, Caesar feels called upon to justify his choice of him as one of the scouts. — *in M. Crassi*: sc. *exercitu*. Crassus had defeated the rebels under Spartacus, B.C. 73-71. See also 8.

Page 17. 1. Chapter 22. *Prima luce*: at this season of the year (midsummer) this would be about four o'clock in the morning. — *summus mons*: 149.

17. 2. *ipse . . . abesset*: note the asyndeton; 227.
17. 3. passibus: 117. What other constr. might have been used?  See 118. — ut: 180, Note.
17. 5. quo admissīo: denotes manner; see 130. — accurrit, dicit: 227; the asyndeton gives liveliness to the narration.
17. 6. voluerit: 207; note the tense.
17. 7. insignibus: referring to standards and other devices; see 29 and 45 ff.
17. 8. subducit . . . instruit: see note on accurrit, dicit in line 5.
17. 10. ut . . . praeceptum a Caesare: in accordance with Caesar’s order. See 160 and 180, Note. — ne proelium committeret: 199.
17. 12. visae essent: should be seen, representing the fut. perf. indic. (207). Labienus was not to join battle, unless he first saw Caesar’s forces in the vicinity of the enemy’s camp. Learn to distinguish such conditions from conditions contrary to fact, which have the same mood and tense in ind. disc.  Note the translation. How would a condition contrary to fact be translated? — undique: on all sides; i.e., one side was covered by Caesar’s forces, the other by those of Labienus, so that the enemy would be practically surrounded.
17. 13. exspectabat . . . abstinebat: imperfects of continued action; see 163 and translate accordingly.
17. 14. Multo denique die: it was not until late in the day that, etc. Note the emphatic position of the phrase and the force of denique. For the case see 138.
17. 15. et montem: be careful in translating et; look ahead.
17. 16. timore perterritum: thoroughly frightened, panic-stricken; note the intensive force of per-. It is not necessary to trans. timore into English. — quod non vidisset pro viso: Considius imagined that he saw the enemy on the top of the mountain, but he mistook the soldiers of Labienus for Gauls. Viso is the neuter of the perf. pass. part., used as a noun. On pro see 142, 6, b.
17. 17. sibi: the indirect reflexive (155). To whom does it refer? — quo consuerat intervallo: at the usual interval. This was five or six miles; see p. 12, lines 16 ff. — The full form of the expression would be eo intervallo quo sequi consuerat. (=consuerat).
Note the position of consuerat. For the case of intervallo see 126; for the tense of consuerat, 166, second Note.

17. 20. Chapter 23. Postridie eius diei: it is not necessary to trans. eius diei. It would correspond to “the day after that day” in English. For the construction of eius diei see 95. — biduum: a space of two days, used, as usual, instead of duo dies (91).

17. 21. cum . . . oporteret: (before the time) when (as he realized) it would be necessary. Oporteret is subj. in implied ind. disc., representing Caesar's thought (opertebit); 210.

17. 22. Bibracte: the abl. form in -e is regular in i-stems. The preposition ab (a) is regularly used with names of towns in expressions of distance.

17. 23. milibus passuum XVIII: for the constr. see note on passibus in line 3. rei frumentariae: governed by prospiciendum (esse) 107, b, which is impersonal; lit., that it ought to be looked out (by him) for the supply of grain.

17. 25. Bibracte: 93.

17. 26. fugitivos: used as a noun, runaways, runaway slaves; see 152, a.

17. 27. timore perterritos: see note on line 16.

17. 28. discedere: note the tense.—existimarent . . . commisisissent . . . confiderent: subj. because the reasons are given as existing in the minds of the Helvetians (187). As is sometimes the case, the verbs of thinking themselves are in the subjunctive.—eo: 122; explained by the following quod-clause.

Page 18. 1. superioribus locis occupatis: the abl. abs. is equivalent to an adversative clause introduced by cum or some other word meaning although; 130.

18. 4. a novissimo agmine: a with the abl. here denotes the place where; 142, 1, b.

18. 6. animadvertit: 180.

18. 7. subducit: note the force of sub-; see 143, 2, a.—sustineret: 177.

18. 8. in colle medio: halfway up the hill. What is the lit. trans.? See 149.

18. 9. tripli centum, aciem: 41.—legionum quattuor: see 100 and the Note.
18. 10. in summo iugo: 149.
18. 11. auxilia: see 34.
18. 16. confertissima acie: in close order; 123. For the trans. of the superlative see note on p. 15, l. 10.
18. 17. phalange facta: explanatory of confertissima acie; with successerunt it may be translated, formed a phalanx and, etc. In the Gallic phalanx the men stood closely together with the overlapping shields of the front rank forming a vertical wall, while those of the rest were held (also overlapping) overhead. Unless it bore down its opponents by its mass and momentum, it was an awkward formation, as the result on this occasion shows.
18. 20. aequato . periculo: the abl. abs. denotes means.
18. 21. e loco superiore: (charging) from the higher ground; modifying perfregurunt. The enemy were coming up the hill to attack them; see l. 17 and 40.
18. 22. pilis missis: after first hurling their javelins. See 40 and on the pilum, 32.
18. 23. gladiis destrictis: do not translate the abl. abs. literally.—eos: i.e., the men who made up the phalanx.
18. 24. Gallis: here used of the Helvetians. For the case see 113, and the Note, and use the second example as a model in translating.—magnob . . . impedimento: used predicatively with erat; for the case see 113 and Note.—ad pugnam: in fighting; lit., for battle.
18. 25. quod . . . poterant: a subst. clause, subject of erat. Quod may be translated that; for the mood of poterant see 196.—pluribus . . . colligatis: abl. abs.; with the following cum-clause it may be translated, when several of their shields had been pierced . and the iron point had bent. Their shields overlapped; see note on phalange facta, line 17.
19. 1. evellere: sc. id (= ferrum). — sinistra impedita: denotes cause. In English we should use the plural. The shield was carried in the left hand. With sinistra sc. manu, and see 152, b. — satis commode: to sufficient advantage. Both words are adverbs.

19. 2. multi ut: so that many of them. Multi is emphasized by the order; cf. vix qua, p. 5, l. 26. — iactato: jerked about, to free their shields. Iacto is an intensive verb; see Vocabulary.

19. 3. praeoptarent: 178. — manu: 115. — nudo corpore: with their bodies unprotected; 126. On the number see note on sinistra impedita, line 1.

19. 5. et . . . et: be careful in translating these words. Read the sentence through. — pedem referre: do not trans. literally. — quod passuum: because there was a mountain only about a mile away. Instead of the usual aberat, “was distant,” suberat, “was near at hand,” is used. The force of suberat may be given in the translation by only.

19. 6. eo: the adverb, = ad montem.

19. 7. Capto . . . succedentibus: note the tenses, and translate accordingly. Decide too what the force of the abl. abs. is, and do not translate it literally.

19. 8. hominum milibus: for the former see 99; for the latter, 119.

Page 20. 1. novissimis praesidio: see 113 and note on magno impedimento, p. 18, l. 24.

20. 2. ex itinere: on the way (up the hill); lit., from the march, i.e., turning aside from their course up the hill. — a latere aperto: on the open flank (142, 1, b), i.e., the one on the side opposite to the hill which the Romans had previously occupied. — circumvenire: sc. coeperunt, from coeperunt at the end of the sentence.

20. 5. conversa signa . . . intulerunt: wheeled about and advanced in two divisions; lit., bore their turned about standards, a combination of signa inferre and signa convertere (see 50). As a matter of fact it was only the tertia acies which wheeled about, since the prima and secunda acies were already facing the enemy; see the Plan, p. 19.

20. 6. prima . . . acies: what must be supplied for the
See note on p. 1, lines 1–3. — victis ac summotis: used as nouns (152, a), those who had been beaten and put to flight, in the attack on the Roman position on the hillside; for the case see 107, a.

20. 7. tertia: what is to be supplied? See note on prima acies, line 6. — resisteret: 175. — venientes: used as a noun, those who were coming (to attack them), i.e., the Boii and Tulingi. — sustineret: 175. Do not trans. by the corresponding English word.

20. 8. Chapter 26. a n c i p i t i p r o e l i o : in a twofold battle; lit., two-headed. The Romans were contending with hostile forces on both sides. — pugnatum est: 160; with a n c i p i t i p r o e l i o it may be translated, a twofold battle was fought.

20. 9. Diutius c u m : note the order, which is a very common one.

20. 10. possent: 185. — a l t e r i : one division (of the Helvetians), i.e., those who had begun to retreat, but renewed the battle when the Boii and Tulingi made their attack.

20. 11. a l t e r i : the other division, i.e., the Boii and Tulingi. — s e c o n t u l e r u n t : this phrase and s e r e c e p e r u n t , used of the Helvetians instead of f u g e r u n t , show that the enemy were merely repulsed, not routed. Caesar explains his choice of words in the following clause with n a m .

20. 12. h o c t o t o p r o e l i o : 137. — c u m . p u g n a t u m s i t : 192. What suggests the meaning of c u m here? For the tense see 172. — a b h o r a s e p t i m a : about noon; see 140.

20. 13. a v e r s u m h o s t e m : a single one of the enemy with his back turned (in flight); note the number. — A d m u l t a m n o c t e m : until late at night; c f . m u l t o d i e , p . 17, l . 14. For the meaning of a d see 144, 1, d.

20. 14. a d : a t , near; 144, 1, b.

20. 15. p r o v a l l o : as a rampart, i.e., in place of a rampart; 142, 6, b. — o b i e c e r a n t c o n i c i e b a n t : note the tenses; in c o n i c i e b a n t the prefix gives the idea of forcible action. — e l o c o s u p e r i o r e : from (this) elevated position, i.e., from the top of the wall of wagons.

20. 17. i n t e r c a r r o s r o t a s q u e : amid the carts and the wheels; i.e., they sheltered themselves behind the carts and thrust their
weapons upward at the Romans as they mounted the rampart.
— subiciebant . . vulnerabant: note the tenses; 163.
 20. 20. unus e filiis: 142, 4, d (last part).
 20. 21. captus est: the verb agrees with the nearer of the two subjects; see 85, Note.
 20. 22. ea tota nocte continenter: 137, and the Note; observe continenter.
 20. 23. nullam partem: 91. The reference is undoubtedly only to the first day of their retreat. It is hardly to be supposed that they marched day and night for four days. The Roman victory was a hard-earned one; see note on se contulerunt, l. 11.
 20. 24. die quarto: 138.—cum: 186. What suggests the meaning of cum here?
 20. 27. Lingonas: the word has the ending of the Greek acc. plur.—ne . . iuvarent: not to help them; 199. Litteras misit is equivalent to a verb meaning command.
 20. 28. qui si iuvissent: for if they should help them (or did help them). For the trans. of qui see 158, a; for the mood and tense of iuvissent see note on p. 10, l. 24.—se eodem loco . . habiturum: = se eodem loco eos habiturum esse, quo Helvetios haberet, that is, he would regard them as enemies of the Romans. Eodem loco quo may be translated, in'the same light as; cf. p. 9, l. 9.
 20. 29. triduo intermisso: after an interval of three days. What is the lit. trans.?

 21. 2. Qui cum: 158.—eum: the intransitive verb venio becomes transitive when compounded with con-; see 86, Note, and 107, Note.
 21. 4. eos: i.e., the Helvetians, while se refers to the legati; observe quo tum essent. — quo: where; the abl. of the rel. pronoun, not the adverb.
 21. 5. essent: 211.
 21. 6. Eo: what part of speech? — postquam . . pervenit:
21. 7. *qui...* *perfugissent*: who (as he alleged) had taken refuge with them; *210.* What is the antecedent of *qui*?

21. 8. *Dum...* *conferuntur*: while these were being hunted up and got together. For the mood and tense see *181.* The clause modifies *nocte intermissa.* — *ea*: these; neut. plur., referring to *obsides, arma, servos,* a common agreement with words of different genders. — *Nocte intermissa*: a night having passed. What is the lit. trans.?

21. 10. *perterriti*: agrees with *milia hominum* in sense, rather than grammatically. On the expression *timore perterriti* see p. 17, l. 16.


21. 16. *Chapter 28.* Quod *ubi*: be careful in translating these words. — *resciit*: 180. — *quorum per fines...* his: for his *quorum per fines;* his is the antecedent of *quorum.*

21. 17. *uti...* *reducerent*: 199. — *sibi*: in his sight; dat. of the person judging, a variety of the dat. of reference (109).

21. 18. *vellent*: subj. in ind. disc., implied in *imperavit* (210). Caesar’s words might have been, *conquirite et reducite, si mihi purgati esse multis.* — *reductos*: those (who were) brought back. The participle is used as a subst.; cf. 152, a. *Eos* should not be supplied. — *in hostium numero habuit*: that is, he put them to death. With the mild form of expression cf. *si quid accidat Romanis,* p. 14, l. 24.


21. 22. *domi*: 133. — *quo...* *tolerarent*: with which to satisfy their hunger; 179.

21. 24. *facerent*: here has the force of *furnish;* for the mood see 199. — *quos*: has for its antecedent *oppida vicosque* and agrees with the nearer of the two.

21. 26. *ea ratione*: leading up to the following *quod-clause* (122). For similar expressions see p. 1, l. 7, and p. 6, l. 16.
Page 22.

22. 2. Boios: what is the construction of this word? Read the sentence through carefully.

22. 3. Aeduis: governed by concessit (106), he allowed the Aeduvans at their request (petentibus). — egregia virtute: sc. esse and see 128 (second example).

22. 6. atque: in connection with parem means as; see Vocabulary.

22. 7. Chapter 29. tabulae: lists, written on tablets. These were thin boards, perhaps covered with wax, like the Roman writing-tablets; or the letters may have been painted on the boards.

22. 8. litteris Graecis: the Gauls became acquainted with these through the Greek colony at Massilia (Marseilles). The language was of course Celtic (see note on p. 1, l. 3), although the characters in which it was written were Greek. The Greek alphabet was used by various peoples, and the Roman alphabet itself was derived from the Greek. — quibus in tabulis: for the repetition of the antecedent see note on p. 5, l. 24.

22. 9. nominatim: by items, referring to those afterwards mentioned. Nominatim ratio may be translated together as an itemized statement. — qui numerus . . . exisset: a subst. clause in apposition with ratio; 198.

22. 10. qui . . . possent: 179. — separati pueri, etc.: a separate list of the boys, etc. The syntax of pueri . . . senesque is loose, a kind of independent nominative; or we may supply inscripti erant, had been listed.

22. 12. rerum: items. See note on ea res, p. 4, l. 25. — capitum: somewhat as we speak of "head" of cattle. The word may be omitted in the translation, or it may be rendered by souls.

22. 13. milia: this word is of course to be supplied with the following numbers.

22. 15. qui: sc. ii as antecedent and fuerunt as the pred. of ii. For the mood of possent cf. qui possent in line 10. — ad: 144, 1, c.

22. 16. fuerunt: agrees in number with the pred. noun milia, instead of with the subject summa.

22. i8. milium: depends on numerus (100). The clause may be translated, the number was found to be 110,000. That is, 258,000 had perished.

II. THE CAMPAIGN AGAINST ARIOVISTUS

22. 20. Chapter 30. Helvetiorum: we should say "with the Helvetians"; for the case see 98. — totius Galliae: we should say "from almost the whole of Gaul"; for the case see 97. The term Gallia is here used in the narrower sense, referring to the Celtae; see note on Gallia omnis, p. 1, l, 1.


22. 22. intelligere sese: 204; the verb of saying is implied in gratulatum, but may well be expressed in translating.

22. 23. Helvetiorum iniuriis populi Romani: see 98, Note.

22. 24. repetisset = repetivisset. See 207 and cf. 193. — ex usu: to the advantage of; more lit., in accordance with the advantage, 142, 4, d.


22. 26. eo consilio: with this design, explained by the following uti-clauses; 126. Cf. ea ratione . quod, p. 21, l. 26. — florentissimis rebus: at the height of their power; 130.

22. 27. uti . inferrent . potirentur: subst. clauses in apposition with eo consilio; 199. — Galliae: 107, a. — imperio: 121.


23. 2. opportunissimum ac fructuosissimum: 145.

23. 3. iudicassent: = iudicavissent; 211, representing a fut. perf. ind. of dir. disc. — stipendiarias: 145.

23. 4. haberent: in the same construction as inferrent and potirentur; see note on p. 22, l. 27.

23. 5. sibi: depends on what? Read the sentence through carefully.

23. 6. certam: do not trans. by the corresponding English word. — voluntate: 126.

23. 7. sese habere: saying that they had; the verb of saying
is implied in petierunt; 204. — ex communi consensu: in accordance with the common consent; cf. ex usu, p. 22, l. 24.


23. 9. iure iurando, inter se sanxerunt: bound one another by an oath; what is the lit. trans.? — enuntiaret: 175.

23. 10. communi consilio: 127; cf. ex communi consensu in line 7. — mandatum esset: see note on iudicassent in line 3.

23. 11. Chapter 31. qui ante fuerant: sc. apud eum. The reference is to those who had formerly come to Caesar.


23. 15. id: object of contendere and laborare, with a difference of idiom from English (86, Note). Id is explained by the following clause ne. enuntiaretur.

23. 16. dixissent: were going to say, standing for the fut. perf. ind. of the dir. disc.; for the mood see 211. — enuntiarentur: 199.


23. 18. venturos: sc. esse.

23. 19. Galliae: here again the reference is to the country of the Celtae, not to omnis Gallia, p. 1, l. 1.

23. 20. factiones . . . duas: a national weakness; see 70. — harum . . . Avernos: note the cases and the relations of the words to one another before translating.

23. 21. tantopere: we should say greatly (magnopere); the meaning perhaps is, so greatly as was a matter of common knowledge.

23. 22. contenderent: the struggle for supremacy was still going on, when the Averni and Sequani appealed to the Germans for assistance; hence the imperfect. We should be likely to use the past perfect (pluperfect) in English. — factum esse: it came about.

23. 23. mercede: 120.


23. 25. posteaquam: equivalent in meaning to postquam. It would be followed by the indic. in dir. disc.; 180.

23. 26. homines feri ac barbari: in apposition with the sub-
ject of adamassent (82). Translate accordingly. — traductos: sc. esse.

23. 27. plures: more of them; i.e., of the Germans. — esse: sc. eos = Germanos. — ad. numerum: to the number. Distinguish between ad numerum followed by a genitive and ad, about, used adverbiahy and qualifying a numeral. — milium: 100.

23. 29.clientes: here means dependents, i.e., dependent nations. — semel atque iterum: more than once, i.e., several times.

23. 30. armis: in arms, in warfare; 119 and Note. — pulsos: as the result of defeat; more lit., when defeated; 215, Note.

Page 24. 1. omnem nobilitatem, etc.: undoubtedly an exaggeration.

24. 3. fractos: sc. eos, which is the antecedent of qui and the subject of caectos esse. — virtute ... hospitio ... amicitia: 122.

24. 4. ante: here an adverb = anteā.

24. 5. obsides: be careful in translating this word; if necessary, see 84.

24. 7. repetituros: this and the following infinitives are in ind. disc. within the ind. disc. implied in iure iurando ... obstringere.

24. 8. recusaturos quo minus ... essent: refuse to be; see 201. — illorum: i.e., Sequanorum.

24. 9. Unum se esse: that he (Diviciacus) was the only one.

24. 10. potuerit: primary sequence, influenced by the present idea in esse; in the direct form, "I am the only one who could not, etc." For the mood see 179; for the tense, 172. — ut iuraret: to take the oath, referred to in line 6. For the mood see 200; for the tense, which is regular with a perf. subj.; 172.


24. 15. peius: a worse fate; lit., a worse thing. The adj. is used as a subst.; see 152, a. — victoribus: victorious, or in spite of their victory, a force given by the context. The noun has the force of an adj.; see 152, Note.

24. 18. qui esset optimus: this same district is still noted for its beauty and its fertility.

24. 19. de altera parte tertia: from a second (or another) third
part of their territory. — iuberet: note the tense and trans. accordingly.

24. 20. mensibus: 125.
24. 22. locus ac sedes: a place of abode; hendiadys, see 225. — pararentur: note the tense; cf. note on iuberet, line 19. — Futurum esse: it would come to pass; cf. factum esse uti, p. 23, l. 22. — paucis annis: 139.
24. 25. Gallicum: sc. agrum. The meaning of course is that the Gallic territory was superior. We should therefore translate, in accordance with the English idiom, the land of the Germans was not to be compared with that of Gaul.
24. 26. hanc: i.e., of the Gauls, while illa is that of the Germans. Here too we should reverse the Latin order of comparison in the English translation; cf. the preceding note on Gallicum.
24. 28. ut semel: when once, i.e., as soon as; cf. ut primum.
24. 29. vicerit: for variety the primary sequence is used from now on, instead of the secondary; 173. — quod proelium: the antecedent is repeated, as often, in the relative clause; cf. quibus in tabulis, p. 22, l. 8. It may be translated, a battle which. — Admagetobrigae: locative; 133.
24. 30. nobilissimi cuiusque: of all the most prominent men, the regular meaning of quisque with a superlative; see 159. Observe the meaning of nobilissimi; the corresponding English word should not be used. See Vocab., and note the derivation of the word.
24. 31. omnia exempla cruciatusque: all kinds of tortures; 225.
24. 32. qua: the regular form after si, instead of quae. — ad . . . ad: at . . . according to; 144, 1, e.
24. 33. barbarum . . . temerarium: 145.
Page 25. i. posse: sc. eos, referring to the Gauls.
25. 4. emigrent: namely, leave their homes; the verb of a subst. clause in apposition with idem. For the mood see 200, Note.
25. 5. fortunam . . . experiantur: for eam fortunam, quae-
cumque accidat, experiantur. Experiantur is used somewhat as in the English expression "try one's luck." They would see what fortune had in store for them and make the best of it.

25. 7. enuntiata . . . sint: representing a fut. perf. indic. of the dir. disc. See the following note. — non dubitare: sc. se, referring to Diviciacus. Although the infin. is present, the whole clause, non dubitare . . . quin sumat, he would undoubtedly inflict, has a future force, corresponding to that of enuntiata sint. — quin . . . sumat: the clause is the object of dubitare; for the mood see 202.

25. 11. derrere posse ne . . . traducatur: could prevent a greater number . . . from being led across the Rhine; 199. — Rhenum: object of traducatur; see 90, Note.


25. 15. Chapter 32. magno fletu: 126.

25. 16. unos: alone.

25. 17. tristes: 147.

25. 18. capite demisso: 126; for the singular number see note on sinistra, p. 19, l. 1. — Eius rei . . . quaesit: read the sentence through carefully before beginning to translate.


25. 21. saepius: again and again; for a more lit. trans. see 150. — neque ullam: translate as if it were et nullam.

25. 22. idem: again, as before; lit., the same (i.e., the afore-said) Diviciacus.

25. 23. hoc: in apposition with the following quod-clauses. Therefore what kind of an ablative?

25. 24. soli: they alone, modifying the subject of auderent and horrerent. — ne . . . quidem: modifying in occulto; note the position of the words.

25. 25. neque: be careful in translating this word. Double negatives are allowed in Latin, but not in English. — absentis: in his absence; i.e., even when he was absent. The adj. is used appositively; see 145.
25. 26. *crudelitatem*: object of *horrerent*; 86, Note. — *adesset*: would be subj. in the dir. disc. in a comparative clause introduced by *velut si*.

25. 27. *reliquis*: sc. *Gallis*. — *tamen*: at least; i.e., in spite of the fact that they were under the dominion of Ariovistus.

25. 28. *Sequanis vero*: *but by the Sequani*; 112.

25. 30. *essent perferendi*: note the form, *had to be endured, must be endured*.

Page 26. 2. Chapter 33. *sibi . . cueae futuram*: sc. *esse*, that he would look into the matter; lit., that that matter would be for a care to him (113). Verbs of promising are regularly followed by a fut. infin.

26. 3. *beneficio suo*: in having Ariovistus recognized as a friend of the Roman people; see p. 34, lines 14 ff.

26. 4. *injuriis*: 106. — *facturum*: sc. *esse*, fut. infin. depending on *se habere spem, = se sperare*. See the last part of the note on 1. 2.

26. 5. *secundum ea*: *besides these things*; *secundum* is the prep.

26. 6. *quare . . putaret*: *to think*; 177. *Quare* is not interrogative, but the relative adverb, in place of the usual *ut*, on the same principle that leads Caesar to repeat the antecedent in the relative clause.

26. 7. *cogitandum . . suscipientem*: sc. *esse* and see 204. In translating note the forms carefully, and cf. *essent perferendi*, p. 25, l. 30. — *quod . . videbat*: *the fact that he saw, a subst. clause in apposition with multae res;* for the mood see 196.

26. 8. *saepenumero*: an adv. formed of *saepe* and *numero* (129).

26. 11. *quod*: *a state of things which*; the antecedent of *quod* is implied in the preceding infinitives. Or it may be translated *and this state of things*; see 158, a. — *in tanto imperio populi Romani*: i.e., considering that the power of the Roman people was so great.

26. 14. *Germanos consuescere*: *for the Germans to become accustomed*; *consuescere* and *venire* are the subjects of *esse*, which is understood with *periculosum videbat* (see 213).

26. 16. *populo Romano*: 114. — *periculosum*: a predicate
adj. (145) modifying consueere and venire. It is singular because the two infinitives form one idea. — sibi temperatos quin: would refrain from; more lit., would restrain themselves from. For the case of sibi see 107, a.

26. 18. ut: see 180, Note; the subj. in fecissent is due to ind. disc.

26. 19. exirent... contenderent: quin here introduces a result clause; cf. 178.

26. 21. Rhodanus: only the Rhone, as is implied in the context. — quibus rebus: 107, b.

26. 22. occurrendum: sc. esse and sibi (112). Note the form carefully before translating. — autem: furthermore, introducing an additional reason for his action.

26. 23. sibi: 106. With what verb is it to be taken?

26. 24. ferendus non videretur: he seemed unbearable; connect non with ferendus. For the mood of videretur see 178.

26. 25. Chapter 34. placuit ei ut... mitteret: it seemed best to him to send. The ut-clause is the subject of placuit; for the mood see 200 and Note.

26. 26. qui... postularent: 177.

26. 27. medium utriusque: midway between each of them, i.e., Ariovistus and Caesar. For the construction of utriusque see 95. — colloquio: 113. — velle sese: what does the infin. indicate? How should the translation be introduced?

26. 28. summis utriusque rebus: matters of the highest importance to both (Caesar and Ariovistus); more lit., the highest interests of both. For the trans. of rebus see note on p. 4, l. 25.

Page 27. 1. Si quid... opus esset: if he himself wanted anything of Caesar; more lit., had need of anything from Caesar. For the case of ipsi see 110; for the mood and tense of esset, 209. Quod is a predicate nominative.

27. 2. venturum fuisse: he would have come to him, the apodosis of a condition contrary to fact in ind. disc.; see 191 and 209.

27. 3. se: a second accusative with velit, which here has the construction of rogare, to which it is nearly equivalent in meaning. See 89. — velit: a simple present condition in ind. disc., representing a pres. indic. of the direct form. The present is used for
contrast with *esset*, to show that * velit* is not contrary to fact. The secondary sequence is resumed in what follows.

27. 5. *possideret*: 207. Note the return to the secondary sequence; see previous note.

27. 6. *magno commeatu atque molimento*: great trouble and the necessity of getting together a great supply of food. Such different ideas as *commeatu* and *molimento* are not as a rule closely connected in English, except humorously.

27. 7. *Sibi ... mirum videri*: it seemed surprising to him. *Mirum* modifies the subst. clause *quid ... esset*, which is the subject of *videri*. For the mood of *esset* see 198; for that of *vicisset*, 211.

27. 8. *Caesari ... populo Romano*: for the case see 110. Do not trans. literally.—*negoti*: to be taken with *quid*; 99.

27. 11. Chapter 35. *Quoniam*: what verb does this introduce? Such a sentence as this should be read through carefully more than once, before an attempt is made to translate it.

27. 12. *suo populique Romani*: by himself and the Roman people; lit., of. What kind of a gen. is *populi Romani*? On the use of *suo* see note on p. 15, l. 4.—*cum ... appellatus esset*: this *cum*-clause is explanatory of *beneficio, in being called*; cf. *cum ... prohibent*, p. 1, l. 15. The mood is due to ind. disc. (207).—*in consulatu suo*: this was in 59 B.C.

27. 14. *gratiam referret*: see VOCAB. under *gratia*.—*ut ... gravaretur*: a subst. clause in apposition with *gratiam*. The verb would be subj. in the dir. disc.; see 200 and Note.

27. 15. *neque*: for the trans. see note on p. 13, l. 19.

27. 15. *communi re*: a matter of common interest.

27. 16. *dicendum sibi*: sc. *esse*. Note the forms *dicendum* and *cognoscendum* carefully. For the case of *sibi* see 112.—*haec esse*: these were the things, explained by the following clause introduced by *ne*. For the mood of *esse* and of *postularet* see 204 and 207.

27. 17. *quam multitudinem ... amplius*: any large force afterwards.

27. 20. redderet. permitteret: governed by an ut implied in ne in line 17; 199.

27. 20. Sequanisque permitteret ut illis liceret: since permitteret and liceret mean practically the same thing, the expression is pleonastic; the pleonasm gives an emphasis which might be rendered by that he should give the Sequani full and free permission, etc.

27. 21. voluntate eius: referring to Ariovistus; for the case of voluntate see 126. — neve. neve: used instead of neque. neque to connect clauses which standing alone would be introduced by ne.

27. 22. iniuria: wrongfully; 123. For the omission of cum see note on casu, p. 10, l. 7.

27. 24. fecisset: represents what mood and tense of the dir. disc.? Note the following futurum (esse). How should fecisset be translated? — sibi populoque Romano: 110.

27. 26. impetraret: for the fut. ind. of dir. disc. — sese: to determine the construction of this word, read the sentence through to the end carefully. Sese is so far from its verb that Caesar repeats it (in the form se) in line 30. — M. Messala M. Pisone consulibus: 61 B.C.; see 140 and 227.

27. 27. uti: observe that the verb depending on this word is defenderet, since obtineret and posset are introduced by quicumque and by quod.

27. 28. quod . . . facere posset: so far as he could do it; a restrictive clause of characteristic. Quod is adverbial accusative, to the extent to which. See 91, Note. — commodo: 127.

27. 29. defenderet: would be subj. in dir. disc.; 199. Caesar is not altogether fair in calling attention to this decree of the senate; see 79.

Page 28: 1. Chapter 36. ut . imperarent: a subst. clause, used as the predicate of esse and meaning the same thing as ius; see 199 (ius esse belli implies a demand).

28. 2. qui: sc. as antecedent ii, subject of imperarent. — vicissent . . . vicissent: for the perf. ind. of dir. disc. — quem ad modum: as, equivalent to ad cum modum ad quem (modum). For the mood of vellent see 207.
NOTES—BOOK I

28. 3. victis: equivalent to eis quos vicissent, line 2. — ad: according to; 144, 1, e.
28. 4. alterius: of another; here used as the gen. of alius, as it frequently is, not of alter.
28. 5. consuesse: = consuevisse, with the force of a present in dir. disc.; see 166, Note. — praescriberet: not a condition contrary to fact, but a simple present condition (189) in ind. disc. For the mood see 207.
28. 7. sibi: 109. To be taken with stipendiarios.
28. 8. Magnam: emphasized by being placed at the beginning of the sentence.
28. 10. facere: was doing, for a pres. ind. of the dir. disc. — suo adventu: 119; see note on adventu, p. 14, l. 22. Suo refers to Caesar; 155.
28. 11. sibi: 109, referring to Ariovistus (155). — deteriora: less profitable, in case the Aeduans, relying on Caesar’s protection, should refuse to pay tribute. — faceret: would probably be subj. in the dir. disc.; see 188.
28. 12. non: made emphatic by being put in an unusual position. — iniuria: see note on iniuria, p. 27, l. 22.
28. 13. in eo manerent: should abide by that; lit., remain in that. Is this a condition contrary to fact? Why? — convenissent: had been agreed on. The active here is best translated by an English passive; see note on accederent, p. 15, l. 2.
28. 15. longe . . . afuturum: would be far from helping them; lit., would be far away for them. For the case of sibi see 109. — fraternum: takes the place of an appositional gen., fratrum.
28. 16. Quod . . . denuntiaret: as for Caesar’s announcing to him. In this sentence the reflexive pronoun refers to no less than three different subjects; see 155, Note. What would the mood of denuntiaret be in the dir. disc.? See 197.
28. 18. congrederetur: for the mood see 205. — intellecturum: sc. esse, and as subject eum, referring to Caesar.

28. 19. quid . . . virtute possent: what the valor of the Germans could accomplish: lit., what the Germans availed in valor. For the case of quid see 91, Note; for that of virtute, 129.

28. 22. Haec: with what does this word agree?

28. 23. Chapter 37. Aedui questum: sc. veniebant from the preceding sentence and see note on p. 1, lines 1-3. For questum see 223.

28. 24. transportati essent . . . popularentur: as they said; 187.

28. 25. obsidibus . . . datis: 130, denoting means. The emphasis is laid on obsidibus by the position of ne . . . quidem, but datis contains the main idea of the clause; see 217. Be careful in translating.


28. 27. Treveri autem: sc. dixerunt or some word of saying, implied in veniebant questum in the preceding sentence. — ad ripas: 144, 1, b.

28. 28. his: for the case see 107, b.

Page 29. 1. vehementer commotus: this fear on Caesar's part, which is greater than he acknowledges at any other time during the Gallic wars, is justified by the situation, since a combination of Ariovistus and the Suebi would place him in a position of the greatest danger. — maturandum sibi: sc. esse. Note the form of maturandum and trans. accordingly.

29. 3. coniunxisset: be careful in translating. What time is referred to?

29. 4. resisti posset: the subject is not nova manus, since resistere governs the dative, but both verbs are impersonal and resistit governs eis understood, referring to the forces of Ariovistus and the Suebi; see 108. — quam celerrime potuit: quam celerrime would have the same force, but Caesar often uses the fuller forms; see note on p. 6, l. 16.

29. 5. magnis itineribus: see note on p. 8, l. 18.
29. 7. Chapter 38. tridui viam: three days' march. On tridui (= trium dierum) see 102.

29. 8. ad occupandum Vesontionem: gerundive construction; Vesontio is masc., contrary to the regular rule for nouns in -io.

29. 9. quod: the relative, as usual, agrees with the predicate noun, oppidum, instead of with its antecedent Vesontionem.

29. 11. Id: this, referring to ad occupandum Vesontionem. — accideret: subject of praecavendum (esse): 199. — magnopere sibi praecavendum: see 160 and note the form of praecavendum. Do not trans. literally.

29. 12. ad bellum usui erant: were useful for war. For the case of usui see 113. Ad means literally in the direction of.

29. 13. summa: emphasized by its separation from its noun facultas. — idque: and it, i.e., the town.

29. 14. muniebatur: 164; do not use the progressive form. — ad ducendum bellum: for prolonging the war. Ariovistus wished to give time for the Suebi to join forces with him.

29. 16. ut circino circumductum: as (though) drawn with a pair of compasses. That is, the river surrounded the town in a perfect circle, except for an interval of about 1600 feet, which was defended by a high hill.

29. 17. pedum: see 118, 102, and 103, Note.

29. 18. qua flumen intermittit: where the river stops, i.e., does not surround the town. — magna altitudine: 128.

29. 19. ita ut: so completely that. — radices: object of contingant, which governs the acc., though compounded with con-; see 107, Note. — ex utraque parte: 142, 4, b.


29. 22. magnis . . . itineribus: see note on p. 8, l. 18.

29. 24. Chapter 39. ad Vesontionem: in the neighborhood of Vesontio. The prep. is used because Caesar did not remain in the town all the time, but foraged in its vicinity.

29. 25. moratur: for the mood and tense see 181. — ex percontatione: because of the questions; lit., from the questioning.
The phrase gives the cause of *occupavit*, p. 30, l. 3. Read the whole sentence through carefully before attempting to translate it.


29. 27. *magnitudine . . . virtute . . exercitatio*: 128 (second example).

29. 28. *praedicabant*: 163; do not use the progressive form in translating.

Page 30. 1. *cum his congressos*: *when they had engaged in battle with these*; equivalent to a *cum*-clause of attendant circumstances. — *vultum*: *savage* expression; the adjective is implied in the context.


30. 3. *tansus subito timor*: *such sudden terror*; lit., *such terror on a sudden*, but note the position of *subito*. — *non mediocriter*: *to no slight degree, i.e., to a very high degree*. See 227.


30. 5. *Hic*: sc. *timor*. — *ortus est a*: *began with*. Notice the difference between the Latin and the English idiom, as indicated by the prepositions. — *tribunis militum*: these were ordinarily officers of experience, six to a legion, who commanded the legion in rotation. In Caesar's army, however, the *tribuni* and the *praefecti* were young men who had joined the army from friendship to Caesar, and for the sake of experience and booty, and, as he says, were in many cases not trained soldiers. See 21. — *praefectis*: ordinarily this word is applied to officers who commanded the cavalry and the auxiliary troops, but here it evidently does not include the commanders of the cavalry, who were experienced officers; see l. 18. See also the preceding note on *tribunis militum*.

30. 7. *non magnum*: see note on *non mediocriter* in line 3.

30. 8. *alius alia causa illata*: *one giving one reason and another another*; see *Vocab.* under *alius*. — *quam sibi ad proficiscendum necessarium dicret*: sc. *domum*; *which he said made it imperative for him to go home*. Lit., *which he said was necessary to himself*
for departing; for the mood of diceret, see 210. Here the verb of saying itself is in the subj.; cf. existimarent, p. 17, l. 28.

30. 9. voluntate: 126.
30. 11. remanebant: do not translate by the progressive form. — vultum fingere: to assume an expression (of indifference to the danger); i.e., to conceal their fear.
30. 13. tabernaculis: see 54.
30. 15. Vulgo: the adverb. — totis castris: throughout the whole camp; for the omission of the preposition see 132. — ob-signabantur: were (signed and) sealed. That is, they drew up formal wills, which were duly witnessed.
30. 17. in castris: i.e., in military life. — milites: here used in the special sense of the legionary (private) soldiers, exclusive of the centurions. — centuriones: see 23.
30. 18. quique: = et ii qui; see note on praefectis, l. 5.
30. 19. Qui se ex his: = ex his ii qui se. Se is the subject of existimari, wished that they should be thought, instead of wished to be thought.
30. 22. rem frumentarium: the object of timere, like angustias and magnitudinem, by the figure called prolepsis (anticipation); cf. “I know you, who you are.” Trans. as if it were, ut res frumentaria satis commode supportari posset, and for the translation of ut see 203.
30. 24. cum . . . iussisset: stands for what mood and tense of the dir. disc.? What time is referred to?
30. 25. dicto: governed by the phrase fore audientes, which is equivalent to a verb meaning obey; see 107, a.
30. 28. Chapter 40. omniumque ordinum . . . centurionibus: see 23 and 24.
30. 30. quam in partem . . . ducerentur: subject of quaerendum and cogitandum (esse); for the mood see 198. Note the tense and trans. accordingly.

Page 31. 1. putarent: subj. representing the thought of Caesar as commander of the army, not as the writer of the Commentaries; cf. tenebat, p. 6, l. 28. — Ariovistum: Ariovistus, he said; ind.
disc., implied in *incusavit.* — *se consul*e: in his own (Caesar's) consulship, the year before.

31. 2. cupiddissime appetisse: an exaggeration. The Roman senate voluntarily conferred on Ariovistus the title "Friend of the Roman People." See 71 and 79, end. Suetonius, who wrote a Life of Caesar, during the reign of Hadrian, tells us that Asinius Pollio accused Caesar of having written untruthfully at times, in part inadvertently, and in part intentionally, to make a better impression on his readers. Pollio thought that if Caesar had lived longer, he would have rewritten the *Commentaries* and made corrections in them.

31. 3. ab officio: from his allegiance.

31. 4. iudicaret: a rhetorical question, representing *iudicet* of the dir. disc.; see 206. — Sibi . . persuaderi: he for his part was convinced. What is the lit. trans? See 108. Quidem emphasizes sibi. — cognitis . atque . . perspecta: in connection with *repudiaturum* (esse) the perfect participles have the force of future perfects, when his demands should be known, etc. That is, they represent time past from a *future* standpoint.


31. 8. vererentur . . desperarent: see note on *iudicarent* in line 4. — sua . . ipsius: *their own* or *his.* *Ipsi*us is the indirect reflexive; 157.

31. 10. periculum: trial; see VOCAB. and note the derivation of the word. — memoria: 139. — Cimbris et Teutonis: see 76 and 77.

31. 12. meritus: sc. *esse*; nominative because the subject is the same as that of the verb on which the infinitive depends. — *videbatur*: indicative in a *cum*-clause expressing time, *on which occasion the army seemed* (185). The indicative is retained in ind. disc., because *videbatur* is not strictly a part of the ind. disc.; *meritus videbatur = mereretur, ut videbatur.* — factum: what is to be supplied? See note on p. 1, lines 1-3.

31. 13. servili tumultu: do not trans. literally; it means *at the time of the insurrection of the slaves;* 138. The adjective *servili* has the force of a subjective genitive. The reference is
to the uprising under Spartacus, the gladiator, in 73–71 B.C. Many of the slaves were Cimbri and Teutones, descended from those who had been captured by Marius.—quos tamen: and yet these (158, a); the antecedent of quos is servorum, implied in servili; tamen implies that the slaves had had the advantage of Ariovistus and his army in their Roman training.—aliquid: somewhat, to some extent; 91, Note.

31. 14. quae: when a rel. pron. has as its antecedents two or more common nouns of different genders, it is frequently in the neut. plur.

31. 15. iudicari posse: on the former see 213; on the latter, 204. — quantum . . . constantia: how great the advantage of firmness is, a general truth put into a past tense by the rule of the sequence of tenses; 171. Note the emphatic position of constantia. For the case of boni see 99. What would be the mood of haberet in the dir. disc.? Why?

31. 16. quos: the antecedent is the following hos, referring to the slaves implied in servili.

31. 17. victores: with the force of an adjective, flushed with victory; 152, Note.

31. 20. congressi . . . superassent (= superavissent): had fought with and conquered.


31. 22. exercitui: 114.

31. 23. adversum proelium: referring to the defeat of the Aeduans by Ariovistus; see Chapter 31 (p. 23, l. 29 ff.).

31. 24. defatigatis: de- is intensive.

31. 25. castris . . . ac paludibus: see note on memoria, p. 6, l. 28.

31. 26. sui potestatem: chance at him, i.e., opportunity of attacking him. On sui see 98.

31. 27. subito adortum . . . vicisse: had surprised . . . and conquered; more lit., had suddenly attacked and conquered.

31. 28. Cui rationi . . . hac: the relative clause precedes and contains the antecedent. A more normal order would be, ne ipsum quidem sperare nostros exercitus hac ratione capi posse, cui, etc.
31. 32. Qui: *those who*; the antecedent is *eos* understood, the subject of *facere*. — *rei frumentariae simulationem*: *a pretense of (anxiety about) the supply of grain.*

31. 33. *cum*: how should this word be translated? What gives it this force?

Page 32. 1. *de officio imperatoris*: *about the commander’s (readiness to do his) duty.* — *praescribere*: *sc. officium, (to try) to show him what his duty was.*

32. 2. *sibi . . . curae*: 113 and Note. — *esse*: note the tense, and translate accordingly. Note the tenses also of the following infinitives. — *frumentum . . frumenta*: *grain supply, grain*; see note on p. 12, l. 22.

32. 4. *ipsos . . iudicaturos*: *they would judge for themselves.* We should be more likely to say *they could.* Caesar indicates his determination to go on, which he expresses in definite terms below (lines 12 ff.).

32. 5. *Quod . . dicantur*: *sc. milites, os to its being said that the soldiers, etc.; lit., as to the fact that the soldiers were said; see 197.* For the tense of *dicantur* see 173.

32. 6. *nihil*: 91, Note. — *scire*: *sc. re.*

32. 7. *quibuscumque*: *in the case of those whose armies; a general relative, having for its antecedent *eis* understood, a dat. governed by *defuisse.* *Quibuscumque* is governed by the phrase *dicto audientis;* see note on p. 30, l. 25.

32. 8. *male re gesta*: the abl. abs. denotes cause (130). — *alia . . comperto*: the part. contains the main idea, *through the discovery of some criminal act; 217.*

32. 9. *avaritiam esse convictam*: *avarice had been proved (against him);* We should be likely to say in English, *he had been convicted of avarice.* — *innocentiam*: for the meaning see VocAB., and note that the word is contrasted with *avaritiam.*

32. 10. *perpetua vita*: 137. — *bello*: 138. In both *bello* and *vita* there is an idea of means, since *perspectam esse* is nearly equivalent to *was shown.*

32. 12. *quod*: the antecedent is *id*, the object of *repraesentaturum.* — *collatus suisset*: be careful in translating. What
is denoted by the first periphrastic conjugation? Note the return to the secondary sequence.

32. 13. de quarta vigilia: 142, 3, c, and 140.
32. 16. valeret: would prevail; subj. in a double indirect question. See 198, a. — praeterea: else; lit., besides the tenth legion.
32. 18. praetoriam cohortem: body-guard. Praetor originally meant leader, general, whence praetoria cohors, the general's cohort. — legioni: 107, a.
32. 19. praecipue . . . maxime: note the emphatic positions of the adverbs.
32. 21. Chapter 41. mirum in modum: to a remarkable degree.
32. 23. innata est: instead of being plural, the verb agrees with the nearer of the two subjects, which form one idea. See 85, Note. — princeps . . . gratias egit: for the trans. of princeps see 148.
32. 24. se: them; lit., it, referring to the legion.
32. 25. fecisset: for the mood see 187.
32. 27. primorum ordinum: see note on omnium ordinum, p. 30, l. 28.
32. 28. egerunt: arranged; see note on egit, p. 10, l. 22. — uti Caesari satisfacerent: to apologize to Caesar. For the case of Caesari see 107, a. — se neque umquam dubitasse: and to say that they had never doubted. The ind. disc. is implied in satisfacerent.
32. 29. suum . . . sed imperatoris: used in the predicate, and hence to be translated after esse.

Page 33. 2. ex Gallis . . . maximam: we should say, more confidence in him than in all the other Gauls. For the case of ei see note on cui, p. 15, l. 16.
33. 3. ut . . . duceret: to be taken with profectus est, intending to lead; 175. — milium amplius quinquaginta: see 118 and 102. — locis apertis: through open country; lit., in open country. See 132.
33. 5. cum iter non intermitteret: having marched without cessation. For the mood see 185.
33. 7. nostris: what must be supplied?
33. 9. Chapter 42. *quod antea,* etc.: the beginning of ind. disc., implied in *legatos mittit.* How should the translation be introduced? — *postulasset:* sc. Caesar.

33. 10. *per se:* so far as he (Ariovistus) was concerned. — *accessisset:* sc. Caesar. — *seque:* se does duty both as the subject of *existimare* and of *posse;* = *se existimare se posse.*

33. 12. *reverti:* note the tense and translate accordingly.


33. 14. *pro:* considering; i.e., when Ariovistus took into consideration the services which Caesar personally and the Roman people had rendered him.

33. 16. *fore uti ... desisteret:* that he would desist from his stubbornness; lit., that it would be (the case) that he would, etc. *Fore ut desisteret* is equivalent to the fut. infin. *destiturum esse.* The form *fore ut* is perhaps more emphatic; that he would unquestionably desist. *Uti desisteret* is a subst. clause, subject of *fore;* 200. For the case of *pertinacia* see 115.

33. 17. *colloquio:* 113.

33. 18. *saepe ultro citroque:* the adverbs modify *mitterentur,* and *cum,* as is often the case, is postponed. See note on p. 20, l. 9.

33. 19. *ne ... adduceret:* 199.

33. 20. *vereri se:* why the infin.? If necessary, see note on *quod antea,* in line 9. — *circumveniretur:* 203. Note that *venire* becomes transitive when compounded with *circum.*

33. 21. *veniret:* 205. — *alia ratione:* on any other condition;

33. 23. *interposita causa:* by affording an excuse to Ariovistus for declining the conference; what is the lit. trans.? — *tolli:* to be prevented.

33. 24. *Gallorum equitatu:* Caesar's cavalry consisted of Gauls, and he feared that they might either betray him to Ariovistus or might be unable to defend him against the German horsemen.

33. 25. *commodissimum:* agrees with *imponere* below; he judged that the best thing (to do) was to place, etc. Read the sentence through carefully before translating. — *Gallis equitibus:* 111.
NOTES—BOOK I

33. 26. eo: the adverb is here equivalent to in eos, i.e., in equos. — legionarios milites legionis decimae: not pleonastic, since there were other troops connected with the legion; it might be translated the regulars of the tenth legion.

33. 28. si quid opus facto esset: if there should be any need of action. Facto is abl. governed by opus. On quid see 91, Note.

Page 34. 1. fieret: note the tense and trans. accordingly. Cum may be translated while. — non irridicule: a case of litotes; see 226; how may it be translated?

34. 3. pollicitum: the perf. part. agreeing with eum (or illum) = Caesarem understood, subject of rescribere. It may be translated as a finite verb cognate with that represented by rescribere. — se: subject of habiturum (esse).

34. 4. ad equum rescribere: used with the double meaning: (1) enroll in the cavalry; (2) enroll among the equites, or knights, a class of Roman citizens inferior in rank to the nobles, or men of the senatorial order, but superior to the common people. The latter idea is more prominent (cf. plus quam pollicitus est ... facere), hence we may translate he was making knights of them.

34. 5. Chapter 43. tumulus terrenus: a mound (or hill) of earth, i.e., bare of trees and not rocky.

34. 6. satis grandis: of quite good size. The hill which has been identified with this is over 170 feet in elevation. — aequo fere spatio: 125.

34. 7. ut erat dictum: 160. Note the tense and be careful of the meaning of the verb.

34. 8. equis: on horseback; 119 and Note.

34. 9. passibus ducentis: 125; the phrase modifies ab, which here means away from or distant from.

34. 10. pari intervallo: i.e., two hundred paces; 126. — ex equis: on horseback; the Latin idiom is “from horseback.”

34. 11. colloquerentur ... adducerent: 199. — denos: ten each; note the distributive numeral.

34. 13. Ubi eo ventum est: 160; eo is the adverb. For the mood and tense of ventum est see 180. — initio: 138.

34. 14. in eum: towards him, Ariovistus. — quod ... appellatus esset: the fact that he had been called king, a subst. clause in
apposition with *beneficia*; is subjunctive because of the idea of ind. disc. implied in *commemoravit*. — *quod amicus*: what must be supplied? Note the preceding clause.

34. 16. *missa*: sc. *essent*. — *quam rem ... docebat*: and he said that this honor; lit., this thing; see note on p. 4, l. 25. The singular *quam rem* is used because the calling of Ariovistus king and friend and the sending of gifts were parts of the same ceremony. *Docebat* is not part of the ind. disc.; hence the mood. — *paucis*: 107, b.

34. 17. *pro*: in return for; 142, 6, b. — *consuesse tribui*: was usually conferred.

34. 18. *illum*: that he (Ariovistus), resuming the ind. disc. — *aditum*: i.e., he did not have any good reason for appearing before the Roman senate.

34. 19. *sua ac senatus*: these words modify *beneficio* as well as *liberalitate*, but *sua* agrees with the nearer of the two words.

34. 20. *ea praemia*: referring both to the honor and to the gifts; translate accordingly.

34. 22. *necessitudinis*: alliance. — *ipsis cum Aeduis intercederent*: existed between themselves (the Roman people) and the Aeduans. For the case of *ipsis* see 109; for the mood of *intercederet*, 198.

34. 23. *in eos*: with regard to them (the Aeduans); 143, 1, c.

34. 24. *ut*: how, introducing an indirect question; 198.

34. 25. *etiam*: even. Do not overlook such words as this.

34. 26. *appetissent*: 211; cf. 184. — *hanc*: this, referring to the following clause with *ut*, but agreeing with the predicate noun *consuetudinem*.

34. 27. *sui nihil*: nothing of theirs, i.e., of their possessions. *Sui* is the neuter of the reflexive pronoun used as a subst.; for the case see 99.

34. 28. *gratia ... honore*: 129.

34. 29. *quod*: the antecedent is *id*. Read the sentence through carefully and begin to trans. with *quis*.

34. 30. *id ... eripi*: object of *pati* (213). Trans. by a clause with *that*— *eis*: 111. — *posset*: subj. in a rhetorical question in ind. disc. The direct form would be *quis pati possit*; see 206.
Page 35. 1. in mandatis dederat: he had enjoined upon, i.e., he repeated the demands which he had instructed the envoys to make of Ariovistus. Legatis is governed by the phrase in mandatis dederat, = mandaverat. See 106, and cf. fidem habebat, p. 15, l. 16.

35. 2. ne: namely that . . . not, introducing clauses which explain eadem.—inferret . . . redderet . . . pateretur: 205.

35. 4. posset: 209. What kind of a condition in dir. disc.? Consider the time referred to.—at: at least.—quos amplius: any more of them; lit., any . . . further (i.e., hereafter); see note on p. 27, l. 17.

35. 6. Chapter 44. pauca: sc. verba, object of respondit. It may be translated, briefly.

35. 7. multa: many things; the adj. is used as a substantive (152, a), object of praedicavit; the two together may be translated, he boasted greatly.—transisse . sese: note the mood; what does it show? What word must be used to introduce the translation?

35. 8. rogatum et arcessitum: participles with causal force; 215, Note.

35. 9. magna spe magnisque praemiis: hendiadys, equivalent to magna spe magnorum praemiorum, 225.

35. 11. ab ipsis: by (the Gauls) themselves.—voluntate: 126.

35. 12. stipendium capere: sc. se.—iure: 127.—quod: the relative; its antecedent is of course stipendium.

35. 13. vicis: used as a subst.; for the case see 107, b.—consuerint: = consueverint. For the tense see 166, second Note.

35. 15. ad se oppugnandum: 220.

35. 16. castra habuisse: i.e., had made formal war.

35. 17. proelio: 119.

35. 18. velint: the pres. subj., instead of the imperf. required by the sequence of tenses, is used for vividness or perhaps for variety; so velint and pependerint below. See 173.—decertare: to fight it out; note the force of de-, and cf. defatigatis, p. 31, l. 24.

35. 19. pace: 121.—uti: note the quantity of the ā; what does it show? — iniquum: the adjective modifies recusare, which is equivalent to a noun, the subject of esse (213). — de stipendio
recusare: *i.e.*, to refuse to pay the tribute; note the lit. trans.

35. 20. sua: of course refers to the Gauls; for the case see 126. — ad: *up to*; 144, 1, *d*.


35. 22. hac spe: 126.

35. 23. petisse: *sc. eam*, referring to *amicitia*. — per: *through the influence of*; 144, 3, *b*.

35. 24. dediticii: *prisoners of war*; here referring to the hostages of the Aedui, on the retaining of which by Ariovistus the payment of the tribute depended.


35. 27. id: *this thing*, referring to the preceding *quod*-clause. — sui muniendi . . . Galliae impugnandae: gen. of the gerundive, governed by *causa*, *for the sake of*; 220.

35. 28. facere: note the tense. — eius rei: *cf. id* above; *rei* is expressed because the form of *eius* does not determine its gender. — testimonio: 113. — quod . . . venerit: *the fact that he had not come*. A subj. clause, subject of *esse*, *testimonio* taking the place of a predicate noun. So the following *quod*-clause. For the mood see 207. — nisi rogatus: *without being asked*. The pres. part. is much more common in English than in Latin, where the ideas expressed by the English pres. part. must be expressed in other ways.

35. 29. defenderit: *warded off, i.e.*, defended himself against it.

35. 30. prius . . . quam . . . populum Romanum: *before the Roman people*. *Quam* is here the adverb. With *prius . . . quam* as a conjunction the construction would have been *priusquam populus Romanus venisset*. The statement is not true, since the Romans had subdued the Allobroges in 121 B.C.


36. 3. venerit: *cf. vellet* in line 2.

36. 4. hanc . . . Galliam: *this part of Gaul*, where they then were; lit., *this Gaul*. — sicut illam nostram: supply the words necessary to complete the sentence on the principle given in the note on p. 1, lines 1–3. — Ut: in order to determine the meaning
of this word, read the sentence through, and remember that all subordinate clauses are in the subj. in ind. disc. — ipsi: to ‘him, referring to Ariovistus. — concedi: subject of oporteret and used impersonally; no concession ought to be made, or no indulgence ought to be shown.

36. 6. item: do not omit this word. — quod: in that, because.


36. 9. rerum: of the facts; for the case see 104.

36. 10. bello Allobrogum proximo: in the recent war with the Allobroges, referring to the revolt of the Allobroges against the Romans. For the case of bello see 138.

36. 11. ipsos: i.e., the Aeduans.

36. 12. Aedui: we should use the pronoun here, and the noun in placc of ipsos above; and that the Aeduans themselves in the wars which they had had, etc.

36. 13. Debere se suspicari: that he had good reason to suspect; lit., he ought to suspect.

36. 14. quod . . . habeat: with reference to his having an army in Gaul; to be taken with suspicari. The sentence should be translated freely. Try to express the thought in the best and clearest English possible. Supply eum, referring to exercitum, as the object of habere.

36. 15. Qui nisi: now if he (Caesar) did not; 158, a.

36. 18. Quod si: and if; lit., as to which, if. — interfecerit: refers to what time (note facturum); trans. accordingly.

36. 19. gratum esse facturum: he would confer a favor on; lit., would do a thing pleasing to. Gratum is the neuter of the adjective, used as a noun; 152, a. — id se . . . compertum habere: he was assured of this; more lit., he had found this out. Compertum habere differs very little in meaning, if at all, from comperisse; see 218 and note on p. 12, l. 6.

36. 20. ab ipsis per eorum nuntios: from these men themselves through their (own) messages; i.e., his information was direct, not indirect. Caesar had many enemies at Rome, who would have been glad to hear of his death. — quorum omnium . . . posset: and he could purchase the favor . . . of all these men; quorum refers to ipsis and eorum; its antecedent is eorum.
There is no doubt that Ariovistus spoke the truth with regard to the general situation, though it may be uncertain whether he was in direct communication with any one at Rome. He was well informed on the subject of Roman politics, at any rate.

36. 21. morte: 120; observe that it is merely the meaning of the word redimere which makes this a special variety of the abl. of means.

36. 22. Quod si: but if; see note on quod si in line 18. — discussisset: sc. Caesar; see note on interfecerit in line 18. Note the change to secondary tenses, and see 173.

36. 23. magno . . . praemio: the words are emphasized by their separation; for the case see 123.

36. 25. eius: on his part; lit., of his; 97.

36. 26. Chapter 45. in eam sententiam: to show, followed by the indirect question, quare . . . non posset; lit., to this effect, or purport.

36. 27. neque suam . . . pati: what is shown by the infin.? Translate accordingly.

36. 28. uti desereret: 200.

36. 30. Ariovisti . . populi Romani: the genitives are used predicatively; 96 and Note to 103.

Page 37. 1. Avernos et Rutenos: in 121 B.C. — quibus . . . ignovisset: although the Roman people had pardoned them; 194. For the case of quibus, 107, a.

37. 2. redegisset: since this verb takes a direct object, we must supply eos.

37. 3. imposuisset: sc. eis; 107, b.

37. 4. antiquissimum quodque tempus: priority of time with regard to their coming into Gaul; for the lit. trans., consult 159.

37. 7. bello victam: the participle has concessive force; 215, Note.

37. 8. voluisset: supply as subject is, referring to the senate; it may be translated they.

37. 9. Chapter 46. geruntur: for the mood and tense see 182.

37. 10. propius tumulum: nearer the mound. Propius has the force of a preposition. — accedere: note the tense of this and the following infinitives, and translate accordingly.
37. 13. ne quod omnino . . . reicerent: not to throw back any weapon at all; 199.
37. 15. cum equitatu proelium: to be taken together, = proelium equestre. Prepositional phrases do not often qualify nouns.
— fore: = futurum esse. — videbat: 193. — committendum (sc. esse) non putabat ut: he thought he ought not to run the risk that; more lit., that it ought not to be allowed to happen that. The clause ut . . . posset is the subject of committendum. For the meaning of committendum cf. p. 11, 1. 3.
37. 16. posset: 200.
37. 17. per fidem: through their confidence (in him). — in colloquio: during a parley; do not connect this phrase with per fidem.
37. 19. omni Gallia . . . interdixisset: had refused the Romans access to any part of Gaul; more lit., had interdicted them from all Gaul. For the mood of interdixisset (and fecisset) see 198; for the case of Romanis, 109; for that of Gallia, 115.
37. 24. Chapter 47. Biduo post: on the following day; according to the Roman way of reckoning, two days later; cf. pridie eius diei, p. 39, l. 1, and see 140. For the case of biduo see 125.
37. 25. Velle se: note the infin., and trans. accordingly. — coeptae: sc. essent. The passive of coepi is used when the dependent infinitive is passive.
37. 26. uti . . . constitueret: he asked that he would appoint; a verb of requesting is implied; 199.
37. 27. minus: = non; cf. p. 12, l. 25. — suis: sc. legatis, referring to Caesar’s staff, while se refers to Ariovistus; see 155. E suis (legatis) legatum aliquem may be translated, one of his officers.
NOTES — BOOK I

37. 28. Colloquendi ... causa: reason for holding a conference; lit., of holding a conference.

Page 39. 1. pridie eius diei: the day before (that day); eius diei need not be translated. See note on biduo post, p. 37, l. 24.

39. 2. quin ... conicerent: from hurling; more lit., but that they should hurl; so that they should not hurl; 178.

39. 3. ex suis sese: (sc. legatis with suis) emphatic reflexives, one of his own officers.— magno cum periculo ... missurum (esse) . existimabat: he thought it would be very dangerous for him to send, etc.; lit., that he would send with great danger.

39. 6. Commodissimum: governs mittere, in line 12, which is the subject of visum est. This long sentence should be read through carefully in Latin and the relations of the words noted.

— C. Valerium Procillum: Caesar thought it dangerous to send a Roman (legatum e suis), but believed that he could more safely send a Gaul, for the reasons given below. On becoming a Roman citizen, the father had, according to the usual custom, assumed the first two names of his patron C. Valerius Flaccus, keeping his own name of Caburus as a cognomen.

39. 7. summa ... humanitate: 128.

39. 8. civitate donatus erat: had been presented with (Roman) citizenship; for the case of civitate, see 119.

39. 10. qua multa ... ubat: which Ariovistus used readily; lit., used much. In English we should have an adverb, but multa is an adjective agreeing with qua; see 147. As we see from this passage, the Germans spoke a different language from that of the Gauls (see p. 1, l. 3), namely that from which modern German is descended. It was a sister-language to Greek, Latin, Celtic, and English.— longinquaque consuetudine: from long practice; 122. Ariovistus had spent so much time in Gaul that he spoke the language readily and fluently.

39. 11. quod ... esset: and because he thought there was; the subj. indicates that this was Caesar’s thought at the time. — Germanis: 110.

39. 12. una: adv.; sc. cum eo.

39. 13. hospitio ... utebatur: i.e., was a guest-friend of
Ariovistus. The relation of guest and host was sacred and binding in ancient times.


39. 15. apud se: before him, in his presence. — conspexisset: note the tense; the idea is, when he had got them into his power.


39. 17. an speculandi causa: sc. venirent; was it for the purpose of playing the spy? Since the first part of the double question is omitted, an should not be translated "or." — Conantes: sc. eos, when they attempted.

39. 20. Chapter 48. a: away from; cf. p. 34, l. 9. For the case of milibus, see 125. — Postridie eius diei: see note on pridie eius diei, line 1.

39. 22. milibus . . . duobus: 125. — eo consilio, uti: with the design of; more lit., with this design, that. Uti . . . interclu-deret is a subst. clause, in apposition with consilio; for the mood see 199.

39. 23. frumento commeatuque: 115.

39. 24. supportaretur: for the mood see 211. — Ex: after; 142, 4, c.

39. 25. dies continuos quinque: 91.

39. 26. aciem instructam habuit: kept his army drawn up in line of battle. Here instructam habuit has quite a different meaning from that of instruxit; cf. coactam habebat, p. 12, l. 6, and the note. — ut . . . non deesset: a clause of purpose (175), in spite of the negative non. Non is closely connected with deesset, and by litotes (225) the two are equivalent to an emphatic esset, the meaning being that he might have ample opportunity.

39. 27. vellet: 211.

39. 29. his omnibus diebus: 137. — castris: 119, Note.

Cf. note on memoria, p. 6, l. 28.

39. 30. hoc: the following.

Page 40. 1. quo: 119 and Note.
40. 2. numero: 129. Totidem numero pedites may be translated, an equal number of foot-soldiers. — velocissimi ac fortissimi: 145 and 150.

40. 3. quos . singuli singulos delegerant: whom they had chosen . . each cavalryman selecting one. The subject of delegerant is ii understood, = equites, and singuli is in apposition with ii.

40. 4. cum his: referring to the pedites. The subject of versabantur is equites understood.

40. 5. Ad eos . . hi: also refer to pedites. — si quid erat durius: if there was any difficulty; lit., anything harder (than usual).

40. 6. si qui: if anyone; the more usual form of the nom. sing. masc. of the indefinite pronoun is quis, but qui is also used, as here. — graviore: very severe; lit., severer (than common); cf. durius, line 5, and the note.

40. 7. quo: adv., anywhere, in any direction. — longius . . . celerius: the comparatives have the same force as durius (line 5) and graviore (line 6).

40. 8. prodeundum . recipiendum: be careful of the meaning.

40. 9. exercitatione: 122. — iubis: 119, Note. — sublevati: assisting themselves (by); i.e., clinging (to); the verb has a middle or reflexive force.

40. 10. cursum adaequarent: they equalled their pace.

40. 11. Chapter 49. Ubi . . . intellexit: 180. — castris: see note on p. 39, l. 29. — ne . . . prohiberetur: 175. With what verb is this clause to be taken? Read the sentence through carefully before translating.

40. 12. passus sexcentos: 91. What other construction might have been used? Cf. p. 39, l. 19.

40. 13. ab: for the meaning of ab see note on p. 34, l. 9. — castris: 114. — triplici: see 41.

40. 14. in armis: we should say, under arms. — esse: 199, Note. — munire: to lay out; 199, Note, 51, and 52.

40. 15. hominum sedecim milia expedita: sixteen thousand light-armed troops. Notice that in Latin expedita agrees with milia, not with hominum. Numero need not be translated.
NOTES—BOOK I 253

40. 19. quae copiae: *that these forces*; for the mood of *per-
terrere*nt and *prohibere*nt, see 177.

40. 21. Nihilo setius: *nevertheless, = nihilo minus.* For the
case of *nihilo* see 125. — ut: note the mood which follows and
translate accordingly.

40. 22. *propulsare*: *to keep off;* 199, Note. — opus: referring
to *castra munire*, line 16.

40. 24. *castra maiora*: *i.e., his former camp, as is shown by
reduxit.*

40. 26. Chapter 50. *instituto suo*: *according to his regular
custom;* 127.


41. 2. *prodire*: *were coming out;* the present, as is frequently
the case in *eo* and its compounds, is nearly equivalent to a future.

41. 4. *quae . . . oppugnaret*: note the mood. *What does it
indicate?*

41. 5. *Acriter utrimque . . . pugnatum est*: *both sides fought
fiercely.* What is the lit. trans.?

41. 10. *dectaret*: note the tense and the force of *de-*; *would
not (yet) fight a decisive battle.* — hanc . causam: *he found
out that this was the reason;* in the Latin *hanc causam* is the direct
object of *reperiebat.*

41. 11. *quod . . . esset*: *that this was, etc., a subst. clause
in apposition with causam.* For the mood see 210. — ut . . .
declararent: a subst. clause in apposition with *consuetudo;* for
the mood see 200.

41. 12. *sortibus et vaticinationibus*: *by the use of lots and by
their predictions.* In the case of the former certain signs were put
upon bits of the branches of a fruitful tree, which were scattered
over a white cloth. These were then taken up at random and in-
terpreted by women (*matres familiae*), who were supposed by the
Germans to have a special power of divination. The *vaticinio*
tnes were predictions, especially from the sound of running waters.

41. 13. *utrum . . necne*: *whether . . or not;* a double
indirect question; see 198, a. — *proelium . . esset*: the sub-
ject of *esset* is *proelium committi;* *ex usu,* in the predicate, is about
equivalent in meaning to *utile.* . See 142, 4, d.
41. 14. eas ita dicere: that they (the matrons) made the following statement, passing into formal ind. disc. — fas: the will of the gods; lit., right from the religious point of view. — Germanos superare: subject of esse; non esse fas . . . superare is about equivalent to non superaturos esse.

41. 15. contendissent: represents what tense of the dir. disc.? See the previous note for the time of the conclusion.


41. 17. quod satis esse visum est: which seemed sufficient. The antecedent of quod is id (praesidium) implied in praesidio. — alarios: see 35.

41. 19. quod minus . . . valebat: because he was less strong; minus is an adv. — pro: in proportion to.

41. 20. ad speciem: to make a show; lit. for a show; i.e., he stationed the auxiliary troops (alarii) where the legionary soldiers were usually put, in the hope of disguising his weakness in regulars.

41. 21. usque ad: right up to.

41. 23. necessario: of necessity; an adverb.

41. 24. paribus intervallis: 126.

41. 27. circumdederunt: the reference is of course only to a half-circle, in the rear of the line. — qua: any.

41. 28. Eo: there, i.e., in the wagons and carts.

41. 29. proficiscientes: sc. eos, them, as they went into battle. — passis manibus: 126.

41. 30. se: the indirect reflexive (155). To what does it refer?

Page 43. 1. Chapter 52. singulis . . . singulos: i.e., one legatus over each legion with the exception of one, which was put under the command of a quaestor. For the use of singuli cf. p. 40, l. 3, and for the case of legionibus, see 107, b.

43. 2. testes: in apposition with eos; translate accordingly.

— virtutis: 98.

43. 3. eam partem . . . hostium: i.e., the part of the enemy opposite the right wing of the Romans, which would of course be the left wing of the enemy.
43. 4. animadverterat: note the tense and translate accordingly.
43. 5. Ita: modifies acriter.
43. 6. itaque: not in its common meaning of therefore, but =ita + que. Ita modifies repente and celeriter.
43. 7. pila...coniendi: the gerund construction in place of the more common gerundive (220), to avoid the less euphonious pilorum coniciendorum.
43. 8. Reiectis: throwing down, since there was not room to hurl them at the enemy. In English the present part. is commonly used in such a case; in Latin, with a more strict observance of the actual relations of time, the perfect. — pugnatum est: for the trans. see note on acriter. . . pugnatum est, p. 41, l. 5.
43. 9. ex: 142, 4, d. — phalange: for the formation of the phalanx see note on p. 18, l. 17.
43. 11. complures nostri: in English we say very many of our (soldiers). — insilirent . . . vulnerarent: 179.
43. 16. P. Crassus: son of M. Crassus, triumvir with Caesar and Antony in 60 B.C.; see 8 and 9.
43. 17. expeditior: freer, as the cavalry were not engaged.
43. 18. versabantur: be careful of the meaning; see Vocab. — tertiam aciem: i.e., the rear line of the triplici acie (see p. 41, l. 21), which formed a reserve for just such an emergency. — subsidio: 113 and Note.
43. 20. Chapter 53. Ita: thus; i.e., by the prompt action of Publius Crassus. — restitutum: saved.
43. 21. prius: to be taken with quam. Note the indicative pervenerunt, since the action of the verb was not prevented but actually took place. The indicative is usual when the main clause stands first and contains a negative; 184.
43. 23. viribus: 119, Note.
43. 25. naviculam: diminutive of navis, perhaps used for variety, since lintribus has just been used above.
43. 26. ea: in it; 119.
43. 27. consecuti: overtook, and. Note the force of con-. 
43. 28. Duae...uxores: polygamy was not general among
the Germans, but the chiefs sometimes had more than one wife. — natione: 129; it might be translated here by birth.

Page 44. i. domo: 135. — Norica: i.e., from Noricum.

44. 2. duxerat: sc. in matrimonium.

44. 3. duae filiae . . . altera . . . altera: of the two daughters one was killed, the other captured. Altera . . . altera are in apposition with duae filiae, which is the subject of occisa est. The verb, however, agrees with the nearer of the two appositives.

44. 6. trinis: the distributive, because catenae is usually used only in the plural. In the same way one would say trina castra for three camps. — in ipsum Caesarem . . . incidit: fell into Caesar’s own hands; 156, a.

44. 7. equitatu: 124. Here cum is omitted, although there is no adjective in agreement, because of the idea of means. — persequentem: as he was pursuing. — Quae quidem res: this circumstance; see note on ea res, p. 4, l. 25. Quidem gives emphasis to quae; it might be rendered by emphasizing “this” or by adding “especially.”

44. 9. honestissimum: do not translate by the corresponding English word, but note the derivation; see Vocabulary.

44. 10. eruptum: the participle.

44. 11. restitutum: sc. esse. — neque: and because . . . not, the force of quod continuing to the end of the sentence. — eius calamitate: by disaster to him; on eius see 98.

44. 13. se praesente de se: the order emphasizes se; it might be translated, before his very eyes.

44. 14. sortibus: see note on p. 41, l. 12.

44. 15. sortium beneficio: 122. The lots decided that his death should be put off, and in the meantime the battle took place and Ariovistus was defeated.

44. 20. Chapter 54. Rhenum: accusative governed by proximi, after the analogy of prope. Proximus commonly takes a dative (114).

44. 22. aestate: 139. Ariovistus was defeated in September, the Helvetians in the preceding June, or July.

44. 23. maturius paulo: a little earlier (in the season).

44. 24. in Sequanos: we should say among the Sequani or in
the country of the Sequani, but in Latin the idea of motion is continued.

44. 25. ad conventus agendos: to hold the assizes, as governor of Gaul. He also wished to be as near as possible to Rome, to keep track of the political movements going on there.

BOOK II

I. THE CAMPAIGN AGAINST THE BELGians

Page 45. Line 1. Chapter 1. esset: 185.—ita uti . . . demonstravimus: at the end of Chap. 54 of Book I. The plural is like the "editorial we" in English. The first person is comparatively rare in Caesar's Gallic War, and always refers to Caesar the writer, not to Caesar the general. See note on p. 6, l. 28.

45. 2. crebri . . . rumores: the separation of the adj. from its noun by an intervening phrase is common in Latin. — afferebantur . . . fiebat: the imperfect denotes repeated action (163). Do not, however, use the progressive form here in translating.

45. 4. quam: who. The antecedent is Belgas, but the relative is attracted to the number and case of the predicate noun (partem), as it often is. — dixeramus: in Chap. I of Book I. The pluperf. here does not differ much from a perfect indefinite. Strictly it denotes action completed at some past time, which would perhaps be that of the completion of Book I. For the number see note on ita uti demonstravimus, in line 1.

45. 5. coniurare: were forming a league. A pres. infin. in ind. disc., representing a pres. indic. of the letter of Labienus. See 204. — inter se: to one another; lit., among themselves. Inter se dare may be translated were exchanging.

45. 6. Coniurandi: 219. — esse: that these were, continuing the indirect quotation from Labienus; 204. — vererentur: the reason given by Labienus; 187.

45. 7. omni pacata Gallia: when all Gaul should be subdued, = cum omnis Gallia pacata esset (standing for a fut. perf. of the dir. disc.); see note on cognitis, p. 31, l. 4. Gallia refers here, as usual, not to Gaul in the widest sense, but to the country inhabited by the Celtae (see Book I, Chap. 1). — adduceretur: 203.
45. 8. sollicitarentur: *they were urged to it*; for the mood see note on vererentur, line 6.

45. 9. partim qui . . . partim qui: *of whom some . . . while others*; lit., *partim* is an adverb modifying *sollicitarentur* understood, sc. *ab eis, in part by those who*, etc. — *ut*: *as*; observe the mood of the following verb; see r8o, Note. — Germanos . . . versari: *that the Germans should abide*. The infin. with its subject accusative is the object of *noluerant*; 213.

45. ro. noluerant: *had been unwilling*, in the past. The mood shows that Caesar is no longer quoting Labienus, but returns to dir. disc. This continues to the end of the chapter. — populi Romani . . . moleste ferebant: *were displeased that the army of the Roman people was passing the winter in Gaul and establishing itself there*. The infinitives with their subject are used as objects of *ferebant*; 213.

45. 11. partim qui: see note on *partim qui* in line 9.

45. 12. mobilitate et levitate: *these were general characteristics of the Gauls*. For the case see 122. — novis imperiis: *a change of government, i.e., from the Roman rule to that of the Belgians*. For the case see 107, a.

45. 13. a nonnullis etiam: supply *sollicitarentur*, from line 8.

45. 14. eis: sc. *ab* — *ad conducendos homines facultates*: opportunities for hiring mercenaries; 220.

45. 15. vulgo regna occupabantur: *the supreme power was commonly seized*. The plural *regna* is used because the reference is to various instances of usurpation. — *qui*: *and these (158, a)*, referring to *a potentioribus . . . habebant*, which is logically identical with *nonnullis* in line 13.

45. 16. imperio nostro: 126.

45. 17. Chapter 2. duas legiones: *namely XIII and XIV*. Caesar already had six legions, VII, VIII, IX, X, XI, and XII.

45. 18. inita aestate: *at the beginning of summer*. What is the lit. trans.? See 130.

45. 19. qui deduceret: sc. *eas, to lead them*; for the mood see 177. The antecedent of *qui* is *Q. Pedium*; he was Caesar’s grandnephew, the grandson of his sister.
45. 20. cum primum . . . inciperet: the indicative is ordinarily used with *cum primum*, but here the idea of time is not the only one, and the subjunctive is used as in a clause of attendant circumstances with *cum*; 185.

45. 21. Dat negotium: *he directed*; more lit., *assigned the task* (of finding out, etc.). For the tense of *dat* see 162.

Page 46. 1. Belgis: 114. — uti . . . cognoscant . . . faciunt: subst. clauses in apposition with *negotium*; for the mood see 199; for the tense, 171, ft. 1. — quae . . . gerantur: 211.

46. 2. se . . . certiorem faciant: *inform him*, referring to Caesar. *Se* is here the indirect reflexive; see 155. For the mood of *faciunt*, see 199.

46. 3. constanter: *uniformly, i.e., they all tell the same story.*

— manus: acc. plural, *bands of troops*.

46. 4. cogi . . . conducit: 204.

46. 5. dubitandum: sc. *esse sibi* (112). Be careful in translating. — quin . . . proficisceretur: *about marching against them* (i.e., the Belgians); a subst. clause, subject of *dubitandum* (*esse*); see 202. *Dubito* meaning "to hesitate" usually takes an infinitive.

46. 6. diebus: 139.

46. 8. CHAPTER 3. *Eo*: the adv., *thither, = ad fines Belgarum*. — de improviso: an adverbial phrase; see Vocab. under *improvisus*. — celerius omni opinione: *more quickly than any one expected*; lit., *more quickly than all expectation*. For the case of *opinione* see 117.

46. 9. venisset: for the mood see 185. — Galliae: 114. — ex Belgis: = *Belgarum*; 142, 4, d.

46. 10. legatos: as envoys; 82.

46. 11. qui dicent: 177. — se . . . permittere: 204, = *nos . . . permittimus* of the dir. disc. *Se* does duty both as subject and object of *permittere, that they committed themselves*; see note on *sequre*, p. 33, l. 10.

46. 13. neque . . . consensisse: *neque* is equivalent to *et non* and should be translated accordingly. Cf. p. 13, l. 19.

46. 14. neque: here translated *nor*, on account of the preceding *neque*. See the preceding note and always be careful to
observe the exact force of this word. — coniurasse: = coniuravisse.

46. 15. paratos esse: not the perf. infin., but the pres. infin. with the participial adj. as predicate; cf. est divisa, p. 1, l. 1. — et . . et . . et . . et: these words are correlative, but as there are more than two, the first et cannot be translated “both.” Omit the first et, and translate the others by and. — dare . . . facere, etc.: these infinitives depend on paratos, which has the same construction as paro.

46. 16. oppidis recipere: sc. eum, = Caesarem. On the case of oppidis see 119 and the Note. There is also a locative idea; see note on castris, p. 39, l. 29.

46. 18. cis Rhenum: i.e., on the west bank, towards Italy and Rome. — incolant: 207; for incolunt of the dir. disc. Since the ind. disc. is introduced by dicerent, we should expect the imperf. subj.; but see 173.

46. 19. Suessiones: object of deterrere. Read the sentence through carefully before attempting to translate it.

46. 20. eodem iure et isdem legibus: 121. Ius refers to the general principles of law, legibus to laws or statutes. For the mood and tense of utantur cf. incolant in line 18.

46. 21. unum imperium . . . habeant: and have; asyndeton, see 227.

46. 22. potuerint: the mood and tense would be the same in the dir. disc.; see 178 and 172.

46. 23. consentirent: 178; for the tense see 171.


46. 25. essent . . possent: 198. — quid . . possent: how strong they were as fighting men; more lit., to what extent they were able in war. For the case of quid see 97, Note. — sic: the following facts; lit., as follows.

46. 26. plerosque Belgas: that most of the Belgians; ind. disc. through sumerent, p. 48, l. 5. The Belgians had originally lived on the eastern side of the Rhine and had been influenced in their development by their nearness to the Germans (see Book I, Chap. 1), but they were probably a Celtic, not a Germanic people.
— a Germanis: abl. of source or origin; 142, 1, a. — Rhenum: 90 and Note.

46. 27. antiquus: an adverb; see Vocab. — ibi: i.e., on the western, or Gallic, bank of the Rhine.

46. 28. incolerent: for the mood and tense see 207. — solosque: not the subject of esse, but a predicate accusative; translate accordingly.

Page 48. 1. memoria: 139. — omnia Gallia vexata: when all (the rest of) Gaul was overrun.

48. 2. Teutonos Cimbrosque: see 76 and 77. — ingredi: from entering; infin. with subject acc., object of prohibuerint. Prohibeo, like other verbs of preventing, often takes a subst. clause introduced by quin, but Caesar and Cicero commonly use the infinitive.

48. 3. prohibuerint: this would be subj. in the dir. disc.; see 179. For the tense cf. potuerint, p. 46, l. 22. — qua ex fieri: and that the result of this was; more lit., and that from this fact it happened. — uti . . . sumerent: a subst. clause, the subject of fieri; 200. — memoria: 122.

48. 4. spiritus: see Vocabulary.

48. 6. omnia se habere explorata: that they had full information; lit., that they had everything ascertained. Explorata habere is nearly equivalent to exploravisse; see 218. For the infin. see 204.

48. 7. propinquitatibus affinitatibusque: 119. Note the meaning of the words; see Vocabulary.

48. 8. conjuncti: sc. cum eis, referring to the Belgians. — quisque: i.e., each chief of the various tribes which made up the Belgic nation.

48. 9. pollicitus sit: for the mood see 198; and for the tense, 172 and 173.

48. 10. cognoverint: for the mood see 207, and for the tense, 166, second Note, and note on pollicitus sit, line 9. — Plurimum . . . valere: were strongest; cf. quid . . . possent, p. 46, l. 25, and for the construction of plurimum see 91, Note.

48. 11. virtute, auctoritate, numero: 122.

48. 12. armata milia centum: = centum milia armatorum, a
hundred thousand armed men; lit., a hundred armed thousands. — pollicitos: sc. esse.

48. 13. electa . . sexaginta: = sexaginta milia electorum; cf. armata milia centum, line 12.

48. 14. sibi: 106. Sibi may be omitted in translating; it refers to Bellovacos. — suos: referring to the Remi, whose envoys are speaking.

48. 16. fuisse: had been, for fuit of the direct discourse. — nostra . . . memoria: 139. — Diviciacum: not the same, of course, as Diviciacus the Aeduan.

48. 17. cum: be careful in translating; read the sentence through.

48. 18. obtinuerit: do not trans. by the corresponding English word; see VOCABULARY.

48. 19. esse: was, for est of the dir. disc. — regem Galbam: the latter word is subject of esse, the former a predicate accusative.

48. 20. summam: a noun; see VOCAB. — voluntate: 126.


48. 22. totidem: sc. armata milia polliceri, promised the same number, etc. Do not take it with Nervios, which is the subject of polliceri understood.

48. 23. longissime absint: are furthest off, from the Rhine and the Remi. — quindecim milia Atrebates: sc. polliceri, and make Atrebates the subject; cf. totidem Nervios in line 22. So with the following names and numbers as far as the semi-colon in line 27.

48. 27. Condrusos, etc.: subjects of confecturos esse understood; sc. se (= Remos) as the subject of arbitrari, they thought that the Condrusi, etc. would furnish about 40,000 men.

48. 28. appellantur: indicative because the statement is made by Caesar the writer, and does not form part of the ind: disc.; see 208 and 14.

48. 30. Chapter 5. liberaliter oratione prosecutus: having addressed them (in a speech) in a friendly manner. For the case of oratione, see 119.
48. 31. senatum: Caesar applies this Roman term to the
council of the Gauls. — convenire . . adduci: 199, Note.

Page 49. 1. obsides: a predicate accusative; translate ac-
cordingly. — Quae omnia: for the translation of the relative
see 158.

49. 2. diligenter ad diem: punctually to a day, i.e., exactly
at the time designated by Caesar. — Diviciacum Aeduum: this
man, as the adjective Aeduum makes clear, is not the same as
the one mentioned on p. 48, l. 16.

49. 3. rei publicae . . . salutis: genitive governed by inter-
sit; see 105, a.

49. 4. manus hostium distineri: for the forces of the enemy to be
kept apart, or that the forces of the enemy be kept apart. Manus is
the subject of distineri, which is itself the subject of intersit; 213.

49. 5. ne . . . confligendum sit: 175 and 216. Be careful

49. 6. Id fieri posse: that this could be done; ind. disc., im-
plied in docet. Id = manus hostium distineri.

49. 7. introduxerint . . . coeperint: 209; standing for the
fut. perf. ind. of the dir. disc.

49. 8. His mandatis: with these instructions. Mandatum is
the noun; see Vocab. For the case see 126.

49. 10. coactas: the participle; trans. by a relative clause,
or by a verb coordinate with venire. — vidit: for the mood and
tense see 180. — ab eis . . . exploratoribus: depending on cog-
novit, not of course on abesse. In reading the sentence in Latin
make a pause after abesse; see note on Lisci Dumnorigem, p. 13,
l. 26.

49. 12. flumen Axonam: 90.

49. 13. ibi: i.e., in the territories of the Remi on the other
side of the Axona, near the modern village of Berry-au-Bac, where
remains of Caesar’s fortifications have been discovered.

49. 14. Quae res: this step or manœuvre of crossing the river.
Note that res must be translated in many different ways accord-
ing to the context; see note on ea res, p. 4, l. 25. — et . . . et
. . et: correlative. Omit the first one in translating; see note
on et . . . et . . . et, p. 46, l. 15. — muniebat: protected.
49. 15. post eum quae erant reddebat: made his rear safe from the enemy. *Tuta* is a predicate adjective, modifying ea understood, the antecedent of quae.

49. 16. commeatus . . . efficiebat: made it possible for supplies to be brought; lit., brought it about that supplies could be brought. *Comeatus* is the subject of posset, and the clause *ut . . . posset* is the object of *efficiebat*; for the mood see 200.

49. 18. In eo flumine: we should say, across that river. — *Ibi*: i.e., at the end of the bridge on the north side of the Axona. — *in altera parte*: on the other bank, i.e., on the south side of the river, from which he had crossed.

49. 20. in altitudinem: we should say in height. The Latin idiom is *in* with the acc., because the wall rises to that height; see 143, 1, b. — *pedum duodecim*: for the case see 102.

49. 21. duodevigiinti pedum: for the case cf. *pedum duodecim*, l. 20. This was the measure at the top; as the sides sloped, the width at the bottom was somewhat less.

49. 22. *Chapter 6*. *nomine*: by name; for the case see 129.

49. 23. *milia*: 91. — *passuum*: 99. — *ex itinere*: on their march. That is, the Remi turned aside from their march at this point to attack the town; cf. 142, 4, b. — *magno impetu*: 123.

49. 24. *Aegre . . . sustentatum est*: the attack was resisted with difficulty; 160.

49. 25. *Gallorum eadem . . . haec*: the manner of besieging a town which is used by the Gauls is the same as that employed by the Belgians, namely, the following; or the Gauls and the Belgians besiege towns in the same way, as follows. What sort of genitives are *Gallorum* and *Belgarum*? If necessary, see 97.

49. 26. *circumieicta multitudine*: 130; trans. by a verb correlative with *coepti sunt* and *nudatus est*, or by a clause introduced by after. — *totis moenibus*: the entire line of the walls, i.e., the whole town. For the case see 107, b.

49. 27. *coepti sunt*: with a pass. infin. the pass. form of *coepi* is regularly used; cf. p. 37, l. 25.

49. 28. *defensoribus*: 115. — *testudine facta*: 130; trans. by a perf. act. part. in English, or by a verb correlative with *succendunt* and *subruunt*. The *testudo* or *tortoise*, a formation
used also by the Romans, consisted in holding the shields overhead so that they overlapped and formed a covering like the shell of that animal; see the second illustration on Introd. p. xxix and the note on the Gallic phalanx, p. 18, l. 17.

49. 29. Quod: this, referring to the mode of attack which he has just described. — tum: in this case, or on the present occasion.

49. 30. conicerent: plural because of the plural idea in the collective noun multitudin; 85, Note.

49. 31. consistendi . . . nulli: no one was able to keep his place. Consistendi is the gen. of the gerund depending on potestas (219); for the case of nulli see 110.

Page 50. 1. Remus: in apposition with Iccius (82), one of the Remi, not part of the name.

50. 2. summa nobilitate et gratia: se. vir, a man of the highest rank and of the greatest influence; for the case see 128. — suos: his countrymen. — oppido: 107, a.

50. 3. praefuerat: nearly equal to praerat; the idea is that he had been in command when he had come to Caesar as an envoy, and of course he still was in command. — ex eis: 142, 4, d. — legati: pred. nom., as envoys.

50. 5. summittatur . . . posse: ind. disc., introduced by the verb of saying implied in nuntium mittit; saying that, unless, etc. Summittatur stands for a fut. ind. of the dir. disc. — sustinere: used intransitively, hold out.

50. 6. Chapter 7. Eo: thither, i.e., to Bibrax. — de media nocte: at midnight; 142, 3, c. — isdem ducibus: the same men as guides; ducibus is in apposition with eisdem, which is governed by usus (121). — usus: using; the perf. part. is sometimes used with about the force of a present.

50. 7. nuntii: pred. nom.; for the trans. cf. isdem ducibus, l. 6.

50. 8. subsidio: 113.

50. 9. Quorum adventu: through their arrival; 122. There is also an idea of time; see note on p. 14, l. 22. — cum: along with.

50. 10. propugnandi: 219. — accessit: was aroused in; lit., came to; some active verbs in Latin are best translated by English passives. — hostibus: 111.
50. 11. potiundi oppidi: gerundive, instead of the gerund potiundi oppido, and with the same meaning; 220.
50. 12. morati . . . depopulati: the perf. participles of deponent verbs are often equivalent to the English pres. act. part.; 216, Note.

Page 51. 1. quo: the adverb, = ad quos (vicos).
51. 2. omnibus copiis: 124. — a milibus passuum . . . duobus: by a kind of attraction the preposition governs not the place from which the distance is reckoned, but the word indicating the distance; i.e., ab (castris) duo passuum milia, whence ab duobus passuum milibus; cf. ante diem tertium Kal. (140). Minus does not affect the construction; see 118.
51. 4. milibus: abl. of comparison with amplius; what other case might have been used? See 118, Note.
51. 5. in latitudinem: see note on in altitudinem, p. 49, l. 20.
51. 7. Chapter 8. opinionem virtutis: reputation for valor; more lit., the opinion of their valor (which was held by others). What sort of a gen. is virtutis? See, if necessary, 98. — proelio supersedere: refrain from battle; for the case of proelio see 107, b.
51. 8. equestribus proeliis: to be taken with periclitabatur; 119. — quid hostis virtute posset: what the enemy's valor was; more lit., what the enemy were able in respect to valor. For the case of quid see 91, Note; for that of virtute, 129.
51. 9. quid nostri auderent: what the courage of our soldiers was; cf. the preceding note.
51. 10. intellexit: for the mood and tense see 180. — loco . . . idoneo: 130; trans. by a causal clause.
51. 11. ad aciem instruendam: governed by opportuno and idoneo; 220 and 219. — natura: by nature, naturally; more lit., in its nature (129).
51. 12. ubi: on which, equivalent to in quo, referring to collis. — paululum . . . editus: slightly elevated above the plain.
51. 13. tantum . . . quantum loci: as great a space as; loci depends on quantum (199). In English we should attach the word rather to "so much" (tantum), as in the translation of the phrase given above. — adversus: in front, i.e., in the direction
of the enemy. *Adversus* is here an adverb. — patebat . . .
redibat: 164.
51. 14. instructa: *when drawn up* in line of battle; appositive use of the part.; cf. 145.
51. 15. ex utraque parte: *on each side*; 142, 4, b. — lateris
defectus: *steep sides*; lit., declivities of side, or lateral declivities;
95. — in frontem: *in front*; lit., sloping (fastigatus) towards the
front; *i.e.*, towards the west. See Plan, p. 50.
51. 16. ad planitiem redibat: *sank to the level of the plain.*
51. 17. ab utroque latere: *cf. ex utraque parte*, l. 15. — transversam fossam: *a ditch at right angles* (to the length of the hill),
which was from east to west; see Plan, p. 50.
51. 18. passuum: *sc. in latitudinem*, and for the case see 102.
— ad extremas fossas: *at the ends of the trenches*, of course
the ends farthest from the camp; for the trans. of *extremas*
see 149.
51. 19. ibique: *and in them*, *i.e.*, *in castellis*. — tormenta:
a general term for hurling-engines or artillery; see 65, and note
the derivation of the word; see Vocabulary.
51. 20. instruxisset: *should draw up*; *a fut. perf. ind.* transferred to past time. For the mood see 211. — quod tantum
multitutidine posseant: *i.e.*, because of their superior numbers;
for the case of *tantum* and *multitudo* see note on *quid hostes
virtute posseant*, l. 8. *Posseant* is indicative because it gives the
reason of the writer as an explanation, and is not an essential
part of the sentence *ne . . . possent*; 208.
51. 21. a lateribus: *on the flanks*, to be taken with *circum-
venire*. — pugnantes: *while they were fighting.*
51. 22. possent: 175.
51. 23. duabus legionibus . . conscripserat: *the thirteenth
and fourteenth*; see p. 45, l. 17, and the note. These, as having
less experience, were given a less responsible position. The brunt
of the battle was to be borne by the veterans.
51. 24. quo: *adverb, anywhere*, modifying *eos duci, for them
to be led*, to be supplied as the subject of *esset*; *opus* is a pred.
nom. — esset: *for a fut. ind. of the direct form*, cf. *instruxisset*,
l. 20. *Esset* is subj. for the same reason as *instruxisset.*

51. 27. Chapter 9. non magna: of no great size.

51. 28. exercitum: to be taken both with nostrum and with hostium. — Hanc: governed by transient. — si. expectabant: were waiting to see whether; for the mood of transient see 198.

51. 29. si ab illis . . . in armis erant: a simpler order would be, parati in armis erant, ut, si . . . fieret, impeditos aggererentur. For the mood of fieret see 211; it stands for a fut. ind. in the thought of nostri.

Page 52. 2. proelio equestri . . . contendebatur: a cavalry battle was carried on; 160.

52. 3. neutri: neither side. — faciunt: 180 and 162. — secundio . . . nostris: and our men had had the upper hand in the cavalry battle; lit., the cavalry battle having been more favorable. For the case of nostris see 114.

52. 6. quod . . . demonstratum est: which, as has been shown, was in the rear of our camp. Demonstratum est is impersonal, having for its subject quod esse (213).

52. 8. eo consilio, ut: with the purpose of. For the case of eo consilio see 126, and with the expression cf. propterea quod, etc. — possent: see note on fieret, p. 51, l. 29. — castellum: at the end of the bridge; see p. 51, l. 19, and the Plan on p. 50.

52. 9. expugnarent . . . interscinderent: a subst. clause, in apposition with consilio; see 199.

52. 10. potuissent: cf. posset, l. 8; potuisset stands for a fut. perf., the force of which might be rendered by if this should have proved to be impossible.

52. 11. popularentur . . . prohiberent: (sc. ut) subst. clauses in apposition with consilio; cf. ut expugnarent, l. 9. — magno . . . usui: 113. — ad bellum gerendum: 219.

52. 12. commeatu: 115.

52. 13. Chapter 10. certior factus: when he was informed (of the design of the enemy). The phrase is used absolutely, instead of being followed, as it usually is, by an infin. with subject acc.

52. 14. levis armaturae Numidas: the light-armed Numidians;
for the construction of *levis armaturae* see 101. — *funditores sagittariosque*: 34; in Eng. we should insert *and* or *with* before this phrase (227).

52. 15. *ponte*: 119, Note. Abl. of "the way by which." — *ad eos*: i.e., the enemy. — *Acriter*. . . *pugnatum est*: 160. Do not translate literally; see 160.


52. 17. *per*: over; to be taken with *transire*.

52. 18. *conantes*: who tried, agreeing with *reliquos*, which is the object of *reppulerunt* (sc. nostri).

52. 20. *circumventos*: trans. by a verb correlative with *interfecerunt*.


52. 22. *spem se sefellisse*: that they were disappointed in their hope; lit., that the hope had disappointed them. — *intellexerunt*: 180. — *neque nostros*. . . *progredi*: and that our men would not advance; although *progredi* is present, the meaning of the verb gives it a future force; cf. "I am going" in English.

52. 24. *ipsos*. . . *deficere coepit*: they themselves were running short of provisions; lit., provisions were beginning to fail them themselves.

52. 25. *optimum*: a predicate adjective, agreeing with *domum suam quemque reverti*, that it was best for each one to return to his own home. For the case of *domum* (note the gender) see 93.

52. 26. *quorum in fines*. . . *convenirent*: trans. the relative clause *quorum*. . . *introduxissent* after *eos*, which is the antecedent of *quorum*. For the mood of *convenirent* see 199, and for the mood and tense of *introduxissent* cf. *potuissent*, l. 10.

52. 28. *ut*. . . *decertarent*. . . *uterentur*: depend on *constituerunt* in l. 25; for the mood see 175. — *suis*: what is to be supplied?

52. 30. *cum*: along with.

Page 53. 1. *quod*. . . *cognoverant*: *that they knew*, a subst. clause in apposition with *ratio*. Since *cognovit* has the force of
NOTES—BOOK II

a present, *cogoverant* is equivalent in meaning to a perfect or imperfect. For the mood see 196.

53. 2. *finibus*: dat. governed by *appropinquare*, on the same principle as *propinquus* (114).

53. 3. His *persuaderi ... non poterat*: these could not be persuaded. What is the lit. trans.? See 108. — *ut ... morarentur neque ... ferrent*: to remain longer and to fail to lend aid; lit., and not to lend aid; subst. clauses, subjects of *persuaderi*; for the mood see 199. *Neve* would be the usual connective of such clauses, but *neque* is used because the negative is closely connected with *ferret*; cf. *ut ... non deesset*, p. 39, l. 26, and the note.

53. 5. Chapter 11. *secunda vigilia*: 138. This would be from 9 to 12 at night. The meaning probably is, at the beginning of the third watch.

53. 6. *nullo imperio*: without any definite order and with no one in command; 126.

53. 7. *cum ... pateret ... properaret*: explanatory of *nullo ... imperio*; 186.

53. 8. *domum*: for the case cf. *domum*, cf. p. 52, l. 25. — *fecerunt ... videretur*: they made their departure seem like a flight; lit., they caused that their departure should seem. For the case of *fugae* see 114; for the mood and tense of *videretur*, 200.

53. 10. Caesar: note the position in the midst of the abl. abs. It may be translated, *Caesar, who was at once informed of this movement through spies, fearing treachery, etc.* On the trans. of *re* see note on *ea res*, p. 4, l. 25.

53. 11. *discederent*: 198. — *exercitum*: here = *pedites*, in contrast with *equitatum*. Or *exercitum equitatumque* may be translated, *the army including the cavalry*.

53. 12. *castris*: see note on p. 39, l. 29. — *confirmata re*: when the fact was established; i.e., that they were really retreating.

53. 13. *qui ... moraretur*: 177.

53. 14. *His*: plural, referring to the horsemen who made up the *equitatus*; for the case see 107, b.

53. 17. *Hi*: referring both to the horsemen under Pedius and
Cotta and to the three legions of infantry under Labienus. — novissimos: those in the rear, equivalent to novissimum agmen, in l. 14; the adj. is used as a subst.; 152, a.

53. 18. eorum fugientium: of them (i.e., novissimos) as they were fleeing, not “of those fleeing,” which would be expressed by the participle alone.

53. 19. cum: this clause explains the reason for the heavy losses of the enemy, namely, that those in front gave no help to those in the rear when they were attacked by the pursuing Romans; how should cum be translated? — ab extremo agmine: supply ei and see 149. — ad quos ventum erat: 160; the antecedent is ei understood. Do not trans. literally.

53. 21. priores: while those in front. Asyndeton; see 227. — viderentur . . continerentur: for the mood see 187, and Note.

53. 22. neque uilla: trans. as if it were et . . . nulla.

53. 23. exaudito . . . ordinibus: the first abl. abs. gives the cause of the second, their ranks being thrown into confusion on hearing the shouting (of those who were fighting in the rear). — omnes . . . ponerent: all sought safety in flight; lit., placed their protection in flight. For the case of sibi see 109; ponerent depends on cum in l. 19.

53. 24. tantam . . quantum . . spatium: killed as great a number of them as the continuance of daylight allowed; lit., as was the duration of the day.

53. 26. sub occasumque solis: but towards sunset. Note the position of -que, which is rarely appended to a monosyllabic preposition.

53. 27. ut erat imperatum: sc. eis and see 108.

53. 28. Chapter 12. Postridie eius diei: the day after the slaughter of the Belgae. Eius diei need not be translated.

53. 29. reciperent: could recover themselves; see 184.


54. 2. Noviodunum: a Celtic word meaning Newtown, a name which is common in various forms in many languages. — ex itinere: on the way; cf. ex itinere, p. 20, l. 2.
54. 3. vacuum a defensoribus: destitute of defenders.
54. 5. paucis defendentibus: though the defenders were few; what is the lit. trans.? See 130.
54. 6. vineas: see 63. — agere: to move up to the walls of the town. — quaeque . . . comparare: and to get ready the things which. The antecedent of quae is ea understood, the object of comparare. For the case of usui see 113.
54. 8. ex fuga: after their flight; 142, 3, c.
54. 10. aggere . . . constitutis: see 62 and 63.
54. 11. ante: the adverb. — Galli: subject of viderant and audierant. We should translate it in the main clause, Galli permoti . . . quae audierant, . . . mitunt.
54. 12. audierant: had heard of.
54. 13. petentibus . . . impetrant: since the Remi pleaded for them, they prevailed on him to spare them. The clause ut conservarentur is governed both by petentibus and impetrant. Cf. popvli Romani, p. 4, l. 10.
54. 15. Chapter 13. obsidibus: in apposition with primis and filiis; translate accordingly. Primis is used as a substantive, = principibus; 152, a.
54. 18. Qui cum: when they, i.e., the Bellovaci.
54. 21. maiores natu: the older men, the elders. For the case of natu see 129.
54. 22. voce significare: to indicate by (the tone of) their voice, since the Romans could not understand their language.
54. 23. venire . . . contendere: with almost a future force; see note on progredi, p. 52, l. 22.
54. 25. accessisset . . . poneret: note the tenses. — pueri: here means children (of both sexes).
54. 26. passis manibus: with outstretched hands; 126. — suo more: as was their custom, 127; the phrase is to be taken with the sentence passis manibus . . . petierunt; i.e., to stretch out their hands was their way of begging for peace.
54. 28. Chapter 14. Pro his: in behalf of these, i.e., the Bellovaci as a whole.
54. 29. *eum*: *i.e.*, Caesar. — *facit verba*: *made a plea*; 162 and Note.

54. 30. *omni tempore*: 137. — *in fide atque amicitia*: *i.e.*, had been faithful friends.

Page 55. 1. *redactos*: part. agreeing with *Aeduos*; trans. by a clause introduced by *after*.

55. 2. *perferre*: note the tense, and trans. accordingly. — *et . . . et*: correlative; *not only . . . but even*.

55. 4. *Qui*: *that those who had been*. The antecedent of *qui* is *eos* understood, the subject of *profugisse*. — *eius consili principes*: *the ringleaders in that plot*. — *intellegere . . . intulisset*: for the moods see 187 and 198.

55. 6. *Petere*: first in the sentence for emphasis; to find the subjects read the sentence through carefully.

55. 7. *sua*: *his habitual, his characteristic*; for the case of *clementia* and *mansuetudine* see 121; for the mood of *utatur*, 199. Note that Caesar from this point on uses the primary tenses, instead of the regular secondary tenses, for vividness or for variety; see 173.

55. 8. *Quod si . . . fecerit*: *if he should do this*; *quod* is the rel. pron. having for its antecedent the clause *ut . . . utatur*; *fecerit* stands for the fut. perf. ind. of the dir. disc.

55. 9. *amplificaturum*: supply *eum* (= *Caesarem*) and *esse*. — *quorum*: the antecedent is *Belgas*.

55. 10. *sustentare consuerint*: with *auxiliis atque opibus* may be translated *on whose help and power (or powerful aid; see 225) they were wont to rely*; lit., *by whose aid* (119) *they were wont to hold out*. For the tense of *consuerint* see 166, second Note.

55. 12. Chapter 15. *honoris Diviciaci . . . causa*: *for the sake of doing honor to*, etc.; for the case of *Diviciaci* and *Aeduarum* see 98; for that of *honoris*, which is governed by *causa*, 95.

55. 13. *eos*: the Bellovaci. — *recepturum . . . conservaturum*: *sc. esse*.

55. 14. *civitas*: that of the Bellovaci. — *magna auctoritate multitudine*: observe the difference between the two constructions. For the former see 128; for the latter, 129.

55. 17. *ex oppido*: *i.e.*, from Bratuspantium.
NOTES—BOOK II

55. 20. Eorum: *i.e.*, of the Ambiani. — quorum . . . quaerere: note the order, = *cum Caesar de eorum,* etc.
55. 21. sic: *the following facts;* more lit., *as follows.*
55. 23. ad luxuriam pertinentium: *which encouraged luxurious living;* lit., *pertained to.*
55. 24. eis rebus: *through such things;* 122. Since *relanguescere* is practically passive in force, were weakened (note the following *remitti*), the abl. might be referred to 119. — *eorum:* we might have expected *suos,* referring to the subject of *existimarent;* cf. note on *cum eis,* p. 5, l. 20.
55. 25. esse: *supply as subject eos (= Nervios);* homines is a pred. acc. — magnaeque virtutis: 101. *Note that the phrase is parallel with feros.*
55. 27. dedissent . . . proieissent: might be subjunctive also in the dir. disc.; see 188. — patriam: here the adj.; see Vocabulary.

Page 56. i. Chapter 16. eorum: *i.e.,* Nerviorum. — tri-duum: *for three days;* 91.
56. 3. milia passuum decem: *amplius* does not affect the construction; see 118 and 91.
56. 6. his utrisque: *both of these,* referring to the Atrebates and Viromandui; for the case see 106. — uti . . . experientur: a subst. clause object of *persuaserant;* 199.
56. 9. quique: *and those who;* the antecedent of *qui* is *eos* understood, object of *conicisse.*
56. 10. eum locum: *a place;* strictly *eum locum* means *such a place* (as was unapproachable). — quo: the adverb, equivalent to *in quem* (locum). — exercitui: 110.
56. 11. esset: would be subj. in dir. disc.; see 179.
56. 14. ex dediticiis . . . Gallis: *of those of the Belgians and of the rest of the Gauls who had surrendered.* Dediticiis is here an adjective; see Vocabulary.
56. 15. una: the adverb.
56. 16. eorum dierum consuetudine ... perspecta: having noticed the customary marching order of our army during those days. Consuetudine is limited by eorum dierum and itineris, and nostri exercitus limits itineris. To have so many genitives in a single clause is unusual.
56. 19. impedimentorum ... numerum: a great amount of baggage. Numerum is used with reference to the animals by which the baggage was transported.
56. 20. neque esse quicquam negoti: and that there was no difficulty. In Latin the negative is attached as usual to the conjunction. Here esse really has a future force; see note on progredi, p. 52, l. 22, and cf. the following note on venisset . . . abessent.
56. 21. venisset . . . abessent: note the tenses, standing respectively for the fut. perf. and the fut. of the dir. disc.
56. 22. hanc . . adoriri: in attacking this, i.e., the first legion. Adoriri is the subject of esse in l. 20; see 113. The literal meaning is to attack this would be no trouble. — sub sarcinis: i.e., before the soldiers had time to lay aside the packs which they carried on the march. See 39. — qua pulsa impedimentisque direptis: trans. qua by a demonstrative and the abl. abs. by a clause introduced by when.
56. 23. futurum ut . . auderent: equivalent to reliquos . . non ausuros esse. Ut . . auderent is a subst. clause, the subject of futurum (esse); see 200 and Note. Cf. p. 33, l. 16, and the note. — contra: adverb.
56. 25. Adiuvabat . . consilium: it added weight to the advice; or weight was added (by the fact that). The subject of adiuvabat is the subst. clause quod . . . effecerant. What is the literal meaning of adiuvabat?
56. 26. quod: the conjunction, meaning that, or the fact that; see the preceding note. — equitatu nihil possent: were not strong in cavalry. For the construction of equitatu and nihil see note on p. 51, l. 8; how should cum be translated?
56. 27. neque enim: and indeed . . not. Enim does not have here its usual meaning, “for.” — ei rei: i.e., cavalry forces;
for the case see 107, a. — quicquid valent copiis: whatever strength they have is in their infantry forces. For the construction of quicquid, which limits both possunt and valent, cf. equitatu nihil possunt, l. 26.


Page 57. i. venissent: for the fut. perf. ind., in case they should come; for the mood see 210.

57. 2. teneris arboribus incisis, etc.: this long sentence might well be divided into two at this point, in some such way as this: the Nervii devised the following plan. When they had notched young trees, etc.

57. 3. in latitudinem: sideways. The trees were notched (cut into) only enough to make it possible to bend them into a horizontal position (inflexis). The branches then grew out on each side and the spaces between them were filled in with thorn bushes, making a dense wall.

57. 4. effecerant: the subject is Nervii, p. 56, l. 26; but if the sentence is divided (see note on l. 2 above), supply ei, they. For the mood see 196. — ut. praebenter: a subst. clause, object of effecerant; 200. — instar muri: like a wall, lit., the image of a wall. Instar is an indeclinable noun (see Vocab.), in apposition with munimentum.

57. 5. quo: the adverb, equivalent to in quod (munimentum). For the mood of posset see 179.

57. 6. His rebus: by this state of things, i.e., by the presence of these hedges. Translate after cum, remembering that cum frequently follows one or more words of its clause. How should cum be translated?

57. 7. non omittendum: sc. esse and sibi (112), referring to the Nervii.

57. 9. Chapter 18. haec: as follows. — quem locum: Caesar frequently repeats the antecedent in the relative clause; see p. 5, l. 24, and the note.

57. 10. aequaliter: evenly, i.e., the slope was even from the summit of the hill (a summo) to its foot. — ad flumen . . . vergebat: i.e., the slope of the hill ended at the river Sabis
(Sambre). For the tense of *vergebát*, which of course should not be translated by the progressive form, see 164.

57. 12. *pari acclívitate*: for the case see 128. The second hill was of the same height and of a similar slope to the first. — *nascebatur*: arose; for the tense cf. *vergebát*, l. 11, and the note. — *adversus huic et contrarius*: opposite this (i.e., the first hill) and on the other side of the river. For the case of *huic* see 114.

57. 13. *passus . ducentos*: 91. The phrase modifies *apertus*. — *infímus*: at the bottom, i.e., the lower part of the slope; on the trans. see 149.

57. 14. *apertus*: opposed to *silvestris*. — *a superiore parte*: in translating *a* remember *a dextra* and the like. — *ut*: so that. The sentence preceding a clause of result often contains a word meaning so, but not always.

57. 16. *secundum*: preposition; see Vocab. Note the derivation of the word, which throws light on the various meanings of *secundus* and *secundum*.

57. 18. *pedum . trium*: 102. The genitive is used in predicate; see Note to 103.


57. 20. *ratio ordoque*: the arrangement and order. These two words form one idea, and hence take a singular verb (*habebat*); see 85, Note. — *aliter . . . ac*: different from that which; lit., otherwise than. For the meaning of *ac* see Vocabulary. — *se habebat, was*; lit., *had itself*.

57. 21. *ad Nervios*: acc. with *ad* instead of the dative, because the verb really means *to carry news*. — *hostibus*: for the case see note on p. 53, l. 2.

57. 22. *consuetudine sua*: 127.

57. 23. *expeditas*: without baggage, appositive adj. (145). Because he was approaching the enemy, Caesar relieved six legions of the packs which they ordinarily carried on the march, that they might be ready for a sudden attack; see 38.

57. 24. *collocarat*: = *collocaverat*. Note the meaning of the word, which is derived from *locus*; see Vocab. — *inde*: the next; i.e., after the baggage. — *quae proxime conscirptae erant*: the thirteenth and fourteenth. These newly enrolled legions
were given less responsible positions than the veterans. See note on p. 51, l. 23.

57. 25. praesidio: 113.

57. 27. Equites nostri: these had been sent on ahead of the main body; see l. 19.

Page 58. 1. Cum: has the force of while and the verbs recipierent, facerent, and auderent denote repeated action; cf. identidem, l. 1, and the note on interim, l. 4 below. — se: to be taken with recipierent. — illi: the enemy. — identidem: again and again, as they were beaten by the Romans. — in silvas . . . ex silva: note the difference in number; so in English we say either wood or woods.

58. 3. neque nostri . . . auderent: trans. as if it were et nostri . . . non auderent. — quam quem ad finem . . . pertinebant: for ad eum finem, ad quem. That is, the Romans did not venture to follow the enemy into the woods, but pursued them only to the end of the open ground mentioned on p. 57, l. 13.

58. 4. cedentes: se. eos, them in their retreat, or as they retreated. See note on eorum fugientium, p. 53, l. 18. — interim: i.e., while this was going on. The word implies that the acts denoted by recipierent, facerent, and auderent were repeated several times; see note on cum, l. 1.

58. 5. legiones sex: the six legions; in light marching order (expeditas); see p. 57, l. 23. — dimenso: has a passive force, though from a deponent verb; see 216, second Note. It may be translated, however, having laid out the work, i.e., having marked out the form and limits of the camp.

58. 7. prima: for the trans. see 149.

58. 8. visa sunt: here passive in meaning (see Vocab.). For the mood and tense see 180. — quod tempus: the time which. Really tempus is the subject of convenerat, which is best translated by an English passive, had been agreed on; the antecedent of quod is the clause ubi . . . visa sunt, which is repeated in tempus, i.e., eo tempore (ubi . . . visa sunt), quod tempus convenerat.

58. 9. committendi proeli: for beginning the battle; 220. Proeli is governed by tempus, and committendi agrees with proeli. — ut: in translating note the mood of the following verbs.
NOTES — BOOK II 279

58. 10. ipsi sese confirmaverant: i.e., had screwed their courage to the sticking point.

58. 11. omnibus copiis: 126.

58. 13. incredibili celeritate: 123. — ut: so that; see note on incredibili lenitate, p. 9, l. 19.

58. 14. ad silvas: at the (edge of the) woods. They could not be seen while they were still in silvis. — in manibus nostris: right before us, close at hand. The distance was about three quarters of a mile.

58. 16. adverso colle: up the hill, on which the Roman camp was being laid out; lit., the hill being against them.

58. 17. in opere: i.e., of laying out and fortifying the camp.

58. 18. Chapter 20. Caesari: 116. Note the emphatic position of the word. — omnia: everything; the various things referred to are given in detail in the rest of the sentence; the adj. is used as a subst.; 152, a. — vexillum: the red flag which was the signal for beginning a battle; see 47.

58. 19. proponendum: with this and the following gerundives supply erat (erat). — signum tuba dandum: i.e., the signal to form in line of battle, and for each soldier to take his proper place.

58. 20. qui: supply ei, subject of arcessendi (erant). — paulo longius: to some little distance; lit., somewhat farther (than usual). — aggeris: materials for the rampart (of the camp); see Vocab.

58. 21. milites cohortandi: a regular preliminary to any important battle, often taking the form of a set speech.

58. 22. signum: i.e., the signal to begin fighting. Three signals are referred to in this sentence. First, the display of the vexillum, indicating that there was to be a battle and warning the soldiers to get ready; second, the signal on the tuba, for the soldiers to take their places in the ranks; lastly, the signal (also given by the tuba) for the actual beginning of the fight. This was the regular mode of procedure, but as the next sentence shows, the greater part of it had to be omitted on this occasion.

58. 25. His difficultatibus . subsidio: 113.— duae res: two things, explained by (1) scientia atque usus militum, which form one idea, and (2) by the subst. clause quod . . . vetuerat.

58. 26. quod . . . poterant: a causal clause explaining
scientia atque usus, and accounting for the admirable discipline of Caesar's troops.

58. 27. quid . . oporteret: object of praebere; for the mood see 198.

58. 29. singulis legionibus singulos legatos . . . discedere: the various lieutenants to leave their respective legions. See note on p. 40, l. 3.

58. 30. nisi munitis castris: until after the camp had been finished; lit., unless the camp having been fortified. — Hi: the legati.

Page 59. 1. nihil: = an emphatic non.

59. 2. videbantur: seemed best.

59. 4. Chapter 21. necessariis rebus imperatis: after giving such orders as were (absolutely) necessary.

59. 5. quam in partem: = in eam partem, in quam.

59. 6. non longiore quam uti . . . retinerent: i.e., he confined himself to this one exhortation. Uti retinerent is a subst. clause, the object of some word meaning to urge (or the like), implied in oratione cohortatus; 199.

59. 7. virtutis: 98.

59. 8. neu: for neve, = et ne.

59. 9. -que: but. — non longius . . . aberant quam . . . pos-set: were not more than a spear's throw off; lit., were not farther off than (the point) to which a spear could be thrown. For the mood of posset see 179.

59. 11. in alteram partem: note alteram, not aliam (see Vocab.); in the opposite direction, namely to the right wing, where the twelfth and eighth legions were; see Plan, p. 59.

59. 12. pugnantibus: supply eis, and see note on cedentes, p. 58, l. 4. For the case see 107, b.

Page 60. 1. tauta: such, not "so great."

60. 2. ad dimicandum: 219. — ad insignia accommodanda: putting on their decorations, referring to the crests of the helmets, which were taken off when the army was on the march. In a battle they were important for identifying the members of the various legions. For the constr. see 220.

60. 3. ad galeas induendas: on the march the helmets were slung around the soldiers' necks; 27. — scutis: 95.
60. 4. tegimenta: the metal shields were protected, when not in use, by coverings; 29. — defuerit: for the mood see 178; for the tense, 172. — Quam: to be taken with partem, into whatever part (of the field).

60. 5. casu devenit: chanced to come; lit., came by chance. Do not translate literally. — quaeque: quae + -que, and what.

60. 6. ad haec constitit: by these (standards) he took his place. — suis: sc. signis. The soldiers did not waste time in trying to find their own places in the ranks, but attached themselves to whatever standard they came to.

60. 8. Chapter 22. ut: in translating, note the mood of the following verb.

60. 9. rei militaris ratio atque ordo: i.e., the arrangement (ordo) approved by the theory (ratio) of military science; 225.

60. 11. aliae alia in parte: some in one place and others in another; sc. legiones with aliae. — saepebus: those described above, p. 57, lines 2 ff.

60. 13. neque ... nec ... neque: correlative; the main sentence begins with the first neque, which should be translated not. Cf. et ... et ... et, p. 46, l. 15, and the Note. — certa subsidia: regular bodies of reserves; i.e., bodies of reserves in definite places, where they would be available in time of need. — collocari: stationed; note the derivation of the word. Collocari depends on poterant at the end of the sentence. — quid: predicate of opus esse.


60. 15. rerum iniquitate: i.e., such difference in conditions in different parts of the field; note the meaning of iniquitate.

60. 16. quoque: i.e., the conditions were different (see preceding note), and the results were also different.

60. 17. Chapter 23. ut: in translating note the mood of the following verb.

60. 18. acie: a form of the genitive singular, instead of aciei. — cursu ac lassitudine: i.e., weariness caused by their running down the hill, through the river, and up on the other side; 225.
60. 19. vulneribus confectos: *exhausted by wounds*, inflicted by the soldiers of the ninth and tenth legions.

60. 20. ea pars: *i.e.*, of the Roman line of battle, namely the left wing.

60. 21. conantes: *as they attempted to cross*, supply *eos*, object of *insecuti*.

60. 22. impeditam: *in confusion*; lit., *impeded* by the circumstances referred to in *cursu . . . confectos*, l. 18.

60. 23. Ipsi: *they themselves*, *i.e.*, the soldiers of the ninth and tenth legions.

60. 24. locum iniquum: *since the enemy were now on higher ground than they.* — *resistentes redintegrato proelio*: the abl. abs. is to be taken with *resistentes*, *making a stand and renewing the battle*.

60. 25. alia in parte: *namely, the center*.

60. 26. diversae: *separately, i.e.*, fighting independently of each other, and at some little distance apart, not together like the ninth and tenth legions.

60. 27. ex loco superiore: *leaving the higher ground*, in pursuit of the Veromandui; cf. *ex itinere*, p. 54, l. 2.

60. 28. in ipsis . . . ripis: *right on the banks*; see r56, a.

60. 29. a fronte . . . parte: be careful of the translation. — *castris . . . nudatis*: by the victory of the eighth, ninth, tenth, and eleventh legions and their pursuit of the enemy down to and across the river.

Page 61. 1. cum . . . constitisset: r85. The clause may be translated by a participial clause, *the eleventh legion having taken its position on the right wing*, etc.

61. 2. magno . . intervallo: the phrase qualifies *ab ea*; lit., (the seventh legion) *had taken its place* (distant), *from it* (the eleventh) *by no great interval*. For the case see r25.

61. 3. confertissimo agmine: *in close order*; for the trans. of the superlative see note on p. 15, l. 10; for the case r26.

61. 4. summam imperi: *i.e.*, the chief command of the united forces. *Summam* is the noun; for the case of *imperi* see 99.

61. 5. quorum: = *Nerviorum*. — *ab aperto latere*: *on the un-
protected flank. — circumvenire: depends on coepit at the end of the sentence.

61. 6. sumnum castrorum locum: the high ground where the camp was located; for the case of castrorum see 100.


61. 8. cum ... una: along with; cf. una cum, p. 39, l. 12. — fuerant: had been, i.e., when they were last mentioned; note the tense, and cf. the following dixeram.

61. 9. pulsos: sc. esse. — dixeram: I had said; i.e., at the time when he was writing of that part of the engagement. See note on fuerant, l. 8. — cum ... reciprent: as they were returning (185). They had been routed and scattered on the other side of the river (see p. 58, l. 12), and in order to return to the camp they had to cross the river and climb the hill on which the camp was placed.

61. 10. adversis: face to face; i.e., before the gates of the Roman camp.

61. 11. a decumana ... iugo collis: these two expressions refer to the same place, from the rear gate, which was on the crest of the hill. Though the porta decumana was at the rear of the camp, the hill and the camp sloped to such a degree that the calones could look over it and see what was going on at the foot of the hill. See 52.

61. 12. nostros victores: nostros is used as a substantive and victores as an adj., our victorious troops; 152, a, and Note.

61. 13. praedandi egressi: thinking that the battle was practically over and that the Romans were everywhere victorious. For the construction of praedandi see 219 and the Note. — cum respexissent ... vidissent: on looking back and seeing (185).

61. 15. praecipites: headlong, agreeing with calones, but having the force of an adverb (147); or it may be translated, took to headlong flight.

61. 16. qui ... veniebant: referring to the baggage train, guarded by the thirteenth and fourteenth legions, which was just coming to the camp from the rear side.
61. 17. *oriebatur*: singular because *clamor fremitusque* form one idea; see 85, Notc. — *alii aliam in partem*: in different directions; lit., some in one direction, others in another, referring to the baggage carriers. — *ferebantur*: fled; lit., were carried. Observe that a Latin passive is sometimes best translated by an English active, and vice versa.

61. 18. *Treveri*: here the adjective, modifying *equites*; see Vocabulary.

61. 19. *quorum*: the antecedent is not *equites*, but *Treverorum* (implied in the adjective *Treveri*). — *virtutis opinio*: reputation for valor. — *singularis*: unparalleled, second to none; note the exact meaning of the word.

61. 20. *a civitate*: collective nouns are frequently put in the ablative of agency with *ab* (116), as here. *Civitate* = *civibus*. — *cum*: do not be misled as to the meaning of this word by the following abl. Read the sentence through. For the case of *multitudine* see 119. For the trans. of *cum* *vidissent* see note on *cum* . . *respexissent*, l. 13.

61. 21. *legiones*: the seventh and twelfth. Coming to the camp from the rear, the Treveri did not notice the victory of the rest of Caesar's forces.

61. 22. *circumventas teneri*: completely surrounded; lit., held surrounded.

61. 23. *Numidas*: previously referred to as *sagittarii*; see p. 57, l. 27. — *diversos*: the participle from *diverto*.

61. 24. *desperatis nostris rebus*: despairing of our fortunes (130), i.e., thinking that we (the Romans) had lost the day.

61. 25. *pulsos superatosque*: sc. *esse*; the infs. depend on *nuntiaverunt* at the end of the sentence; 204. — *castris impedimentisque*: 121.

61. 26. *renuntiaverunt*: carried back the news; note the force of *re*-

61. 28. Chapter 25. *a ... cohortatione*: after encouraging. A is really local in its meaning, *he set out from the encouraging of the tenth legion*; but a temporal sense is also implied in the context. It was in this way that *ab* acquired its temporal meaning. Read this long sentence through carefully before attempt-
ing to translate it. In English it should be divided into several shorter sentences.

61. 29. ubi: what is the verb depending on ubi? See, if necessary, 180. — signis collatis. confertos: giving the reason for sibi. esse impedimento.

Page 62. 2. impedimento: 113.

62. 3. quartae cohortis: this cohort, which was on the extreme left of the front line, was especially exposed to the attack of the enemy.

62. 4. signo amisco: the loss of the standard was always considered a disgrace; see 49.

62. 6. primipilo: the chief centurion, really the centurion of the first maniple of the first cohort, who, according to the system of advancement in the Roman army, was the ranking centurion of the legion; see 23.

62. 8. tardiores: somewhat slow, a common force of the comparative; see 150. — nonnullus a novissimis: some of those in the rear; a novissimis is nearly equivalent to a partitive genitive.

62. 10. neque: correlative with et, did not cease and were pressing on. Neque cannot be translated "neither," and it is frequently not the best translation; see note on p. 13, l. 19. — subeuntes: depends on intermittere and is nearly equivalent in meaning to subire.

62. 11. rem esse in angusto: that affairs were in a critical condition; angusto is the adjective used as a substantive; sc. loco; 152, b.

62. 12. vidit: a repetition of vidit in l. 2, on account of the length of the sentence.

62. 13. posset: would be subj. in the dir. disc.; see 179, and note the meaning of esse. — a novissimis uni militi: from one of the soldiers in the rear; a novissimis is here equivalent to a partitive genitive; cf. the same expression in l. 8. For the case of militi see 111.

62. 14. quod . . . venerat: the mention of the fact that Caesar had brought no shield with him shows that the Roman officers carried shields, as we know from other sources.

62. 15. nominatim: by name, showing Caesar's personal ac-
quaintance with his men. His biographer Suetonius testifies to the strong affection which the rank and file had for Caesar, and to their devotion to him. He tells us that when the Civil War with Pompey began, the soldiers gave Caesar their services without pay, supplying their own provisions, and that each centurion equipped a horseman. During the whole war not a single soldier deserted, and many, when taken prisoner, refused to save their lives by serving against Caesar. They endured incredible hardships with cheerfulness and fought with the utmost valor. The officers were not all so loyal. Labienus, for example, fought on Pompey's side.

62. 16. manipulos laxare: to open up the maniples, i.e., to fight in more open order, so as to give each man more room. On the maniples see 17, and for the derivation of the word, 46.

62. 17. quo . . . possent: 176.—Cuius adventu . . . animo: the abl. abs. denotes cause. The following cum-clause is also causal; cum may be translated by as for variety.

62. 19. pro se quisque: each man individually, or every single man.—etiam in extremis suis rebus: even though exposed to the greatest personal danger, lit., even in his greatest danger.

62. 22. Chapter 26. cum . . . vidisset: seeing; 185.—iuxta: near by; i.e., near the twelfth legion, which Caesar had just rallied.

62. 24. legiones: referring to the seventh and the twelfth legions.

62. 25. conversa signa . . . inferrent: should wheel about and charge; lit., should bear (forward) their reversed standards. The idea is not clear, but apparently the two legions faced in opposite directions, so as to protect each other's rear. Coniungerent and inferrent are the verbs of subst. clauses, which are a second object of monuit; 199.—Quo facto cum: since by this manoeuvre; quo facto is an abl. abs., denoting means.

62. 27. aversi: in the rear; lit., lest they (when) turned away should be surrounded.

62. 29. legionum duarum: the thirteenth and fourteenth.

62. 30. fuerant: had been, according to the original arrangement of the line of march. See p. 57, lines 24 ff.—praesidio:
113. — proelio nuntiato, cursu incitato: having started to run at full speed when they heard of the battle; the first abl. abs. gives the reason for the action denoted by the second.

Page 63. i. castris . . . potitus: Labienus with the ninth and tenth legions had driven the Atrebates across the river, and had captured the camp of the enemy there; see Plan, p. 59. For the case of castris see 121.

63. 2. ex loco superiore: from the higher ground, on which the enemy’s camp was located. — gerentur: 198.

63. 3. subsidio: cf. praesidio, p. 62, l. 30.

63. 4. Qui: and they, referring to the soldiers of the tenth legion. — quo in loco res esset: the state of affairs; lit., in what situation the affair was. For the mood of esset and versaretur see 198. Note the number of versaretur, since the three subjects form one general idea; see 85, Note.

63. 6. nihil . . . fecerunt: spared no efforts to reach the scene of action as quickly as possible; more lit., left nothing undone in the way of speed. For the case of reliquii see 99; of celeritate, 129.

63. 8. Chapter 27. rerum: in the situation; lit., of affairs; 98.

63. 9. qui: sc. ei, those who. — procubuisserunt: 211.

63. 10. scutis: abl. governed by innixi; 119, Note. — redintegrarent: 178.

63. 11. perterritos: panic-stricken; note the force of per-. — etiam inermes: with adversative force, even though unarmed. — armatis: supply hostibus; 107, b. Note the contrast between inermes and armatis, which is heightened by placing the two words side by side.

63. 12. occurrerent: depends on ut, in l. 9. — equites vero: while the cavalry. We have a sort of climax: the camp followers were brave, the cavalry outdid themselves, but the enemy performed prodigies of valor.

63. 13. omnibus in locis . praeferrent: tried to show themselves superior to the legionary soldiers. Praeferrent depends on ut, in l. 9. Pugnae modifies locis.

63. 15. At hostes: see note on equites vero, l. 12.

63. 16. primi: i.e., those in the front ranks.
63. 17. iacentibus: those who had fallen, depending on insisterent; 107, b. — insisterent . . . pugnarent: 178.

63. 18. his: and that when these (in turn) had been laid low. Asyndeton; see 227. The force of ut in line 16 is continued through remitterent.

63. 19. qui superessent: the survivors. The antecedent of qui is ei understood, subject of conicerent. For the mood see 211. — ut: adverb, as, as if. — conicerent . . remitterent: in the same construction as insisterent and pugnarent above, see note on his in l. 18.

63. 20. pila intercepta remitterent: caught and threw back the pikes of the Romans. Unless the pilum missed its mark, it was generally useless, at least temporarily, after it had once been cast, since the point, which was of iron, bent; sec 32. — ut non . . deberent: a clause of result in general dependence on the preceding sentence. The order and the sense of the passage show that nequiquam is emphatic, so that it ought not to be thought that it was without reason (i.e., reasonable hope of success) that men of such valor dared, etc. There is an emphasis also on homines tntae virtutis that it is somewhat difficult to bring out. The idea is that the remarkable courage of the enemy showed that the risks which they took were not wholly unreasonable ones, and that but for the discipline and valor of the Romans their desperate enterprise might have been crowned with success. The sentence is somewhat carelessly written, the use of ut as an adverb, the omission of the conjunction ut in l. 18, and the appending of another result clause in a different relation from that of the preceding ones are decidedly awkward. See note on p. 31, l. 2 (last part).

63. 21. homines: subject of ausos esse, while homines . . ausos esse is the subject of deberet. Taking no account of the emphasis of individual words, the order of the thought is: ut non iudicari deberet homines tntae virtutis nequiquam ausos esse, etc.

63. 23. quae . . redegerat: for these things, difficult as they were, the greatness of their courage had rendered easy; more lit., had rendered easy from (being) most difficult. Facilia is a predicate adj.
63. 25. Chapter 28. prope ad internecionem: this seems to be an exaggeration, since five years later the Nervii sent a large force to join in the general revolt of Gaul against Caesar. Caesar, however, believed the statement of the Nervii themselves (see below, note on ex sescentis, p. 64, l. 3). On the general subject see note on p. 31, l. 2.

63. 26. redacto: agrees in gender and number with the nearer of the two subjects, nomine.

63. 28. coniectos: sc. esse. — dixeramus: we had said, before beginning the description of the battle; on the plural see note on demonstravimus, p. 45, l. 1.

63. 29. impeditum . . tutum: predicate adjectives with nihil (sc. esse) that nothing stood in the way of the victors, etc.; i.e., that no place of retreat could save them from the pursuing Romans. For the case of victoribus and victis see 109.

Page 64. 1. consensu: 126.

64. 3. ex sescentis: to be taken with sese redactos esse. This statement bears out that of Caesar on p. 63, l. 25 (see note on prope ad internecionem); but it was evidently an exaggeration, designed to excite pity and get favorable terms of surrender.

64. 4. vix ad: we should reverse the order of these two words in English.

64. 6. usus: sc. esse; nom. since the subject is the same as that of videretur, on which usus depends.

64. 8. uti: note the quantity. What does it indicate? — ab iniuria et maleficio: sc. eorum, referring to the Nervii; 99.

64. 10. Chapter 29. cum: the conjunction, in spite of the following abl.; cf. p. 16, l. 8, and the note. — omnibus copiis: 126.

64. 12. ex itinere: i.e., they turned back from their march and went home.

64. 13. in unum oppidum: at the junction of the Sabis (Sambre) and Mosa (Meuse) rivers, the modern Namur. See Plan.

64. 14. Quod cum: although this.

Page 65. 3. ducentorum pedum: 102; amplius does not affect the construction. — relinquebatur: imperfect of description;
164. — *quem locum*: *this place*; *i.e.*, the accessible side of their stronghold.

65. 4. *duplici altissimo*: two adjectives modifying one noun are usually connected by *et*, but *duplici* and *muro* form one idea; trans. *a double wall of great height*. — *tum ... collocabant*: *they were at that time placing*, progressive imperfect; see 163, and cf. *relinquebatur*, l. 3. Note the difference between these two uses of the imperfect. — *magni ponderis*: 101.

65. 7. *iter ... facerent*: *were on their way.*

65. 8. *agere ac portare*: *to drive and carry*, referring to baggage and to beasts of burden and other cattle.

65. 9. *citra*: *i.e.*, on the west side, towards the Roman Province. — *custodiam ex suis ac praesidium*: *a guard and a garrison from their own (number).* Or a force of men to guard it (225).

65. 10. *sex milia hominum*: *(consisting of)* six thousand men; in apposition with *custodiam ac praesidium*. — *una*: with it, *i.e.*, the baggage.

65. 11. *post eorum obitum*: after the destruction of the rest of the Cimbri and Teutones who had continued their march towards Italy; see 76 and 77.

65. 12. *cum ... inferrent ... defenderent*: the clauses are explanatory of *exagitati*; for the mood see 185, and cf. *cum ... prohibent*, p. 1, l. 15. — *illatum*: brought against *(them).*

65. 13. *consensu*: 126. — *eorum* = *finitimorum*. — *hunc ... locum*: *this place*, *i.e.*, the place where they had established their stronghold, and the surrounding country. The name of their *oppidum* is not known. For the case of *domicilio* see 113.

65. 15. *Chapter 30. primo adventu*: 138; note that the context often determines the construction of words.

65. 16. *faciebant ... contendebant*: imperfects of repeated action; see 163. Do not use the progressive form in translating. — *parvulis proeliis*: *slight skirmishes*; *parvulis* is the diminutive of *parvus*.


65. 18. *quindecim ... passuum*: 102. Both this phrase and *pedum* in l. 17 modify *vallo*; *vallo pedum duodecim* forming one idea; cf. *duplici altissimo muro*, p. 65, l. 4. We may trans-
late, a twelve-foot wall, fifteen miles in circumference. — castellis: redoubts, diminutive of castra, in the sense of fortifications. The Romans surrounded the stronghold of the enemy by a wall, in which there were redoubts at frequent intervals.


65. 20. vineis, aggere, turrim: see 61-64.


65. 22. a tanto spatio: so far off; for ab (oppido) tantum spatium (91) or tanto spatio (125). Cf. p. 51, l. 2 and the note.


65. 24. praeartim homines, etc.: especially since they were (lit., being) such little men. Homines is in apposition with the subject of confiderent. For the ease of tantulae staturae see 101; note the contemptuous diminutive tantulae.

65. 25. hominibus Gallis: in the eyes of the Gauls; dative of the person judging, a variety of the dat. of reference (109); cf. sibi, p. 21, l. 17, and the note.


65. 27. confiderent: 206. Introduce the sentence by asking.


65. 29. commoti: com- has intensive force.

Page 66. 1. ad hunc modum: in the following manner, 144, 1, e.

66. 2. locuti: sc. sunt. — non . . . existimare: sc. se, as subject.

66. 4. tanta celeritate: 123. — possent: 188.

66. 5. eorum: i.e., Romanorum. — permettere: se does duty both as subject and object, = se se suaque . . . permittere. — Unum: one thing; the adj. is used as a subst. It stands first for emphasis, which may be brought out by translating, there was one thing that they begged and prayed for. What it was, is explained by the clause, ne . . . despoliaret, line 8.

66. 7. quam . . . audirent: note the tense of the verb: not
"which they had heard of," but which they were (continually)
hearing of. That is, it was well-known among the Gauls.
For the mood see 211.— statuisset: for the fut. perf. ind. of
the dir. disc.
66. 9. inimicos: an adjective; see Vocab.— virtuti: 107, a.
— a quibus: against these; 115, and Note.
66. 10. traditis armis: = si arma tradiderant (for the fut. perf.
ind. of dir. disc.), if they should surrender their arms.— possent:
for the fut. ind. of the dir. disc. — Sibi praestaret: 160; the
subject of praestare is the clause quamvis fortunam . . . pati.
66. 11. in eum casum: to such a pass.— deducerentur: for
the fut. ind. (or pres. subj.) of the dir. disc. — quamvis: acc. of
qui vis; see Vocab. and note the derivation and meaning.— a
populo Romano: at the hands of the Roman people; abl. of agent
(116), since quamvis fortunam pati is equivalent to to be visited with
any punishment whatsoever, or to have any punishment whatsoever
inflicted on them. Cf. p. 16, l. 4, and the note on a Caesare.
66. 13. consueverant: = consuevissent.
66. 14. Chapter 32. Ad haec: ad with the acc. is used be-
cause Caesar sent his reply to the people in the town.
66. 15. merito: 122.
66. 16. aries: see 62.— attigisset . . . dedidisset: for the
fut. perf. ind. of the dir. disc.
66. 17. deditio . . . traditis: note the tense of the in fin.;
there were no terms of peace which did not include the surrender
of their arms. Armis traditis is an abl. abs. with the force of a
condition.
66. 18. in: in the case of.
66. 19. quam: any, with iniuriam.— dediticiis: here the
noun; cf. p. 21, l. 12 and note on p. 56, l. 14.
66. 21. Re nuntiata ad suos: by the envoys; see p. 65, l. 29.
On ad suos see note on Ad haec, l. 14.— facere: did. We should
expect the future, "that they would do," but the present is some-
times used with the force of a future, cf. p. 52, l. 22, and the note
on neque . . . progredi.
NOTES—BOOK II

66. 22. magna multitudine: where is the participle of the abl. abs.? Read the sentence through.
66. 23. prope: adv., with adaequarent.
66. 24. summam altitudinem: the full height. The agger had been pushed close to the enemy's wall. The arms nearly filled up the gap between the end of the agger and the wall.
66. 25. tamen: in spite of this; i.e., although they threw out so great a number of weapons, these were only two-thirds of what they had.
66. 29. Chapter 33. quam: for the meaning cf. quam, l. 19.

Page 67. 1. ut intellectum est: = ut postea intellectum est; cf. ut postea perspectum est, p. 66, l. 25.
67. 2. praesidia deducturos: would withdraw their garrison at the wall and the redoubts. Supply esse with deducturos and servaturos.
67. 3. crediderant: note the tense, they had believed, before forming their plan.
67. 5. scutis: governed by cum in line 4. — ex cortice: of bark, abl. of material; see 142, 2, d. — viminibus intextis: woven willow twigs, governed by ex.
67. 6. ut: note the mood of the verb.
67. 7. tercia vigilia: 140. This long sentence should be divided into two or more in the translation. — qua: the adv. — minime arduus: evidently the Roman wall was on higher ground than the rest of the plain at the foot of the hill on which the stronghold of the enemy was located.
67. 8. omnibus copiis: 126.
67. 10. imperaverat: the tense implies that Caesar had anticipated the attack, and given the order beforehand.
67. 11. eo: the adv.; they ran to the point where the enemy's attack was made; see line 7. — concursum est: the Romans rushed; lit., it was rushed (by the Romans); 160.
67. 12. pugnatumque est: but the enemy fought; see the preceding note. — ita: here means as. — a viris . . . pug-
nari debuit: as brave men might be expected to fight; lit., as it ought to be fought by brave men.

67. 13. iniquo loco: for the omission of the prep. see 132.
67. 15. una: alone. — omnis spes salutis: cf. in extrema spe salutis in l. 13. In English we should avoid such a repetition, but similar cases are not infrequent in Caesar. — ad: about, with milibus quattuor.
67. 17. cum . . . defenderet: how should cum be translated here?
67. 19. sectionem . . vendidit: including the inhabitants, as well as their possessions, as appears below. Although Caesar's reputation for clemency (see p. 66, l. 6) was well deserved, his situation compelled him to punish treachery in signal fashion.
67. 20. capitum: persons or souls; see p. 22, l. 12, and the note.
67. 21. milium quinquaginta trium: as 53,000; appositional genitive in the predicate; 100 and 103, Note.

II. The Close of the Campaign of 57 B.C.

67. 22. Chapter 34. P. Crasso: son of Marcus Crassus, the triumvir, and one of Caesar's best officers. He had rendered good service in the battle with Ariovistus; see p. 43, lines 15 ff. — cum legione una: the seventh.
67. 23. miserat: after the battle with the Nervii. — Coriosolitias: a Greek accusative plural.
67. 24. quae: agrees in gender and number with the predicate nominative civitates.
67. 25. omnes eas civitates: namely, those just enumerated.

Page 68. 1. Chapter 35. tanta . opinio perlata est: i.e., the report was so widespread and made so strong an impression. Opinio might perhaps be translated impression.
68. 3. incoherent: 211.
68. 4. qui . . . pollicerentur: note the mood; 177. — se . . daturas: since daturas is feminine, either se refers to qui and the ambassadors identify themselves with the states that
they represent, or perhaps se refers to nationibus as the logical subject, since the sentence might have read, ut eae nationes . mitterent legatos . qui se daturas . pollicerentur.

68. 5. in Italian: Cisalpine Gaul, in northern Italy, is referred to. This with Illyricum formed part of Caesar's province.

68. 6. inita proxima aestate: abl. abs. denoting time (130).

68. 7. in Carnutes, etc.: with deductis; we should say, having led his legions into winter quarters in the country of the Carnutes, etc.

68. 8. quaeque civitates . . erant: = in easque civitates quae . . erant.

68. 10. Ob easque res: -que is seldom appended to a monosyllabic prep.; cf. ex utraque parte, p. 51, l. 15. — ex litteris: i.e., on the receipt of Caesar's letter, in which he gave an account of his victory. — dierum quindecim: 102; the longest previous public Thanksgiving had been one of twelve days, decreed in honor of Caesar's rival, Pompey, after the defeat of Mithradates.

68. 11. quod: a thing which; the antecedent is the clause which precedes. In such cases id quod is more common.

68. 12. nulli: = nemini, to no one; note the emphatic position.

BOOK III

I. GALBA AMONG THE ALPINE TRIBES. END OF THE YEAR

57 B.C.

Page 71. 1. Chapter 1. Servium Galbam: like others of Caesar's lieutenants, he ultimately went over to his enemies and became one of the assassins. The Roman emperor Galba (68–69 A.D.) was a lineal descendant of this man.

71. 4. lacu Lemanno: Lake Geneva.

71. 5. mittendi: trans. for this (i.e., sending). — iter per Alpes: the road leading by the Great St. Bernard into Switzerland and to Lake Geneva.

71. 6. magno cum periculo, etc.: trans. running great risk and paying high toll. — mercatores: these were no doubt Greek
traders from Massilia (Marseilles); the close alliance and friendship between this city and the Roman republic were very useful at the outset as a pretext for increasing Rome's power in Gaul. See 75.

71. 7. consuerant: = consueverant, from consuesco.

71. 8. arbitraretur: in spite of its mood and tense, this is not a condition contrary to fact. Its tense is due to its being in a dependent clause in secondary sequence; its mood to its being a part of the original message of Caesar. This message is not quoted in regular form with a principal and dependent clauses following an introductory verb of saying, but as a subst. clause (uti . . . collocaret) the direct object of permisit, qualified by this conditional clause. In Caesar's original order, the wording may have been, Si arbitraris (or arbitroberis) colloca; 211. — in his locis: in that neighborhood.

71. 10. proelis factis . constituit: Caesar's fondness for the abl. abs. construction is everywhere shown. Of the five examples in this passage the first two are dependent upon those following. Perhaps they may be joined to the main sentence in this way: When ambassadors were sent to Galba . . . after he had fought . . . and captured . . . he determined, etc. Another way would be to translate the participles as main verbs, and break up the long sentence into several shorter ones.

71. 13. reliquis . cohortibus: how many would there be? See 17.

71. 16. non magna adiecta planitie: abl. abs., bordering upon a small plain; lit., adiecta means being placed near.

71. 17. continetur: is shut in by.

71. 19. ad hiemandum: a variety upon hiemandi causa used just above; 219. It was not the Roman custom to billet their soldiers upon the inhabitants of subject towns for winter quarters, but to keep them together in camps of their own. In this case, when, for some reason, a part of the town is taken, the inhabitants of that part are sent out.

Page 72. 2. Chapter 2. eo: i.e., to the village of Octodurus. — exploratores: 44.

72. 3. quam . . . concesserat: a clause introduced by the
writer simply to explain; not reported by the *exploratores*, hence not subjunctive; 208.

72. 6. Id: omit in translating; it is explained by the clause *ut... caperent*.

72. 8. primum...; tum etiam... Accedebat quod...: these three words or phrases serve to introduce the successive clauses which give the reasons for the Gauls' conduct. Roughly they correspond to, *first; then too; furthermore. — neque eam plenissimam: which was not even complete, as, etc.*

72. 10. singillatim: in contrast with *cohortibus*, not regular divisions, but individuals or small parties.

72. 16. nomine: lit., *in the name of*, translate simply *as*; *loco* is used in the same way.

72. 18. conari: an infin. in the principal clause of indir. disc. depending upon the phrase *sibi persuasum habebant*. This expression (lit. translated, *they had (it) persuaded to themselves*) is equivalent to a verb of thinking and so takes an infin. clause dependent upon it in the same way. Trans., *they were convinced*, etc.

72. 20. Galba: translate *consilium convocato* as the principal clause immediately after this word, *i.e.*, *G. consilium convocat et*, etc.; then bring in the subordinate clauses with *cum*, etc.— *opus hibernorum*: the laying out of the camp and erecting of buildings and all else except the defences round about it; these are specially mentioned, *i.e.*, *munitiones*.

72. 21. perfectae: in agreement with the nearer subject *munitiones*.

72. 22. commeatu: when this is used with *frumento*, or *re frumentaria*, it probably refers to all sorts of war supplies other than food.

72. 23. nihil de bello timendum: *he had no reason to fear war*, supplying *sibi* and *esse*.

72. 25. Quo in, etc., the usual close connection with the preceding sentence by a rel. pron. Trans. by a demonstrative pron. Begin the translation of the whole sentence with the *cum*-clause; 158, a. — *consilio*: a *council of war*.

72. 26. repentini: this adj., followed so closely as it is by
praeter opinionem, emphasizes the complete surprise of the Romans.

72. 28. neque subsidio: for et neque subsidio.
72. 29. veniri: supply posset from possent following; no one could come to rescue them, lit., and neither was it able to be arrived for help. Venio can, of course, be used only impersonally in the pass., as it is an intransitive verb; 108.

Page 73. 1. prope iam desperata salute: desperare is used in the abl. abs. construction by Caesar as if a transitive verb. In other constructions he joins the dat. with it or de and the abl. Make this abl. abs. the main clause of the English translation, and join it closely with quo in consilio.

73. 2. sententiae dicebantur, ut: proposals were made that; this phrase is followed by a subst. clause with ut (as a verb meaning resolve or decree would be) explaining the sententiae. Cf. 199.

73. 3. eruptione facta: the English idiom needs careful consideration in translating Caesar’s numerous abl. abs. uses. No one method is sufficient. Vary your style as much as possible. Here trans. as if we had eruptionem facerent ... et contendere.

73. 4. Maiori ... parti placuit: the majority (i.e., the larger part) preferred.
73. 5. rei eventum experiri: test the outcome of a struggle.
73. 7. Chapter 4. vix: emphatic because placed out of position before ut; this draws attention to it. Cf. vix qua, p. 5, l. 26.—eis rebus ... administrandis: the dat. of the gerundive, as here, is rare, replacing the gen., or more common acc. with ad. Trans. the verbs here by arrange and carry out; 219.

73. 9. decurrere: for decurrebant, as coniciere below for coniciabant, historical infin. substituted for indic., with the subject hostes in the nom. Observe the others following: propugnare, mittere, occurrere, ferre, superari; 214.

73. 11. integris viribus: an abl. abs. expressing time, so long as their strength was unimpaired; 130.

73. 12. ex loco superiore: from the rampart of the camp, with the enemy below them in the plain.
73. 13. defensoribus: an abl. of separation depending on
nudata; 115. — eo: to that point.

73. 14. hoc: an abl. of specification with superari; they were
at a disadvantage in this; 129.

73. 16. integris viribus: an abl. of quality describing alii;
128.

73. 17. non modo . . . sed ne . . . quidem: both parts of
this expression qualify a single verb dabatur. A second non is
to be supplied after modo from the ne . . . quidem, trans., not
only was opportunity not given . . . but not even . . . , etc. On
p. 57, l. 5, we have the complete expression non modo non . . . sed
ne . . . quidem.

73. 18. defesso: an adj. used as a subst.; so saucio following;
152, a.

73. 24. Chapter 5. vallum scindere: the vallum consisted
largely of a palisade made of stakes (valli); hence the appropriateness
of the word scindere. — fossas: perhaps referring to different
parts of the fossa mentioned at the end of Chapter 1. The
singular seems more suitable.

73. 25. ad extremum . . . casum: matters (res) had now
reached a desperate state.

73. 26. primi pilis centurio: the highest in rank of the sixty
centurions of the legion (the number when the ten cohorts were
present). See 23. — Nervico proelio: an abl. expressing time
when; Nervico is an adj. equivalent to cum Nervis.

73. 27. diximus: cf. p. 62, l. 6 ff.

73. 28. tribunus militum: see 21. — consili: judgment.

73. 29. unam esse spem: the real subj. acc. of this infin. is
the clause si . . experirentur.

Page 74. 1. experirentur: resort to their last expedient. Accoun
t for the apparently irregular sequence in tense of the
verb; 162 and 171, ft. 1.

74. 3. certiores facit: the meaning here is not simply "in-
form" as so often, but obviously "command" as well. Hence
the subj. follows (ut is frequently omitted after verbs of com-
manding). See 199. Supply per eos in translating.

74. 5. post: then.
NOTES—BOOK III

74. 7. Chapter 6. Quod: for id quod; supply facere with iussi sunt.
74. 8. cognoscendi: to see exactly (lit., of seeing, etc.); join closely with facultatem.
74. 9. sui colligendi: though sui is plural, the form colligendorum is not used. It is usual in such cases to keep the singular with sui, even if it refers to the plural; 221. The enemy had been divided, making their attack in many places. Now to meet the sally successfully they needed to rally in one place.
74. 10. qui in spem potiundorum venerant: who had expected to gain, etc.; lit., how is it rendered? Potior and all the deponents governing the abl. may be used as if transitive in the gerundive construction. In earlier Latin they were transitive and governed the accus.
74. 11. circumventos interficiunt: instead of the Latin idiom of a finite verb with a participle in agreement with the obj., substitute two finite verbs connected by a conjunction, circumveniunt et interficiunt.
74. 12. superioribus: perhaps emphasized by its unusual position. Obviously it is the emphatic word of the phrase. Regularly, then, it should come between ne and quidem.
74. 16. armis: an abl. of separation depending on exutis, which, like fusis, is in the abl. abs. with copiis.
74. 19. alio . . . consilio: contrasted with aliis . . . rebus. The first three chapters describe Caesar’s purpose in coming. Had he expected to need to quell uprisings, he would have brought more troops.
74. 20. occurrisset: met.

II. Campaign against the Veneti. Third Year of the War, 56 B.C.

Page 75. 1. Chapter 7. His rebus gestis: this refers not merely to Galba’s experiences, but to everything previously described in Caesar’s two years of campaigning in Gaul. It is surprising that in the summary just below he fails to mention the war with the Helvetii. — omnibus de causis . . . existimaret: had every reason to consider Gaul at peace.
75. 7. P. Crassus: he is mentioned before, p. 42, l. 16. —
adulescens: this is like our affix Jr. when added to a proper
name. It indicates, usually, that there is another, as here the
father, having the same name. This young man lost his life in
battle with the Parthians vainly trying to save the day for his
father, Crassus, the triumvir, whose folly had involved the army
in peril. It is he that has been compared to Lausus in Vergil's
Aeneid. See Aeneid X, 762–832.

75. 8. proximus: with prepositional force here, governing
the acc. in the same way as prope and propior. — mare Ocea-
um: almost a reminiscence of the stream Oceanus of Homer;
the sea (mare) was called Oceanus unless it had some special
name. — Andibus: consult the Map of Gaul for the location
of these tribes. The Andes were just north of the Liger (the
modern Loire), the Esuvii were to the northeast of them. The
northwestern peninsula (modern Brittany) was occupied by the
Veneti and Coriosolitae.

75. 15. Chapter 8. Huius . . . civitatis: the Veneti, the
last mentioned. — est: with the pred. gen. of possession, belongs
to this people.

75. 16. regionum earum: thereabout. — et (naves) . . . et
 scientia): not only . . . but also.

75. 19. et in magno impetu . . . ipsi: these phrases give
reasons for habent omnes vectigales, etc. The sea is unsheltered
(aperto), violent (magno impetu), and moreover there are but
few harbors (paucis portibus), all in the possession of the Veneti.
Hence came their power.

75. 22. vectigales: any who ran into their harbors, compelled
by stress of weather, were forced to pay tolls.

75. 23. retinendi Sili: lit., of retaining Silius, but the idea
is more clearly brought out if we translate, by keeping, etc., i.e.,
they start a rebellion by this act.

75. 25. auctoritate: example.

Page 76. 1. subita et repentina: the first means quickly taken;
the second, unexpected.

76. 4. communi consilio: with the general approval, or, in
common with the rest; 127.
76. 10. si . . . remittat: in indir. disc. depending upon a verb of saying implied in legationem mittunt. Why is remittat not in the infin., standing, as it does, in the principal clause in indir. disc.? See 205.

76. 13. Chapter 9. longius: Caesar was in Illyricum, as Chap. 7 (p. 75, l. 3) shows. As he (emphatically opposed to Crassus) was too far away to attend to the matter himself, pending his own arrival (interim) he had ships built in the Loire.

— naves . . . longas: the ships of war. These were made longer than the naves onerariae, ships of burden, both for greater speed, and in order that a longer row of fighting men might be ranged on deck to face the foes. See also illustration on p. 90.

76. 19. quantum in se facinus admississent: how great a crime they had been guilty of, lit., they had allowed (or admitted) upon themselves.

76. 20. legatos . . . coniectos: this depends directly upon intellegebant and shows what their facinus had been. The term legatos is used inexactily. Caesar is perhaps trying to justify his campaign against these people. These were simply deputies sent out to demand military supplies among a subject population, and not ambassadors whose persons should have been sacred.— quod nomen: an office which.

76. 24. hoc: for this reason, an abl. of cause immediately explained by the clause quod . . . confidebant.

76. 25. Pedestria itinera: all the roads, i.e., approach by land, as opposed to navigationem; approach by sea.

76. 29. ac iam ut . . . acciderent: and even assuming that, etc.; the subjunct. is jussive, expressing a concession. The tamen of the following clause shows this.

Page 77. 1. facultatem . . navium: the usual translation, supply (cf. p. 29, l. 13) of ships is probably correct, but the words
and the situation lend themselves easily to the idea, skill (in handling) ships.

77. 4. atque in vastissimo, etc.: atque has a comparative force here directly following aliam; trans. than, or better, from what it was in, etc. In this way regularly after words of similarity and dissimilarity.—concluso mari: naturally the Romans were well acquainted only with the Mediterranean and its subdivisions, not with the Ocean.

77. 14. Chapter 10. multa: many reasons, partly enumerated in what follows, iniuria, rebellio, defectio, etc.

77. 15. iniuria retentorum, etc.; the gen. here defines what the wrong was; 100.—equitum: many of the messengers were tribuni militum, who generally were selected from the equestrian order. See note on equites, p. 34, l. 4; 21.

77. 16. rebellio: a renewal of fighting. Cf. p. 109, l. 20, and p. 113, l. 15.

77. 17. imprimis ne hac, etc.: most of all (the fear) lest; this is to be made parallel with iniuria, rebellio, etc., as a fifth reason.—hac parte neglecta: if he let them go unpunished; 130.

77. 19. omnes fere Gallos. . studere et . . excitari: Caesar constantly repeats this sentiment in one form or another. Cf. p. 45, l. 12; p. 76, l. 1; p. 94, ll. 1-3.

77. 21. condicionem servitutis: means no more than servitutem alone; freely translated to be slaves.

77. 22. conspirarent: for the more usual coniurarent.

77. 25. Chapter 11. flumini: the dat. following the adj. of nearness, proximi; 114. Cf. 75, l. 8, above, where it was followed by the acc. as if a preposition.
77. 26. adeat: obj. clause with the ut omitted after mandat, a verb of commanding; 199.
77. 29. conentur: attracted into the subjunct., as it forms an integral part of the command; 211.
Page 78. i. equitatus: the cavalry was of course composed of auxilia. See 18 and 16.
78. 3. tantae nationes: i.e., the Gauls of Aquitania might unite with the tribes of Central Gaul against Rome.
78. 5. qui... curet: certain verbs, of which curare is one, allow the gerundive in agreement with a dir. obj. expressing purpose. Hence manum and distinendum; 222.
78. 6. D. Brutum: another of Caesar's officers who later became one of the conspirators against his life, following the lead of his relative Marcus Brutus, and C. Cassius.—adulescentem: see note on adulescens, p. 75, l. 7.
78. 8. pacatis: used as an adj. here.
78. 9. possit: a part of the command; hence attracted into the subjunct.; 211.
78. 11. Chapter 12. fere: usually, as a rule.
78. 12. posita: in agreement with oppida understood, the subj. of haberent.—extremis: on the ends of, etc.; 149.—neque... aditum haberent: could not be reached, etc.
Page 79. i. cum... se... incitavisset: whenever (as often as) ... had rushed in; for the subjunct. compare p. 18, l. 26, inflexisset; but usually Caesar employs the indic. to denote repetition in the past.
79. 2. horarum xii spatio: every twelve hours; abl. of time within which; 139.
79. 3. minuente: here used as an intransitive verb.
79. 4. afflctarentur: would be, not "were"; the subjunct. suggests an implied protasis in a contrary to fact condition. If they made such an attempt (which they did not).—utraque re: in either way; i.e., the tide by its rising stopped approach by land, and by its falling ended approach by sea.
79. 5. impediebatur: was rendered difficult.
79. 6. aggere ac molibus: by this we are apparently to understand not simply the usual mound (agger), used in approaching
a town, but also dikes, whether separate or connected with the agger, to keep out the tide. Perhaps the whole phrase may be translated by hendiadys (see 225), by enormous dikes.

79. 7. moenibus: dat. following adequatis (which is in the abl. and agrees with his), i.e., brought up to a level with. For a different case following this verb used transitively, see p. 40, l. 10.

79. 11. loci: position, situation.

79. 14. vasto atque aperto mari: the Romans never were great sailors, despite their courage and naval victories. Caesar's repeating this phrase in three almost successive chapters, 8, 9, 12, shows how formidable this sea appeared to him. There is very little tide in the Mediterranean, a fact which largely accounts for his description.

79. 18. Chapter 13. quo: here for ut, as is customary whenever a comparative adj. or adv. is in the clause; 176. — facilius vada ac decessum aestus excipere possent: flat-bottomed boats would ground much more easily and safely when the tide left them than boats having keels; we must trans. freely: could rest more easily on bottom when the tide went down; lit., could bear the shoals and the departure of the tide more easily. Cf. for excipere with this meaning, p. 101, l. 24.

79. 19. admodum erectae: built up very high.

79. 22. quamvis: any whatsoever. — contumeliam: buffeting. — transtra: probably we are not to think of thwarts, seats for oarsmen, which is the common meaning and use of this word, but of strong cross-beams supporting the deck. Certainly we learn from p. 81, l. 4 f., and p. 81, ll. 19 ff., that these ships had no oars.

79. 25. alutae: these were of fine leather, in contrast with the pelles, raw hides.

79. 28. tantos impetus ventorum: such violent winds. How translated literally? Translate freely in similar fashion tanta onera navium just below.

Page 80. 6. adigebatur: for adigi poterat. So in p. 6, l. 4, transitur; in p. 9, l. 12, prohibere.

80. 7. copulis: in sea-fighting the Romans always strove to reproduce the methods of fighting on land.

80. 8. Accedebat ut . . . ferrent . . . et . . . consisterent: Furthermore they (the ships of the Veneti) rode the storm . . . and rested, etc.

80. 12. casus: disaster.


80. 15. fugam: departure, escape. — eis noci posse: do not imitate the awkwardness of the Latin impersonal expression (noceo, an intransitive verb, can only be used impersonally in the pass.), but trans. personally; 108.

80. 19. neque satis Bruto . . . vel . . . constabat: and neither Brutus . . . nor . . . had fully made up their minds.

80. 22. quid agerent: the indir. question here stands probably for a deliberative subjunct. in their thought, quid agamus, implying doubt. So trans. here: what they should do.

80. 23. Rostro: the abl. of means with noceri; the dat. of the person is to be supplied.

80. 24. tamen: this shows the force of the preceding abl. abs. How is it to be translated? More strictly we should have had no abl. abs. at all, but excitatas turres with has, obj. of superabat. — altitudo puppium ex, etc.: the high sterns of, etc., lit., the height of the sterns from, etc. See illustration, p. 68.

80. 25. ex inferiore loco: the Romans tried to get higher than their enemy by erecting towers on the decks; but this height
was more than matched by the high sterns of the ships of the Veneti.

80. 28. falces: in apposition with and explaining the una res preceding. It is described by the abl. of quality, forma absimili, which follows.

80. 30. falcium: supply formae after absimili, and you have the full expression.

Page 81. 1. adducti erant: compare and see note on se incitavisset, p. 79, l. 1.

81. 4. Gallicis navibus: a dat. of reference limiting the verb consisteret where a gen. limiting the noun spes would be more usual; 109, a. — armamentis: equipment. This refers to rigging which would enable them to manoeuvre their vessels better. Of course this must include the velis, which are mentioned specifically first, as of most importance, followed by the more general word.

81. 5. eriperetur: perhaps this is an intentional play upon the words, eceptis . . . eriperetur, repeated so directly in a somewhat different meaning; i.e., torn away . . . lost. See note on largiter posse, p. 14, l. 15.

81. 6. in virtute: i.e., the contest was now more nearly like a land battle.

81. 8. res: battle; see note on ea res, p. 4, l. 25.

81. 13. Chapter 15. binae ac ternae: not to be taken literally; not five ships, but two or three at a time.

81. 15. fieri: unnecessary to the sense.

81. 16. ei rei: i.e., the Romans could not be stopped from tearing away the sail-yards and then boarding.

81. 18. quo: for in quam. — ferebat: used intransitively; naves need not be supplied.

81. 19. malacia: according to some authorities this signifies quiet (absence) of the wind, while tranquillitas means the (consequent) quiet of the sea. — ut se . . . non possent: these ships could not have been provided with oars. See note on transtra, p. 79, l. 22.
81. 21. singulas: one after the other.
81. 23. noctis interventu: under cover of the night. — per-venerint: observe the departure from the law for the sequence of tenses; the perf. subjunct. is regular in result clauses in secondary sequence to express completed action. See 172.
81. 26. chapter 16. cum . . tum: not only. but also. — iuventus: according to Roman ideas this would mean all men who were thought fully capable of military service, i.e., those from 17 to 45 years of age. They had all of these, and in addition to them all their elders and councillors.
81. 28. navium: placed first in its clause for emphasis, even preceding the relative quod, upon which it depends as a partit. gen.; trans. all the ships they had anywhere; 99.
Page 82. 1. quo se . . habeant: i.e., with their ships gone they had no place they could reach, in which they would be safe from pursuit, nor any means of defending their towns. — quo se recipere and a place to retreat to; a rel. clause of purpose; 177. What would be the lit. translation?
82. 3. in quos . . vindicandum: an unusually severe penalty must be visited upon them, etc. — gravius: more severe (than usual); see note on graviore, p. 40, l. 6.
82. 4. quo: here for ut in a purpose clause; 176. This is a strange use of quo when preceded by eo in the principal clause.
82. 6. sub corona vendidit: sold as slaves. It is said that in very early times slaves were exhibited for sale wearing wreaths upon their heads, much as victims for sacrifice. This serves to account for the origin of the phrase.

III. Titurius among the Venelli

82. 7. chapter 17. Q. Titurius Sabinus . . acceperat: see p. 78, ll. 3 ff.
82. 10. summam imperi: leadership; on imperi, see 99.
82. 11. exercitum magnasque copias: the use of inopia cibariorum on p. 83, l. 17, seems to forbid our assuming the mean-
ing of supplies here for copias. The usual interpretation distinguishes between the trained, organized army (exercitum) and the large number of irregular troops gathered, which were simply multitudes of unorganized fighting men.

82. 12. his paucis diebus: i.e., since Sabinus had come into their country.

82. 13. quod auctores belii . . . nolebant: because they refused to authorize (declare) war. Compare the usage among the Romans given in Livy 1, 17, 9; patres auctores sunt.

82. 18. revocabat: the tense seems to show that these men were bandits; not men who gave up their usual occupation of tilling the soil for this war only.

82. 19. rebus loco castris: each of these ablatives may be translated by in. Are the ablatives all of the same sort?

Page 83. 1. opportunitate: advantage.

83. 2. legato: i.e., a subordinate should not take chances in the absence of his superior. Even though a lieutenant was conducting an independent campaign, we must remember that his commander-in-chief had to bear all blame for his failure, just as on the other hand he would receive all praise for his success; 19.

83. 3. Chapter 18. opinione: impression.

83. 4. ex eis: supply one before these words in translating.

83. 5. praemiis pollicitationibusque: by (present) rewards and promises (of more). This seems more natural than to translate it by hendiadys; 225.

83. 7. pro perfuga: as if he were a deserter. Cf. pro viso, p. 17, l. 17, and the note on p. 17, l. 16.

83. 8. quibus angustiis . . . Caesar . . . prematur: how closely Caesar is hemmed in by the Veneti, lit., in what straits Caesar, etc.

83. 9. docet: observe that both the indir. question (quibus . . . prematur) and the infin. clause in indir. disc. (abesse) are dependent on this word. — neque longius abesse quin: and that no later than the, etc.; lit., and that it was not farther away but that, etc. Quin is for ut non in a negative result clause; 178 and note on p. 39, l. 2.
NOTES — BOOK III

83. 13. negoti bene gerendi: of striking a successful blow.
83. 14. iri oportere: both are intransitive and used impersonally; they ought to go, etc.
83. 15. Multae res: the list of these follows, i.e., cunctatio, confirmatio, etc., and last of all, the clause quod fere . . . credunt, which is practically a noun; all are the subjects of hortabantur.
83. 18. spes Venetici belli: their belief in Caesar's peril as reported to them by the other Gauls.
83. 22. Qua re concessa laeti, ut explorata victoria: Overjoyed at this permission as though victory was now certain for them. Of these abl. absolutes the first seems to tell why they are laeti, i.e., to express cause, and the second to be equivalent to a condition; 130.
83. 23. collectis: trans. as a finite verb and connect with pergunt by a conjunction and.
Page 84. 2. Impeditis hostibus: While the enemy were hampered, etc.
84. 5. superiorum pugnarum: in former battles. — exercitatione: militum is to be supplied with this. It is therefore followed by two genitives.
84. 7. ac: but, just as -que is to be translated frequently after a negative clause.
84. 13. Titurio: i.e. Sabino. — Nam ut . . . animus sic . . . mens: For as the disposition, etc., so their spirit, etc., or, while . . . yet . . .
84. 15. minime resistens: without the vigor. To quote from Livy, X, 28, 4: "The Gauls at the beginning of their battles fight as if they were more than men, at the end of them as if they were less than women."

IV. CAMPAIGN OF CRASSUS IN AQUITANIA

84. 18. Chapter 20. ut ante dictum est: this statement is inexact. On p. 1, l. 2, Aquitania is described as one of the three divisions of Gaul, but nothing is said of its size or population compared with the others.
84. 21. L. Valerius . . . legatus: nothing is known of this event.

84. 23. L. Manlius: governor of Further Gaul; defeated by one of the inferior officers of Sertorius in 78 B.C.

84. 26. comparato: in agreement with the nearer noun equitatu.

84. 27. Tolosa . . . Narbone: these are to be joined closely with evocatis. See 75, for Narbo.

Page 85. 1. evocatis: these were naturally most efficient soldiers. See 25, evocati.

85. 4. quo plurimum valebant: in which their chief strength lay. — in itinere agmen: marching column.

85. 8. Hi: more properly the reference to copiae would require hae.

85. 11. Chapter 21. in sua virtute . . . positam: depended on their valor.

85. 13. imperatore: general-in-chief. Crassus was merely a legatus, though a most capable 'one, who served his chief well; 19.

85. 14. cuperent: causal, parallel in construction to putarent and forming an additional reason why the battle was so fiercely and obstinately fought.

85. 16. ex itinere: i.e., he attacked the town at once, not looking for a strong resistance.

85. 18. vineas turresque: the resistance is so great that he is forced to resort to a regular siege. See 61, 62, 63, for the use of the vineas turresque. — alias . alias: adverbs here.

85. 21. aerariae secturaeque: the first of these is certainly an adj. used substantively (152, b); copper mines and (stone) quarries. People accustomed to such operations as are required in mining could readily build cuniculos, which might easily cause the Romans much annoyance.

85. 25. faciunt: without obj. expressed; they do (so).

85. 27. Chapter 22. Adiatunnus: no verb appears in the predicate for this word until we reach impetravit at the very end of the chapter. The Latin includes a great many ideas in one sentence, so that English idiom requires that we break the long
involved Latin sentence into a number of shorter ones in translating. Supply a verb for Adiatunnus from the participle conatus on p. 86, l. 7, i.e., A. eruptionem facere conatus est.

85. 28. devotis: the literal meaning is, men who had bound themselves to defend another. This is found among other tribes, — the Celtiberi, e.g., who, according to Valerius Maximus (II, 6, 11), thought it wrong to survive a battle in which he had perished to whose safety they had consecrated themselves. See also Bellum Gallicum 7, 40, 7: Litavicus cum suis clientibus, quibus more Gallorum nefas est etiam in extrema fortuna deserere patrons, Gergoviam profugit. — soldurios: as this is not a Latin word, it should be retained in the nom. in the English translation. On the language of the Gauls see note on p. 1, l. 3.

85. 29. uti ... fruantur: a subst. clause in apposition with and explaining condicio. It may be well to trans. haec condicio by, their relation (to their chiefs) is such, etc.

Page 86. 2. dediderint: subjunct. by attraction to fruantur; 211. — si quid ... accidat: as this is introduced in direct contrast to the clause commodis ... fruantur, supply but on the other hand just before it. The phrase is, of course, a euphemistic one for “in case of his death.” Cf. p. 14, l. 24.

86. 6. cum his: of course we must trans. this clause again as a principal statement.

86. 7. ab ea parte: just as in a tergo, a dextra, and similar phrases, a is to be translated in or on; 142, 1, b.

86. 13. Chapter 23. manu: i.e., by the hand of man, art, in addition to the advantages for defence which nature had given it from its position.

86. 14. quibus: abl. of time within which, best translated by after or since, when following the other abl. of time within which, paucis diebus. Cf. p. 101, l. 29; p. 126, l. 4.

86. 16. coniurare: not conspire, but bind themselves together on oath. Treachery to one another was always greatly to be feared in a people so unstable as the Gauls.

86. 18. citerioris Hispaniae: on the border of Aquitania, inhabited by the Cantabrians (p. 88, l. 20), and later known as Hispania Terraconensis.
86. 19. duces: bring into the predicate. — adventu: the abl. certainly expresses time, but seems also to have an idea of cause. Cf. p. 14, l. 22. — magna cum auctoritate: apparently the arrival of allies from such a distance made all their neighbors favorable to their attempt, and look for its success.

86. 22. Q. Sertorius: one of the finest characters and greatest soldiers in the history of Rome. Forced to appear as a rebel in Spain against his own country, he really desired its good; and though called by the enemies of Rome the new Hannibal, he seems to have been rather a forerunner of Julius Caesar. Pompey, who was the last in command against him, succeeded only because of the assassination of Sertorius by certain Roman refugees who were jealous of his power and wished to supplant him. — omnes annos: i.e., throughout his rebellion up to his death.

86. 24. consuetudine: 127; Sertorius had taught them the Roman art of war.

86. 26. Quod ubi: the preceding sentence contains the reason why it would speedily become necessary for Crassus to separate his army. Quod is to be taken adverbially and may be translated but, as in the phrase quod si.

86. 27. non facile diduci: supply posse; he had not troops enough to meet them at all these points.

86. 30. in dies: day after day.

Page 87. i. quin . . . decertaret: trans. as if it were decertare simply. Just as dubitare, meaning hesitate, is regularly followed by the complementary infin., so we should expect cunctari to be used here.

87. 4. Chapter 24. duplici acie: it will be remembered that the usual form of battle-line for the Romans was the triplex acies. See 41, 42, for the description of this and the different views of what the formation was. It is clear in any event that the Roman leader did not place much reliance upon the auxilia, for these were not placed as usual upon the wings, but between the Roman lines, so that they would be compelled to fight. Apparently Crassus's choice of the duplex rather than the triplex acies was to enable him to present as many men as possible against the line of the enemy, which must greatly have outnumbered his own.
87. 9. sine ullo vulnere: without loss (to themselves).
87. 11. impeditos: this always suggests unreadiness to fight, but not always for the same reason. Here they are marching (in agmine) and are burdened by the weight of their personal baggage. See 38, 39, upon the weight of the soldier’s pack, etc.
87. 13. productis Romanorum copiis: an abl. abs. expressing concession; 130.
87. 14. castris: general words of place like castris and loco often omit the preposition in; 132.
87. 17. exspectari . . . oportere quin ad castra ietur: they should not longer delay going against the camp. This awkward impersonal construction should of course be avoided in English. What is the lit. rendering? 160; 200; a subst. clause of result; cf. quin in a clause of result, p. 39, l. 2.
87. 20. Chapter 25. Ibi: the entire chapter is occupied by a single Latin sentence. Here as elsewhere in such cases it is best to break the sentence into two or three shorter ones in translating.
87. 21. vallo munitionibusque: if the second word is not a mere repetition of the first, it must refer to special defences raised on the top of the wall, such as breastworks, towers, etc. See p. 167, Caesar’s Fortifications at Alesia.
87. 23. lapidibus telisque subministrandis: an abl. of manner limiting præbuit. Trans.: by supplying stones and javelins; lit., by stones and javelins to be furnished; 123; 219.
87. 24. speciem atque opinionem: lit., look and idea. Trans.: (with præberent) had the look and gave the impression of fighting men.
88. 2. esse: join closely with munita.—a decumana porta: a used as in a dextra, a tergo, etc. The decuman gate was at the rear of the camp. Its name may have come from the position occupied by the tenth cohort in a regularly organized camp of a single legion. The rear gate of any camp would undoubtedly be so called by the Romans from their own usage, whether the inner part of the camp or even the position of the gate exactly corresponded with their own, or not; 52.
88. 3. -que: and therefore. — habere: had, i.e., allowed, offered.
NOTES—BOOK III 315

88. 4. Chapter 26. equitum praefectos: the cavalry were not composed of Romans. How about their officers? See 18.

88. 5. praemiis, etc., cf. p. 83, l. 5, with note.

88. 7. a labore: there seems to be no satisfactory explanation of the use of a here. Trans. as a simple abl. of means or cause.

88. 8. longiore: the march was round-about, hence longer than would have been required had it not been necessary to avoid observation.

88. 11. prius . . . quam: translate the two together as if priiusquam stood where quam does.

88. 12. ab his videri (posset): trans. this whole phrase actively and personally. There is an underlying idea of purpose “that the enemy might not be able to see,” etc., “before the,” etc., 184. Otherwise we should have had the indic:


88. 17. desperatis omnibus rebus: in utter despair.

88. 20. quae: (i.e., milia) this relates to milium for its ante-cedent, and is subject acc. of convenisse, with which it serves as subject of the impersonal constabat.

88. 21. multa nocte: late at night; perhaps this is really an abl. abs. expressing time and limiting se recepit. Cf. multo die, p. 17, l. 14; ad multam noctem, p. 20, l. 13.

88. 24. Chapter 27. quo in numero: among them.

88. 27. ultimae: bring in predicatively. Only a few did not send hostages, and these because they were ultimae. — tempore: observe the abl. instead of the usual dat. with a verb of trusting.

V. Caesar's Campaign against the Morini

89. 6. Chapter 28. longe alia ratione ac: in a far different way from, etc. As appears from what follows, they declined a regular battle with the Romans and watched for an opportunity to surprise them. See note on atque, p. 77, l. 4.

89. 12. in opere: the work of fortifying, i.e., chiefly, building their wall and digging the trench.

89. 13. evolaverunt: dashed forth.

89. 16. impeditioribus locis: over more difficult ground.

89. 18. Chapter 29. Reliquis: hardly differing here from
following. — deinceps: an adv., but standing between adj. and noun as if itself an adj. or a participle. Trans.: one after the other.

89. 19. inermibus militibus: 130.
89. 20. materiam: timber.
89. 24. extrema: the last part of; 149.
89. 27. sub pellibus: as the winter season was at hand, the ordinary covering of the summer camp was insufficient. The soldiers needed more protection against the weather. Huts took the place of tents in hibernis; 58.

BOOK IV

I. Campaign against Usipites and Tencteri, 55 B.C.

Page 91. 1. Chapter 1. Ea quae secuta est hieme: the first four words are equivalent to an adj., sequenti. — qui fuit annus: qui agrees in gender with its pred. appos. annus (84, a). Annus is made to appear the equivalent of hieme in meaning. Trans.: which was that of the year when P. and C. were, etc. The date was 55 B.C. The Roman calendar — which Caesar himself corrected some years later — was then in such confusion that the official Jan. 1 fell in November of the solar year.

91. 2. M. Crasso: the third member of the First Triumvirate (8, end; 10) with Julius Caesar and Pompey. He was the richest of the Romans at this time, and was frequently of service to Caesar financially. His son, P. Crassus, mentioned above, was one of Caesar's valued lieutenants. See note on adulescens (p. 75, l. 7). — Usipites Germani: Germani, not repeated with Tencteri, is generally assumed to be in apposition with both Usipites and Tencteri. It is obvious from what follows that they were both German tribes; possibly, then, German Usipites are thus distinguished from other Usipites who were not Germans.

91. 10. singula milia: one thousand each, i.e., a total of 100,000 men. Milia being itself plural requires the distributive numeral instead of the cardinal (una) with it; see note on trinis catenis, p. 44, l. 6.
91. 12. illos: i.e., those who have gone out to war.
91. 13. anno post: the abl. expresses degree of difference; a year later; 125.
91. 14. ratio atque usus: theory and practice; the first refers to study of the art of war and to strategy, the second to actual experience in warfare.
91. 15. agri: partitive gen. depending upon nihil; 99.
91. 16. anno: contrast the use of this abl. with that of anno above (l. 13).
91. 19. quae res: these two words seem to sum up what has gone before (neque . . . venationibus), and then to be explained again in cibi genere et cotidiana exercitatione, etc. Their food, exercise, and general freedom from restraint are thought to have the result which Caesar claims.

Page 92. 1. vires alit: increases (fosters) their strength. — im-mani . . magnitudine: abl. of quality limiting homines; 128.
92. 3. locis frigidissimis: this phrase certainly expresses a concession; trans.: although the climate is very cold; 130. — vestitus: limiting quicquam; 99.
92. 5. lavarentur: a pass. form equivalent to the reflexive, se lavarent. Use the present tenses in translating these verbs; the Latin sequence follows the form of adduxerunt, rather than the meaning. They have accustomed themselves, therefore they are accustomed, speaking generally of the habit of the tribe.
92. 7. Chapter 2. est aditus: supply ad eos. — eo: distinguish between the use of this word for a dative, meaning to this place, and, as here, the abl. use, on this account, for this purpose. — quae: equivalent to eas res (obj. of vendant) quas.
92. 8. quibus: equivalent to eos (obj. of habeant) quibus.— vendant: subjunct. in a rel. clause of purpose; quibus vendant may be translated together as a noun, purchasers. — quo: here equivalent to quod in a reason given for the purpose of denying it.
92. 9. Quin etiam: join closely in translation with importatis non utuntur, But they do not import and use the horses, etc.; lit., But even they do not use horses imported. It seems unlikely that mules and oxen are meant here, but rather horses, which are often used as pack animals.
92. 10. impenso . . pretio: *impenso* here has adjectival force; equivalent to *maximo*. An abl. of price usually expresses definite value, the gen. indefinite; not so in this instance; 120. Cf. 103.

92. 13. summi . . laboris: *greatest endurance*; a gen. in the predicate depending on *sint*, best translated by introducing a word like *capable* with the verb; 101; 103, Note.

92. 16. usus: *need.*

92. 17. eorum moribus: an abl. of accordance; 127. Lit., *in accordance with their customs, i.e., from their point of view*—

neque . . . quicquam: for *et nihil*.

92. 19. quamvis pauci: *even though very few (themselves).*


92. 23. Chapter 3. Publice: which they can have as *a state*; opposed to *privatim*, which applies to the individual.—

*esse*: the subj. acc. of this infin. in indir. disc. is the other infin. clause *agros vacare*.

92. 24. vacare: an examination of p. 157, ll. 14–19, seems to show that this desire was due quite as much to fear of sudden raids on the part of near neighbors, as to any glory obtained thereby.

92. 26. una ex parte a: *in one direction from.*

92. 27. agri: nom. plural subject. The size of this uninhabited tract is quite beyond acceptance as stated; Caesar must be in error.

92. 28. ampla: probably referring to extent of territory, while *florens* describes its general condition of power and prosperity.

92. 29. ut est captus Germanorum: *captus* is a noun here; *as is the standard of the Germans, i.e., judged* by German standards, or, *as Germans rate them*.

Page 93. 1. generis: *race.*

93. 3. ventitant: this and *sunt adsuefacti* are parallel to *atttingunt*, giving reasons why the Ubii are *humaniores ceteris*.

93. 5. gravitatem: *power.*

93. 7. humiliores: *more submissive.*

93. 8. Chapter 4. causa: *situation.*
93. 10. ad extremum: an adverbial expression of time, to be joined closely with pervenerunt.

93. 11. ad Rhenum: the spot where they reached and crossed the Rhine is more definitely given in Chap. 1 (p. 91, l. 3 ff.).

93. 12. quas regiones: there, etc.

93. 15. cis Rhenum: i.e., the Gallic side.

93. 16. dispositis: give the force of the prefix in the translation. See Vocabulary.

93. 20. reverti se . . . simulaverunt et: apparently returned, but.

93. 21. viam: cognate acc. with progressi.

93. 22. reverterunt: this verb, usually deponent in the forms derived from the present stem, has in the active most forms from the perfect stem.

93. 23. confecto: join with itinere, not with equitatu.

93. 28. certior fieret: not "were" but should or could be informed. The subjunct. shows an underlying idea of purpose on the part of the Germans. An indic. would state simply the fact of their crossing before word of their coming reached the Menapii; 184.

Page 94. 1. Chapter 5. infirmitatem: fickle nature.

94. 2. mobiles, etc.: the usual statement. Cf. p. 45, l. 12; p. 76, ll. 20-21.

94. 3. his: the dat. of the indir. obj. with committendum, not the dat. of the agent with the gerundive; the latter, i.e., sibi, referring to Caesar, must be supplied; 106; 112.

94. 4. Gallicae consuetudinis: a pred. gen. of possession limiting est. Cf. summi laboris on p. 92, l. 13. Trans.: This is (peculiar to) the Gallic custom, or, It is one of the customs of the Gauls that, etc.; 101; 103, Note.

94. 5. invitos: observe that this is not invitatos, which has a very different meaning.

94. 8. circumsistat: parallel in construction to cogant and quaeerant, following uti, though with a different subject; it is, as are the others, a subst. clause of result in apposition with hoc; 200.

94. 11. quorum eos: the regular construction with the imper-
sonal *paenitere*, the acc. of the person and the gen. of the thing.


94. 13. *serviant*: lit., *serve*, followed by the dat. according to rule; freely, *are led* (*i.e.*, influenced) by; 107, a. — *plerique*: travellers or traders, under such conditions, were likely to give answers, without regard to the facts, of the sort which they believed would be satisfactory to their questioners, the Gauls.

94. 15. Chapter 6. *Qua consuetudine*, etc.: the abl. abs. is causal and tells the reason of Caesar’s early start. — *graviori*: *i.e.*, more serious than usual, because now he had to fear a war with the Gauls in which they would be aided by the Germans.

94. 16. *occurreret*: cf. the use of this word in Bk. III, chap. 6 (p. 74, l. 20): *occurrisset rebus*.

94. 17. *Eo cum venisset*: on his arrival there. In like manner a noun may be used to trans. *ea quae . erat*.

94. 18. *missas legationes*: this and *invitatos eos* following are clauses in the infin. with subj. acc. explaining what Caesar means by *ea . acta* preceding.

94. 20. *a Rheno discederent*: *i.e.*, come further into Gaul. — *omnia*: (assuring them) that everything, etc. The word of saying upon which the infin. clause *fore parata* depends is implied in *invitatos*.

94. 24. *clientes*: these were weaker states who looked to them for protection. — *pervenerant*: probably only raiders had come thus far.

94. 25. *dissimulanda*: this word is well chosen if we are to accept Caesar’s statement that the Gauls were anxious for the Germans to come into Gaul; *permulsis* and *confirmatis*, then, are hardly appropriate to their real state of mind, but rather to one which Caesar pretends is theirs.

Page 95. 3. Chapter 7. *audiebat*: imperfect of repeated action; the reports kept coming in; 163. — *Aquibus*: this refers back to *locis*; not to *Germanos*, who are taken up again in his later.
NOTES—BOOK IV

95. 4. haec: as follows.

95. 5. priores: not the former, or earlier Germanos, but to be taken with adverbial force qualifying the verb inferre. They are not seeking a war, as aggressors, but for all that (tamen) they do not shrink from a struggle, etc.

95. 8. resistere neque deprecari: to face boldly, not appeal for mercy to, etc.

95. 9. dicere: supply se for its subj. accus.; in indir. disc. parallel in construction to inferre and recusare. The Germans are ready to state their case to the Romans, but not to ask any favors.

95. 10. gratiam: for amicitiam here. — posse: in the same construction as venisse.

95. 11. attribuant: a principal clause in indir. disc., representing an original subjunct. or imperative, not an indic.; 205.

95. 13. concedere: acknowledged inferiority.

95. 16. Chapter 8. quae: the acc. case, obj. of the infin. respondere, to be supplied with visum est.

95. 18. remanerent: a fut. indic. of the dir. disc. has become subj. by indir. disc., and imperf. by sequence after fuit; 207; 171. — verum: right. The infin. clause (eos) alienos (fines) occupare serves as the subject acc. of esse, and verum in the predicate agrees with this clause.

95. 19. potuerint: this tense, and that of possint below and the other subjunctives to the end of the chapter, do not conform to the sequence as shown in remanerent. This use of the primary tense in the subjunct. where the law of sequence, strictly observed, requires the secondary, introduces variety and a certain amount of vividness. Compare the use in the indic. of the so-called historical present, for the regular past historic tenses; 173. — alienos: for aliorum.

95. 24. hoc: i.e., to admit them.

95. 26. Chapter 9. post diem tertium: a literal translation, after the third day, gives the wrong idea. The Romans included the day of making the request. Trans.: the next day but one, or on the second day. Cf. p. 39, l. 20, postridie eius diei and note.
95. 27. propius se: nearer them. Se is here an indir. reflexive referring to the subj. of petierunt; 155. It is in the acc. governed by propius, which has prepositional force here. Cf. propius tumulum, p. 37, l. 10.

Page 96. 4. hos exspectari equites: translate this and moram interponi actively, with they for subj., and equites and moram as obj.


96. 7. parte . . . recepta: i.e., a branch of the Rhine (Vacalus, the modern Waal) flows into the Mosa (the modern Maas or Meuse), thus uniting the two rivers.

96. 9. inde: seems to refer to the Vacalus. An inaccurate statement.

96. 11. longo spatio: a loose abl. of manner, in a long course; 123.

96. 13. citatus fertur: flows very swiftly. Citatus is really a participle of cito, citare. Here it is an adj. to be translated as an adv.

96. 14. ingentibusque: our idiom omits the “and” between “many” and the second adj.

96. 17. existimantur: a subjunct. of characteristic with the expression sunt qui would be more usual; 179. — capitibus: caput applied to a river undoubtedly suggests “source” rather than “mouth.” But the context determines the latter to be the meaning here. The abl. expresses means; 119.

96. 19. Chapter 11. Caesar: this is the subject of the subordinate clause only, i.e., abesset. From its position we should look for it to be subject of the main clause.

96. 20. ut erat constitutum: according to their agreement. Apparently their pledge to return post tertium diem (p. 93, l. 26) was all there was to this agreement.

96. 23. eos equites: this would appear to describe only a part of his cavalry, but from praefectos qui cum omni equitatu antecesserant (p. 97, l. 6), we see all the cavalry is meant.

96. 24. praemitteret: observe the absence of an obj.; as we should say, send ahead (to, etc.). — sibique ut: irregular order; sibi, which properly follows ut, is thus made emphatic.
96. 25. mittendi: gen. of the gerund depending on potestatem; 219.
96. 26. sibi iure iurando fidelem fecisset: pledge them security on their oath; this means security against themselves quite as much as against others. The verb agrees with the nearer subject senatus.

96. 27. feretur: (offer which) was made.
96. 29. daret: subjunct. in a principal clause in indir. disc. What must it represent? Cf. attribuant, p. 95, l. 11. — eodem illo: adverbial; with pertinere, had the same end in view, explained by the ut clause following, the return, etc.

Page 97. 4. convenirent: cf. daret above.
97. 7. ne . . lacesserent; et . . sustinerent: these subst. clauses depend upon nuntiarent, which here has the force of a verb of commanding; 199.

97. 10. Chapter 12. ubi primum: like simul atque in meaning, and also in the mood which follows it; 180.
97. 11. milium: 102; 103, Note.
97. 12. amplius: this has no effect upon the construction following; equites is the direct object of haberent, though translated as if the abl. of comparison after amplius; 118.
97. 15. indutiiis: 113.
97. 17. rursus: i.e., the cavalry recovered from its confusion and, again in order, opposed the enemy.

97. 19. fugam: this flight of 5000 cavalry before 800 has been looked upon with some suspicion. It is quite possible that the Roman cavalry were in reality the aggressors, and that the flight was intentional in order to cover up their covert attack and afford some apparent justification for Caesar's subsequent treatment of them.
97. 20. fuga: for fugere.
97. 22. ex equitibus nostris: this takes the place of a partit. gen. following the cardinal numeral seventy-four.

97. 24. regnum: here and elsewhere this word signifies royal power, authority, as well as territory, kingdom, its more usual meanings.

Page 98. 3. Chapter 13. ab eis: from those. — per dolum
atque insidias: the phrase limits *petita pace*, and may be translated adverbially, *craftily and treacherously*.

98. 4. exspectare: an infin. used as a subst., the subject acc. of esse depending upon iudicabat.

98. 5. summae dementiae esse iudicabat: he thought it most foolish; lit., to be of the highest folly; 103, Note.

98. 7. hostes: nominative.

98. 8. auctoritatis: join closely with quantum.

98. 10. His constitutis rebus: Having reached this decision. — consilio . . communicato: i.e., in a council of war the consilium was agreed to, which is explained by the following clause ne . . praetemitteret.

98. 11. diem pugnae: i.e., no possible opportunity to engage the enemy should be neglected.

98. 12. oportunissima res: this is explained by the quod-clause following; quod may be translated that.

98. 13. eadem: i.e., as the preceding day.

98. 14. omnibus . . adhibitis: bringing with them all, etc.

98. 16. sui purgandi: as usual with sui in the plural, the gerundive keeps the sing. form; 221. We are told by another writer that these elders had opposed the attack. They blamed their young men for it, whose impetuosity they said they had been unable to curb. — atque: after contra used adverbially in the sense of than; lit., on the other hand than, contrary to what, etc.

98. 18. simul: and furthermore. — si quid possent: trans. as the dir. obj. of impetrarent; whatever they could; lit., if they could (get) anything.

98. 19. sibi . . oblatos: (esse) had come into his hands, depending upon gavisus.

98. 23. Chapter 14. Acie triplici: the favorite battle-line, always employed when possible; 41.

98. 25. omnibus rebus: apparently this is explained by the two ablatives following, celeritate and discessu, which seems strange.

98. 27. discessu suorum: this seems to refer to the disappearance of the chiefs and elders who had gone to Caesar and whom he had retained. Naturally this caused their friends
much anxiety. — arma capiendi: in place of the gerundive (armorum capiendorum), here we have the rare use of the gerund with a dir. obj. The necessary form of the gerundive construction would not sound well to Roman ears; hence, probably, the substitution. See note on p. 43, l. 7.

98. 28. perturbantur: are in much doubt whether; lit., are greatly disturbed whether.

Page 99. 1. praestaret: this tense, in strict sequence, should be pres.; perturbantur however is really an historical pres. and so may properly have a secondary sequence; 171, ft. 1.

99. 10. Chapter 15. clamore: this seems to refer to the outcry of the puerorum mulierumque, who fled and were followed by the cavalry.

99. 11. interfici: Cato would have denied Caesar a supplicatio for his victory and urged that he be surrendered to the Germans for this inhuman massacre. — armis abiectis, etc.: translate by finite verbs in the indic., flung down, abandoned, etc.

99. 12. ad confluentem Mosae et Rheni: it seems necessary to assume that by Rheni is here meant the Vacalus (p. 94, l. 8), the modern Waal. In order to free Caesar from apparent error, some have chosen arbitrarily to apply the meaning connecting stream to confluentem.

99. 15. vi fluminis: the current of the stream; cf. vim fluminis, p. 101, ll. 12 ff. They were unable to cross the current in their condition of panic and weariness.

99. 16. perierunt: not to be taken strictly, perhaps. At all events both peoples are mentioned in later history by Tacitus. — ad unum: to one (man), i.e., with no exception. None were slain; there were a few wounded.

99. 17. ex tanti belli timore: after a war which had excited so much alarm; give the lit. translation.

99. 18. milium: cf. milium, p. 95, l. 11. See 102 and 103, Note.

99. 21. veriti: a perf. participle, but best translated by a pres.; this is often the case with deponent verbs. See note on nisi rogatus, p. 35, l. 28.

99. 22. libertatem concessit: it is claimed that this means that Caesar gave the captives freedom, as well as permission to
stay in his camp. It seems more natural to take *libertatem* as permission simply.

II. Caesar's Invasion of Germany


Page 100. 1. *suis* . . . *rebus*: (to be alarmed) about their own security; 109.

100. 2. *intelegent*: when they should realize. The subjunct. is due, not to the *cum*, but to attraction; 211. It depends closely upon *timere*.

100. 4. *Accessit etiam quod*: a second reason was that; lit., it was added also that, etc.

100. 10. *dederent*: supply *ut* after *postularent* to introduce this. *Ut* with verbs of demanding, wishing, necessity, etc. is occasionally omitted; 199.

100. 12. *non aequum*: supply *esse*, of which the clause *Germanos in Galliam transire* serves as subj. acc., and has *aequum* in agreement.

100. 13. *sui* . . . *esse imperi*: to be (of) under his power or control; 103.

100. 14. *postularet*: here followed by the acc. and infin. contrary to the general practice. Exceptions like this occur with *impero* and other verbs in Caesar and Cicero. *Postularet* represents a real question in dir. disc., *cur* . . . *postulas?* and so becomes subjunct. on becoming indir., though in a principal clause. A question asked merely for rhetorical effect would be put in the infin.; 206.

100. 18. *occupationibus rei publicae*: political considerations; he need not actually participate in war against their enemies. A mere demonstration would be sufficient, hence *transportaret*.

100. 20. *transportaret*: representing in the words of the Ubii an imperat. or subjunct.

100. 21. *futurum*: representing a fut. indic. in dir. disc.

100. 22. *eius exercitus*: of his army; lit., of the army of him.

100. 23. *ad*: (reaching) to; among.
100. 27. Chapter 17. Rhenum transire: Caesar was the first Roman to lead an army over the Rhine. The two places where he crossed were both in the neighborhood of Cologne, say some authorities, the first in the vicinity of the modern Wörringen, nine miles north of Cologne, and the second near Alteburg, less than two miles southeast of Cologne. Others with perhaps more probability place the crossings at Neuwied and Coblenz.

100. 28. neque suae neque . dignitatis esse: beneath his dignity; why gen.?

100. 29. satis tutum: Caesar evidently thinks the enemy could more easily destroy ships than a bridge. It has been suggested, too, that Caesar might easily distrust the loyalty of those who might furnish the ships. Furthermore a passage of the river in ships — borrowed ships — could hardly be expected to impress the barbarian tribes with a sense of Rome's power in the same way as the building of a bridge, which "symbolically took captive their much beloved Rhine."

100. 30. summa: join in translation with proponebatur; appeared very great.

Page 101. 1. id sibi contendendum: he ought to attempt this; id means the building of the bridge.

101. 4. Rationem . . . hanc: this sort. — bina: i.e., a series of pairs of beams just like this pair were driven into the river bed. — sesquipedalia: what appear to be the underlying elements of this big word point to its meaning; semi -que pes, a foot and a half (in thickness).

101. 5. ab imo: at the lower end. — dimensa ad altitudinem: the logs were of different lengths according to the depth of the water. The participle is passive.

101. 7. Haec: i.e., these beams (tigna sesquipedalia, etc.) were lowered (immissa) into the river by derricks, cranes (machinationibus), on floats, fixed in position, and then driven into the bed of the stream by pile-drivers.

101. 8. non . . . recte ad perpendiculum: i.e., not in an absolutely upright or vertical position. Lit., not exactly according to a plumb-line. — fastigate: cf. fastigia (gables), i.e., slanting as the gables of a roof slope.
I. View of one section looking up the river.

II. View looking across the river.

H, sublicae obliquae.  I, defensores.

Caesar’s Bridge over the Rhine.

From Harkness & Forbes’ “Caesar.”
By permission of the American Book Co.
101. 10. secundum naturam fluminis: with (i.e., following; secundum derived from sequor) the current. See note on secundum, p. 57, l. 16.

101. 11. ad eundum modum: for eodem modo.

101. 12. quadragenum: this measures the space between the two rows of supporting posts; the roadway of the bridge would naturally be narrowed, as these posts inclined towards each other.

— ab inferiore parte: further down stream.

101. 13. Haec utraque: this refers to each pair of posts and the corresponding pair facing them across the interval where the roadway of the bridge was to be.

101. 14. quantum . . distabat: these two-foot beams laid horizontally just filled the space left between the two beams (haec utraque) forming each pair of uprights.

101. 15. binis utrimque fibulis: just what these “clasps” were and how they were applied is not clear. Probably they are best taken as braces, placed, two at either end of the cross timber, one above and the other below the slanting uprights.

101. 16. ab extrema parte: at the end.— quibus disclusis . . revinctis: the rel. refers to the tigna (haec utraque), and this clause repeats in general the content of the previous sentence. The cross-beams served to hold apart the uprights, which, sloping in opposite directions (in contrarium partem) and firmly bound together with the cross-beams by the braces, were well calculated to defy the river, whose current would simply bind the structure more firmly together.

101. 18. quo maior . . hoc artius: the greater . . the more closely, etc. Quo and hoc are ablatives of degree of difference; 125.

101. 19. tenerentur: sc. the subj. tigna, i.e., the pairs of uprights.

101. 20. directa materia: i.e., timbers laid lengthwise of the bridge. — contexebantur: observe that the verb is contexo, not contego. This set of timbers laid upon the cross-beams joined the various bridge supports together, and constituted the roadway of the bridge.

101. 21. nihilo setius: nevertheless. The bridge would seem
strong enough as it was, but for all that to make it still more secure he added more supports.

101. 24. exciperent: subjunct. in a relative clause of purpose; lit., receive, i.e., sustain.

101. 25. sive: or if.

101. 29. CHAPTER 18. Diebus decem quibus: abl. of time within which; 139. Trans. the relative, after.

101. 30. omni opere effecto: trans. this abl. abs. by a finite verb with subject nom., as if it were the main verb of the sentence, and connect with what follows by and.

101. 31. partem: end.

Page 102. 5. institui: to be built. Observe the pass. form of coeptus est when used with a pass. infin. — hortantibus eis: at the instigation of those.

102. 8. solitudinem ac silvas: the second noun seems to define more particularly the first; trans. by hendiadys as if silvas were a gen. silvarum, and omit the ac; 225. — abdiderant: observe that the force of do in this compound is the same as in circumdo, not give but put.

102. 9. Chapter 19. paucos: insert only before this word in translation.

102. 10. vicis aedificiiisque: the former as usual refers to villages, to rows of dwellings fairly close together; the latter to isolated buildings. — frumentis: this word is used in the plural only of standing grain, the crops.

102. 12. premerentur: subjunct. because of the implied indir. disc. in auxilium pollicitus; 210. It is imperf. tense, because of the secondary sequence.

102. 15. uti . . . deponent . . . convenient: subst. clauses dependent upon the idea of commanding in nuntios misisse; 199.

102. 18. hunc esse delectum: the principal clause in indir. disc. as suggested by nuntios misisse; this is not the command but a simple declaration of a fact. Translate, a place (locum understood with which medium agrees) had been chosen for this.

102. 20. decertare: to fight it out.

102. 21. omnibus . . . rebus confectis: as he had gained
those objects. These objects are given again, though he had told them before. Caesar evidently thought he had involved himself in danger enough, but wished to impress his Roman readers with the successful nature of his expedition.

102. 24. obsidione: state of oppression.

III. Caesars Invasion of Britain

Chapters 20–36 describe Caesar’s first expedition into Britain. With this chapter, then, English history may be said to begin.

Page 103. 2. Chapter 20. septentriones: the seven stars making the constellation of the “Great Dipper,” always visible in our northern hemisphere, and used symbolically for “the north.”

103. 4. omnibus . . . bellis: an abl. of time when or during which; 138; 137.
103. 5. auxilia: it is hardly likely that this was the only or even the chief reason for his decision to invade Britain. The very lateness of the season seems to imply that he was not seriously planning conquest this time. Like the invasion of Germany, there seems to be in this an effort to gain popular and so political support at home. The Romans attached great importance to the fact that Caesar had opened up new countries, which offered them chances of profit and plunder in the future.

103. 6. deficeret: proved insufficient; for fut. (not contrary to fact). See note on arbitraretur, p. 71, l. 8.
103. 7. fore: the subjects acc. of this infin. are the clauses si . . . adisset . . . perspexisset . . . cognovisset.
103. 9. aditus: perhaps this means landing-places.
103. 10. praeter mercatores: the traders naturally had dealings with the inhabitants, but no one else, without good reason (temere), went to the island.
103. 12. Gallias: the plural is peculiar; probably Caesar is thinking of the divisions of Gaul which he himself has enumerated. Cf. p. 1, ll. 1 ff.

103. 20. Chapter 21. priusquam periculum faceret: used
in the sense in which it occurs in p. 31, ll. 9 ff. Before the whole army should attempt to land, etc., Caesar wished one of his trusted followers to investigate the conditions for him.

103. 21. C. Volusenum [Quadratus]: he is mentioned in other places by Caesar. Cf. p. 73, l. 28. He was a tribunus militum.

103. 24. Morinos: a Belgian tribe; see Map of Gaul. Itius Portus seems to have been Boulogne, from which Caesar is thought to have sailed for Britain on both of his expeditions. Others identify it with Wissant, about ten miles west southwest of Calais.

Page 104. 3. dare: more strictly we should have se daturos atque . . obtemperaturos.

104. 4. Quibus auditis: abl. abs., not dat. with pollicitus.

104. 5. liberaliter pollicitus: he made them generous promises.

104. 7. Atrebatibus: this tribe lived not far from the coast, and their lands bordered upon those of the Morini.

104. 8. virtutem et consilium: courage and intelligence.

104. 10. in his regionibus: possibly we are justified in stretching the meaning of this phrase so as to include part of Britain as well as of Gaul; see Map of Gaul. — magni: sc. preti; lit., of great value; i.e., highly. The gen. expresses indefinite value; 103.

104. 11. imperat: sc. ut with adeat, etc.

104. 12. fidem sequantur: enter into an alliance with. — se(que): i.e., Caesar himself, as se here refers indirectly to the subject of imperat, the main verb.

104. 14. quantum . . facultatis: lit., how much of opportunity. Trans., as if facultatis were nominative, just to such an extent as opportunity could, etc. — qui . . non auderet: this is probably a causal clause (qui = cum is), and seems to imply that Caesar was dissatisfied with the report, and chooses to reflect upon the man’s courage and fitness.

104. 20. Chapter 22. de consilio: for their previous conduct, lit., concerning the plan of the earlier time. One’s conduct is assumed to be the result of one’s purpose (consilium).

104. 21. quod: this defines their misconduct; namely that, etc. — barbari et . . imperiti: bring in predicatively, being or
who were, etc. — nostrae consuetudinis: with our (i.e., the Romans') ways; 104.

104. 22. se . . facturos: see note on dare, l. 3.

104. 26. propter anni tempus: we are told at the beginning of Chapter 20 that the summer was nearly over.

104. 27. tantularum: the diminutive ending -ulus negatives the force of tantus, trifling (matters). — Britanniae: dat. of ind. obj. after the compound verb, antepono; 107, b. Of course we are to understand that the place, Britain, is put here for the war in Britain.

Page 105. 2. Huc accedebant: the verb is equivalent to adderebantur. Trans.: Besides these there were, etc.

105. 3. ex eo loco: i.e., his own point for embarking, Illius Portus. — a milibus passuum VIII: a is used with the force practically of a comparative; hence it is followed by an ablative of the degree of difference; away by eight miles, i.e., eight miles away; 125.

105. 4. tenebantur: as a verb of hindering, this is followed by a subst. clause in the subjunct. with quo minus; 201.

105. 8. ducendum: gerundive in agreement with the obj. of the verb dedit, to express purpose; 222.

105. 12. Chapter 23. tempestatem: not tempest or storm, but weather simply; defined further by idoneam ad navigandum. — tertia . vigilia: on the Roman watches see 59.

105. 13. ulterior portum: i.e., farther to the east; perhaps the harbor of Ambleteuse to-day. See on p. 103, l. 24. The matter is still in dispute whether Caesar himself sailed from Boulogne or Calais or from some point between. It is perhaps as well to assume with the majority that he sailed from Boulogne.

105. 14. A quibus cum . . esset: this clause seems not well related to the rest of the sentence. Perhaps it may be taken as concessive, cum = although. Caesar arrived at a certain time, in spite of the slowness of the ships carrying the cavalry, as he did not wait for them.

105. 17. expositas: ranged. Apparently there was some hope of deterring the Romans from landing by this display of force.
105. 18. *atque ... continebatur*: this defines the *natura loci* mentioned in the preceding clause. The meaning is that the hills came down so close to the shore that, etc.

105. 22. *convenirent*: this clause indicates not only the time to which he would wait, but also his purpose in waiting. The same use of the same word in p. 7, l. 4; 183.


105. 25. *monuit*: the subst. clause following this (199; here without *ut*) comes at the end of the sentence *ad nutum ... administrarentur*; 199. — *ut rei militaris ratio*, etc.: as warfare in general and naval warfare especially required.

105. 26. *ut quae*: since it (these). This is supposed to express the same thing (*i.e.*, cause or reason), but to be more emphatic than the relative alone.

105. 27. *ad nutum*: at the nod, sign, *i.e.*, promptly; in that case *ad tempus* would add the idea of favorable opportunity, *at the right instant*, referring to the *instabilem motum* just mentioned.

105. 28. *ventum et aestum*: *i.e.*, the wind must have been west or southwest, and the tide set to the eastward.

105. 31. *aperto ac plano litore*: an abl. abs., *where the shore was open and level*, *i.e.*, there were none of the difficulties of landing such as confronted him at or near Dover. This must have been between Walmercastle and Deal.

Page 106. 2. Chapter 24. *quo ... genere*: *genere* stands for *essedariis*, but is placed in the rel. clause in agreement with *quo*. Any literal translation would be most awkward, a *kind* (of fighting equipment) which, etc. Translate as if the simple relative *quibus* stood here in place of *quo genere*.

106. 4. *navibus egredi*: for *quominus e navibus egrederentur*, from landing. — *prohibebant*: tried to stop. The imperf. here denotes attempted action. — nisi in alto: the Roman ships were too large to bring close enough in shore for the men to leap out and find themselves in shallow water where they would have firm footing; 152, a.

106. 6. *militibus*: a dat. of agent limiting *desiliendum* (*erat*) and the other gerundives following. Observe that *oppressis*
agrees with *militibus*, while between the two come an abl. expressing place, an abl. abs., and an abl. of manner.

106. 10. *cum illi*: while they, *i.e.*, the enemy. — *arido*: used as a noun here; 152, *a*.

106. 15. *pedestribus*: this nondescript sort of fighting can hardly be termed a land battle. The soldiers from the ships were greatly hindered because they were standing in the water.

106. 17. Chapter 25. *species*: the war galleys were of course much narrower and longer than the ships built to carry cargoes. The latter, too, were dependent upon sails alone, while the war galleys were propelled by oars. The Britons were acquainted with the cargo ships of the traders, but large ships propelled by oars were an unfamiliar sight. — *motus ad usum expeditior*: method of handling (*i.e.*, by oars) made them readier for use. The advantage of the oar-propelled vessel in going directly to any given point, over the vessel using sails, unless it so happen that the wind is favorable, is most obvious.

106. 21. *quae res*: *this movement*.

106. 23. *tormentorum*: these machines of war correspond roughly to modern artillery. They were of various shapes and of course were designed to increase the size of the missile and the force with which it could be hurled. The catapult, ballista, etc., are examples. See 65. — *permotì . . . consisterunt*: halted in astonishment at, etc.

106. 26. *aquilam*: the legionary standard. There were *signa* also for the subdivisions of a legion, and figures of animals were favorites for these. See 45–50. With what modern nations is the eagle a symbol of power?

106. 27. *ea res*: *his act*.

106. 29. *certe*: at any rate, *i.e.*, whatever you do. It was the greatest possible disgrace to lose the standard. This shows the strategy of the Romans in choosing the bravest and strongest to carry it. This appeared also in their habit of placing the standard and its bearer in the greatest danger and then appealing, much as is done in this passage, to the men of the legion to rescue it. A battle often turned on this.
Page 107. 1. officium praestitero: shall do my duty; as often the less exact English prefers the fut., or even pres., to the fut. perf. of the Latin; a more emphatic statement than the fut.; 169, Note.

107. 5. subsecuti: following close behind (sub).

107. 7. Chapter 26. Pugnatum est . . acriter: observe the emphatic position of the verb at the beginning, and the adv. at the end of the sentence.

107. 8. ordines servare: it has often been remarked that the elbow-touch in the lines as they close up in battle has kept up the courage and maintained the discipline of many armies since the Romans’ time. There were two ordines (ranks) in each maniple; a centurion was in command of each ordo, which numbered 100 men when recruited to its full strength, but this was rarely the case in Roman history. See 17. — firmiter insistere: get a firm footing.

107. 9. signa: see note on aquila, l. 26, and 50. Signa subsequi; i.e., keep with their proper maniples. — alius alia ex navi: cf. the double use of alius, p. 30, l. 8.

107. 11. vero: while. This emphasizes strongly the difference between the Britons and the Romans in position and circumstances. — notis . . vadis: an abl. abs. expressing cause; 130.

107. 13. incitatis equis: an abl. abs.; not dat. with adorie-bantur, which always takes the acc. of the dir. obj., as here (eos) impeditos. Do not make the mistake of thinking that all verbs compounded with ad, ante, con, etc., are followed by the dat.; 107, Note.

107. 14. plures: nom. case. — a latere aperto: as so often of direction, on, not from.

107. 15. universos: those who were massed together as opposed to the singulares, those who left the ships singly.

107. 16. scaphas: from its derivation this word means a “dug-out.” Its resemblance to the English “skiff” is apparent. They were the small boats, tenders, of the ships of war.

107. 17. item: hardly differing from et, connecting scaphas and speculatoria navigia. — speculatoria navigia: these may
have been the same as the naves actuariae which used both oars and sails. These were intended simply for scouting purposes and not for naval fighting. In this peculiar engagement, neither a land nor a water battle, they were of especial use, as they could be rowed in close to shore and the larger vessels could not.

107. 19. simul: for simul atque.
107. 21. in fugam dederunt: observe that in this phrase do, dare (as in some compounds) means “put,” not “give.” So circumdo, abdo.
107. 22. tenere: keep. — capere: used technically, as we say “make” the island, i.e., reach it.
107. 23. fortunam: Caesar believed in his “lucky star”; this was true of Scipio, Napoleon, and other men famous in the world’s history. Possibly it would be more true in some cases to say they pretended to believe in it.
107. 26. Chapter 27. de pace: (to treat) for peace.
107. 27. imperasset: for imperavisset; probably the form used by the ambassadors was imperaveris.
107. 28. polliciti sunt: observe the absence of a conjunction between this verb and the preceding verb in the same construction; 227.
107. 29. demonstraveram: the English would use a simple past tense, but the Latin idiom calls for a pluperfect. We should look for the plural or for an impersonal form here as more in keeping with Caesar’s usual style. Cf. dixeramus on p. 45, l. 4.

Page 108. 1. illi: the Britons, nom. case.
108. 2. oratoris modo: as an ambassador. Cf. sublicae modo, p. 101, ll. 8 ff. The ordinary word would be legatus. This seizure would of course be a most heinous offence from Caesar’s standpoint. Perhaps he magnifies the mission of this envoy in order to put the Britons in the wrong so far as possible. See note on legatos . . . coniectos, p. 76, ll. 20 ff.
108. 3. tum proelio facto: now however that the battle was over.
108. 4. eius rei: for this act, i.e., the seizure of Commius.
108. 5. multituidinem: the ruling class refuse to accept responsibility for the acts of members of the tribe. Obviously this is a mere pretext to excuse their conduct in this case. Sim-
ilar explanations have frequently been offered in both ancient and modern times, and sometimes with justice.


108. 7. questus: from queror, not quaero; in translating, use a clause of concession with although.

108. 9. ignoscere: supply se for its subj. acc.; a rare omission.

108. 12. suos: not in agreement with agros, but to be taken with milites understood. The people, i.e., multitudinem, had gathered somewhere after the flight, and are now bidden to return to their homes.

108. 15. Chapter 28. post diem quartum quam: for quarto die postquam, etc.

108. 17. quae equites sustulerant: freely trans., on which the horsemen had embarked; lit., which had lifted, removed the, etc.

108. 18. superiore portu: see note on ulteriorem portum, p. 105, l. 13.

108. 22. ad inferiorem partem: this is explained by the clause quae est immediately following, i.e., towards the south-western part of the island.

108. 23. suo: lit., their own, best translated, to themselves.

108. 24. ancoris iactis: they tried to ride out the storm near the island, but, unable to do this, as they were safer sailing than anchored, they put to sea in spite of the storm and darkness.

108. 25. necessario: because they shipped so much water while anchored. — adversa nocte: just as we say, “in the teeth of the gale”; the darkness added to the peril which they had to face.

108. 27. Chapter 29. ut esset luna plena: a subst. clause of result, the subject of accidit; 200. — qui dies: the calendar day of 24 hours is meant, which includes the hours of night. The absurdity is then only apparent. Cf. p. 91, l. 1, hieme, qui fuit annus. Trans.: a time which, etc.

Page 109. 1. nostris . . . incognitum: the absence of tides in the Mediterranean accounts for this ignorance on the part of the Romans.
109. 5. administrandi: of attending to them. Evidently the severity of the storm and its suddenness prevented those on shore from reaching those transports which were moored off shore.

109. 7. armamentis: not armament, but rigging or tackle.

109. 8. id: this stands as an appositive for the entire clause, magna . . . facta est.

109. 9. perturbatio: excitement, alarm.

109. 10. factu: this supine (abl. of specification with optimum) may be omitted in translation. Lit. best (to be done), i.e., to cut off, etc.; 224.—duxorunt: equivalent to arbitrati sunt.—rebellione facta: translate by an infin. clause coordinate with the infin. clauses following.

109. 11. rem: for bellum here.

109. 12. his superatis . . . interclusis: trans. this abl. abs. clause as though conditional with "if"; the infin. transiturum (esse) forms the apodosis.

109. 13. rursus: this does not mean that this was a second conspiracy, but simply a change of conduct, attitude. They turned back (rursus) from the peace negotiations and made a conspiracy.

109. 15. Chapter 31. ex eventu: lit., from what had happened to; here: from the disaster to.—ex eo quod: from the fact that.

Page 110. 2. Itaque . . . comparabat: And so he took precautions against all emergencies. Caesar meant to be prepared, whatever happened.

110. 5. ex continenti: evidently Caesar had some ships which were in condition to make the voyage and bring materials for refitting the others.

110. 10. Chapter 32. Dum ea geruntur: Meanwhile.

110. 12. in agris: i.e., attending to the crops, etc.—ventitaret: an intensive or iterative verb derived from venio and indicating repetition of an action. Show this in translating.

110. 13. in statione erant: i.e., the bodies of pickets and
sentries placed at the four gates of the camp, perhaps as many as a cohort at each. Stronger bodies of course were on guard at night than by day.

110. 16. in ea parte: *in that direction,* do not repeat this in the rel. clause, as the Latin does. Cf. note on *quibus itineribus,* p. 5, l. 24.

110. 17. aliquid... consili: a clause in the acc. and infin. explaining *id quod erat.* Trans. actively.

110. 20. in stationem ... succedere: *to go on guard duty.*

110. 23. sustinere: used here absolutely, with no obj. Cf. *prohibere,* p. 5, l. 28.

110. 25. pars una: *only one place,* i.e., from which the Romans had not gathered the grain.

110. 27. delituerant: cf. *delitesco,* derived from *lateo.*— dispersos, etc.: use finite verbs in translating this succession of participles. Trans.: *Our men who had scattered, laid down their arms,* etc. They attacked .

110. 29. incertis ordinibus: the Romans could not resume their formation.

Page 111. 1. Chapter 33. Genus hoc est: *is after this fashion.* *Ex essedis* has the force of an adjective modifier, *chariot fighting.* Give the lit. trans. of the sentence.

111. 2. perequitant: subject *Britanni* to be supplied.— et tela coniciunt atque... perturbant: omit the conjunction *et* and trans. the verbs by present participles, *flinging,* etc.

111. 10. praestant: exhibit, followed by an obj. acc. When it has the meaning *be superior,* this verb is generally followed by the dat. — ac tantum usu cotidiano... efficiunt: freely, and daily practice and training make them so efficient.

111. 13. in iugo: this may at times have served a useful purpose in giving a vantage point from which to attack or repel an enemy, but in general it may be taken as a mere acrobatic feat showing the agility of these chariot-fighters.

111. 15. Chapter 34. Quibus rebus: this is an abl. of means qualifying perturbatis.—nostris: dat. case with auxilium tuit.

111. 18. Quo facto: equivalent to nevertheless; it expresses concession.

111. 19. arbitratus: since he thought; in general, participles expressing circumstances should be translated by clauses in English.—suo se loco continuit: he remained where he was. Perhaps we are to understand by suo “favorable,” i.e., in a place he could defend even though he did not feel strong enough to take the offensive against an enemy so active and peculiar in tactics.

111. 24. continerent et . . . prohiberent: the mood shows that the storms were of such a kind as to keep, etc.; 179. Continebant would simply state that they did keep.

111. 28. expulissent: this represents a fut. perf. indic., used by the messengers. It depends closely upon the indir. question daretur, and so itself becomes subjunct. Subjunct. by Attraction; 221.

112. 2. Chapter 35. ut effugerent: a subst. clause of result in apposition with and explanatory of idem; 200.
essent pulsi: a future condition changed into the secondary
tense by the sequence; 207.

112. 3. equites: these would allow him to follow up the enemy
after defeating them in battle.

112. 6. diutius . . non: i.e., not longer than the first en-
counter.

112. 8. tanto spatio . . quantum: so far as; the abl. seems
to be a loose use of the abl. of means, the road over which;
119, Note. — cursu et viribus . . potuerunt: speed and strength
would allow.

112. 15. Chapter 36. die: observe the gender and compare
with the meaning of die in the first line of the chapter; also
see note on die . . dictionis, p. 4, l. 29. The construction
with propinqua is an abl. abs. expressing cause. Probably in-
firmis navibus is best taken the same way. This is the reason
for not sailing later in the season; 130.

112. 15. aequinocti: then as now violent storms are generally
looked for about the time of the equinox, the 21st to the 24th
of September, when what we call the “line storm” is expected.

112. 16. subiciendam: trans. subicere, expose.

112. 20. capere: see capere insulam; p. 107, l. 22.

112. 21. infra: further down the coast, i.e., to the westward.

IV. Campaign Against the Morini and Menapii

112. 22. Chapter 37. essent expositi: had landed.

Page 113. 1. non ita: not very.

113. 2. si sese interfici nollent: subjunct. by attraction
representing a simple condition (si non vultis) depending upon
ponere, which in turn depends upon the secondary tense
iussurunt. It is a part of the original command; 211.

113. 3. orbe facto: in this formation the soldiers formed
something like our “hollow square,” standing back to back, thus
protecting themselves from all sides. See 43.

113. 8. amplius horis: the idiom allows horas; 118.

113. 15. Chapter 38. rebellionem: as they had offered their
submission to Caesar before he went to Britain, this may be
properly thus described, p. 104, ll. 19 ff. — siccitates paludum: *the dry marshes*, the abstract noun *siccitas* appears very strangely in the plural. As the condition of dryness appeared in many places, probably the plural was thus to be accounted for. Cf. *frigora* = *cold weather* above, p. 12, l. 20; see also p. 45, l. 15. Trans. by an adj.

113. 16. *quo se recipere*: *a place to retreat to*, a purpose clause, *quo* for *ut eo*; 177.

113. 26. *supplicatio*: *a thanksgiving to the gods* which took the form of a general holiday and celebration. The increasing length of these indicated Caesar’s advancing popularity and power at Rome. We do well to recall at times that Caesar wrote his “Commentarii” as campaign documents to serve his interests at Rome in his absence. Compare the number of days (15) mentioned at the end of Book II. At the end of Book VII we find that a *supplicatio* of 20 days marked the subjection of Gaul after its last united stand under Vercingetorix.

Cato proposed, on the contrary, that Caesar be surrendered to the Germans because of his treatment of the Usipites and Tencteri. See on p. 99, l. 11. The length of the *supplicatio* was probably supposed to signify the importance, in the Romans’ eyes, of Caesar’s achievement in opening up two new lands, Germany and Britain.
**ABBREVIATIONS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Abbreviation</th>
<th>Definition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>abl.</td>
<td>ablative.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>abs.</td>
<td>absolute.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>acc.</td>
<td>accusative.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>adj.</td>
<td>adjective.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>adv.</td>
<td>adverb, adverbial.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cf.</td>
<td>compare.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>coll.</td>
<td>collective, collectively.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>comp.</td>
<td>comparative.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>conj.</td>
<td>conjunction.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>constr.</td>
<td>construction.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dat.</td>
<td>dative.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>decl.</td>
<td>declension.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>def.</td>
<td>defective.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dem.</td>
<td>demonstrative.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dep.</td>
<td>deponent.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>desid.</td>
<td>desiderative.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dim.</td>
<td>diminutive.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dir.</td>
<td>direct.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>disc.</td>
<td>discourse.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>distr.</td>
<td>distributive.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>e.g.</td>
<td>exempli gratia = for example.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Eng.</td>
<td>English.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>etc.</td>
<td>et cetera = and so forth.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>f.</td>
<td>feminine.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ff.</td>
<td>following, and what follows.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ftn.</td>
<td>footnote.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fut.</td>
<td>future.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gen.</td>
<td>genitive.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>i.e.</td>
<td>id est = that is.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>impers.</td>
<td>impersonal, impersonally.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>imperf.</td>
<td>imperfect.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ind.</td>
<td>indirect.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>indecl.</td>
<td>indeclinable.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>indef.</td>
<td>indefinite.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>indic.</td>
<td>indicative.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>inf.</td>
<td>infinitive.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>intens.</td>
<td>intensive.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>inter.</td>
<td>interrogative.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>irr.</td>
<td>irregular.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lit.</td>
<td>literally, literal.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>l.</td>
<td>line.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>m.</td>
<td>masculine.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n.</td>
<td>neuter.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nom.</td>
<td>nominative.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>num.</td>
<td>numeral.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>obj.</td>
<td>object.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>p., pp.</td>
<td>page, pages.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>part.</td>
<td>participle.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pass.</td>
<td>passive.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pers.</td>
<td>person, personal.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>perf.</td>
<td>perfect.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pl.</td>
<td>plural.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pluperf.</td>
<td>pluperfect.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pos.</td>
<td>positive.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pred.</td>
<td>predicate.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prep.</td>
<td>preposition.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pres.</td>
<td>present.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pron.</td>
<td>pronoun, pronominal.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>reflex.</td>
<td>reflexive.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rel.</td>
<td>relative.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sc.</td>
<td>supply.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>semi-dep.</td>
<td>semi-deponent.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sing.</td>
<td>singular.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>subj.</td>
<td>subjunctive.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>subst.</td>
<td>substantive.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sup.</td>
<td>superlative.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trans.</td>
<td>translate, translation.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**VOCABULARY**

**Note.** — English words in the definitions which are derived, directly or indirectly, from the Latin words are given in small capitals, as *absent*; except in the case of proper names.

English derivations which are not used as definitions are given in capitals between parentheses; for example *(abduct)*.

Composition, in cases where the parts are unchanged in form, is indicated by hyphens, as *ab-*ducō; when the parts are changed in form, or when it is necessary to define their meaning, they are given in parentheses as *abiciō* (*ab* + *iaciō*), *abdō* (*ab* + *dō*, *put*).

In nouns in *-eius* the accent, both in Latin and in English, falls on the *ci*, which is a diphthong, as in *eius*; cf. *maior*, etc.

In the principal parts of verbs the *neuter* of the perf. pass. part. is given.

| A. abbreviation for Aulus, a Roman forename. | ab-eō, -ēre, -iī, —, fut. part. abitūrus, go away. |
| a., abbreviation for ante in a.d., ante diem. See Introd. 140. | abesse, infin. of absum. |
| ā, ab, abs, prep. with abl., from, away from; at, on; ā dēstrā, on the right; on the side of; of agency, by; of time, from after, since. See Introd. 142, 1. In this text ab is written only before vowels and h; ā before all consonants. | abiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum (*ab* + *iaciō*), throw away. *(Abiect.)* |
| abditus, -a, -um, perf. part. of abdō; as adj., hidden, secluded. | abiēs, -ietis, f., spruce, fir. |
| abdō, -dere, -didī, -ditum (*ab* + *dō*, *put*), put away; hide, conceal. | ab-iungō, -iungere, -iūnxī, -iünc-tum, detach. |
| ab-dūcō, -ducere, -dūxi, -duc-tum, lead away, lead off. *(Abduct.)* | abs, see ā. |
| abscīdō, -cīdere, -cīdī, -cīsum (*abs + caedō*), cut off. | absēns, -sentis (part. of absum), adj., absent. |
| absimilis, -e (*ab* = *un* -, + similis), adj., unlike. | absūlītūs, -tūs, -tūtōrum. |
| ab-sistō, -sistere, -stītī, —, withdraw; desist. | abstineō, -tinēre, -tinuí, -ten-tum (*abs + teneō*), hold back, hold away from; abstain from; spare. |
abs-trahō, -trahere, -trāxī, -trāc-tum, draw from, draw off.
(Abstract.)
ab-sum, abesse, āfui, —, fut. part. āfutūrōs, be away, be absent; be distant, be far from; be lacking, be wanting.
abundō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (ab + undō; cf. unda, wave), overflow; abound in.
ac, another form of atque (see atque), conj., and also, and; with comparatives and words implying comparison or contrast, as, than.
acciiso, -are, -art, -atum (ad, cf. causa), accuse.
acciiso, -are, -art, -atum (ad, cf. causa), accuse.
accurate, coinp. accuratius (accuratus, careful; cf. cura), adv., carefully. (Accurately.)
accusō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (ad, cf. causa), accuse.
accurro, -currere, -cucurri or -currī, -cursum (ad + currō), run to, run up, hasten to.
accuratis, -tatis (acerbus), f., bitterness; pl., hardships, troubles. (Acerbity.)
acervus, -i (cf. acer, sharp), m., heap, pile; lit., "a pointed heap."
acius, comp. acrius, sup. acerrimē (ācer, sharp), adj., bitter.
acter, comp. acrīus, sup. acerrimē (ācer, sharp), adj., bitter.
actus, perf. part., of ago.
actus, perf. part. of agō.
acūtus, -a, -um, comp. acūtior, sup. acūtissimus (part. of acūō, sharpen), adj., sharpened, sharp; pointed. (Acute.)
adar, prep. with acc., to, up to; towards; at, near; of time,
until, up to; for, for the purpose of; according to, in respect to; with numerals and expressions of number, up to. See Introd. 144, 1.

a.d., abbreviation for ante diem.

See Introd. 140.

adactus, perf. part. of adigo.

ad-aquō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, make equal, be equal. (ADEquate.)

ad-amō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, love greatly, be enamored of, become fond of.

addō, -dere, -didi, -dittum (ad + dō, put), ADD, join.

ad-dūcō, -ducere, -duxi, -ductum, lead to, bring to; haul taut; lead, induce, persuade. (Adduce.)

ad-emptus, perf. part. of adimō.

adeō (ad + eō, adv.), adv., to such a degree, so much, so.

ad-eō, -ire, -iī, -iitum, go to, approach.

adeptus, perf. part. of adipiscor.

ad-equītō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (cf. equus, eques), ride to, ride up to.

ad-haerēscō, -haerēscere, -haesi, —, cling to. (ADhesive.)

adhibeō, -hibēre, -hibui, -hibitum (ad + habeō), take with one; summon, admit; use, employ.

ad-hortor, -āri, -ātus sum, dep., urge on, exhort.

ad-hūc, adv., up to this time, until now.

ad-iaceō, -iacēre, -iacui, —, lie near, be ADJACENT.

Adiatunnus, -i, m., Adiatunnus, a chief of the Sotiates.

adiciō, -icere, -iēci, -iectum (ad + iacio), throw to, throw; add; be near. (ADJECTIVE.)

adigō, -igere, -ēgī, -āctum (ad + agō), drive to, hurl.

adimō, -imere, -ēmi, -ēemptum (ad + emō), take to oneself; take away.

adipiscor, adipisci, adeptus (ad + apiscor), dep., obtain.

aditus, -īs, (adeo, -ire), m., going to, access, approach.

ad-iūdicō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, ADJUDGE, award.

ad-iungō, -iungere, -iunxi, -iunctum, join to. (ADJunct.)

adiūtor, -tōris (adiuvō), m., assistant, helper; advocate. (ADJUTANT.)

ad-iuvō, -iuvāre, -iūvi, -iūtum, aid, help.

Admagentobriga, -ae, f., Admagentobriga, a town in the eastern part of Gaul.

ad-mātūrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, bring to MATUREITY, hasten.

ad-minister, -trī (cf. minister, servant), m., assistant.

ad-ministrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, attend to, manage, ADMINISTER.

ad-mīror, -mīrāri, -mīratus sum, dep., wonder at; ADMIRE.

ad-mittō, -mittere, -misi, -missum, let go, let loose; equō admissō, with horse at full speed; ADMIT, allow to happen, commit; incur.

admodum (ad + modum, acc. of modus), adv., to a degree; very, fully.

ad-moneō, -monere, -monui, -monitum, remind, ADMONISH.

ad-olēscō, -olēscere, -olēvi, -ultum, grow up. (ADOLESCENT, ADULT.)

ad-orior, -oriri, -ortus sum, rise against; fall upon, attack.
**VOCABULARY**

ad-sum, -esse, -fuī, be near, be present; appear; assist, help.

Aduatuca, -ae, f., Aduatuca, a stronghold in the eastern part of Belgic Gaul.

Aduatuci, -ōrum, m. pl., the Aduatuci, a tribe of the Belgae.

adulēscēns, -centis (adolēscō), adj., youth; as subst. m., youth, young man. (ADOLESCENT.)

adulēscēntia, -ae (adulēscēns), f., youth. (ADOLESCENCE.)

adulēscēntulus, -i (dimin. of adulēscēns), m., very young man.

adventus, -ūs (adveniō), m., arrival, approach. (ADVENT.)

adversarius, -a, -um (of adversus), adj., turned against, opposed; as subst., adversarius, -ārī, m., opponent, adversary.

adversus, -a, -um (perf. part. of advertō), adj., turned toward, facing, opposite; unfavorable, adverse, stormy; adversō colle, up the hill; adversō flūmine, up stream.

adversus (advertō), prep. with acc., turned towards; against.

ad-vertō, -vertere, -vertī, -versum, turn towards; animum advertere, notice; punish.

ad-vocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, call to, call. (ADVOCATE.)

ad-volō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, fly to; hasten to.

aedificium, aedificī (aedificō), n., building, EDIFICE.

aedificō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (aedēs, building, cf. faciō), build.

Aeduus, -a, -um, adj., Aeduan; as subst., Aeduus, -i, m., an Aeduan; pl., the Aeduī, the Aeduans, a prominent people of Gaul.

aeger, -gra, -grum, adj., sick, weak.

aegerrimē, sup. of aegre.

aegrē, comp. aegrius, sup. aegerrimē (aeger), adv., with difficulty, hardly.

Aemilius, Aemi'li, m., Aemilius, gentile name of L. Aemilius, a decurion in Caesar’s Gallic cavalry.

aequālīter (aequālis, equal), adv., evenly, EQUALLY.

aequinocītium, -noctī (aequīs +nox), n., the EQUINOX.

aequītās, -tātis (aequīs), f., evenness, EQUALITY; fairness, justice; contentment. (Equity.)

aequō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (aequīs), make equal, EQUALIZE.

aequus, -a, -um, adj., level, EQUAL, fair.

aerāria, -ae (aerārius, adj. from aes), f., copper mine.

aes, aeris, n., copper, bronze; money; aes aliēnum, debt; lit., “another’s money.”

aestās, -tātis (cf. aestus), f., summer.

aestimātīō, -tiōnis (aestimō), f., valuation, ESTIMATION.

aestimō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (aes, money), value, ESTIMATE; regard as, consider.

aestivus, -a, -um (aestās), adj., of summer, summer.

aestuārium, -ārī (aestus), n., salt marsh; arm of the sea, ESTUARY.
aestus, -ūs, m., heat; tide.
aetās, -tātis, f., time of life, age; old age.
aeternus, -a, -um, adj., everlasting, eternal; lasting, long-continued.
afferō, afferre, attuli, allatum (ad + ferō), bring to, bring; bring forward, allege; cause, produce.
afficio, -ficere, -feci, -fectum (ad + facio), do something to any one; affect, afflict; supplicio affici, be visited with punishment, be punished; beneficiō affici, be treated with kindness.
affigō, -figere, -fixi, -fixum (ad + figō), fasten to, affix.
affingō, -fingere, -finxi, -fectum, (ad + fingō), make up besides, invent besides.
affinitās, -tātis (affīnis, relative by marriage), f., relationship by marriage. (Affinity.)
affirmātiō, -tiōnis (affirmō, assure), f., assurance. (Affirmation.)
affixus, -a, -um, perf. part. of affigō.
afficctō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (intens. of afflicto), dash against, wreck.
affligō, -figere, -fixi, -fectum (ad + figō, dash against), throw down, damage, wreck. (Afflict.)
affore, for affutūrus; fut. infin. of adsum.
Āfricus, -a, -um (cf. Africa), adj., African; as subst., Āfricus, -i (sc. ventus), m., the south-west wind, which blew towards Rome from the direction of Africa.
āfuisse, perf. infin. of absum.
āfutūrus, -a, -um, fut. part. of absum.
ager, agri, m., field, land, territory. (Acre.)
agger, -geris (ad + gerō, i.e., what is brought to a place), m., material for a mound, rampart, or embankment; mound, rampart, embankment.
aggregō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (ad + gregō, from grex, herd), collect; join. (Aggregate.)
agitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (intens. of agō), set in motion; discuss, consider, agitate.
agmen, -minis (agō), n., army on the march, army; novissimum agmen, the rear; primum agmen, the van.
agō, agere, ēgī, ēctum, set in motion, drive, lead; do, make; carry on, act; bring up, treat, negotiate, arrange, discuss; conventūs agere, to hold the assizes, hold court; grātiās agere, to thank; pass., be done, go on, happen.
agricultūra, -ae (ager, cf. colō), f., agriculture, farming.
alacer, -cris, -cre, comp. alacrior, adj., lively, eager, spirited.
alacrītās, -tātis (alacer), f., liveliness, eagerness, alacrity.
ālarius, -a, -um (āla, wing), adj., of a wing; as subst., ālārii, -ōrum, m. pl., auxiliary troops, which originally had their position on the wings of the army. See Introd. 35.
albus, -a, -um, adj., white; plumbum album, tin; lit., white lead. (Album.)
8  VOCABULARY

alcēs, -cis, f., ELK.
Alesia, -ae, f., Alesia, a city in the territory of the Mandubii.
aliās (alius), adv., at another time. (Alias.)
aliēnō, -āre,-āvī,-ātum (aliēnus),
ALIENATE, estrange; of the mind, turn, make insane.
aliēnus, -a, -um (alius), adj., of another; unfavorable; out of place, inappropriate. (Alien.)
aliō (alius), adv., to another place, elsewhere.
aliquam-diū, adv., for some time, for a while.
aliquandō (ali- + quandō), adv., sometime, finally.
aliquantus, -a, -um (ali- + quantus), adj., some, considerable; n., aliquantum, as adv., something.
aliquī, aliqua, aliquod (ali- + quī), adj. pron. indef., some, any.
aliquis, aliqua, aliquid (ali- + quis), indef. pron., some one, any one; pl., some, any; as subst., aliquid, n., something, anything.
aliquot (ali- + quot), adj. indecl., several, some.
aliter (alius), adv., otherwise.
alius, -a, -ud, gen. alius, dat. aliī, adj., another, other. Alius . . alius, one . . another, the other. Aliī . . . alii, some . . . others.
alātus, -a, -um, perf. part. of afferō.
aliciō, -licere, -lexī, -lectum (ad + lāciō, entice), entice, allure.
Allobrogēs,-gum, m. pl., the Allobroges, a tribe in the north-
eastern part of the Roman province of Gaul.
alō, alere, alui, altum or alitum, nourish, feed; keep up, support.
Alpēs, Alpium, m. pl., the Alps.
alter, -tera, -terum, gen. alterius, dat. alteri, adj., the other; second. Alter . . alter, the one . . the other. Alterī . . alteri, the one party . . the other.
alternus, -a, -um (alter), adj., ALTERNATE.
altitūdō, -dinis (altus), f., height, ALTITUDE; depth.
altus, -a, -um, comp. altior, sup. altissimus (perf. part. of alō), adj., high, deep; as subst., altum, -i, n., the deep, the sea.
alūta, -ae, f., soft leather.
ambactus, -i, m., retainer, dependent.
Ambarri, -ōrum, m. pl., the Ambarri, a Gallic tribe living on the Arar (Saône) near its junction with the Rhone, kinsmen of the Aedui.
Ambiani, -ōrum, m. pl., the Ambiani, a tribe of the Belgae.
Ambibarii, -ōrum, m. pl., the Ambibarii, a tribe dwelling in the northwestern part of Gaul.
Ambiliati, -ōrum, m. pl., the Ambiliati, a Gallic tribe, dwelling near the mouth of the Liger (Loire).
Ambiorix, -rigis, m., Ambiorix, a chief of the Eburones.
Ambivareti, -ōrum, m. pl., the Ambivareti, a tribe dwelling on the upper part of the Liger (Loire), dependents of the Aedui.
Ambivariti, -orum, m. pl., the Ambivariti, a Belgian tribe.
ambō, -ae, -ō, adj., both.
āmentia, -ae (āmēns, from ā- + mēns), f., madness, folly.
āmentum, -i, n., thong, strap for hurling javelins. See Introd. 33.
amfrāctus, -ūs, m., bend.
amīcitia, -ae (amicus), f., friendship.
amīcus, -a, -um, sup. amīcissimus (amō), adj., friendly, amicable; as subst., amīcus, -i, m., friend.
ā-mittō, -mittere, -mísus, let go; lose.
amor, -ōris (amō), m., love. (Amorous.)
amplē, comp. amplius, sup. amplissimē (amplus), adv., fully, largely, AMPLY; comp. amplius, more, further.
amplificō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (amplus, cf. faciō), enlarge, increase. (Amplify.)
amplitūdō, -dinis (amplus), f., greatness, extent; importance. (Amplitude.)
amplius, see amplus and amplē.
amplissimē, sup. of amplē.
amplus, -a, -um, sup. amplissimus, adj., large, AMPLE, generous; important, distinguished; comp. as subst., amplius, n., more.
an, interrog. conj., introducing the second part of a double question, or; utrum . . an, or -ne . . an, whether . . . or.
Anartēs, -ium, m. pl., the Anartes, a people of Dacia.
Ancalītes, -ium, m. pl., the Ancalites, a tribe of Britain.
anceps, -cipitus (amb-, = ambi + caput), adj., two-headed, double, twofold.
ancora, -ae, f., Anchor.
Andecumborius, -bo'ri, m., Andecumborius, one of the principal men of the Remi.
Andēs, Andium or Andī, -orum m. pl., the Andes, a Gallic tribe dwelling north of the Liger (Loire).
angulus, -i, m., ANGLE, corner.
angüstē (angustus), adv., closely; scantily.
angustiae, -ārum (angustus), f. pl., narrowness; narrow pass; pl., straits, difficulties.
angustus, -a, -um, comp. angustior (angō, squeeze), adj., contracted, narrow, small.
anima, -ae, f., breath; life, soul.
animadvertō, -vertere, -verti, -versum (animum advertō), turn the mind to; notice; animadvertere in aliquem, punish any one.
animal, -ālis (cf. anima), n., living thing, ANIMAL.
animus, -ī, m., soul, mind; feeling, consciousness; courage, spirit. (Animate.)
anōtinus, -a, -um (annus), adj., of the preceding year.
anus, -ī, m., year. (Anniversary.)
annus, -a, -um (annus), adj., of a year, for a year. (Annual.)
ānser, -eris, m., goose.
ante, adv. and prep. As adv., before, previously. As prep. with acc., before, in front of. (Antedate, etc.)
antēa (ante + eā), adv., before, previously, formerly.
ante-cēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, go before; surpass, be superior.

antecursor, -ōris (antecurrō, run before), m., one who runs before, scout; pl., advance-guard, vanguard.

ante-ferō, -ferre, -tuli, -lātum, place before, prefer.

antemna, -ae, f., yard of a ship.

ante-pōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positum, place before, prefer.

ante-quam, conj., before.

ante-verto, -vertere, -vertī, —, place before, prefer.

antiquitus (antiquus), adv., formerly, anciently, in ancient times.

antiquus, -a, -um, sup. antiquissimus (ante), adj., former, ancient, old; ANTIQUE.

Antistius, Antisti, m., Antistius, gentile name of C. Antistius Rēginus, one of Caesar's lieutenants.

Antōnius, Antōni, m., Antonius, gentile name of M. Antōnius, Mark Antony, and of C. Antōnius, a brother of M. Antōnius, and one of Caesar's lieutenants.

aperiō, aperiēre, aperuī, apertum, open.

apertē (apertus), adv., openly.

apertus, -a, -um, sup. apertissimus (part. of aperiō), adj., open, unprotected, exposed.

Apollō, -llinis, m., Apollo, identified by Caesar with the Gallie god of medicine.

apparō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (ad + parō), prepare, get ready. (APPARATUS.)

appellō, -pellere, -pulī, -pulsum (ad + pellō), drive to, bring to land.

appellō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, address, name, call. (APPELLATION.)

appetō, -petere, -petīvī, -petītum (ad + petō), seek; draw near. (APPETITE.)

Appius, Appī, m., Appius, a Roman praenōmen, or first name.

applicō, -āre, -āvī or -ui, -ātum (ad + plīcō, fold), apply to, fasten to; sē applicāre, lean against. (APPLICATION.)

apporō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (ad + portō), bring to, bring.

approbō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (ad + probō), approve. (APPROBATION.)

appropinquo, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (ad + propinquo), approach, draw near.

appulsus, perf. part. of appellō, -ere.

Aprilis, -e (aperiō, open; the mouth of the opening flowers), adj., of April.

aptus, -a, -um, comp. aptior (root ap-, fasten), adj., fitted, fit, suitable, apt.

apud, prep. with the acc., at, near; with, among; in the presence of.

aqua, -ae, f., water. (AQUEDUCT, AQUATIC.)

aquātiō, -tīonis (aquor, get water; cf. aqua), f., getting water, watering.

aquila, -ae, f., eagle; eagle as a standard, standard. (AQUILINE.) See Introd. 45.

Aquileia, -ae, f., Aquileia, a city of Cisalpine Gaul, situated at the head of the Adriatic Sea.
VOCABULARY

aquilifer, -feri (aquila + ferō), m., standard-bearer.
Aquitānia, -ae, f., Aquitania, one of the three grand divisions of Gaul.
Aquitānus, -a, -um, adj., of Aquitania; as subst., Aquitānus, -i, m., an Aquitanian.
Arar, -aris, acc. Ararim, abl. Ararī, m., the Aror, a river flowing into the Rhone; the modern Saône.
arbiter, -trī, m., ARBITER, judge.
arbītrium, arbi'tri (cf. arbiter), n., decision, choice, will; suō arbitriō, independently.
arbītror, -ārī, -ātus sum, think, believe, judge. (ARBITRATION.)
arbor, -oris, f., tree. (ARBOR, ARBOREAL.)
arcessō, -sere, -svi, -sītum, summon, send for, invite.
ārdeō, ārdere, ārsī, —, fut. part. ārsūrus, burn; be eager, be ARDENT; be angry.
Arduenna, -ae, f., Arduenna, the Ardennes, a forest in northeastern Gaul.
arduus, -a, -um, adj., steep, high; difficult. (ARDUOUS.)
Arecomīci, -ōrum, m., the Arecomici, a people dwelling in the Roman Province of Gaul.
Aremoricus, -a, -um, Aremoric/us, a Celtic word meaning by the sea, applied to the seacoast states of northwestern Gaul.
argentum, -ī, n., silver.
argilla, -ae, f., clay.
āridus, -a, -um, adj., dry, ARID; as subst., āridum, -i, n., dry land, shore.
ariēs, -etis, m., ram; battering-ram. See Introd. 61.
Ariovistus, -i, m., Ariovistus, a king of the Germans.
arma, -ōrum, n. pl., ARMS, armor, weapons; of a ship, equipment, rigging.
armamenta, -ōrum (armō), n. pl., implements, equipment, rigging. (ARMAMENT.)
armātūra, -ae (armō), f., armor, equipment.
armō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (arma), ARM, equip.
Arpineius, -ēī, m., Arpineius, family name of C. Arpineius, a Roman knight.
arripiō, -ripere, -ripui, -reptum (ad + rapiō), seize.
arroganter (arrogans, arrogant), adv., presumptuously, ARROGANTLY.
arrogantia, -ae (arrogans), f., presumption, insolence, ARROGANCE.
ars, artis, f., ART, science.
artē, comp. artius (artus, close), adv., closely, tightly.
articulus, -ī, m., joint. (ARTICLE, ARTICULATE.)
artificium, artif'ci, n., art; ARTIFICE, trick.
artus, -a, -um (for arctus, from arceō, shut in), adj., thick, close, dense.
Arvernus, -a, -um, adj., of the Arverni, Arveranian; as subst., Arverni, -ōrum, m. pl., the Arverni, a tribe in the southeastern part of Gaul, whose capital was Gergovia.
arx, arcis, f., citadel, stronghold.
ascendō, -scendere, -scendi, -scénsum (ad + scandō, climb); ASCEND, climb up, scale.
ascēnsus, -ūs (ascendō), m., ASCENT; means of ascent, way up, approach.
asciscō, -sciscere, -scivi, -scitum (ad + sciscō, decree), admit to alliance, receive, accept.
aspectus, -ūs, m., appearance, ASPECT; sigM.
asper, -era, -erum, comp. asperior, sup. asperrimus, adj., rough; difficult; harsh, violent.
assiduus, -a, -um, adj., continuous, constant, assiduous.
assisto, -sistere, astiti, - (ad + sisto), stand near, appear, ASSIST.
assuefacio, -facere, -feci, -factum (assuetus + facio), inacqistomed, accustom, train.
attulī, perf. indic. of affero.
auctor, -tōris (augeō), m., AU author, originator, instigator, adviser.
auctōritās, -tātis (auctor), f., AUTHORITY, influence, prestige.
auctus, -a, -um, comp. auctior (part. of augeō), adj., increased, well-off; comp., better off.
audacia, -ae (audereō), f., boldness, daring, AUDACITY.
audacter, comp. audācius, sup. audācissimē (audāx), adv., boldly, courageously. (AUDACIOUSLY.)
audeō. audère, ausus sum, semi-dep., dare, have courage to; undertake.
audiēns, -entis (part. of audiō), hearing; obedient; audiēns dictō, obedient to a command, obedient. (AUDIENCE.)
audiō, -ire, -ivi, -ītum: hear, listen to; hear of. (AUDIBLE.)
auditō, -onis (audiō), f., report.
augeō, augère, auxī, auctum, increase, AUGMENT.
Aulercus, -i, m., an Aulercan, one of the Aulerci; pl., the Aulerci, a people in Central Gaul, having four branches, the Aulercī Brannoviciēs, Aulercī Cēnomanī, Aulercī Diabilītēs, and the Aulercī Ebuvoviciēs.
Aulus, -i, m., Aulus, a Roman praenōmen or forename, abbreviated A.
aureus, -a, -um (aurum, gold), adj., of gold, golden.
auriga, -ae (aureae, bridle; cf. ōs, mouth + agō), m., charioter.
auris, auris, f., ear. (AURIST.)
Aurunculeius, -ē'i, m., Aurunculeius, gentile name of L. Aurunculeius Cotta, one of Caesar's lieutenants.

Ausci, -ōrum, m. pl., the Ausci, an Aquitanian tribe.

ausus, -a, -um, perf. part. of audeō.

aut, conj., or; aut . . . aut, either . . . or.

autem, conj., postpositive, but, however; moreover.

autumnus, -i, m., autumn.

auxiliaris, -ē (auxilium), adj., auxiliary; as subst., m. pl., auxiliāres, -ium, auxiliary troops, auxiliaries.

auxilio, -ārī, -ātus sum (auxilium), help, aid.

auxilium, auxilī (cf. augeō), n., help, aid.

Avaricensis, -e (Avaricum), adj., of Avaricum.

Avaricum, -i, m., Avaricum, a city of the Bituriges.

avāritia, -ae (avārus, greedy), f., avarice, greed.

ā-vehō, -vehere, -vexi, -vectum, carry off.

āversus, -a, -um (part. of āvertō), adj., turned away, retreating. (AVERSE.)

ā-vertō, -vertere, -verti, -versum, turn away, AVERT; alienate.

avis, avis, f., bird. (AVIARY, AVIATION.)

avus, -i, m., grandfather.

Axona, -ae, f., the Axona, a river in Belgic Gaul, the modern Aisne.

B

Bācēnis, -is, f., Bacenis, the name of a forest in Germany.

Baculus, -ī, m., Baculus, surname of P. Sextius Baculus, a centurion in Caesar's army.

Baleāres, -ium, m. pl., the Baleares, inhabitants of the Balearic Isles, off the eastern coast of Spain. They were celebrated for their skill as slingers.

Balteus, -ī, m., belt.

Balventius, Balventī, m., Balventius, family name of T. Balventius, a Roman centurion.

barbarus, -a, -um, adj., foreign; rude, uncivilized, Barbarous; as subst., barbari, -ōrum, m. pl., foreigners, natives of foreign countries, Barbarians.

Basilus, -ī, m., surname of L. Minucius Basilus, an officer in Caesar's army.

Batāvī, -ōrum, m. pl., the Batavians, a people living near the mouth of the river Rhine.

Belgae, -ārum, m. pl., the Belgians, inhabiting one of the three grand divisions of Gaul.

Belgium, Belgi, n., Belgium, the country of the Belgae.

bellicosus, -a, -um, comp. bellicosior, sup. bellicosissimus (bellum), adj., warlike. (BELLICOSE.)

bellicus, -a, -um (bellum), adj., pertaining to war, military.

bellō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (bellum), wage war, fight.

Bellovaci, -ōrum, m. pl., the Bellovaci, a tribe of the Belgians.

bellum, -ī (for duellum, from duo; cf. English duel), n., war.
bene, comp. melius, sup. optimē (bonus), adv., well, successfully.

beneficium, beneficiō (bene + faciō), n., kindness, favor, service, benefit.

benevolentia, -ae (bene, cf. volō), f., good-will, kindliness.

(benevolence.)

Bibracte, -tis, n., Bibracte, a town in Gaul, capital of the Aeduans.

Bibrax, -actis, f., Bibrax, a town of the Rami.

Bibraci, -ōrum, m. pl., the Bibraci, a tribe of the Britons.

biduum, -i (bis + diēs), n., a period of two days, two days.

biennium, biennī (bis + annus), n., a period of two years, two years. (Biennial.)

Bigerriōnes, -ōnum, m. pl., the Bigerriones, a tribe of Aquitania.

bīni, -ae, -a (bis), distrib. num. adj., two by two, two apiece.

bipedālis, -e (bis + pedālis, from pēs), two feet thick.

bipertūtō (bis + partitus), adv., in two parts, in two divisions.

bis (for duis; cf. duo), adv., twice.

Bituriges, -īgum, m. pl., the Bituriges, a people of Central Gaul, living near the river Loire.

Boduognātus, -ī, m., Boduognatūs, a chief of the Nervii.

Boiī, -ōrum, m. pl., the Boians, the Boiī, a Celtic people.

bonitās, -tātis (bonus), f., goodness, fertility.

bonus, -a, -um, comp. melior, sup. optimus, adj., good, advantageous; well-disposed; as subst., bonum, -ī, n., good thing, advantage; pl. bona, -ōrum, goods, property, possessions.

bōs, bovis, gen. pl. boum, dat. abl. pl. bōbus, m. and f., bull, ox, cow; pl., cattle, kine. (Bovine.)

bracchium, bracchi, n., forearm, arm.

Brannovicēs, -īum, m. pl., the Brannovices, a tribe of the Aulerci.

Bratupsantium, Bratupsanti, n., Bratuspantium, a town of the Bellovaci.

brevis, -e, comp. brevior, sup. brevissimus, adj., short, Brief.

brevitās, -tātis (brevis), f., shortness, small stature. (Brevity.)

breviter (brevis), adv., shortly, BRIEFLY.

Britannī, -ōrum, m. pl., the Britons, inhabitants of Britain.

Britannia, -ae, f., Britain.

Britannicus, -a, -um (Britannia), adj., of Britain, British.

brūma, -ae (for brev-ma, sup. form from brevis, sc. diēs), f., shortest day of the year; winter solstice.

Brūtus, -ī, m., surname of D. Iūnius Brūtus, one of Caesar's lieutenants, who afterwards joined the conspirators against his life.

C

C., abbreviation for Gaius, a Roman praenōmen, or forename.

C., abbreviation for centum, one hundred.
Cabillōnum, -i, n., Cabillonum, a city of the Aeduans.

Cabūrus, -i, m., Caburus, surname of C. Valerius Cabūrus, a Gaul who had received Roman citizenship.

cacūmen, -minis, n., top.

cadāver, -veris (cadō), n., corpse.

cadō, cadere, cecidi, —, fut. part. càsūrus, fall; be killed; befall, come to pass, happen.

Cadurci, -orum, m. pl., the Cadurci, a people of Aquitania.

caeđes, -dis (cf. caedo), f., killing, slaughter.

caeđō, caedere, cecidi, caesum, cut; cut down, kill.

cælestis, -e (caelum, heaven), adj., heavenly, celestial; as subst., cælestēs, -ium, m. pl., dwellers in heaven, gods.

cærimumōnia, -ae, f., rite, ceremony.

Caerōesī, -ōrum, m. pl., the Caerōesī, a Belgian tribe.

cæruleus, -a, -um (caelum), adj., sky-blue, dark blue. (Cerulean.)

Caesar, Caesaris, m., Caesar, a Roman surname, referring in this book to: (1) C. Iūlius Caesar, the dictator, author of the Gallic War; (2) L. Iūlius Caesar, a relative of C. Iūlius Caesar, and one of his lieutenants. (Kaiser, Czar.)

cæspes, -pitis (caedo), m., sod, turf.

calamitās, -tātis, f., disaster, misfortune, defeat; calamity.

Caletē, -ōrum, also Caletēs, -um, m. pl., the Caletē, a Gallic tribe, dwelling near the mouth of the Sequana (Seine).

callidus, -a, -um (calleō, be skilled), adj., skilful, cunning, shrewd.

cālō, -ōnis, m., camp-follower, servant of a soldier.

campester, -tris, -tre (campus), adj., of a plain, level.

campus, -i, m., field, plain, open country, level country. (Campus.)

Camulogenus, -i, m., Camulogenus, a chief of the Au-
erci.

Canīnius, Canīnī, m., Caninius, gentile name of C. Canīnius Robīlus, one of Caesar's lieu-
tenants.

canō, canere, cecini, cantum, sing, chant; sound, with a horn.

Cantabrī, -ōrum, m. pl., the Cantabrīans, the Cantabrī, a tribe in the north of Spain.

Cantūm, Cantū, n., Cantūm, Kent, a district of Britain.

capillus, -i (cf. caput), m., hair. (Capillary.)

capiō, capere, cēpī, captum, take, get; seize, occupy, take possession of, capture; receive; reach.

capra, -ae, f., she-goat.

captivus, -i (capiō), m., captive, prisoner.

captus, part. of capiō.

captus, -ūs (capiō), m., capacity; standard.

caput, -pitis, n., head; life; capitis poena, capital punishment; person, individual, man; mouth of a river. (Capital, capitol.)

Carcasō, -ōnis, Carcasō, a town in the Province.

caress, carēre, carui, —, fut. part.

caritūrus, be without, lack.

carina, -ae, f., keel of a ship,
Carnutēs, -um, m. pl., the Carnutes, a Gallic state north of the Liger (Loiré).
carō, carnis, f., flesh, meat. (CARNAL.)
carpō, carpere, carpī, carpūm, pluck; criticize, censure, carp at.
carrus, -ī, m., cart. (CAR.)
cārus, -a, -um, comp. cārior, sup. cārissimus, adj., dear.
Carvilius, Carvīli, m., Carvilius, a chief of the Britons.
casa, -ae, f., hut, house; pl., barracks.
cāseus, -i, m., cheese.
Cassī, -orum, m. pl., the Cassi, a tribe of Britain.
Cassīanus, -a, -um (Cassius), adj., of Cassius, with Cassius.
cassis, -idis, f., helmet. See Introd. 27.
Cassius, Cassī, m., Cassius, gentile name of L. Cassius Longinus, who was defeated by the Helvetians in 107 B.C.
Cassivellaunus, -ī, m., Cassivellaunus, Caswallon, a chief of the Britons.
castellum, -ī (dimin. of castrum; see castra), n., fortress, fort, redoubt. (CASTLE.)
Casticus, -ī, m., Casticus, a chief of the Sequani.
casta, -ōrum (pl. of castrum, fortress), n. pl., camp.
cāsus, -ūs (cadō), m., fall; chance, occurrence, fortune, condition; event; mischance, disaster, death; cāsū, by chance; ad extremum cāsum, to the last extremity, to a desperate condition. (CASE, CASUAL, CASUALTY.)
Catamantāloedis, -dis, m., Catamantaloedis, a Sequanian chief.
catēna, -ae, f., chain; pl., fectors.
Caturigēs, -um, m. pl., the Caturiges, a Gallic tribe in the eastern part of the Roman Province.
Catuvolcus, -ī, m., Catuvolcus, a chief of the Eburones.
causa, -ae, f., cause, occasion, reason; excuse, pretext; matter, case, suit; causā, with the gen., for the sake of, for the purpose of.
cautē (cautus), adv., CAUTIOUSLY.
cautēs, -tis, f., rock, reef.
Cavarillus, -ī, m., Cavarillus, the name of one of the Aedui.
Cavarinus, -ī, m., Cavarinus, a chief of the Senones.
caveō, cavēre, cāvī, cautum, be on one's guard, be cautious, take care, beware.
Cebenna, -ae, f., Cebenna, the Cévennes, a range of mountains in the southern part of Gaul.
cēdō, cēdere, cessī, cessum, yield, withdraw, retreat. (CEDE.)
celer, -eris, -ere, adj., quick, swift, sudden.
celeritās, -tātis (celer), f., quickness, swiftness, speed, swiftness.
celeriter, comp. celerius, sup. celerrimē (celer), adv., quickly, swiftly.
cēlō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, CONCEAL, hide.
Celtae, -ārum, m. pl., the Celts, inhabitants of the central one of the three grand divisions of Gaul.
Celtillus, -i, m., Celtillus, a chief of the Averni, and the father of Vercingetorix.

Cēnabēnsēs, -ium, m. pl., the Cēnabenses, inhabitants of Cēnabum.

Cēnabum, -i, n., Cēnabum, a town of the Carnutes, the modern Orléans.

Cēnimagnī, -ōrum, m. pl., the Cēnimagnī, a British tribe.

Cēnomanī, -ōrum, m. pl., the Cēnomanī, a tribe of the Aulerci.

Censed, -sere, -sui, -sum, estimate; think; decree, determine; favor.

census, -us (censeo), m., census, enumeration.

Centum, num. adj. indecl., one hundred. (Century.)

Centuriō, -onis (centūria, century), m., centurion. See Introd. 23.

cernō, cernere, crēvi, crētum, separate; see. (Discern.)

certāmen, -tāminis (certō, contend), n., contest, battle, strife.

certē (certus), adv., certainly, surely; at least.

certus, -a, -um, comp. certior, sup. certissimus (part. of cernō, decide), adj., certain, sure; fixed, appointed; undoubted; trustworthy, reliable; certiorēm facere, inform, command, lit., “make more certain.”

cervus, -i, m., stag; in military language, a device for obstructing the enemy’s advance.

cēterī, -ae, -a (found only in the pl. in Caesar), adj., the rest, the others.

Ceutronēs, -um, m. pl., the Ceutrones: (1) a Belgian tribe; (2) a people who lived in the eastern part of the Roman Province.

Chēruscī, -ōrum, m. pl., the Chēruscī, a tribe of the Germans.

cibāria, -ōrum (cibus), n. pl., food, provisions, supplies.

cibus, -i, m., food.

Cicerō, -onis, m., Cicero, a Roman cognomen. In this book refers to Q. Tullius Cicerō, brother of M. Cicerō, and one of Caesar’s lieutenants.

Cimberius, Cimbe’rī, m., Cimberius, a chief of the Suebians.

Cimbri, -ōrum, m. pl., the Cimbri, a Germanic people.

Cingetorix, -rigis, m., Cingetorix: (1) a chief of the Treveri; (2) a chief among the Britons.

cingō, cingere, cincti, cinctum, surround, invest. (Cincture.)

cippus, -i, m., post.

circinus, -i, m., a pair of compasses.

circiter (cf. circus, ring, circle), adv. and prep. with acc., around, about, near.

Circuitus, -us (circu(m)eō), m., circuit; way around, circuitous path.

Circum (acc. of circus, ring, circle), prep. with acc., around, about, near. (Circumnavigate, etc.)

Circumcidō, -cidere, -cidī, -cīsum (circum + caedō) cut around, cut out.

Circumcisus, -a, -um (circum-cidō), adj., steep, precipitous.
circum-clūdō, -clūdere, -clūsī, -clūsum, enclose on all sides. 
circumdō, -dare, -dedī, -datum (circum + dō, put), put around, 
build around, surround. 
circum-dūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum, lead around; draw 
around. 
circum-eō (circuēo), -ire, -ii, -itum, go around; inspect, visit. 
circum-fundo, -fundere, -fūdī, -fūsum, pour around, 
surround; pass., crowd around. 
circumicio, -icere, -ieci, -iectum (circum + iacīō), throw 
around. 
circum-mitto, -mittere, -misi, -missum, send around. 
circum-munio, -nire, -nivi, -nitum, surround by a 
wall; fortify. 
circum-plector, -plectī, —, embrace, surround. 
circum-sistō, -sistere, -steti or -stiti, —, stand around, sur-
round. 
circumspiciō, -spicere, -spexī, -spectum (circum + specīō), 
look around; consider, examine. (CIRCUMSPECT.) 
circum-vāllō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, surround with a wall; block-
ade. (CIRCUMVALLATION.) 
circum-vehōr, -vehī, -vectus sum, dep., be carried around; 
ride around. 
circum-veniō, -venire, -vēnī, -ventum, come around; sur-
round; deceive, CIRCUMVENT. 
cis, prep. with acc., on this side of. 
Cisalpinus, -a, -um (cis + Alpinus), adj., Cisalpine, lying 
on this (the Roman) side of the Alps. 
Cisrhēnānus, -a, -um (cis + Rhēnānus), adj., lying on 
this side of the Rhine (i.e. the western or Gallic side). 
Cita, -ae, f., Cita, surname of C. Fūsius Cita, a Roman knight. 
citātus, -a, -um (perf. part. of citō, set in motion), adj., 
swift, rapid. 
citerior, -ius (comp. of citer; cf. cis), adj., on this side, nearer, hither. 
cito, sup. citissimē (citus, swift), adv., swiftly. 
citrā (cf. cis), prep. with acc., on this side of. 
citrō (cf. cis), adv., hither; ultro citróque, to and fro. 
cīvis, -vis, m. and f., citizen, fellow-citizen. (CIVIL.) 
cīvitās, -tātis (cīvis), f., state, nation; citizenship. 
clam (cf. cēlō), adv., secretly. 
clāmitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (in-
tens. of clamō), shout. 
clāmor, -ōris (clāmō), m., outcry, shout; battle-cry. (CLAMOR.) 
clandestinus, -a, -um (clam), adj., secret, CLANDESTINE. 
clārus, -a, -um, comp. clārior, sup. clārissimus, adj., CLEAR, 
loud. 
classis, -sis, f., fleet. 
Claudius, Claudi, m., Clau-
dius, gentile name of Appius Clau-
dius Pulcher, consul in 54 B.C. 
claudō, -dere, clausī, clausum, 
shut, close; agmen claudere, bring up the rear. 
clāvus, -i, m., nail, spike. 
clémentia, -ae (clèmeōns), f., 
mercy, CLEMENCY. 
cliēns, -ntis, m., dependent, 
subject, CLIENT. 
clientēla, -ae (cliēns), f., client-
age, vassalage; pl. collectively, clients.
<p>| <strong>clivus,</strong> -i, m., <em>slope, declivity.</em> |
| <strong>Clōdius,</strong> Clōdī, m., <em>Clodius,</em> genitive name of P. Clōdius Pulcher. |
| Cn., abbreviation for <em>Gnaeus,</em> a Roman first name. |
| <strong>coacervō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (com- + acervō), pile up together, heap up; crowd together.</strong> |
| <strong>coāctus,</strong> perf. part. of <em>cōgō.</em> |
| <strong>coāctus, -tūs (cōgō), m., used only in the abl. sing. coāctū, by compulsion.</strong> |
| <strong>coagmentō, -are, -avi, -atum (coagmentum, from cōgō), fasten together.</strong> |
| <strong>coartō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (com- + artō, compress), crowd together.</strong> |
| <em><em>Cocosātes, -um, m., the Cocosātes,</em> a tribe of Aquitania.</em>* |
| <strong>coemō, -emere, -ēmī, -ēmptum (com- + emō), buy up.</strong> |
| <strong>coēō, -ire, -ivi, or -īi, -ītum (com- + eō), come together, unite.</strong> |
| <strong>coepi, coepisse, coeptus, delective, begin, commence.</strong> |
| <strong>coerceō, -cre, -cui, -citum (com- + arceō), confine, restrain, coerce.</strong> |
| <strong>cōgitō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (com- + agitō), consider, think; think of; intend. (Cognitate.)</strong> |
| <strong>cognātiō, -tiōnis (cognātus), f., relationship by blood, kinship; pl. collectively, connections, family.</strong> |
| <strong>cognītus,</strong> perf. part. of <em>cognōscō.</em> |
| <strong>cognōscō, -gnōscere, -gnōvī, -gnitum (com- + (g)nōscō), become acquainted with, consider, learn, recognize; perf. cognōvī, know; See Introd. 166, Note.</strong> |
| <strong>cōgō, cōgere, coēgī, coāctum (com- + agō), drive together, collect; force, compel.</strong> |
| <strong>cohors, -hortis, f., cohort, one of the divisions of the legion; see Introd. 17.</strong> |
| <strong>cohortātiō, -tiōnis (cohortor), f., encouraging, exhortation.</strong> |
| <strong>cohortor, -āri, -ātus sum (com- + hortor), encourage, exhort.</strong> |
| <strong>collātus,</strong> perf. part. of <em>conferō.</em> |
| <strong>collaudō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (com- + laudō), praise, commend.</strong> |
| <strong>colligō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (com- + ligō, bind), bind together, fasten together.</strong> |
| <strong>colligēre, recover oneself, rally.</strong> |
| <strong>collōs, collis, m., hill.</strong> |
| <strong>colloscō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (com- + locō, place), place, put; settle; give in marriage.</strong> |
| <strong>cōlloquium, collo'qui (colloquor), n., conference, parley. (Colloquy, colloquial.)</strong> |
| <strong>cōlloquor, -loqui, -locutus sum (com- + loquor), talk with, confer with, parley with; talk, converse.</strong> |
| <strong>colō, colere, coluī, cultum, cultivate, till.</strong> |
| <strong>colōnia, -ae (colōnus), f., colony, settlement.</strong> |
| <strong>color, -ōris, m., color, complexion.</strong> |
| <strong>com-, old form of cum, found only in composition, together, with; thoroughly.</strong> |
| <strong>combūrō, -būrere, -bussī, -bustum (com- + (b)ūrō), burn, destroy by fire, burn up. (Combustion.)</strong> |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Vocabulary</th>
<th>Vocabulary</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Comes, -itis (com- and eō), m. and f., companion.</td>
<td>Commonfaciō, -facere, -feci, -factum (com- + moneō + faciō), remind, remind of.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Comitia, -ōrum, n. pl., elections.</td>
<td>Com-moror, -āri, -ātus sum (comes), dep., accompany.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Comitor, -āri, -ātus sum (comes), dep., accompany.</td>
<td>Com-moveō, -movēre, -movī, -mōtum, move greatly, disturb, alarm. (Commotion.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Commeātus, -ās (commeō), m., going to and fro; voyage, trip; supplies, provisions.</td>
<td>Commūnicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (commūnis), share with, communicate with; join with; bestow.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Commemorō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, call to mind, mention, tell of. (Commemorate.)</td>
<td>Com-mūnio, -ire, -Īvī or -ī, -ītum, fortify strongly.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Commendō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (com- + mandō), entrust, commend.</td>
<td>Commūnis, -e (com- + mūnus), adj., common, general, public; rēs communēs, matters of common interest. (Community.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Commēo, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (com- + meō, go), go to and fro, resort; with ad and acc., visit.</td>
<td>Commūtātiō, -tiōnis (commūtō), f., change. (Commutation.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Commilitō, -tōnis (com-, cf. miles), m., fellow-soldier, comrade.</td>
<td>Comm-mūtō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, change, exchange. (Commute.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Comminus (com- + manus), adv., hand to hand.</td>
<td>Com-parō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, prepare, get ready; acquire, obtain.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Commissūra, -ae (committō), f., joint.</td>
<td>Comparō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (compar, like), compare, match.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Committo, -mittere, -misī, -missum, bring together, join; commit; entrust, trust; cause, allow; proelium committere, join battle, contend in battle.</td>
<td>Com-pellō, -pellere, -pulī, -pulsum, drive together, collect; drive, force back. (Compel, compulsion.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Commius, Commi, m., Commiūs, one of the Atrebates, a friend of Caesar's.</td>
<td>Compendium, compendi, n., saving, gain.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Commodē, comp. commodius, super. commodissēmē (commodus), adv., easily, conveniently; suitably, advantageously.</td>
<td>Comperiō, -perire, -peri, -pertum (com- + parīō, obtain), learn, find out, detect; compertum est, guilt is proven, they are found guilty.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Commodus, -a, -um, comp. commodior, super. commodissimus (com- + modus, measure), adj., advantageous, fitting, advisable; as subst., commodum, -i, n., advantage, profit. (Commodious.)</td>
<td>Compertus, -a, -um (perf. part. of comperiō), adj., settled, certain.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Complēctor, -plectū, -plexus sum (com- + plectō, braid), embrace; enclose. (Complex.)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
con-pleō, -plēre, -plēvī, -plētum, fill full, fill; COMPLETE.
complexus, perf. part. of complexor.
com-plūrēs, -a or -ia, adj., very many, several, many; as subst., complūrēs, -ium, m., very many people, many.
com-portō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, bring together, collect, bring.
com-prehendō, -hendere, -hendi, -hensum, seize, grasp; capture; COMPREHEND.
com-probo, -are, -avi, -atum, approve fully.
conatus, perf. part. of conor.
concido, -cidere, -cidi, -cisum (com- + caedo), cut to pieces, slay, kill.
conciliō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (concilium), win over, secure. (CONCILIATE.)
concilium, concīliī (com- + calō, call), n., assembly, COUNCIL, meeting.
concitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (com- + cito), rouse, excite.
conclāmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (com- + clāmō), shout loudly, shout, cry out; victoriām conclāmāre, raise a shout of victory.
conclūsus, -a, -um (part. of conclūdō), adj., closed, enclosed, shut in, confined.
Conconnetodumnus, -i, m., Conconnetodumnus, a chief of the Carnutes.
concrepō, -āre, -crepui, -crepitum (com- + crepō), clash.
concurrō, -currere, -cucurri or -curri, -cursum (com- + currō), run together, rush, charge; resort to; rush about. (CONCUR.)
concursō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (intensive of concurrō), rush about.
concursus, -ūs (concurrō), m., a running together, meeting, assembly; charge. (CONCOURSE.)
condemnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (com- + damnō), CONDEMN, find guilty of.
condicio, -cīonis (com- + dicō, declare), f., CONDITION, proposition, agreement; state.
condonō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (com- + dōnō), give up; pardon, CONDONE.
Condrusi, -ōrum, m. pl., the Condrusi, a Belgian tribe.
condūcō, -ducere, -dūxi, -duc tum (com- + dūcō), lead together, collect, bring in a body; hire. (CONDUCT, CONDUCE.)
cōnfectus, perf. part. of cōnficio.
cōnerō, -ferre, -tulī, collātum (com- + ferō), bring together, collect, attribute, ascribe; contribute; compare; postpone, put off; sē cōnferre, betake oneself. (CONFER, COLLATION.)
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Definition</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>confertus</td>
<td>-a, -um, sup. cönfertissimus (part of cönferciō, crowd together), adj., crowded together, in close order.</td>
<td>cönfluëns, -ntis (cönfluō), m., meeting of two rivers, cönfluence.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cönfестиim</td>
<td>adv., immediately, at once.</td>
<td>cönfluō, -fluere, -fluīxī, — (com- + fluō), flow together, come together.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cönficio</td>
<td>-ficere, -fēci, -fectum (com- + faciō), do thoroughly, finish, complete, furnish; make, draw up, compose; exhaust; of leather, dress.</td>
<td>cönfugō, -fugere, -fūgī, — (com- + fugiō), flee, flee for refuge.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cönfido</td>
<td>-fidere, -fīsus sum (com- + fidō, trust), semi-dep., trust fully, CONFIDE in; be CONFIDENT.</td>
<td>cönfundō, -fundere, -fūdī, fū- sum (com- + fundō), pour together, bring together. (CON-FOUND, CONFUSION.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cönfinis</td>
<td>-e (com- + finis), adj., neighboring.</td>
<td>congressus, -ūs (congregadior), m., meeting; encounter. (CONGRESS.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cönfinium</td>
<td>cönfinī (cönfinis), n., boundary. (CONFINES.)</td>
<td>coniciō, -icere, -iēci, -iectum (com- + iacio), throw with force, hurl; bring together, -collect, put; in fugam coniciere, put to flight.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cönfíciiō</td>
<td>-fieri, — (com- + fiō), pass. of cönficiō, be done.</td>
<td>coniectūra, -ae (coniciō), f., CONJECTURE.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cönfirmō</td>
<td>-āre, -āvī, -ātum (com- + firmō, strengthen), strengthen greatly; confirm, establish; settle, fix, appoint, encourage; assert, affirm, declare.</td>
<td>coniünctus, -a, -um (part. of coniungō), adj., joined, connected; allied. (CONJUNCTION.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cönfisus</td>
<td>perf. part. of cönfidō.</td>
<td>coniungō, -iungere, -iūnxi, -iuncia tum (com- + iungō), join together, unite, connect.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cönfiteor</td>
<td>cönfiteīri, cönfessus sum (com- + fateor), dep., CONFESS.</td>
<td>coniūnx, -iugis (coniungō), f., wife. (CONJUGAL.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cönfixus</td>
<td>perf. part. of cönfigō.</td>
<td>coniūrātiō, -tiōnis (coniūrō), f., league; conspiracy.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cönfigō</td>
<td>-figere, -fīxi, -flictum (com- + figō, fasten), fasten together.</td>
<td>coniūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (com- + iūrō), take oath together, conspire. (CONJURE.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cönfictō</td>
<td>-āre, -āvī, -ātum (intens. of cönfigō), assail.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cönfigūrgō</td>
<td>-āre, -āvī, -ātum (com- + flagrō, burn), be on fire. (CONFLAGRATION.)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cönfigō</td>
<td>-figere, -fīxi, -flictum (com- + figō, dash), dash together; contend, struggle, fight; assail, attack. (CONFLICT.)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
cōnor, -āri, -ātus sum, attempt, try, undertake. (Conative.)
conquiēscō, -quiēscere, -quiēvi, —, fut. part. -quiētūrus (com + quiēscō), rest.
conquirō, -quīrere, -quisīvi, -quisītum (com- + quaerō), seek out, search for; collect.
conquisītus, perf. part. of conquirō.
cōnsanguineus, -a, -um (com- + sanguis), adj., of the same blood, kindred; as subst., cōnsanguineus, -ī, m., kinsman. (Consanguineous.)
cōnscependō, -scendere, -scendi, scensum (com- + scandō, climb), mount, go aboard a vessel, embark on.
cōnscentia, -ae (cf. cōnscius), f., Consciousness, knowledge.
cōnsceiscō, -sciscere, -scivi, -scītum (com- + scisco, decree), decree; resolve on; sibi mortem cōnsceiscere, to commit suicide.
cōnsceius, -a, -um (com- + sciō), adj., conscious, aware.
cōnscribō, -scribere, -scripsi, -scriptum (com- + scribō), write together, enroll, enlist. (Conscript.)
cōnscriptus, perf. part. of cōnscribō.
cōnscecrātus, -a, -um (part. of cōnsecrō), adj., consecrated, sacred.
cōnsecrō, -āri, -ātus sum (intens. of cōnsecurō), follow eagerly, pursue.
cōnsecūtus, perf. part. of cōnsecurō.
cōnsēnsiō, -siōnis (cōnsentiō), f., unanimity.
cōnsēnsus, -ūs (cōnsentiō), m., agreement, consent.
cōnsentiō, -sentire, -sēnsi, -sēnsum (com- + sentiō), agree with, unite with. (Consent.)
cōnsequor, -sequi, -secūtus sum (com- + sequor), follow up; overtake; attain, acquire. (Consequence.)
cōnservō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (com- + servō), spare, save; observe a law. (Conserve.)
Cōnsidius, Cōnṣi’dī, m., Cōnsidius, gentile name of P. Cōnsidius, an officer in Caesar’s army.
cōnsiodō, -sidere, -sēdi, -sessum (com- + sidō, sit), sit down; hält, encamp; settle.
cōnsilium, cōnsi’li (cōnsulō), n., deliberation, counsel; council; plan, design; good judgment; strategy.
cōnsimilis, -e (com- + similis), adj., very like, very similar.
cōnsistō, -sistere, -stīti, -stītum (com- + sistō, set), place oneself, take a position, stand; stay, remain, stop, halt; settle; consist of; depend on.
cōnsobrīnus, -ī (com-, cf. soror), m., cousin.
cōnsōlor, -āri, -ātus sum (com- + sōlor, comfort), dep., console, cheer, encourage.
cōnspectus, -ūs (cōnspeciō), m., sight, view; presence. (Conspectus)
cōnspeciō, -spicere, -spexī, -spectum (com- + speciō, see), catch sight of, behold, observe, see.
cōnspicor, -āri, -ātus sum, dep., catch sight of, perceive, see.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin Word</th>
<th>English Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>consiprō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum</td>
<td>conspire, combine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>constanter (cōstāns, resolūte)</td>
<td>adv., resolutely, firmly; consistently, uniformly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>constantia, -ae (cōstāns, resolūte)</td>
<td>f., firmness, steadfastness</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>consterno, -sternere, -strāvī, -strātum</td>
<td>strew, cover</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>constipo, -are, -avi, -atum</td>
<td>press together</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>constituo, -stituere, -stituī, -stītutum</td>
<td>station, place; set up, arrange, draw up; appoint, establish; decide, determine; of ships, moor, bring to anchor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>consto, -stare, -stiti, —</td>
<td>fut. part. constātūrus (com- + stō), stand firm; depend on; imper. cōnstat, it is certain, it is agreed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>consuēscō, -suēscere, -suēvī, -suētum</td>
<td>become accustomed; perf. consuēvi, I am accustomed, am wont.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>consuētūdō, -dinis (cōnsvēscō)</td>
<td>f., custom, habit; mode of life.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>consuētus, perf. part. of consuēscō.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cōnsul, -sulis (com-, cf. sedeō), m.</td>
<td>consul, one of the two chief magistrates at Rome.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cōnsulātus, -ūs (cōnsul), m.</td>
<td>consulship, consulate.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cōnsulō, -sulere, -sulūi, -sultum</td>
<td>take counsel, consider; with dat., consult for, have regard for.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cōnsultō (cf. cōnsulō), adv., with deliberation, purposely.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cōnsultō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (intens. of cōnsulō), consult, take counsel.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cōnsultum, -i (cōnsulō), n.</td>
<td>deliberation, decree.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cōnsūmō, -sūmere, -sūmpsi, -sūmpsum (com- + sūmō), consume, use up, destroy.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cōnsūmpsus, perf. part. of cōnsūmō.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cōnsurgō, -surgere, -surrēxī, -surrēctum (com- + surgō), rise.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>contabulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (com-, cf. tabula, board), board over; build over, cover.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>contāginō, -giōnis (contingo), f., touching, contact. (Contagion.)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>contāminō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (com-, cf. tangō), contaminate.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>contēgō, -tegere, -tēxī, -tēctum (com- + tegō), cover, cover up.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>contemnō, -temnere, -tempsi, -temptum (com- + temnō), despise.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>contemptiō, -tiōnis (contemnō, despise), f., contempt.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>contemptus, -ūs (contemnō), m., contempt; contemptui esse, be an object of contempt.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>contendō, -tendere, -tendi, -tentum (com- + tendō), put forth an effort, strive; hasten; fight, contend; demand, insist.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>contentiō, -tiōnis (contendō), f., effort; strive; fight, struggle, contention.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>contentus, -a, -um (part. of contineō), adj., content, contented.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>contentus, -a, -um (part. of contineō), adj., content, contented.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>contextō, -texere, -texui, -textum (com- + texō, weave), weave together, bind together; fashion.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>continēns, -ntīs (part. of continēō), adj., continuous, unbroken; as subst. f., continent, mainland (sc. terra).</td>
<td>contumēlia, -ae (com-, cf. tumēō, swell), f., insult, indignity; injury, violence, force. (Contumely.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>continenter (continēns), adv., continuously; without interruption, continually.</td>
<td>convalēscō, -valēscere, -valē, — (com- + valēō, from valeō), get well, convalesce.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>continentia, -ae (continēns), f., self-control.</td>
<td>convallis, -lis (com- + vallis), f., valley, ravine.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>continēō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tēntūm (com- + teneō), hold together, hold, keep; hold back, detain, shut in, hem in; surround, bound, contain.</td>
<td>convehō, -vehere, -vēxi, -vectum (com- + vehō), bring together.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>contingō, -tingere, -tīgī, -tāctum (com- + tangō), touch, border on; happen to, fall to the lot of. (Contact.)</td>
<td>conveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum (com- + veniō), come together, assemble, convene; be agreed on; used transitively, meet; imperson., be fitting, be proper.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>continuātiō, -tīonis (continuō), f., continuation.</td>
<td>convenitus, -ūs (conveniō), m., assembly; court, assizes. (Convention.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>continuō (continuus), adv., immediately, at once.</td>
<td>conversus, perf. part. of convertō.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>continuus, -a, -um (com-, cf. teneō), adj., successive, in succession, continuous.</td>
<td>convertō, -vertere, -vertī, -vertum (com- + vertō), turn, turn about; change. (Convert.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>könntō, -tōnis (for coventiō, from com- + veniō), f., assembly; address to an assembly.</td>
<td>Convictolitavis, -is, m., Convictolitavis, a chief of the Aeduans.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>contrā (com-), adv. and prep. with acc. As adv., opposite; on the other hand; against. As prep., opposite, facing; against; in spite of; in reply to. (Contrary, contradict, etc.)</td>
<td>convictus, perf. part. of convincō.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>contrahō, -trahere, -trāxī, -trāctum (com- + trahō), draw together, collect; contract, make smaller.</td>
<td>convincō, -vincere, -vīcī, -victum (com- + vincō), prove, establish. (Convince, convict.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>contrārius, -a, -um (contrā), adj., opposite, contrary.</td>
<td>convocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (com- + vocō), call together, convene.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>contrōversia, -ae (cf. contrā and vertō), f., rivalry, difference of opinion, dispute, controversy.</td>
<td>coōrīor, -orīnī, -ortus sum (com- + orīor), arise, spring up; break out.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>coōrtus, perf. part. of coōrīor.</td>
<td>cópia, -ae (for co-opia; com-; cf. ops), f., abundance, plenty, supply, number; plur. cópiāe, -ārum, resources, riches; forces, troops. (Cornucopia.)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
cōpiāsus, -a, -um, comp. cōpiōsior, sup. cōpiōssimus (cōpia), adj., well supplied, rich; copious.
cōpula -ae (com- + root ap, fasten), f., grappling-hook, grapnel. (COPULA.)
cor, cordis, n., heart; cordī esse alicui, to be dear to any one. (Cordial.)
coram (for co-ram; cf. ēs, face), adv., face to face, in person.
Coriosolites, -um, m. pl., the Coriosolites, a people living on the northwestern coast of Gaul.
corium, cori, n., hide, skin.
cornū, -ūs, n., horn; wing of an army. (CORNUCOPIA.)
corōna, -ae, f., crown, garland; circle, audience; sub corōnā vendere, to sell as slaves. (CORONET.)
corpus, corporis, n., body; CORPSE. (Corporal.)
corrumpō, -rumpere, -rupi, -ruptum (com- + rumpō), destroy. (CORRUPT.)
cortex, -ticis, m. and f., bark of a tree.
Cōrus, -ī, m., Corus, the name of the northeast wind.
cotidīanus, -a, -um (cotidiē), adj., daily; usual.
cotidiē (cot- for quot + diēs), adv., daily, every day.
Cotta, -ae, m., Cotta, surname of L. Aurnunculeius Cotta.
Cotus, -ī, m., Cotus, one of the Aeduans.
crassitūdō, -tūdinis (crassus, thick), f., thickness. Crassus, -ī, m., Crassus, surname of: (1) M. Licinius
Crassus, member with Caesar of the First Triumvirate. (2) M. Licinius Crassus, elder son of (1), and a quaestor in Caesar's army. (3) P. Licinius Crassus, younger son of (1), and one of Caesar's lieutenants.
crātēs, -tis, f., wicker-work; hurdle, fagot.
crēber, -bra, -brum, comp. crēbrior, sup. crēberrimus, adj., thick, crowded, frequent.
crēbrō (crēber), adv., frequently, constantly.
crē-dō, -dere, -didi, -ditum, give CREDENCE, believe, CREDIT; supposc, think.
cremō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, burn. (CREMATE.)
creō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, make, create; appoint, choose.
crēscō, crēscere, crēvi, crētum, increase, grow; grow strong. (CRESCENT.)
Crētēs, -um, m. pl., acc. pl. Crētas, the Cretans, inhabitants of Crete.
Critognātus, -ī, m., Critognatus, a prominent man among the Averni.
cruciatōs, -ūs (cruciō, torture), m., torture, punishment. (Ex-cruciating.)
crūdēlitās, -tātis (crūdēlis, cruel), f., CRUELTY.
crūdēliter (crūdēlis, CRUEL), adv., CRUELLY.
crūs, crūris, n., leg.
cubile, -ilis (cubō, lie down), n., bed, resting-place.
culmen, -minis, n., height, summit. (CULMINATION.)
culpa, -ae, f., fault, blame. (CULPABLE.)
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin Word</th>
<th>English Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>cultura, -ae (colō), f., tilling, cultivation.</td>
<td>(CULTURE, AGRICULTURE.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cultus, -ūs (colō), m., cultivation; manner of life, civilization.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cum, prep. with abl., with, in company with. See Introd. 142, 2.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cum, conj., temporal, when, while, whenever; causal, since; concessive and adversative, although, though; cum ... tum, not only ... but also; cum primum, as soon as.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cunctatīō, -tīōnis (cunctor), f., delay, hesitation.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cunctor, -āri, -ātus sum, dep., delay, hesitate.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cūnctus, -a, -um (for coniunctus), adj., all.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cuneātim (cuneus), adv., like a wedge, in the form of a wedge.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cuneus, -ī, m., wedge, a wedge-shaped mass of soldiers.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cuniculum, -i, n., mine.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cupidē, comp. cupidius, sup. cupidissīmē (cupidus), adv., eagerly.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cupidītās, -tātis (cupidus), f., eagerness, desire. (CUPIDITY.)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cupidus, -a, -um (cupidō), adj., desirous, eager, fond of. (CUPID.)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cupiō, cupīre, cupīvi, cupītum, desire; wish well to.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cūr, adv., why.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cūra, -ae, f., CARE, attention.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, CARE for, attend to; with the gerundive, have (done), cause (to be done). (CURATOR.)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>currus, -ūs (currō, run), m., chariot.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cursus, -ūs (currō, run), m., running; speed; COURSE.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>custōdia, -ae (cūstōs), f., watch, guard, CUSTODY.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>custōdiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum (cūstōs), guard.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>custōs, -tōdis, m. and f., guard. (CUSTODIAN.)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cum, conj., temporal, when, while, whenever; causal, since; concessive and adversative, although, though; cum ... tum, not only ... but also; cum primum, as soon as.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cunctatīō, -tīōnis (cunctor), f., delay, hesitation.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cunctor, -āri, -ātus sum, dep., delay, hesitate.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cūnctus, -a, -um (for coniunctus), adj., all.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cuneātim (cuneus), adv., like a wedge, in the form of a wedge.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cuneus, -ī, m., wedge, a wedge-shaped mass of soldiers.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cuniculum, -i, n., mine.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cupidē, comp. cupidius, sup. cupidissīmē (cupidus), adv., eagerly.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cupidītās, -tātis (cupidus), f., eagerness, desire. (CUPIDITY.)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cupidus, -a, -um (cupidō), adj., desirous, eager, fond of. (CUPID.)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cupiō, cupīre, cupīvi, cupītum, desire; wish well to.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cūr, adv., why.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cūra, -ae, f., CARE, attention.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, CARE for, attend to; with the gerundive, have (done), cause (to be done). (CURATOR.)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>currus, -ūs (currō, run), m., chariot.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cursus, -ūs (currō, run), m., running; speed; COURSE.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

D

D., abbreviation for Decimus, a Roman first name.
D., abbreviation for 500.
Dācī, -ōrum, m. pl., the Dacians, a nation living on the Danube River.
damnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (damnum), condemn; part. as subst., damnātī, -ōrum, m. pl., those condemned, prisoners. (DAMN.)
damnum, -ī, n., loss.
Dānuvius, Dānu’vi, m., the Danube.
dē, prep. with abl., from, down from; for, on account of; about, concerning, with respect to; of time, at, in; dē impropriōsō, unexpectedly. See Introd. 142, 3.
dēbeō, dēbēre, dēbui, dēbitum (dē + habeō), owe; pass., be due; with dependent infinitive, ought, must. (DEBT, DEBIT.)
dē-cēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, go away, withdraw; avoid; die. (DECEASE.)
decem, num. adj. indec., ten. (DECIMATE, DECIMAL.)
dēceptus, part. of dēcipīō.
dē-cernō, -cernere, -crēvi, -crētum, decide; vote, DEGREE.
dé-certo, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, fight out, fight a decisive battle.
décessus, -ūs (décessūs), m., departure; falling, ebbing of the tide.
Decetia, -ae, f., Decetia, a town of the Aeduans on the river Liger (Loire).
decidō, -cidere, -cidi, —, fut. part. dēcāsūrus (dē + cadō), fall down, fall off.
decimus, -a, -um (decem), num. adj., tenth. (DECIMAL, DECIMATE.)
Decimus, -ī, m., Decimus, a Roman first name, abbreviated D.
decipio, -cipere, -cepi, -ceptum (dē + capio), deceive. (DECEPTIO.)
decimalis, -talis (decimalis), f., DECIMALITY, descent, slope.
decumānus, -a, -um (decimus), adj., of or belonging to a tenth, DECUMAN; porta decumāna, the DECUMAN gate, the rear gate of a Roman camp, so called because the tenth cohorts were originally stationed near this gate. See Introd. 52.
decurīō, -iōnis (cf. decem), m., DECURION, an officer in charge of a decuria, or division of ten horsemen.
dē-currō, -currere, -cucurrī or -currī, -cursum, run down, rush down; run down to.
dēdecus, -coris (dē + decus, honor), n., dishonor, disgrace.
dēdicitius, -a, -um (dēditus, part. of dēdo), adj., that has surrendered; as subst., dēditii, -orum, m. pl., prisoners of war.
diditio, -tōnis (dētō), f., surrender.
dē-dō, -dere, -didi, -ditum, give up, surrender; devote.
dē-duco, -ducere, -dūxi, -ductum, lead down, lead away; lead, induce. (DEDUCE, DEDUCT.)
dē-fatigātiō, -tōnis (dēfatīgō), f., weariness, fatigue.
dē-fatigō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tire out, FATIGUE greatly.
dēfectō, -tōnis (dēficiā), f., desertion, revolt, DEFECITION.
dēfendō, -fendere, -fendi, -fēnsum (dē + fendō, strike), ward off, repel; DEFEND, protect.
dēfēnsiō, -sōnis (dēfendō), f., DEFENCE.
dēfensor, -sōris (dēfendō), m., defender; defence, guard.
dēfēnsus, perf. part. of dēfendō.
dē-ferō, -ferre, -tuli, -lātum, bring down; carry away; confer on, bestow; refer, report. (DEFER.)
dēfessus, -a, -um (part. of dēfetiscor), adj., wearied, exhausted, tired; as subst., dēfessus, -i, m., one exhausted.
dēfetiscor, -fetiscī, -fessus sum, (dē + fatiscor), dep., become tired.
dēficiō, -ficere, -fēci, -fectum (dē + faciō), fail, be wanting; fall away, revolt; (eum) omnia dēficere, to be wholly at a loss. (DEFICIENT, DEFLECTION.)
dēfigō, -figere, -fixī, -fixum (dē + figō, fasten), drive in, fasten in.
dē-finiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum, de-
fine, fix.
dē-fluō, -fluere, -flūxi, -flūxum, 
flow down, flow.
dēfore, fut. inf. of désum.
dēfōrmis, -e (dē + fōrma), adj., 
missshapen, ugly, deformed.
dē-fugiō, -figere, -fūgī, —; 
flee; flee from, avoid.
dēicio, -icere, -ieci, -iectum 
(de + iacio), throw down; 
drive away, rout; he 
carried; dé-
prive of, disappoint; destroy, 
kill. (Dejection.)
dēfugio, -fugere, -fugi, — 
flee; flee from, avoid.
dēfluo, -fluere, -fluxi, -fluxum, 
flow down, flow.
dēfore, fut. inf. of désum.
dēformis, -e (dē + fōrma), adj., 
missshapen, ugly, deformed.
dē-fugiō, -figere, -fūgī, —; 
flee; flee from, avoid.
dēicio, -icere, -ieci, -iectum 
(de + iacio), throw down; 
drive away, rout; he 
carried; dé-
prive of, disappoint; destroy, 
kill. (Dejection.)
dēfugio, -fugere, -fugi, — 
flee; flee from, avoid.
dēfluo, -fluere, -fluxi, -fluxum, 
flow down, flow.

delicio, -icere, -ieci, -iectum 
(de + iacio), throw down; 
drive away, rout; he 
carried; dé-
prive of, disappoint; destroy, 
kill. (Dejection.)

delicio, -icere, -ieci, -iectum 
(de + iacio), throw down; 
drive away, rout; he 
carried; dé-
prive of, disappoint; destroy, 
kill. (Dejection.)
delicio, -icere, -ieci, -iectum 
(de + iacio), throw down; 
drive away, rout; he 
carried; dé-
prive of, disappoint; destroy, 
kill. (Dejection.)
dé-pellō,-pellere,-pulī,-pulsum, drive away.
dé-perdō,-perdere,-perdidī,-perditum, lose.
dé-peréō,-perīre,-perī,-fut. part. déperītūrus, perish utterly, be destroyed.
dé-pōnē,-pōnere,-posui,-positum, lay aside, place, deposit.
dé-populor,-an,-atus sum, dep., lay waste, plunder. (Depopulate.)
dé-portō,-are,-avi,-atum, carry off; DEPORT.
dé-posco,-poscere,-poscisci,—, demand earnestly, demand.
dépositus, perf. part. of déponō. déprecātōr,-tōris (déprecōr), m., intercessor, mediator.
dé-prehendo,-prehendere,-prehendi,-prehēnsum, seize; surprise.
déprehēnsus, perf. part. of déprehendō.
dé-pugnō,-āre,-āvī,-ātum, fight to the end.
dépuīlsus, perf. part. of dépellō. dērēctē (dērēctus), adv., straight. (Directly.)
dērēctus,-ā,-um (part. of dērigō), adj., straight, perpendicular. (Direct.)
dērigō,-rigere,-rēxi,-rēctum (dē + regō), draw up, arrange. (Direct.)
dērīvō,-āre,-āvī,-ātum (dē + rīvus, stream), draw off. (Derive.)
dē-rogō,-āre,-āvī,-ātum, take away, withdraw; deny.
dé-sceindō,-scendere,-scendi,-scēnsum (dē + scandō, climb), come down, descend; resort to.
dé-secō,-secāre,-secui,-sectum, cut off.
dēserō,-serere,-serui,-sertum (dē + serō, join), leave, desert, abandon.
dēsērtor -tōris (dēserō), m., DESERTER.
dēsērtus, perf. part. of dēserō.
dēsiderō,-āre,-āvī,-ātum, long for, miss, desire. (Desideratūm.)
dēsēdia,-ae,f., sloth, laziness.
dē-signō,-āre,-āvī,-ātum, mark out, designate, mean.
dēsiliō,-siliere,-silui,-sultum (dē + saliō, leap), leap down, dismount. (Desultory.)
dē-sistō,-sistere,-stīti,—, fut. part. dēstitūrus, leave off, cease, DESIST.
dēspectus, perf. part. of dēspiciō.
dēspectus,-ūs (dēspiciō), m., view.
dēspērātō,-tiōnis (dēspērō), f., hopelessness, despair, despiration.
dēspēratus,-a,-um (perf. part. of dēspērō), adj., hopeless, desperate; ré dēspērātā, in a hopeless plight.
dēspērō,-āre,-āvī,-ātum, give up hope of, despair of.
dēsēpiciō,-spicere,-spexi,-spectum (dē + speciō, look), look down; look down on, DESPISE. (Despicable.)
dē-spōliō,-āre,-āvī,-ātum, despoil, rob.
dēstinō,-āre,-āvī,-ātum, make fast, fasten; assign to, DESTINE to.
dēstituō, -stiuere, -stui, -stītūm (dē + statuō), desert, abandon. (Destitute.)
dēstrictus, perf. part. of dē-stringō.
dē-stringō, -stringere, -strinxi, -strictum, unsheathe, draw.
dē-sum, deesse, dēfui, —, be wanting, be lacking.
dē-super, adv., from above.
deterior, -ius (dē), adj., comp., worse, poorer, less valuable. (Deteriorate.)
dē-terreō, -terre, -terrui, -territum, frighten off, deter, prevent.
dētestor, -āri, -ātus sum (dē + testor, call to witness), dep., curse. (Detest.)
dētineō, -tinere, -tinui, -tentum (dē + teneo), hold back, detain.
detractus, perf. part. of dē-traho.
dē-traho, -trahere, -trāxi, -tractum, draw off, take off; take away, remove. (Detract.)
dētractō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, refuse.
dētrimentōsus, -a, -um (dē-trimentum), adj., injurious, detrimental.
dētrimentum, -i (dē + terō, wear away), loss, injury, defeat.
dētuli, perf. of dēferō.
dē-turbō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, drive off.
dē-ūrō, -ūrere, -ussi, -ūstum, burn down, burn up.
dēs, dei, m., god. (Deify.)
dē-vehō, -vehere, -vexi, -vectum, carry away, remove, bring.
dē-veniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum, come, arrive.
dēvexus, -a, -um (cf. dēvehō), adj., sloping; as subst., dēvexa, -ōrum, n. pl., slopes.
dē-vōcō, -vincere, -vīcī, -victum, conquer thoroughly.
dē-vōcō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, call away.
dēvōtus, -a, -um (part. of dēvoveō), adj., devoted; as subst., dēvōtī, -ōrum, m. pl., devoted followers.
dē-voveō, -vovēre, -vōvī, -vōtum, vow, devote.
dexter, -tra, -trum, adj., right; as subst., dextra, -ae (se. manus), f., right hand. (Dexterity, dexterous.)
Diablintēs, -um, m. pl., the Aulerci Diablintes, a division of the Aulerci.
diciō, -ōnis (dicō, oppoint), plur. and nom. sing: not in use, f., power, sway, authority.
dicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, dedicate, devote, assign.
dicō, dicere, dixī, dictum, say, speak, tell; plead a case; name, appoint; agree. (Diction.)
dictiō -ōnis (dicō), f., speaking, pleading.
dictum -i (dicō), n., saying, word; command, dictō au-diēns, obedient to an order.
didūcō, dūcere, -dūxi, -ductum (dis- + dūcō), lead apart, divide, distribute.
diēs, diēi, m. and f., day; time; multō diē, late in the day; in diēs, from day to day; diem ex diē, day after day.
differō, -ferre, distulī, dilētum (dis- + ferō), bear different ways; scatter, spread out; put off, delay; differ.
difficilis, -e. comp. difficilior, sup. difficillimus (dis- + faciis), difficult, hard.
difficultas, -tatis (difficiliis), f., difficulty, trouble.
difficulter (difficilis), adv., with difficulty.
diffidō, -fidere, -fisus sum (dis- + fidō), semi-dep., distrust; despair of.
diffusus, pert. pass. part., of diffido.
diffluo, -fluere, -fluxi, — (dis- + fluō), flow in different directions, divide, separate.
diffundō, -fundere, -fuus sum (dis- + fundō), pour out, spread out.
digitus, -i, m., finger; as a measure, finger's breadth, one sixteenth of a Roman foot, .728 inches; digitus pollex, thumb. (Digit.)
dignitas, -tatis (dignus), f., worth, dignity; power, authority, prestige.
dignus, -a, -um, adj., worthy.
duūdicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (dis- + iūdicō), decide.
dilēctus, perf. pass. part. of diligō. dilēctus, -ús (diligō), m., levy.
diligenter, - comp. diligentius, sup. diligentissimē (diligēns), adv., carefully, diligently, punctually.
diligentia, -ae (diligēns), f., care, diligence, punctuality.
diligō, -ligere, -lēxi, -lēctum (dis- + legō), choose out; love.
dimēnsus, perf. part. of dimētor.
dimētor, -mētrī, -mēnsus sum (dis- + mētior), dep., measure off, measure; lay out. (Dimension.)
dimicātiō, -ōnis (dimicō), f., contest, fight.
dimicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (dis- + micō), move to and fro), fight, contend.
dimidius, -a, -um (dis- + medius), adj., half; as subst., dimidium, dimǐdi n., half.
dimittō, -mittere, -mīsum (dis- + mittō), send different ways, send about; send away, dismiss; let go, release, disband, lose.
dirimō, -imere, -ēmī, -emptum (dis- + emō, take), take apart; break up, end.
diripiō, -ripere, -ripui, -reptum (dis- + rapio), plunder, pilage.
dis-. inseparable prefix, apart, asunder, in different directions; also with negative force.
Dis, Dītis, m., Dis, god of the underworld, Pluto.
dis-cedo, -cedere, -cessi, -cessum, go apart, disperse; depart, withdraw; leave, abandon.
disceptator, -tōris (disceptō, decide), m., arbiter, judge.

discernō, -cernere, -crēvī, -crētum, distinguish.
discersus, -ūs (discēdō), m., departure, withdrawal.
disciplīna, -ae (discipulus, pupil), f., training, discipline; instruction, system.
dis-clūdō, -clūdere, -clūsī, -clūsum, keep apart.
discō, discere, didici, _, learn. (Disciple.)
discrimen, -minis (discernō), n., separation; crisis, peril. (Discriminate.)
discutiō, -cutere, -cussi, -cussum (dis- + quatiō, shake), shake apart; clear off. (Discuss.)
disiciō, -icere, -iēci, -iectum (dis- + iaciō), drive apart; scatter, rout.
disiectus, perf. part. of disiciō. dis-pār, disparis, adj., unequal. (Disparity.)
dis-parō, -are, -avi, -atum, separate, divide.
dispersus, perf. part. of dispersō.
dis-pōnō, -ponere, -posul, -positum, place here and there, distribute, station. (Dispose.)
disputatio, -onis (disputo), f., discussion.
dis-puto, -are, -avi, -atum, dispute.
dissentio, -Ire, -sensi, -sesum, differ, disagree, dissent from.
disserō, -serere, —. — (dis- + serō, sow), plant at intervals.
dis-simulō, -are, -āvi, -ātum, conceal. (Dissimulate.)
dissipō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, scatter, disperse. (Dissipate.)
dis-suādeō, -suādere, -suāsi, —, fut. part. dissuāsūrus, advise against, dissuade.
distineō, -tinēre, -tinui, -tentum (dis- + teneō), hold apart; prevent, hinder; distract, keep busy.
distō, -stāre, —. — (dis- + stō), stand apart; be apart, be distant.
VOCABULARY

documentum, -i (doceo), n., lesson, warning, proof. (Document.)
doleo, dolere, dolui, —, fut. part. dolorurus, suffer; be grieved.
dolor, -oris, m., pain, grief, resentment, trouble, vexation of spirit. (Dolorous.)
dolus, -i, m., deception, trick; trickery.
domesticus, -a, -um (domus), adj., of the home, domestic; internal, civil.
domicilium, domicili (domus), n., dwelling, habitation, domicile.
dominor, -ari, -atus sum (dominus, master), dep., be master, rule. (Dominate.)
dominus, -i (domo, sui), m., master, lord.
Domitius, Domiti, m., Domitius, gentile name of L. Domitius Ahenobarbus, consul in 54 B.C.
domus, -us, loc. domi, f., house, home; abl., domo, from home.
Donnotaurus, -i, m., Donnotaurus, surname of C. Valerius Donnotaurus, a leader of the Helvii.
don, -are, -avi, -atum (donum), give, present, donate.
donum, -i (do), n., gift.
dorsum, -i, n., back of an animal; ridge of ground.
dos, dotis (dó), f., dowry.
Druidés, -rum, m. pl., the Druids.
Dubis, -is, m., the Dubis, a river in Gaul, flowing into the Arar, modern Doubs.
dubitatio, -onis (dubitō), f., doubt, hesitation.
dubitō, -äre, -avi, -atum (dubius), doubt, hesitate.
dubius, -a, -um, adj., doubtful, uncertain, dubious.
ducenti, -ae, -a (duo + centum), num. adj., two hundred.
dúcō, dúcere, dúxi, ductum, lead, guide; conduct, draw, drive; build, make a trench; put off, postpone, prolong; hold, believe, think; draw, obtain; in matrimōnium dúcere, and dúcere (se. in matrimōnium), take to wife, marry.
ductus, -us (dúcō), m., leadership.
dum, conj., while; until.
Dumnorix, -rigis, m., Dumnorix, a chief of the Helvetians, brother of Diviciacus.
duo, duae, duo, num. adj., pl., two. (Dual.)
duodecim (duo + decem), num. adj. indecl., twelve. (Decimal.)
duodecimus, -a, -um (duodecim), num. adj., twelfth.
duodeni, -ae (duodecim), num. adj. distrib., twelve at a time, twelve apiece.
duo-dé-viginti, -ae, -a, adj., eighteen.
duplex, -icis (duo + plico, fold), adj., twofold, double. (Duplicate.)
duplicō, -äre, -ǎvi, -átum (duplex), make double, double. (Duplicate.)
düritia, -ae (dūris), f., hardness; hardship.
dūrō, -äre, -āvi, -átum (dūrus), harden. (Endure, duration.)
Dūrocoritum, -i, n., Durocoritorum, the chief city of the Remi, the modern Rheims.
dūrus, -a, -um, comp. dūrior, sup. dūrissimus, adj., hard, severe, difficult. (Durable.)
dux, ducis (cf. dūcō), m., leader, guide; commander.

E

e, see ex.
eā, adv., there, that way.
Eburōnēs, -num, m. pl., the Eburones, a tribe of the Belgians.
Eburovicēs, -cum, m. pl., the Eburovices, a division of the Aulerei, the Aulerci Eburovices.
ēdiscō, -discere, -didici, — (ex + disco), learn by heart.
ēditus, -a, -um (perf. part. of ēdō), adj., elevated, high.
ēdō, -dere, -didi, -ditum (ex + dō, put), put forth, show. (Edit.)
ēdocēō, -docēre, -docūi, -ductum (ex + doceō), teach thoroughly, inform, show.
ēducō, -ducere, -dūxi, -ductum (ex + ducō), lead forth, lead out; draw a sword.
effēmīnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (ex, cf. fēmina, woman), make EFFEMINATE, weaken.
efficēō, -ficere, —, -fertum (ex + faciō, stuff), fill full, fill up.
efferō, efferre, extulī, ēlātum (ex + ferō), take out, carry out, carry away; publish, make known; puff up, make elated.
efficīō, -ficere, -fēci, -fectum (ex + faciō), bring about, accomplish, cause, make, render, EFFECT, build, construct.
effodiō, -fodere, -fōdi, -fossum (ex + fodiō, dig), dig out.
effossus, perf. pass. part. of effodiō.
effugiō, -fugere, -fugi, — (ex + fugiō), flee away, escape.
egēns, -ntis (part. of egeō), adj., needy.
egō, egere, egūī, —, need.
egestās, -tātis (egēns), f., want, destitution.
ego, mei, pers. pron., I; pl., nōs, nostrum or nostri, we. (Egotistic.)
egredēr, -gredi, -gressus sum (ex + gradior, step), go out, march out; disembark, land.
egregiē (ēgregius), adv., excellently, admirably, wonderfully.
egregius, -a, -um (ē + grex, herd), adj., eminent, excellent, admirable. (Egregious.)
egressus, perf. part. of ēgredior.
egressus, -ūs (ēgredior), m., landing-place. (Egress.)
eićō, -icere, -īeci, -iectum (ex + iaciō), throw out, drive out, expel, eject; sē īicere, rush forth.
eius modi, see modus.
elābor, -lābī, -lāpsus sum (ex + lābor), slip away, escape.
elāitus, perf. part. of efferō.
Elaver, -eris, m., the Elaver, a river in the central part of Gaul, a tributary of the Liger (Loire), the modern Allier.
elēctus, -a, -atum (part. of ēlīgo), adj., chosen, picked. (Elect.)
elephantus, -i, m., ELEPHANT.
Eleutetēs, -orum, m. pl., the Eleutetēs, a people of central Gaul.
eliciō, -licere, -līciūi, -licitum, draw out, entice, ELICIT.
Elusātēs, -tium, m. pl., the Elusates, a tribe of Aquitania.
ēmigrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (ex + migrō, depart), EMIGRATE, move out.
| Emineo, -minere, -minui, — | Erectus (part. of Ėrigō, raise up), adj., high, elevated. |
| Eminus (ex + manus), adv., from a distance, at a distance. | Ėreptus, perf. part. of Ėripio. |
| Emittō, -mittere, -missum (ex + mittō), send forth; let go, throw away; hurl, cast. | Ėrigō, -rigere, -rēxi, -rēctum (ex + regō), raise up, raise, erect; se Ėrigere, rise. |
| Emō, emere, Ėmī, Ėemptum, buy, purchase; take. | Ėripio, -ripere, -ripui, -reptum (ex + rapiō), snatch away; rescue, save. |
| Ėnāscor, -nasci, -emi, emptum, buy, purchase; take. | Errō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, wander; be in error, be mistaken, err. |
| Ėnem, conj. postpos., for; neque enim, and indeed . . . not. | Ėrumpō, -rumpere, -rūpi, -ruptum (ex + rumpō), break forth, rush forth. |
| Ėnūntio, -are, -avi, -atum (ex + nūntiō), announce, report, reveal. | Ėruptiō, -onis (Ėrumpō), f., breaking forth, sally, sortie. (Eruption.) |
| Eō, ablative of is; see is. | Essedarius, -dāri (essedum), m., fighter from a chariot, warrior who fights from a chariot. |
| Eō (is), adv., to that place, thither, there. | Essedum, -ī, n., war-chariot, chariot. |
| Eō, Ėre, Ėvi or Ėi, Ėtum, go, march, proceed. | Esubū, -ōrum, m. pl., the Esubii, a tribe of north-western Gaul. |
| Eōdem, (īdem), adv., to the same place, to the same end, to the same purpose. | Et, conj., and; et . . . et, both . . . and. |
| Epippiātus, -a, -um (cf. epippium), adj., with saddles. | Etiam (et + iam), conj., also, even; non sōlum . . . sed etiam, not only . . . but also. |
| Eppiπium, epippi, n., saddle-cloth, saddle. | Et-si, conj., even if; although, though. |
| Epistula, -ae, f., letter, epistle. | Ėvādō, -vādere, -vāsi, -vāsum (ex+vādō, go), escape, evade. |
| Eperēdorix, -rigis, m., Eperēdorix, the name of two chiefs among the Aeduans. | Ėvellō, -vellere, -vellī, -vulsum (ex + vellō, pluck), pull out. |
| Epulae, -ārum, f. pl., banquet. | Ėveniō, -venire, -vēni, -ventum (ex + veniō), come out, turn out. |
| Eques, -itis (equus), m., horse-man, cavalryman; knight. | Ėventus, -ūs (Ēveniō), m., outcome, event, result; fate, mischance, accident. |
| Equester, -tris, -tre (eques), adj., of cavalry, cavalry, equestrian. | Eratosthenēs, -nis, m., Eratosthenes, a Greek philosopher and geographer. |


**vocabulary**

evocātus, -ī (ēvōcō), m., a veteran; volunteer. See Intro. 25.
evōcō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (ex + vocō), call out, summon; invite. (EVOKE.)
evōlō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (ex + volō, fly), fly out, rush out.
ex, ē, prep. with abl., from, out of; from, of, in, on; unā ex parte, on one side; of time, from after, because of, on account of; in accordance with, according to. See Introd. 142, 4. (Ex-president, etc.)
ezactus, perf. part. of exigo.
ex-agitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, disturb, harass.
exāminō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, weigh, EXAMINE.
exanimō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (exanimus, from ex and anima, breath), deprive of life, kill; pass., be out of breath, be exhausted.
ex-ārdescō, -ārdescere, -ārsī, —, fut. part. exārsūrus, be angry.
ex-audiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum, hear clearly, hear.
ex-cēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, go out, go away, depart.
ex-cellō,-cellere,-cellū,-celsum, raise; surpass, EXCEL.
excelsus, -a, -um, comp. excelsior (part. of excellō), adj., raised, elevated, high; long.
exceptō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (intens. of excipiō), catch up.
excidō, -cidere, -cīdī, -cīsum (ex + caedo), cut out; cut down, destroy.
excipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum, take out, take up, begin; receive, catch, withstand, en-
counter; follow, succeed. (Except.)
excitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (ex + citō, set in motion), raise, construct, build; rouse, EXCITE.
exclūdō, -clūdere, -clūsī, -clūsum (ex + claudō), shut out; keep from. (EXCLUDE.)
ex-cōgitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, think out, devise.
ex-cruciō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, torture. (EXCRUCIATING.)
excubitor, -tōris (excubō), m., sentinel.
ex-cubō, -cubāre, -cubūi, -cubitum, keep watch; literally, lie outside the camp.
exculcō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (ex + calco, trample), trample down.
excursiō, -onis (excurrō), f., running out; sally. (EXCURSION.)
excūsatiō, -tōnis (excūsō), f., EXCUSE.
excūsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (ex, of causa), EXCUSE.
exemplum, -i (eximō, take out), n., EXAMPLE, precedent; sample, kind; punishment.
ex-eō, -īre, -īvī or -īvī, -ītum, go out, go forth, withdraw, depart. (EXIT.)
exerceō, -ercere, -ercūi, -ercitum (ex + arceō, restrain), EXERCISE, train.
exercitatiō, -ōnis (exerceō), f., practice, training, EXERCISE.
exercitātus, -a, -um, comp. exercitatiōr, sup. exercitătissimus (part. of exercitō, intens. of exercēo), adj., trained, experienced; sup., highly trained.
exercitus, -ūs (exerceō), m., army, as a trained body of men.
ex-hauriō, -haurire, -hausi, -haustum, draw out, take out. (Exhaust.)
exīgō, -igere, -ēgī, -āctum (ex + agō), drive out; of time, spend, finish.
exiguē (exiguus), adv., scarcely.
exiguītās, -tātis (exiguus), f., smallness, scantiness; fewness, small number; shortness of stature.
exiguus, -a, -um (exigo), adj., small, scanty.
exīgus, -a, -um (eximo, take out), adj., uncommon, distinguished.
exīgus, -a, -um (exiguus), comp. ex硿itor, -tōris (explorō), m., scout, patrol. (Explorer.)
exīratūs, -a, -um (part. of explorō), adj., explored, assured, certain, sure.
exīro, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, search out, investigate, ascertain; explore, reconnoiter.
ex-portō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, carry away. (Export.)
ex-poscō, -poscere, -poscī, —, demand eagerly.
exprimō, -primere, -pressi, -pressum (ex + premō), press out, extort. (Express.)
expugnātiō, -ōnis (expugnō), f., capture by storm or assault.
ex-pugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, take by storm, capture.
expulsus, perf. part. of expellō.
exīrō, -quirere, -quisivi, -quisītum (ex + quaerō), search out, investigate; inquire into; ask for. (Exquisite.)
exquisitus, perf. part. of exquirō.
ex-sequor, -sequi, -secūtus sum, follow up; main, in, enforce. (Execute.)
ex-serō, -serere, -serūī, -serūtum, thrust out; bare.
exsertus, perf. part. of exserō.
ex-sistō, - sistere, -stī, —, stand forth, appear; arise; project. (Exist.)
ex-spectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, look for, wait for, expect.
ex-spoliō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, rob, despoil.
ex-stinguō, -stinguere, -stīnxī, -stīctum, put out, extinguish.
| Word | Meaning | | | | |
|------|---------|---|---|---|
| faciō, facere, fēcī, factum, do, | make; prepare, cause, occasion; | | | |
| give, furnish; pass. fīō, fieri, | factus sum, see fīō; certiōrem | | | |
| facere, inform. | factū, supine of faciō. | | | |
| factum, -ī (faciō), n., act, deed; | achievement. (FACT.) | | | |
| facultās, -tātis (facilis), f., | ease, facility, ability; oppor- | | | |
| tunity, chance; abundance, | supply; pl., resources, wealth. | | | |
| (FACULTY.) | fāgus, -i, f., beech tree, beech. | | | |
| fallō, fallere, fefelli, falsum, de- | ceive, cheat, disappoint. (FAL- | | | |
| LACIOUS.) | falsus, -a, -um (perf. part. of | | | |
| fallō), adj., FALSE, unfounded. | falx, falcis, f., sickle; hook | | | |
| shaped like a sickle. | fāma, -ae (for, fāri, speak), f., | | | |
| report; FAME, reputation. | famēs, famis, f., hunger, starva- | | | |
| tion. (FAMINE.) | familia, -ae, f., body of slaves; | | | |
| household, FAMILY; māter | familiæ, matron. | | | |
| familiāris, -e (familia), adj., | of the family, private; rēs | | | |
| familiāris, private property; | as subst., familiāris, -is, m., | | | |
| friend. | familiāritās,-tātis (familiāris), f., | | | |
| intimacy, FAMILIARITY, friend- | ship. | | | |
| fās (for, speak), indecl. n., | right; with est, it is right, | | | |
| lawful, allowed. | fastigātē (fastigātus), adv., | | | |
| fastigātus, -a, -um (fastigium), | adv., slanting. | | | |
| adj., sloping, slanting. |
VOCABULARY

fastigium, fastīgī, n., peak, height, top; slope, ridge.

fātum, -ī (for, speak, foretell), n., fate.

faveō, favĕre, fāvī, fautum, be favorable, favor, support.

fax, facis, f., torch, firebrand.

felicitas, -tātis (felīx, happy), f., happiness, good fortune.

femeina, -ae, f., woman; female.

femur, femoris and feminis, n., thigh. (Femoral.)

fera, see ferus.

ferāx, -ācis, comp. ferācior, sup. ferācissimus (ferō), adj., fertile.

fere, adv., almost; about, nearly; as a rule, generally.

ferō, ferre, tuli, lātum, bear, carry, bring; endure, suffer; obtain; say, tell; propose, offer; pass., be borne, rush; graviter ferre, to be indignant.

ferrāmentum, -ī (ferrum), n., tool of iron.

ferrária, -ae (ferrum), f., iron mine.

ferreus, -a, -um (ferrum), adj., of iron, iron.

ferrum, -ī, n., iron, steel; sword.

fertilis, -e, comp. fertilior, sup. fertilissimus (ferō), adj., fertile, fruitful.

fertilitas, -tātis (fertilis), f., fertility.

ferus, -a, -um, adj., wild, savage; as subst., fera, -ae (sc. bēstia), f., wild beast.

ferveō, fervĕre, —, —, be hot. (Fervid, fervent.)

festūca, -ae, f., rammer, pile-driver.

fibula, -ae (figō, fasten), f., clasp; bolt.

fidēlis, -e (fidēs), adj., faithful, trustworthy; loyal.

fidēs, fidei, f., trust, confidence; loyalty, fidelity; protection; promise, assurance, pledge.

fiducia, -ae (fidus), f., confidence, reliance.

figūra, -ae (figō), f., shape, form, figure.

filia, -ae, f., daughter.

filius, filī, m., son. (Filial.)

fungō, fingere, finxī, fictum, form, shape; invent; of the features, control. (Fiction.)

finīō, -ire, -īvi, -ītum (finis), bound, limit; measure. (Finite, infinitive.)

finis, finis, m. end, boundary; pl., country, territory. (Finish.)

finitimus, -a, -um (finis), adj., bordering on, neighboring; as subst., finitimī, -ōrum, m. pl., neighbors.

fiō, fieri, factus sum (used as pass. of faciō), be made, be done; happen, take place; certior fieri, be informed.

firmiter (firmus), adv., solidly, firmly.

firmītūdō, -dinis (firmus), f., firmness, strength.

firmō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (firmus), make strong, strengthen.

firmus, -a, -um, comp. firmior, sup. firmissimus, adj., strong, firm; powerful.

Flaccus, -ī, m.; Flaccus, surname of C. Valerius Flaccus.
flāgitō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, de-
mand, ask.
flamma, -ae (flagrō; ·burn), f.,
FLAME, fire.
flectō, flectere, flexī, flexum,
bend, turn. (INFL.EXT.)
fleō, flēre, flēvī, flētum, weep.
fētus, -ūs (fēō), m., weeping.
fō, flāre, flāvī, flātum, blow.
fōrēns, -ntis, comp. flōrentior,
sup. flōrentissimus (flōreō),
adj., blooming; FLOURISHING,
prosperous.
fōs, flōris, m., flower. (FLORAL,
FLORIST.)
fluctus, -ūs (fluō), m., wave.
(FLUCTUATE.)
flōmen, -minis (fluō), n., river,
stream; flōmine adversō, up
stream.
fluō, fluere, flūxi, flūxum, flow.
fodiō, fodere, fōdī, fossum, dig.
foedus, -deris (cf. fidēs), n.,
treaty.
fore, = futūrum esse, fut. inf. of
sum.
forem, = essem, from sum.
foris (foris, door), adv., out-
of-doors; outside.
fōrma, -ae, f., shape, FORM.
fors, fortis (cf. fērō), f., chance,
luck. (FORTUOUS.)
forte (fors), adv., by chance.
fōrtis, -ē, comp. fortior, sup.
fortissimus, adj., strong, brave.
fōrtitēr, comp. fōtius, sup.
fōrtissimē (fortis), adv.,
bravely.
fortitūdō, -dinis (fortis), f.,
bravery. (FORTITUDE.)
fortuitō (fortuitus, -a, -um,
chance), adv., by chance.
(FORTUITOUSLY.)
fortūna, -ae (fors), f., FORTUNE,
chance, luck; good fortune;
lot, condition; pl., fortunes,
possessions.
fortūnātus, -a, -um (fortūna),
adj., FORTUNATE, prosperous.
forum, -i, n., market-place,
FORUM.
fossa, -ae (fodiō, dig), f., ditch,
trench.
fovea, -ae, f., pil, pitfall.
frangō, frangere, frēgi, frāctum,
break; wreck, shatter. (FRACT-
TURE, FRACTION.)
frāter, -tris, m., brother.
frāternus, -a, -um (frāter),
adj., of a brother, brotherly,
FRATERNAL.
fraus, fraudis, f., FRAUD, decep-
tion, trickery.
fremitus, -ūs (fremō, roar), m.,
uproar, noise.
frequēns, -ntis, sup. frequentis-
simus, adj., in large numbers,
numerous. (FREQUENT.)
frētus, -a, -um, adj., relying on.
frigidus, -a, -um, sup. frigi-
... dissimus (frigeō), adj., cold.
(FRIGID.)
frīgus, frīgoris, n., cold; cold
weather.
frōns, frontis, m., ·forehead;
FRONT.
fructuosus, -a, -um, sup. fruc-
tuosissimus (fructus), adj.,
fruitful, fertile.
frūctus, -ūs (fruor), m., enjoy-
ment; FRUIT, product; gain,
profit, interest.
frūges, -um, f. pl., fruits, crops,
produce.
frumentārius, -a, -um (frumen-
tum), adj., pertaining to grain;
abounding in grain, productive;
rōs frumentāria, grain supply.
frumentātō, -tōnis (frument-
tor), f., getting grain, foraging.
frumentor, -āri, -ātus sum (frumentum), dep., get grain, forage.

frumentum, -ī (fruor), n., grain; pl., crops of grain.
fruor, frui, fruitus or fructus sum, dep., enjoy.
frustrà (fraus), adv., in vain. (Frustrate.)

Füfius, Fufi, m., Fufius, gentile name of C. Füfius Cila, a Roman knight.
fuga, -ae, f., flight.
fugō, fugere, fugi, —, fut. part. fugiturus (fuga), flee; avoid, flee from.
fugitivus, -a, -um (fugō), adj., fleeing, fugitive; as subst., fugitive slave, runaway slave.
fugō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (fuga), put to flight, rout.
fūmō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (fūmus), smoke. (Fumigate.)
fūmus, -ī, m., smoke. (Fumes.)
funḍa, -ae (cf. fundō), f., sling.
funditor, -tōris (funḍa), m., slinger.
fundō, fundere, fūdī, fūsum, pour; throw; scatter, rout.
fungor, fungī, fūctus sum, dep., fulfil, perform. (Function.)
fūnis, fūnis, m., rope; cable; pl., half-yards.
fūnus, -neris, n., funeral; pl., obsequies.
furor, -ōris, m., rage, madness, fury.
fürtum, -ī (für, thief), n., theft. (Furtive.)
fūsilis, -e (fundō), adj., melted, liquid.
fūtūrus, fut. part. of sum.

G

Gabali, -ōrum, m. pl., the Gabali, a tribe dwelling in the southeastern part of Gaul.
Gabinius, Gabini, m., Gabinius, gentile name of A. Gabinius, consul in 58 B.C.
gaesum, -ī, n., a heavy javelin.
Gaius, -ī, m., Gaius, a Roman first name, abbreviated C.
Galba, -ae, m., Galba: (1) surname of Servius Sulpicius Galba, one of Caesar's lieutenants. (2) The name of a king of the Suessiones.
galea, -ae, f., helmet.
Gallia, -ae (Gallus), f., Gaul.
Gallicus, -a, -um (Gallus), adj., of Gaul, Gallic.
gallina, -ae, f., hen.
Gallus, -a, -um, adj., Gallic; as subst., Gallus, -ī, m., a Gaul.
Gallus, -ī, surname of M. Trebius Gallus, an officer in Caesar's army.
Garumna, -ae, m., the Garumna, a river in southwestern Gaul, the modern Garonne.
Garumni, -ōrum, m. pl., the Garumni, a tribe of Aquitania.
Gatēs, -ium, m. pl., the Gates, a tribe of Aquitania.
gaudēō, gaudēre, gāvisus sum, semi-dep., rejoice, be glad.
gāvisus, perf. part. of gaudēō.
Geidumni, -ōrum, m. pl., the Geidumni, a tribe in Belgic Gaul.
Genava, -ae, f., Genava, a city of the Allobroges on Lake Lemannus, the modern Geneva.
gener, generi, m., son-in-law.


**VOCABULARY**

generātim (genus), adv., by tribes.

gēns, gentis (root gen-, beget), f., clan, tribe; nation.
genus, -eris (root gen-, beget), n., birth, descent; race; kind, character, nature; class, rank. (Genus.)

Gergovia, -ae, f., Gergovia, the principal stronghold of the Avernii.

Germānia, -ae (Germānus), f., Germany.

Germānicus, -a, -um (Germānus), adj., German.

Germānus, -a, -um, adj., German; as subst., Germānī, -ōrum, m. pl., the Germans.

gerō, gerere, gessi, gestflm, bear; carry on, do, manage; perform, accomplish; of an office, fill; of war, wage; rem gerere, achieve, accomplish; male rem gerere, be unsuccessful; rēs gestae, achievements, exploits.

gestus, perf. part. of gerō.

gladius, gladiī, m., sword. (Gladiator.)

glāns, glandis, f., acorn; bullet thrown from a sling.

glēba, -ae, f., clod of earth; mass.

glōria, -ae, f., reputation, glory.

glōrior, -āri, -ātus sum (glōria), dep., boast, boast of, glory in.

Gnaeus, -i, m., Gnaeus, a Roman first name, abbreviated Cn.

Gobannitio, -onis, m., Gobannitio, one of the Avernii.

Gobogobina, -ae, f., Gobogobina, a town in the country of the Aeduans, held by the Boii.

Graecus, -a, -um, adj., Greek; as subst., Graecus, -i, m., a Greek.

Graiocelī, -ōrum, m. pl., the Graiocelī, a Gallic tribe, living among the Alps.

grandis, -e, adj., large, great. (Grand.)

grātia, -ae (gratus), f., favor; popularity, influence; gratitude; pl., thanks; grātiās agere, thank; grātiām ferre, requite; grātiā, with preceding gen., for the sake of. (Grace.)

grātulātiō, -onis (gratulor), f., rejoicing, congratulation.

gratulor, -ari, -atus sum (gratus), dep., congratulate.

gratus, -a, -um, adj., pleasing, grateful; as subst., gratum, -i, n., favor.

gravis, -e, comp. gravior, sup. gravissimus, adj., heavy, burdensome; hard, severe, difficult; of age, advanced. (Grave.)

gravitās, -tatis (gravis), f., weight; importance, power. (Gravity.)

graviter, comp. gravius, sup. gravissimē (gravis), adv., heavily; severely, bitterly; seriously; graviter ferre, be indignant.

gravō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (gravis), weigh down; pass., hesitate, be unwilling.

Grudīi, -ōrum, m. pl., the Grudīi, a tribe of Belgic Gaul.

gubernātor, -tōris (gubri), m., helmsman, pilot. (Gubernatorial.)

gustō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, taste.

Gutruātus, -i, m., Gutruatus, a chief of the Carnutes.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Term</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Habeō, habēre, habui, habitum</td>
<td>have, possess; hold, consider; reckon, think; make; deliver.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Haesitō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum</td>
<td>(in-tens. of haereō), stick fast. (Hesitate.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hāmus, -i, m.</td>
<td>hook.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Harpagō, -gōnis, m.</td>
<td>hook, grappling-iron.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Harūdēs, -dum, m. pl.</td>
<td>the Harudes, a German tribe.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Haud, adv.</td>
<td>not at all, not.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Helvēticus, -a, -um</td>
<td>(Helvētius) adj., Helvetian.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Helvētius, -a, -um</td>
<td>adj., Helvetic; as subst., Helvētii, -ōrum, m. pl., the Helvetians, the Helvetii.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Helvii, -ōrum, m. pl.</td>
<td>the Helvii, a Gallic people, living in the Roman Province.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hercynius, -a, -um</td>
<td>(Hercynian, a name applied to a great forest in southern Germany.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hēreddīs, -tātis</td>
<td>(hērēs, heir), f., inheritance. (Hereditary.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hibernia, -ae, f.</td>
<td>Hibcrnian, the ancient name of Ireland.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hibernus, -a, -um</td>
<td>(hiems), adj., of winter, winter; as subst., hiberna, -ōrum (sc. castra), winter-quarters. (Hibernate.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hīc, haec, hōc, gen. huius, dem. pron.</td>
<td>this; he, she, it; the following.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hīc (hic), adv.</td>
<td>hence, from here.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hīnc (hic), adv.</td>
<td>hence, from here.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hispania, -ae, f.</td>
<td>Spain.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hispanus, -a, -um</td>
<td>adj., Spanish.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Homō, hominis, m. and f.</td>
<td>human being, man.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Honestus, -a, -um</td>
<td>comp. honestior, sup. honestissimus (honōs), adj., honored, honorable, noble. (Honest.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Honōrificus, -a, -um</td>
<td>(honor + faciō), adj., conferring honor, honorable.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Honōs or honor, -ōris, m.</td>
<td>honor, respect; public office, office.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hōra, -ae, f.</td>
<td>hour, a twelfth part of the day from sunrise to sunset, varying according to the season of the year.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Horreō, horrēre, horrui, -</td>
<td>tremble at, shudder at, dread. (Horror.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Horribilis, -e</td>
<td>(horreō), adj., awful, Horrible.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Horridus, -a, -um</td>
<td>(horreō), adj., frightful, Horrid.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hortor, -āri, -ātus sum, dep.</td>
<td>encourage, exhort, incite.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hospes, -pitis, m.</td>
<td>guest-friend, friend.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hospitium, hospiti (hospes), n.</td>
<td>guest-friendship, friendship. (Hospitality.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hostis, hostis, m.</td>
<td>enemy. (Hostile, hostility.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hūc (hic), adv.</td>
<td>hither, here, to this place.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Huius modi, see modus.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hūmānitās, -tātis</td>
<td>(hūmānus), f., humanity; refinement, cultivation.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hūmānus, -a, -um</td>
<td>comp. hūmanior, sup. hūmanissimus (cf. homō), adj., human; cultivated, civilized.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
humilis, -e, comp. humilior, sup. humillimus (humus, ground), adj., low; shallow; insignificant, weak. (Humble.)

humilitas, -tatis (humilis), f., lowness; insignificance; humility.

iaceō, iacēre, iacuí, —, fut. part. iaciturus, lie; be dead; pres. part. as subst., iacentēs, -ium, m. pl., the fallen, the dead.

iacē, iacere, iēci, iactum, throw, cast, hurl; throw up, construct; ancorās iacere, cast anchor.

iacio, iacere, iecēri, iactum, throw, cast, hurl; throw up, construct; ancoras iacer, cast anchor.

iacto, -are, -avi, -atum (intens. of iacio), throw; loss about; discuss, agitate.

iactura, -ae (iacio), f., throwing away; loss, sacrifice.

iaculum, -i (iacio), n., javelin, dart.

iam, adv., already, now; at length; actually, even; non iam, no longer.

ibi (is), adv., in that place, there.

ibidem (ibi), adv., in the same place.

Iccius, Icī, m., Iccius, a chief of the Remi.

ictus, -ūs (icō, strike), m., stroke, blow.

Īd., abbreviation for Īdūs.

idcirco, adv., therefore, on that account.

idem, eadem, idem, gen. eiusdem, dem. pron., the same. (Identity.)

identidem (idem + itidem), adv., again and again.

idoneus, -a, -um, adj., fit, suitable, favorable.

Īdūs, Īduum, f. pl., the Ides, the fifteenth of March, May, July, and October, and the thirteenth of the other months. See Introd. I40.

ignis, ignis, m., fire. (Ignite.)

ignobilis, -e (in- + (g)nōbilis), adj., unknown, obscure. (Ignoble.)

ignōminia, -ae (in- + (g)nōmen), f., disgrace, ignominy.

ignorō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (cf. ignōscō), be ignorant of, not know, overlook:

ignōtus, -a, -um (in- + (g)nōtus), adj., unknown.

illātus, perf. part. of inferō.

ille, illa, illud, gen. illius, dem. pron.; that; he, she, it.

illīc (ille), adv., there, in that place.

illīgo, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (in + ligō, bind), bind, fasten.

illō (ille), adv., thither, to that place; to that end.

illūstris, -e, comp. illūstrius, sup. illūstrissimus (in, ef. lūx), adj., distinguished, illustrious.

Illyricum, -i, n., Illyricum, a country on the east side of the Adriatic Sea, forming a part of Caesar’s province.

imbēcillitās, -tātis (imbēcillus, weak), f., weakness. (Imbecility.)

imber, imbris, m., rain, rain-storm.

imitor, -āri, -ātus sum, dep., imitate.

immānis, -e (in- + mānus, good), adj., monstrous, huge, immense.

immēnsus, -a, -um (in- + mētior, measure), adj., immense, huge.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin Word</th>
<th>English Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>immineo, -minère, —, —</td>
<td>(in + mineō, overhang), overhang; hang over, threaten. (Imminent.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>immittō, -mittere, -missum</td>
<td>overhang; hang over, threaten. (Imminent.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>immolō, -are, -avi, -atum</td>
<td>send in, send against; hurl; let down, let in.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>immo-late</td>
<td>send in, send against; hurl; let down, let in.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>immortalis, -e</td>
<td>adj., IMMORTAL.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>immunitas</td>
<td>free from burdens, free from taxes. (IMMUNE.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>imparatus, -a, -um</td>
<td>adj., unprepared.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>impedimentum, -i</td>
<td>n., hindrance, obstacle, impediment; pl., baggage.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>impediō, -pedire, -pedīvi, -pedītum</td>
<td>hinder, impede, block; embarrass.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>impeditus, -a, -um</td>
<td>comp. impeditior (part. of impediō), adj., encumbered, hindered, embarrassed; difficult, impassable.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>impellō, -pellere, -puli, -pulsum</td>
<td>urge, induce, impel.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>impendeō, -pendère, —, —</td>
<td>(in + pendeō), overhang. (IMPEND.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>impēnseeus, -a, -um</td>
<td>(part. of impendō, spend), adj., expensive, costly.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>imperátor, -tōris (imperō)</td>
<td>m., commander-in-chief, general, commander.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin Word</th>
<th>English Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>imperātum, -ī (imperō)</td>
<td>n., command, order.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>imperfectus, -a, -um</td>
<td>adj., unfinished, incomplete, IMPERFECT.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>imperō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum</td>
<td>command, order; authority, power, rule, government. (IMPERIAL.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>impetrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum</td>
<td>(in + patrō, perform), obtain a request, accomplish, bring to pass.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>impetus, -ūs, (in + petō), m., attack, onset; violence, force. (IMPETUS, IMPETUOUS.)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>impīus, -a, -um</td>
<td>adj., IMPIOUS.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>implicō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum</td>
<td>entwine, enfold, unite. (IMPLICATE.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>implo-ri, -āre, -āvi, -ātum</td>
<td>entwine, enfold, unite. (IMPLICATE.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>impōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -posītum</td>
<td>place in, place on; mount. (IMPOSE.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>importātus, part. of importō.</td>
<td>importō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (in + portō), carry in, IMPORT.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>improbus, -a, -um</td>
<td>adj., bad, wicked.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>imprōvisō (imprōvisus), adv., unexpectedly.</td>
<td>imprōvisus, -a, -um (in + prōvisus, from prōvideō), adj., unforeseen, unexpected; dē imprōvisō, unexpectedly, suddenly.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vocabulary</td>
<td>Imprudens, -ntis (in- + prudens, = prōvidens), adj., unforeseeing, unawares, off one's guard. (Imprudent.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Imprudentia, -ae (imprudens), f., want of foresight, imprudence, heedlessness, carelessness; ignorance.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Impubes, -beris (in- + pūbēs, manhood), adj., youthful; unmarried.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Impugno, -are, -avi, -atum (in pugno), attack, charge; figlit. (Impugn.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Impulsus, perf. part. of impello.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Impulse, instigation.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Impune (impunis, unpunished), adv., without punishment, with impunity.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Impunitas, -tatis (impunis, unpunished), f., freedom from punishment, impunity.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Imus, sup. of inferus.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>In, prep. (1) with acc., into, to, on, upon; against, towards; of time, until, for; in altitudinem, in height. See Introd. 143, 1. (2) with abl., in, on, upon; among; of time, in, during. See Introd. 143, 1.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>In-, inseparable prefix with negative force, un-. (In-ability, etc.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Inānis, -e, ad., empty; useless.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Incautē (incautus), adv., cautiously, carelessly.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Incatus, -a, -um (in- + cautus), adj., careless, incautious.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Incendium, incendi (incendō), n., fire, burning. (Incendiary.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Incendō, -cendere, -cendi, -census (in, cf. candēō, shine), set fire to, burn.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Incensus, perf. part. of incendo.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Incertus, -a, -um (in- + certus), adj., uncertain; untrustworthy; in confusion.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Incidō, -cidere, -cidi, — (in- + cadō), fall upon; fall in with; happen, occur. (Incident.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Incipio, -cipere, -cēpi, -ceptum (in + capiō), begin, undertake. (Incipient.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Incisus, perf. part. of incidō.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Incitātus, perf. part. of incitō.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Incitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, urge on, drive forward; urge, excite, incite; se incitāre, rush on, rush in; equis incitātis, with horses at full speed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Incolō,-colere,-colui,—, inhabit; live, dwell.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Incommodis, -e, adj., safe, unharmed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Incommodus, -i (incommodus), adv., inconveniently, unfortunately.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Incommodum, -i (incommodus), adj., inconvenience, disadvantage; injury, damage, disaster, defeat.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Incredibilis, -e, adj., incredible, remarkable.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Increpitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (intens. of increpō, blame), blame, rebuke; taunt.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>In-cumbō, -cumbere, -cubū, -cubitum, devote oneself to.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Incursio, -onis (incurrō, run against), f., inroad, attack.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Incursus, -ūs (incurrō, run against), m., inroad, attack, incursion.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
incúsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (in + causa), find fault with, censure, rebuke.
inde, adv., thence, from that place; thereupon, then.
indicium, indici (indicō, show), n., information, evidence. (Indication.)
indīcō, -ācere, -āxi, -āctum, declare; appoint.
indictus, perf. part. of indicō.
indignē (indignus), adv., unworthily, shamefully.
indignitās, -ātis (indignus), f., disgrace, shame; indignity.
indignor, -āri, -ātus sum (indignus), deem unworthy; be INDIGNANT.
indignus, -a, -um (in + dignus), adj., unworthy.
indiligēns, -ēntis (in + diligēns), adj., negligent, careless, heedless.
indiligenter, comp. indiligentius (indiligēns), adv., carelessly.
indiligentia, -ae (indiligēns), f., carelessness, neglect.
inducō, -ācere, -āxi, -āctum, lead in; lead, induce; cover.
inductus, perf. part. of inducō.
indulgentia, -ae (indulgēns), f., kindness, indulgence, favor.
indulgeō, -āgere, -āksi, -āctum, indulge, favor.
indulgiāre, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, put on; sē induere, fall upon, impale oneself on. (Indue.)
industriae (industrius), adv., energetically, actively. (Industriously.)
indūtiae, -ārum, pl., truce. Indutiomārus, -i, m., Indutiomarus, a chief of the Treveri.
in-eō, -ire, -ivi or -iī, -ītum, enter upon, begin, form a plan; secure, win.
inermis, -e (in + arma), adj., unarmed.
inertēs, comp. inertior (in + ars), adj., without skill; indolent, INERT; unmanly.
infāmia, -ae (in + fāma), f., disgrace, dishonor, infamy.
infaēns, -ēntis (in + for, fāri, speak), adj., speechless; as subst., m. and f., young child, INFANT.
infectus, -a, -um (in + factus), adj., undone, unfinished; rē infectā, with purpose unaccomplished.
inferior, comp. of inferus.
inferō, inferre, intulī, illātum, bring in, import; inspire, infuse; bring on, wage; inflict; bring forward, allege; signā inferre, advance; bellum inferre, make war.
inferus, -a, -um, adj., found in Caesar. only in the comp. inferior, and the sup. infimus or īmus. (1) comp. lower, lower part of; inferior. (2) sup. lowest, lowest part of; at the bottom.
infēstus, -a, -um (in, cf. fendō, strike), adj., hostile, ready for action.
infičō, -ficere, -ficē, -fectum (in + faciō), stain. (Infect.)
infidēlis, -e, adj., unfaithful, untrustworthy. (Infidel.)
infigō, -figere, -fixē, -fixum, fix in, fasten on. (Infix.)
infirmus, sup. of inferus.
infinitus, -a, -um, adj., unlimited, countless, infinite.
infirmitās, -tātis (infirmus), f., weakness; fickleness.  (Infirmity.)
infirmus, -a, -um, comp. infirmior, adj., weak; disheartened, timid.  (Infirm.)
in-nectō, -nectere, -nexum, bend, bend down.  (Infect.)
inflexus, perf. part. of inflectō.
in-fluō, -fluere, -flux, -fluxum, flow into, empty into.  (Influx.)
in-fodiō, -fodiere, -fodi, -fossum, bury.
infrā (inferus), adv. and prep. with acc., below.
ingēns, ingentis, adj., huge, great.
in-gratūs, -a, -um, adj., displeasing, unwelcome.
ingrediō, -gredi, -gressus sum, (in + gradior, step), enter, go into.
iniciō, -icere, -īcī, -iectum (in + iaciō), throw on; lay on; strike into, inspire.  (Inject.)
injectus, perf. part. of iniciō.
inimicitia, -ae (inimicus), f., unfriendliness, enmity.
inimicus, -a, -um (in + amicus), adj., unfriendly, hostile; as subst., inimicus, -i, m., personal enemy; cf. hostis, a public enemy.
iniquitās, -tātis (iniquus), f., unevenness; unfairness, injustice; unfavorableness.  (Iniquity.)
iniquus, -a, -um, comp. iniquior, sup. iniquissimus (in + aequus), adj., uneven; unfavorable, unfair; unjust.
inītium, ini'ti (ineō), n., beginning, origin; pl., elements, principles.  (Initiation.)
initus, -a, -um, perf. part. of ineō; initā aestāte, at the beginning of summer.
in-iungō, -iungere, -iūnxi, -iūnc-tum, join to, impose on.  (Join, injunction.)
inīuria, -ae (in + iūs), f., injury, wrong, injustice.
inimissi (abl. of in-iussus), without the order of, without orders.
in-nāscor, -nāsci, -nātus sum, dep., arise in, spring up in.
inātus, -a, -um (perf. part. of innāscor), adj., born, innate.
in-nitor, -nīti, -nīxus or -nīsus sum, dep., be supported; lean on, rest on.
inīxus, perf. part. of innitor.
inoccēns, -ntis (in + nocēns, from noceō), adj., innocent, guiltless.
inoccentia, -ae (inoccēns), f., blamelessness, integrity.  (Innocence.)
inopia, -ae (in-ops, needy), f., lack, want, need; scant supply.
in-opīnāns, -ntis (opīnor), adj., not expecting, off one's guard, unawares.
inquam, inquis, inquit, def., say.
in-sciēns, -ntis (sciō), adj., not knowing, ignorant; without the knowledge of.
inscientia, -ae (insciēns), f., ignorance, lack of knowledge.
insequus, -a, -um (in-, cf. sciō), adj., not knowing, ignorant, unaware.
insequus, perf. part. of insequor.
insequor, -sequi, -sequus sum, dep., follow up, pursue.
in-sero, -serere, -serui, -sertum, bind together, insert, fasten in.
insidia, -ārum (insideō), f. pl., ambush, ambuscade; stratagem, trick. (Insidious.)

insidior, -āri, -ātus sum (insidiae), form an ambuscade, lie in wait for.

insignis, -e (in, cf. signum), adj., notable, remarkable, signal, conspicuous; as subst., insignis, -is, n., sign, signal; decoration, badge.

insilio, -silire, -silui, — (in + salio, leap), leap upon.

insimulo, -are, -avi, -atum, accuse, charge.

insinu6, -are, -art, -atum, push in; se insinuare, force one's way in, insinuate oneself.

insisto, -sistere, -stiti, —, stand upon, stand, keep one's footing; press on, follow, pursue. (Insist.)

insolenter (insolens), adv., insolently, arrogantly.

inspect, -are, -avi, -atum, look at; look on. (Inspect.)

in-stabilis, -e, adj., unsteady. (Unstable.)

instar, n., indecl. likeness; with preceding gen., like.

in-stigō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, good on, instigate.

instituō, -stituere, -stūtī, -stitūtum (in + statuō), set up; draw up, arrange; provide, procure; build, make; establish, undertake, begin, institute; train, teach.

institutum, -i (instituō), n., arrangement, plan; custom; institution.

integrum, -i (intribō), n., equipment. (Instrument.)

in-struō, -struere, -strūxī, -strūctum, build; draw up; equip. (Instruct.)

insuēfactus, -a, -um (insuēscō + faciō), adj., trained, well-trained.

insuētus, -a, -um (part. of insuēscō), adj., unaccustomed.

insula, -ae, f., island. (Insular.)

in-super, adv., above, on top.

integer, -gra, -grum (in-, cf. tangō, touch), adj., untouched, whole; uninjured; fresh; as subst., integer, -ōrum, m. pl., those (who were) not wearied, those (who were) fresh. (Integer, Integral.)

in-tegō, -tegere, -texi, -tectum, cover over.

intellego, -legere, -lexī, -lectum (inter + legō), perceive, understand, know. (Intell.)

intentus, -a, -um (part. of intendō, stretch), adj., attentive, intent.

inter, prep. with acc., between, among; of time, within, during. (International, etc.)

inter-cédō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, go between, lie between; exist; intervene, pass. (Intercede, Intercession).

intercipio, -cipere, -cepi, -ceptum, cut off, intercept; capture; pick up.

interclūdō, -clūdere, -clūsī, -clūsum (inter + claudō), shut off, cut off, blockade.

inter-dico, -dicere, -dixi, -dictum, forbid, exclude, Interdict.
interdiā (inter, cf. diēs), adv., in the daytime.
inter-dum, adv., sometimes, for a time.
inter-eā, adv., in the meantime, meanwhile.
inter-eō, -ēre, -ēi, —, fut. part. interitūrus, die, be killed.
interficiō, -ficere, -fēci, -fectum (inter + faciō), destroy, kill.
intericiō, -icere, -īeci, -iectum (inter + iaciō), throw between, place between, intersperse; of time, allow to pass; pass., lie between, intervene. (Interject, INTERJECTION.)
interiectus, perf. part. of intericiō.
interim (inter), adv., in the meantime, meanwhile.
interior, -ius (inter), adj. comp., inner, interior.
interitus, -ūs (interēō), m., death.
inter-mittō, -mittere, -misi, -missum, place between; of time, let pass; pass., be vacant, stop, cease; lie between. (Intermediate, INTERMISSION.)
interneció, -cionis (internecō, kill), f., destruction, slaughter, annihilation.
inter-pellō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, interrupt, interfere with, disturb.
inter-pōnō, -pōnere, -posui, -positum, place between, interpose; with fidem, pledge; pass., let pass.
intepres, interpretis, m., interpreter.
interpretor, -āri, -ātus sum (interpres), dep., interpret, explain.
inter-rogo, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, ask, INTERROGATE, question.
inter-rumpō, -rumpere, -rūpī, -ruptum, break down.
inter-scindō, -scindere, -scīdi, -scissum, cut down, tear down.
inter-sum, -esse, fui, —, be between; take part in; implies interest, it concerns, it is of importance.
inter-vāllum, -ī, n., space between two palisades; INTERVAL, distance.
inter-veniō, -venire, -vēni, -ventum, come between; arrive, appear. (Intervene.)
interventus, -ūs (interveniō), m., coming between, INTERVENTION.
in-textō, -texere, -texui, -textum (in + texō), weave in, weave together.
intoleranter (intolerāns), adv., violently. (Intolerantly.)
intrā (in), prep. with acc., within, inside of; before.
in-tritus, -a, -um (terō, rub), adj., unwearyed, fresh.
intrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (intrō, within), enter.
intrō-, adv., used only in composition, within, into.
intrō-dūcō, -dūcere, -düxi, -dūctum, lead into, introduce.
intrō-eō, -ēre, -ēvi, —, go in, enter into.
intrōitus, -ūs (introeō), m., entrance.
intrōmissus, perf. part. of intrōmittō.
intrō-mittō, -mittere, -misi, -missum, send in, let in.
intrōrsus (intrō + versus), adv., turned inward; into the interior, into; within, inside.
intrō-rumpō, -rumpere, -rūpī, -ruptum, break in.
in-tueor, -tuēri, -tuitus, look upon.
intulī, perf. of inteō. "
intus (in), adv., within.
in-ūsītātus, -a, -um, comp. in-ūsītātor (ūsītor intens. of ūtor), unusual, strange.
in-ūtilis, -e, adj., useless.
in-veniō, -venire, -venī, -ventum, come upon, find, discover; find out, learn. (INVENT, INVENTION.)
inventor, -ōris (inveniō), m., INVENTOR, originator.
in-vēterascē, -vēterascere, vēteravi, — (cf. vetus, old), grow old, become established. (Inveterate.)
in-victus, -a, -um, adj., un-conquered, invincible.
in-videō, -vidēre, -vidī, -visum, look askance at, envy.
invidia, -ae (invidus, envious), f., envy, jealousy. (Invidious.)
in-violātus, -a, -um, adj., un-injured, INVOLUTE, sacred.
invitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, INVITE, attract.
inventus, -a, -um, adj., unwilling, reluctant; eō invitō, against his will.
ipse, ipsa, ipsum, gen., ipsius, dem. pron., self; himself, herself, itself; pl., themselves; very.
irācundia, -ae (irācundus), f., anger.
irācundus, -a, -um (ira, anger), adj., passionate, irascible.
irideō, -ridēre, -risi, -risum (in + rideō), laugh at, ridicule.
irridiculē (in- + ridiculē, from rideō), adv., without wit.
irrumpō, -rumpere, -rūpi, -ruptum (in + rumpō), break into, rush into.
irruptō, -tōnis (irrumpō), f., incursion, attack. (IRRUP-TION.)
is, ea, id, gen., eius, dem. pron., that, this; he, she, it; such u.
iste, ista, istud, gen., istīus, dem. pron., that of yours, that.
ita (cf. is), adv., so, thus, in such a way; to such an extent.
Italia, -ae, f., Italy.
ita-que, adv., and so, accordingly, therefore.
item, adv., also; likewise, in the same manner. (ITEM, ITEMIZE.)
itītas, Itī, m., Itius, used with Portus, the name of a harbor from which Caesar set sail for Britain, probably the modern Boulogne.
īuba, -ae, f., mane.
īubeō, iūbere, iussi, iussum, order, command.
iūdīcium, iūdī'ci (iūdex, judge; cf. iūs), n., JUDGMENT, decision; trial, court; opinion, JUDGMENT.
iūdicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (iūdex, judge), JUDGE, decide, determine; think, believe.
iugum, -i, n., yoke, summit of a hill or mountain.
iūmentum, -i (cf. iungō), n., beast of burden.
iūncūra, -ae (iungō), f., joint, JUNCTURE.
iūncus, perf. part. of iungō.
iungō, iungere, iūnxī, iūnctum, join, connect. (JUNCTION.)
Iūnius, Iūnī, m., Junius, a Roman gentile name; see Brūitus.
Also the name of Q. Iūnius, a Spaniard in Caesar's army.
Iuppiter, Iovis, m., Jupiter, the principal god of the Romans.
Iūra, -ae, m., the Jura, a range of mountains in Gaul, between the Rhine and the Rhone.
iūrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (iūs), take oath, swear. (JURY.)
iūs, iūris, n., right, law, justice, authority; legal rights.
iūs iūrandum, iūris iūrandī, n., oath.
iussus, -ūs (iubeō), m., found only in the abl. sing. iussū, by order of.
iūstītia, -ae (iūstus), f., justice, fairness.
iūstus, -a, -um, comp. iūstior, sup. iūstissimus (iūs), adj., just, fair; proper, suitable; regular, legitimate.
iuvenis, -e, adj., young (JUVENILE); as subst. in comp., iūniōrēs, -um, m. pl., younger men, fit for military service.
iuventūs, -tūtis (iuvenis), f., youth; as collective, young men.
iuvō, -āre, iūvī, iūtum, help, aid.
iūxtā (cf. iungō), adv., near by, near. (JUXTAPOSITION.)

K

Kal., abbreviation for Kalendae.
Kalendae, -ārum, f. pl., the Kalends, the first day of the month. See Introd. 140.

L

L., abbreviation for Lūcius, a Roman praenomen or first name.
Laberius, Labēri, m., Laberius, gentile name of Q. Laberius Dūrus, one of Caesar's tribunes.
Labiēnus, -i, m., Labienus, surname of T. Labiēnus, Caesar's ablest lieutenant.
lābor, lābī, lāpsus sum, dep., slip; be disappointed; revolt. (LAPSE, ELAPSE.)
labor, labōris, m., work, toil, LABOR; hardship.
labōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (labor), toil, strive, LABOR; be hard pressed.
labrum, -i, n., lip; edge, rim.
lac, lactis, n., milk. (LACTEAL.)
lactēsō, -sere, -sivi, -sītum, attack, harass, provoke.
lacrīma, -ae, f., tear. (LACRIMOSE.)
lacrīmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (lacrīma), weep.
lacus, -ūs, m., LAKE.
laedō, laedere, laesī, laesum, injure, hurt; break.
laētītia, -ae (laetus), f., joy.
laetus, -a, -um, adj., joyful, glad.
languīdē (languidus), adv., feebly. (Languidly.)
languidus, -a, -um, comp. languidior (languēō), adj., weak, exhausted. (Languid.)
languōr, languōris (languēō), m., weakness, LANGUOR, exhaustion.
lapis, -pidis, m., stone. (Lapidary, dilapidate.)
laqueus, -i, m., noose.
largior, -īrī, -ītus sum (largus), dep., give freely, bestow; bribe.
largiter (largus), adv., abundantly, richly; largiter posse, have great power.
largitō, -tōnis (largior), f., generosity; bribery.
lassitūdō, -tūdinas (lassus), f., weariness, exhaustion. (Lassitude.)
lātē, comp. lātius, sup. lātissimē (lātus), adv., widely, broadly; longē lātēque, far and wide.
latebra, -ae (lateō), f., hiding-place.
lateō, latēre, latui, —, be hidden; escape notice. (Latent.)
lātitūdō, -tūdinas (lātus), f., width, breadth, extent. (Lati-tude.)
Latobrigi, -orum, m. pl., the Latobrigi, a tribe living near the Helvetians.
lātrē, -ōnis, m., robber, brigand.
lātrōcinium, lātrōci'ni (cf. lātrō), n., robbery, brigandage.
lātūrus, fut. part. of ferō.
lātus, -a, -um, comp. lātior, sup. lātissimus, adj., broad, wide, extensive.
latus, -teris, n., side; flank of an army. (Lateral.)
lātus, perf. part. of ferō.
laus, laudis, f., praise, glory. (Laud, laudable.)
lavē, -āre, lávī, lautum and lātum, wash; pass., bathe. (Lave, lavatory.)
laxē, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, extend, open up. (Relax.)
lēctus, part. of legō.
lēgātiō, -tōnis (lēgō, appoint), f., embassy. (Legation.)
lēgātus, -ī, (lēgō, appoint), m., ambassador, envoy; lieutenant. (Legate.) See Introd. 19.
legiō, -ōnis (lēgō, collect), f., legion.
legiōnārius, -a, -um (legiō), adj., of a legion, legionary.
Lemannus, -i, m., Lake Leman-nus, Lake Lemon, the modern Lake Geneva.
Lemnovicēs, -um, m., pl., the Lemanovices, a tribe of central Gaul.
lēnis, -e, adj., gentle, smooth. (Lenient.)
lēnītās, -tātis (lēnis), f., smoothness, gentleness. (Lenity.)
lēniter (lēnis), adv., gently, mildly. (Leniently.)
Lepontīi, -ōrum, m. pl., the Lepontii, a tribe dwelling in the Alps.
lepus, leporis, m., hare.
Leuci, -ōrum, m. pl., the Leuci, a tribe living in central Gaul.
Levaci, -ōrum, m. pl., the Levaci, a tribe of the Belgians.
levis, -e, adj., comp. levior, sup. levissimus, light, slight.
levitās, -tātis (levis), f., lightness; fickleness. (Levity.)
leyō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, lighten, relieve; alleviate.
lēx, lēgis, f., law, decree. (Legal.)
Lexovii, -orum, m. pl., the Lexovii, a tribe dwelling in Gaul near the mouth of the Sequana (Seine).
libenter (libēns), adv., willingly, gladly.
liber, -era, -erum, adj., free, independent; unrestricted. (Liberal.)
liberālītās, -tātis (liberālīs), f., generosity, liberality.
liberāliter (liberālis), adv., generously, liberally, graciously, kindly.
libere, comp. liberius, sup. 
liberrime (liber), adv., freely, 
readily, openly.
liberi, -orum (liber), m. pl., 
children.
liberō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (liber), 
free, set free; release, LIBERATE.
libertās, -tātis (liber), f., freedom, LIBERTY, independence.
librilis, -e (libra, pound), adj., 
weighing a pound.
licentia, -ae (cf. licet), f., 
LICENSE, lawlessness.
liger, Ligeris, m., the Liger, the 
principal river of central Gaul, the modern Loire.
lignātiō, -tiōnis (cf. lignum, 
wood), f., getting wood.
lignātor, -tōris (cf. lignum, wood), 
m., wood-cutter.
lilium, lili, n., LILY, a military 
device, called from the name of the 
flower.
linea, -ae, f., LINE.
Lingones, -num, m. pl., the 
Lingones, a people of central Gaul, neighbors of the Sequani.
lingua, -ae, f., tongue; LANGUAGE.
linum, -ī, n., flax. (LINEN.)
līs, litis, f., strife, damages.
Liscus, -ī, m., Liscus, chief mag-
istrate of the Aeduans.
Litaviccus, -ī, m., Litaviccus, a 
chief of the Aeduans.
littera, -ae, f., letter of the 
alphabet; pl., writing, letter,

despatch. (LITERAL, LITERARY, 
etc.)
litus, litoris, n., shore, coast.
locus, -ī, m., pl., loca, -ōrum, n., 
place; region; part, position, 
rank; opportunity, occasion. 
(Local, LOCALITY, LOCATION.)
locūrus, perf. part. of loquor.
longē, comp. longius, sup. 
longissimē (longus), adv., 
at a distance, far off; far; by 
longinquus, -a, -um, comp. 
longinquor (longus), adj., far off, remote, distant; long con-
tinued.
longitūdō, -tūdinis (longus), f., 
length. (LONGITUDE.)
longurius, longu'ri (longus), m., 
long pole.
longus, -a, -um, comp. longior, 
sup. longissimus, adj., long; 
distant, late; nāvis longa, ship 
of war.
loquor, loqui, locūtus sum, dep., 
speak, say. (LOQUACIOUS.)
lōrica, -ae (lōrum, thong), f., 
coat of mail; fortification. 
See Intro. 23.
Lūcānius, Lūcāni, m., Lucanius, 
name of Q. Lūcānius, a Roman centurion.
Lūcius, Lūci, m., Lucius, Roman 
praenōmen or first name, 
abbreviated L.
Lucterius, Lucte'ri, m., Lucterius, 
name of one of the Cadurci.
Lugotorix, -rigis, m., Lugotorix, 
the name of one of the Britons.
lūna, -ae, f., the moon; as a 
proper name, Luna, a goddess 
of the Germans. (LUNAR.)
Lutetia, -ae, f., Lutetia, a city of 
the Parisii, the modern Paris.
lúx, lúcis, f., light, daylight; 
primá lúce, at dawn. (LUCID.)
lúxuria, -ae, f., luxury, luxurious 
living.

M
M., abbreviation for Márcus, a 
Roman praenomen, or first 
name.
M., abbreviation for mìlle, 1000.
máceria, -ae, f., wall.
máchinátiō, -tiōnis (máchinor), 
f., contrivance, engine. (Má-
chinatión.)
maestus, -a, -um, adj., 
mágis, sup. máximē (mágnus), 
adv., more, rather.
magistrátus, -ús (mágis), m., 
magistracy, office; magis-
traté, official.
mágnificus, -a, -um (mágnus, 
cf. fació), adj., mágnificent, 
splendid.
mágnitúdō, -túdinis (mágnus), 
f., greatness, size; mágnitude, 
importance.
mágnopere (= mágnō opere), 
adv., greatly; urgently, ear-
nestly; thoroughly.
mágnus, -a, -um, comp. máior, 
sup. máximus, adj., great, 
powerful, important; mágnis 
itineribus, by forced marches. 
(Mágnate.)
maiestás, -tātis (maior), f., 
greatness, majesty.
máiōrés, -rum, with or without 
nātū, m. pl., ancestors, fore-
fathers.
málacia, -ae, f., calm at sea.
mále (málus, bad), adv., badly, 
unsuccessfully.
máleficium, málefi'cī (cf. mále 
and fació), m., mischief, harm, 
damage.
málo, málle, máluī, — (cf. 
mágis and volō), prefer.
málus, -a, -um, comp. peior, 
sup. pessimus, adj., bad, ill.
máluī, -ī, m., mast.
mándatum, -ī (mándō), n., 
commission, order, command. 
(Mándate.)
mándō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (cf. 
manus and dō), commit, en-
trust; order, command; sē 
fugae mándare, to take flight.
Mándubīi, -ōrum, m. pl., the 
Mándubīi, a Gallic tribe, 
living near the Aeduans.
Mándubracius, Mándubra'cī, 
m., Mándubracius, a chief of 
the Britons.
máne, adv., in the morning.
mánēō, manēre, mánsī, mán-
sum, remain, stay, continue. 
(Mánsion.)
mánpulāris, -e (mánpulus), 
adj., of a mánpile; as subst., 
mánpularis, -is, m., soldier 
of a mánpile; pl., soldiers of 
the same mánpile. See In-
tron. 46.
mánpulus, -ī (cf. manus and 
pleō, fill), m., a handful of 
straw, the original standard 
of a mánpile; company, mán-
pile. See Introd. 46.
Mánius, Mānli, m., Mānius, 
surname of L. Mānius, a 
Roman proconsul of Gaul.
mánsuē-faciō, -facere, -fēcī, 
-factum, make tame, tame.
mánsuētūdō, -tūdinis (máns-
suētus, tame), adj., kindness, 
genleness.
mánuī, -ūs, f., hand; band of 
troops, force; á mánu, arti-
VOCABULARY

ficially; manūs dare, give up, surrender. (*Manual.*
Marcomanni, -ōrum, m. pl., the Marcomanni, a Germanic people.
Mārcus, -ī, m., Marcus, a Roman praenōmen or first name.
mare, maris, n., the sea.
maritimus, -a,-um (mare), adj., belonging to the sea, on the sea, sea. (*Maritime.*
Marius, Marī, m., Marius, gentile name of C. Marius, who defeated the Cimbri and Teutones in 102 and 101 B.C.
Mārs, Mārtis, m., Mars, the Roman god of war; used figuratively for battle. (*March.*
mās, maris, m., a male, male. (*Masculine.*
matara, -ae, f., javelin, spear.
māter, mātris, f., mother; māter familiae, matron. (*Maternal.*
māteria, -ae (māter), f., material; timber, wood.
māterior, -āri, -ātus sum (māteria), dep., get timber.
Matisco, -onis, m., Matisco, a city of the Aeduans, the modern Mâcon.
mātrimōnium, mātrimōnī (māter), n., marriage, matrimony; in mātrimōnium dūcere, to marry.
Matrona, -ae, m., the Matrona, modern Marne, a tributary of the Sequana (Seine).
mātrūrē, comp. mātrūrius, sup. mātrūrimē (mātrūrus), adv., early.
mātrūrēscō, -ēscere, mātrūri, — (mātrūrus), grow ripe.
mātrūrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (mātrūrus), hasten.
mātrūrus, -a, -um, adj., ripe, early, mature.
maximē (maximus, sup. of magnus), adv., most, especially, very.
maximus, -a, -um (sup. of magnus), adj., very great; quam maximus, the greatest possible. (*Maximum.*
Maximus, -ī, m., Maximus, surname of Q. Fabius Maximus, who conquered the Allobroges and Arverni in 121 B.C.
meōdor, medērī, —, dep., heal, relieve. (*Medicine, remedy.*
mediocris, -cre (medius), adj., middling; ordinary, common; slight, mediocre. *mediocritēr (mediocris), adv., moderately, to a moderate degree. *Mediomatricī, -ōrum, or Mediomatricēs, -um, m. pl., the Mediomatricī or Mediomatrices, a tribe living in central Gaul.
mediterrāneus, -a, -um (medius + terra), adj., inland. (*Mediterranean.*
medius, -a, -um, adj., middle, middle of; medius utriusque, midway between each. (*Medium.*
Meldī, -ōrum, m. pl., the Meldī, a Gallic tribe, living on the Matrona (Marne).
melior, melius, comp. of bonus. (*Ameliorate.*
meius, comp. of bene.
membrum, -ī, n., limb. (*Member.*
meminī, meminisse, def., re-member.
memoria, -ae (memor), f., memory, recollection.
Menapiī, -ōrum, m. pl., the Menapii, a tribe of the Belgians.
mendācium, mendācī (mendāx), n., falsehood, lie. (Mendacious.)
mēns, mentis, f., mind, spirit; thought. (Mental.)
mēnsis, mēnsis, m., month.
mēnsūra, -ae (mētīor), f., measure.
mentīō, -ōnis (cf. meminī), f., mention.
mercātor, -tōris (cf. mercēs), m., trader, merchant.
mercātūra, -ae (cf. mercēs), f., trade.
mercēs, -cēdis, f., pay, hire. (Mercenary.)
Mercurius, Mercu’riī (cf. mercēs), m., Mercury, god of gain and trade, among other attributes.
mereō, merēre, merui, meritum, and mereor, merērī, meritum sum, earn, deserve, merit.
meridiānus, -a, -um (meridiēs), adj., of mid-day, mid-day. (Meridian.)
meridiēs, -ēī (cf. medius and dies), m., mid-day; south.
meritum, -ī (mereō), n., desert, merit; service, favor.
meritus, part. of mereō.
Messāla, -ae, m., Messāla, surname of M. Valerius Messāla, consul in 61 B.C.
mētīor, mētīrī, mēnsus sum, dep., measure, measure out, mete out, distribute.
Metiosēdum, -ī, m., Metiosedum, a town of the Senones, situated on an island in the Sequana (Seine).
Metius, Metī, m., gentile name of M. Metius, who was sent as an envoy to Ariovistus by Caesar.
metō, metere, messui, messum, reap.
metus, -ūs, m., fear, dread.
meus, -a, -um (mē), poss. adj., my, mine.
mīles, militis, m., soldier.
militāris, -e (miles), adj., of soldiers, military; res militāris, military affairs, the art of war.
militia, -ae (miles), f., military service. (Militia.)
mille, indec. adj., one thousand; pl., as subst., mīlia, milium, n., mille passūs, a thousand paces, a mile; duo mīlia passuum, two miles.
Minerva, -ae, f., Minerva, goddess of wisdom and patron of the arts.
minimē, sup. of parum, adv., least; by no means.
minimus, -a, -um, sup. of parvus, adj., smallest, least. (Minimum.)
Minucius, Minu’ci, m., Minucius, gentile name of L. Minucius Basilus, one of Caesar's officers.
minor, minus, comp. of parum, adj., smaller, less. (Minor.)
minuō, -uere, -ui, -ūtum (minus), lessen, diminish; of the tide, fall, ebb.
minus, comp. of parum, adv., less; with force of a negative, not. (Minus.)
mīrō, -āri, -ātus sum, dep., wonder, wonder at; admire.
### Vocabularies

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>mirus, -a, -um (miror), adj., wonderful, marvellous.</td>
<td>(Miracle.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>miser, misera, miserum, comp. miserior, sup. miserrimus, adj., wretched, pitiful; miser-</td>
<td>able.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>misericordia, -ae (cf. miser and cor), f., pity, compassion, mercy.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>miseror, -āri, -ātus sum (miser), dep., bewail. (Commiserate.)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>missus, -us (mitto), m., used only in the abl. sing. missū, sending.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mitissime (mitis, mild), adv., sup., in a very friendly way.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mittō, mittere, misi, missum, send; let go, release; throw, hurl. (Mission.)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mobilis, -e (moveō), adj., changeable, fickle. (Mobile.)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mobilitas, -tatis (mobilis), f., quickness, speed; fickleness. (Mobility.)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mobiliter (mobilis), adv., quickly, easily.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>moderor, -āri, -ātus sum (modus), dep., hold in check, control. (Moderate.)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>modestia, -ae (modestus), f., self-control; obedience, subordination. (Modesty.)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>modo (modus), adv., only, merely; just now, recently; nōn modo . . . sed etiam, not only . . . but also.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>modus, -i, m., measure; kind, manner, way. (Mode, Mood.)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>moenia, -ium, n. pl., walls, fortifications.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mōles, mōlis, f., mass, massive structure; dam, Mole.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>molestē (molestus, troublesome), adv., with difficulty; molestē ferre, be vexed. (Molest.)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mōlimentum, -ī (mōlior), n., effort, exertion.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>molitus, -a, -um (perf. part. of molō), adj., ground.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>molliō, -īre, -īvi, -ītum (mollis), make soft, make easy.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mollis, -e, adj., soft, gentle; weak. (Mollify.)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mollitia, -ae, and mollitiae, -ēi (mollis), f., softness; weakness.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>molō, molere, molui, molitum, grind.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mōmentum, -ī (cf. moveō), n., movement; weight, importance; effect, influence. (Momentum.)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mona, -ae, f., Mona, now the Isle of Man, in the Irish Sea.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>moneō, -ēre, -uī, -ītum, advise, warn; remind, admonish; direct, order.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mōns, montis, m., mountain height, mount; mountain range.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mora, -ae, f., delay.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>morbus, -i (cf. morior), m., disease, sickness. (Morbid.)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Morini, -ōrum, m. pl., the Morini, a tribe of the Belgians.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>morior, mori, mortuus sum, fut. part. moriturus, dep., die. (Mortuary.)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Moritasgus, -i, m., Moritasgus, a chief of the Senones.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>moror, -āri, -ātus sum (mora), delay, stay; check.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mors, mortis, f., death. (Mortal.)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mortuus, perf. part. of morior.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mōs, mōris, m., custom; usage, habit; pl., customs; manners, character.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mosa, -ae, m., the Mosa, modern Meuse,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
motus, -us (moveō), m., motion, movement; uprising, tumult.
moveō, movēre, mōvī, mōtum, move; influence.
mulier, -ieris, f., woman.
mūliō, -onis (mūlus), m., mule-driver.
multītūdō, -tūdinis (multus), f., large number, multitude; populace.
multō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (multa, fine), fine, multct, punish.
multum (multus), adv., much.
multus, -a, -um, comp. pluris, sup. plurimus, adj., much; pl., many. multō diē, late in the day.
mūlus, -ī, m., mule.
Mūnātius, Mūnāti, m., Munatius, gentile name of L. Munatius Plancus, one of Caesar’s lieutenants.
mundus, -i, m., the world, universe. (Mundane.)
mūnimentum, -i (mūniō), n., fortification, defense.
mūniō, -ire, -īvi, -ītum (moenia), fortify, protect, strengthen; of a road, make, build.
mūniōtūs, -onis (mūniō), f., fortifying; fortification, works, defenses. (Munitions.)
mūnitus, perf. part. of mūniō.
mūnus, mūneris, n., duty, service; gift, present. (Remuneration.)
mūrālīs, -e (mūrus), adj., of a wall, wall. (Mural.)
mūrus, -ī, m., wall.
mūsculus, -ī (dim. of mūs), m., little mouse; shed for protecting soldiers, mantlet.
mūtilus, -a, -um, adj., mutilated; lacking.
nactus, perf. part. of nanciscor.
nam, conj., for; as enclitic with interrogative words, possible, in the world; as quisnam manibus, with what possible strength; quisnam, who in the world.
Nammeius, Nammēi, m., Namcnius, name of a Helvetian envoy.
Namnetēs, -um, m. pl., the Namnetes, a Gallic tribe.
nam-que, conj., and . . . for, for.
nanciscor, nancisci, nactus and nactus sum, dep., find, obtain.
Nantuātēs, -um, m. pl., the Nantuates, a Gallic tribe living among the Alps.
Narbō, Narbōnis, m., Narbo, chief city of the Roman Province of Gaul, modern Narbonne.
nāscor, nāscī, nātus sum, dep., be born; arise, be found. (Nascent.)
Nasua, -ae, m., Nasua, a chief of the Suebi.
nātālis, -e (nātus), adj., of birth, natal; diēs nātālis, birthday.
nātiō, -onis (nāscor), f., birth; people, tribe, nation.
nātīvus, -a, -um (nātus), adj., natural, native.
nātūra, -ae (nāscor), f., nature, character; current of a river.
nātus, -ūs (nāscor), m. (found only in the abl. sing. nātū), birth; maiōrēs nātū, older by birth, older; elders, ancestors.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>VOCABULARY</strong></th>
<th>61</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>nauta, -ae (cf. nāvis), m., sailor.</td>
<td>necessitās, -tātis (necesse), f., necessity, need.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nauticus, -a, -um (nauta), adj., Nautical, naval.</td>
<td>necessitūdō, -tūdinis (necesse), f., relationship, friendship.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nāvālis, -e (nāvis), adj., naval, of the sea, sea.</td>
<td>nec-ne, conj., or not.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nāvicula, -ae (dim. of nāvis), f., small boat, skiff.</td>
<td>necō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, kill, put to death.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nāvigātio, -onis (nāvigō), f., sailing, navigation; voyage.</td>
<td>nēcubi (nē + cubi, old form of ubi), adv., that nowhere, lest anywhere.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nāvigium, nāvi'gi, (nāvigō), n., vessel, boat, ship.</td>
<td>nefārius, -a, -um (nefās), adj., wicked, abominable, nefarious.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nāvigō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (nāvis + agō), sail. (Navigate.)</td>
<td>nefās (ne- + fās), indecl. n., wrong in the sight of the gods, unrighteous.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nāvis, nāvis, f., ship, vessel; nāvis longa, ship of war, warship; nāvis onerāria, ship of burden, transport.</td>
<td>neglegō, -legere, -lēxi, -lēctum (nec + legō), neglect, disregard, overlook; omit.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nāvō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum ((g)nāvus, active), do with energy; operam nāvāre, do one’s best, distinguish oneself.</td>
<td>negō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, say no, say... not. (Negative.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nē, adv., not; nē... quidem, not... even.</td>
<td>negotior, -āri, -ātus sum (negōtium), dep., do business, be busy. (Negotiate.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nē, conj., that... not, lest; after words of fearing, lest, that; nē quis, lest any one, that no one.</td>
<td>negotium, negōtī (nec + őtium), n., business, affair, matter; trouble, difficulty; negotium dare, commission, command, direct.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ne, inter. adv., whether; often translated merely by the interrogative form of the sentence.</td>
<td>Nemētēs, -um, m. pl., the Nemetes, a Germanic tribe, living west of the Rhine.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ne- (used only in compound words), not.</td>
<td>nēmō, —, dat., nēmini (nē + hemō, an old form of homō), m., no one, nobody. For the gen. and abl., nōnus and nōlō are commonly used.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nec, conj., see neque. In composition = nōn.</td>
<td>nē-quāquam, adv., by no means.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>necessāriō (necessārius), 'adv., necessarily, of necessity.</td>
<td>ne-que, or nec, adv., and... not, nor; neque... neque, neither... nor.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>necessārius, -a, -um (necesse), adj., necessary; pressing, urgent; as subst., necessarius, necessāri, m., relative, kinsman, connection, friend.</td>
<td>nē-quīquam, adv., in vain, to no purpose; without reason.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>necesse (ne, cf. cēdō), adj., indecl., necessary, inevitable.</td>
<td>Nervicus, -a, -um (Nervius), adj., of the Nervii, with the Nervii.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Nervius, Nervi, m., a Nervian, one of the Nervii, a tribe of the Belgians; pl., the Nervii.
nervus, -i, m., muscle, sinew; pl., power, strength. (Nerve.)
neu, see nève.
neuter, -tra, -trum, gen. neutrius (nē + uter), pron. adj., neither of two. (Neuter, Neutral.)
nē-ve, or neu, conj., and not, and that not, nor.
ex, necis, f., death by violence.
nihil (nihilum), n., indecl., nothing; adverbially, in no respect, not at all, not. (An-Nihilate.)
nihilā, see nihilum.
nihilum, -i (ne-, + hilum, trißle), m., nothing; nihilō minus, none the less.
nimius, -a, -um (nimis), adj., excessive, too great.
nisi (ne-+ si), conj., if not, unless, except.
Nitiobroges, -um, m. pl., the Nitiobroges, a tribe in Aquitania.
nitor, niti, nīxus and nīsus sum, dep., strive, endeavor; rely on.
nix, nivis, f., snow.
nōbilis, -e, comp. nōbilior, sup. nōbilissimus (nōscō), adj., well known, eminent, noble; as subst., nōbilēs, -iun, m. pl., the nobles, the nobility.
nōbilitās, -tātis (nōbilis), f., fame, eminence; collectively the nobles, the nobility.
nocēns, -ntis (part. of noceō), adj., guilty.
noceō, nocēre, nociū, —, fut. part., nocītūrōs, harm, injure, damage. (Innocent.)
noctū (cf. nox), adv., by night.
nocēntus, -a, -um (nox), adj., of the night; by night, at night. (Nocturnal.)
nōdus, -i, m., node, the swelling about the joints of an animal.
nōlā, nōlē, nōlui, — (ne- + volō), be unwilling.
nōmen, nōminis (nōscō), n., name, title; renown; suō nōmine, on his own account. (Nominal.)
nōminātim (nōmen), adv., by name.
nōminō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (nōmen), name; mention. (Nominate.)
nōn, adv., no, not.
nōnāgintā, num. adj., indecl., ninety. (Nonagenarian.)
nōn-dum, adv., not yet.
nōn nihil, or nōnnihil, adv., somewhat.
nōn nūllus, or nōnnūllus, -a, -um, adj., some, a few.
nōn numquam or nōnnumquam, adv., sometimes, often.
nōnus, -a, -um (novem), adj., ninth.
Nōreia, -ae, f., Noreia, a town of Noricum.
Nōricus, -i, m., of the Noricans, of Noricum, a country between the Danube River and the Alps; Norican; as subst., Nōrica, -ae, f., a Norican woman.
nōs, pl. of ego, we, us.
nōscō, nōscere, nōvī, nōtum, become acquainted with; in the perf. system, know.
nōsmet, an emphatic form for nōs, we-ourselves, even us.
no-ter, -tra, -trum (nōs), pron. adj., our; as subst., nostri, -ōrum, m. pl., our men, our soldiers. (Nostrum.)
nŏtus, -a, -um, comp. nŏtior, sup. nŏtissimus (part. of nŏscō), adj., known, well known, familiar; noted.
novem, num. indecl., nine.
Noviodūnum, -ī, n., Noviodum num, a city in the country of the Suessiones, on the river Axona (modern Aisne); later called Augusta Suessionum, whence the modern name Soissons. Also the name of a town of the Aeduans, and of one of the Bituriges.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>nŏtus</td>
<td>known, well known, familiar; noted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>novem</td>
<td>nine.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Noviodūnum</td>
<td>a city in the country of the Suessiones, on the river Axona (modern Aisne); later called Augusta Suessionum, whence the modern name Soissons. Also the name of a town of the Aeduans, and of one of the Bituriges.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

numerus, -ī, m., number, amount, quantity; account, consideration, importance; ob-sidum numerō, as hostages. (Numerals, numerous.)

Numidae, -ārum, m. pl., the Numidians, a people of northern Africa, used by the Romans as auxiliary troops.

nummus, -ī, m., coin; money.

numquam (ne- + umquam), adv., never.
nunc, adv., now.
nūntiō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (nūntius), announce, report; order.
nūntius, nūntī (cf. novus), m., messenger; message, announcement.
nūper, adv., lately, recently.
nūsquam (ne- + úsquam), adv., nowhere.
nūtus, -ūs (nuō, nod), m., nod; command; ad nūtum, at a nod, promptly, instantly.
obitus, -ús (obeó), m., de-
struction, death. (OBI-
TURARY.)
oblātus, perf. part. of offeró.
oblique (obliquus), adv., OB-
LIQUELY, slanting.
obliquus, -a, -um, adj., OBLI-
QUE.
ob-liviscor, -livisci, -litus sum,
dep., forget. (OBLIVI-
on.)
obscurō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (ob +
sacror), beseech, implore.
obsequentia, -ae (obsequens),
f., compliance.
observō, -āre, -avi, -atum,
watch, observe, heed.
ob-servō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum,
watch, observe, heed.
obses, obsidis (obsideō), m.
or f., hostage.
obsessiō, -onis (obsideō), f.,
blockade, siege. (OBSESS-
on.)
obsessus, perf. part. of obsideō.
obsideō, -sidēre, -sēdi, -sessum
(ob + sedēō), besiege, beset,
occupy.
obsideō, -onis (obsideō), f.,
siege, blockade; oppression.
ob-signō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, seal.
ob-sistō, -sistere, -stīti, —,
resist.
obstinātē (obstinātus), adv.,
stubbornly, OBSTINATELY.
obstrictus, perf. part. of ob-
stringō.
ob-stringō, -stringere, -strīnxi,
-strīctum, bind, lay under
obligation.
ob-struō, -struere, -struxī, -struc-
tum, obstruct, block, blockade.
ob-temperō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum,
obey.
ob-testor, -ārī, -ātus sum, dep.,
entreat, implore.
obtineō, -tīnere, -tīnui, -tentum
(ob + teneō), hold, occupy;
secure, obtain.
ob-veniō, -venīre, -venī, -ven-
tum, fall in with, meet.

ob-viam, adv., in the way of,
to meet. (OBVIOUS.)
occāsiō, -onis (occidō), f., op-
portunity, OCCASION.
occāsus, -ūs (occidō), falling,
setting; occāsus sōlis, sunset;
the west.
occidēns, -ntis (part. of occidō),
adj., with sōl, the setting sun,
the west. (OCCIDENTAL.)
occidō, -cidere, -cīdī, —, fut.
part. occāsurus (ob + cadō),
fall, perish.
occidō, -cidere, -cīdī, -cīsum
(ob + caedo), kill, slay.
occisus, perf. part. of occidō.
occultātiō, -onis (occultō), f.,
concealment.
occultō (occultus), adv., secretly.
occultō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (in-
tens. of occultō), conceal,
hide.
occultus, -a, -um (part. of
occultō), adj., concealed, hid-
den, secret; as subst., oc-
cultum, -ī, n., concealment,
ambush. (OCCULT.)
occupātiō, -onis (occupō), f.,
occupation, employment; pl.,
business.
occupō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (ob,
cf. capiō), seize, take posses-
sion of; occupy; engage,
occupy one’s attention.
occurre, -currere, -currī or -cu-
currī, —, fut. part. occurrēs-
sus (ob + currō), run against,
run to meet, meet, encounter; fall
in with, find; of the mind,
come to, OCCUR.
Ōceanus, -ī, m., the OCeAN.
Ocelum, -ī, n., Ocelum, a town
of the Graioeeli.
 octāvus, -a, -um (octō), num.
adj., eighth. (OCTAVE.)
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Definition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>octingenti</td>
<td>-ae, -a (octō + centum), num. adj., eight hundred.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>octōdecim</td>
<td>(octō + decem), num. indecl. num. adj., eighteen.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Octodūrōs</td>
<td>-i, m., Octodurus, a town of the Veragri, a people living near the Rhone.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>octōgēni</td>
<td>-ae, -a (octō), distr. num. adj., eighty apiece, eighty at a time. (Octogenarian.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Octōgintā</td>
<td>(octō), indecl. num. adj., eighty.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Octōnī</td>
<td>-ae, -a (octō), distr. num. adj., eight apiece, eight at a time.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>oculus</td>
<td>-i, m., eye. (Oculist.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>offendō</td>
<td>-fendere, -fendi, -fensus (ob + fendō), strike against, injure; offend, wound.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ollovičō</td>
<td>Olloviconis, m., Ollovico, a king of the Nitioroges.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>omitto</td>
<td>-mittere, -misī, -missum (ob + mittō), let go, pass by, neglect. (Omit, omission.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>omnipōnō</td>
<td>-ponente, -pōsūi, -pōsum (ob + pōnō), place opposite, oppose.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>omnǐnō</td>
<td>(omnis), adv., entirely, wholly, in all; with negatives, at all.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>omnīs</td>
<td>omne, adj., all, the whole of; every; as subst., omnēs, -ium, m. pl., all men; omnia, -ium, n. pl., all things, everything. (Omnipresent, Omniscient, etc.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>onerāriōs</td>
<td>-a, -um (onus), adj., of burden; nāvis onerāria, ship of burden, transport.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>onerō</td>
<td>-āre, -āvi, -ātum (onus), load, burden.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>onus</td>
<td>oneris, n., burden, load, weight. (Onerous.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>opera</td>
<td>-ae (opus), f., effort, pains; service, help, work; dare operam, take pains. (Opera.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>opinio</td>
<td>-onis (opinor), f., notion, opinion; reputation, impression; expectation.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>oppidānus</td>
<td>-a, -um (oppidum), adj., of a town; as subst., oppidānī, -orum, m. pl., townspeople, people of the town.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>oppidum</td>
<td>-i, n., walled town, town.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>oppōnē</td>
<td>(Oppress.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>opportūnē</td>
<td>(opportūnus), adv., opportunely, advantageously.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>opportūnītas</td>
<td>-tātis (opportūnus), f., favorableness, opportunity, advantage.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>opportūnūs</td>
<td>-a, -um, comp. opportūnior, sup. opportūnissimus, adj., favorable, advantageous, opportune.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>opprimū</td>
<td>(Oppress.)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
VOCABULARY

oppugnatiō, -ōnis (oppugnō), f., storming, attack, siege.

oppugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (ob + pugnō), attack, assault; besiege.

(opps), opis (nom. and dat. sing. not in use), f., help, assistance; pl., resources, power. (Opulence.)

optātus, -a, -um (part. of optō), adj., desired; welcome.

optimus, sup. of bene, well. (Optimist.)

opus, operis, n., work; works, structure, fortification.

opus (ops), n. (used only in the nom. and acc.), necessity, need; opus est, there is need, it is necessary.

ōra, -ae, f., shore, coast.

ōrātiō, -onis (ōrō), f., speech, address, oration; words, plea.

ōrātor, -ōris (ōrō), m., speaker; messenger, envoy. (Orator.)

orbis, orbis, m., circle; orbis terrārum, the world. (Orb, orbit.)

Orcynia, -ae, f., another form for Hercynia, the name of a great forest in southern Germany.

ōrdō, ārdinis, m., row, rank; order, arrangement.

Orgetorix, -rīgis, m., Orgetorix, a chief of the Helvetians.

oriēns, -ntis (part. of orior), adj., rising; oriēns sōl, the rising sun, the east. (orient, oriental.)

orior, orīrī, orītus sum, dep., rise; begin, spring from, be descended from.

ōrnamēntum, -ī (ōrnō), n., decoration, ornament, honor.

ōrnātus, -a, -um, comp. ōrnātior, sup. ōrnātissimus (part. of ōrnō), adj., equipped.

ōrnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, furnish, equip; adorn, honor.

ōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (ōs, mouth), beg, entreat.

ortus, perf. part. of orior.

ortus, -ūs (orior), m., rising.

ōs, ōris, n., mouth; face. (Oral.)

Osismi, -ōrum, m. pl., the Osismi, a tribe living in the northwestern part of Gaul.

ostendō, -tendere, -tendi, -ten tum (obs, from ob + tendō), show; point out, declare.

ostentātiō, -onis (ostentō), f., display, ostentation; pride.

ostentō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (intens. of ostendō), display.

ōtium, ōtī, n., repose, quiet, leisure.

ōvum, -ī, n., egg. (Oval.)

P.

P., abbreviation for Públius, a Roman praenōmen, or first name.

pābulātiō, -onis (pābulor), f., foraging.

pābulātor, -tōris (pābulor), m., forager.

pābulor, -āri, -ātus sum (pābulum), obtain fodder, forage.

pābulum, -ī, n., fodder.

pācātus, -a, -um (part. of pācō), adj., subdued, peaceful.

pācō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (pāx), pacify, subdue.

pactum, -ī (paciscor), n., agreement, compact; manner, way.

Padus, -ī, m., the Padus, modern Po, a river in northern Italy.
VOCABULARY

Paemānī, -orum, m. pl., the Paemānī, a tribe of the Belgae.

paene, adv., almost, nearly. (Penninsular.)

paenitet, paenitère, paenituit, impers., it causes regret; with an accusative, eōs paenitet, they regret. (Penitent, penitentiary.)

pāgus, -i, m., district, canton. (Pagan.)

palam, adv., openly.

palma, -ae, f., palm of the hand, hand.

palūs, palūdis, f., swamp, marsh. palūster, -tris, -tre (palūs), adj., marshy, swampy.

pandō, pandere, pandi, passum, spread, stretch out; passis manibus, ifith outstretched hands. (Expand.)

par, pans, adj., equal, like, a match for. (Par.)

paratus, -a, -um, impers. paratior, sup. paratissimus (part. of parō), adj., ready, prepared, equipped; comp. better prepared.

parce (parcus), adv., sparingly.

parcō, parcere, peperci and parsi, -), fut. part. parsūrus, spare; use sparingly. (Parsimony.)

parentō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (parentēns), offer sacrifice in honor of the dead, avenge.

pāreō, pārere, pārui, - fut. part. pāritūrus, obey; be subject.

parīō, parere, peperī, partum, bring forth; win, gain.

Parisii, -orum, m. pl., the Parisii, a tribe living in Gaul on the river Sēquana (Seine). The name Paris is from Lutetia Parisiōrum, their chief city.

parō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, prepare, get ready, get ready for; gain, purchase.

pars, partis, f., part, share; division, quarter, region; side, direction; ad utramque partem, at each end, at both ends.

partim (acc. of pars), adv., partly, in part; partim... partim, some... others.

partior, partirī, partitus sum (pars), dep., divide, part, share.

partus, perf. part. of pariō.

parum (cf. parvus), adv., too little; comp. minus, less, not; sup. minimē, least, very little; by no means, not at all.

parvulus, -a, -um (dimin. of parvus), adj., very small; young; unimportant, trifling.

parvus, -a, -um, comp. minor, sup. minimus, adj., small; unimportant.

passim (passus, part. of pandō), adv., in all directions.

passus, -ūs (pandō), m., pace, double step; mille passūs, pl., mília passuum, a mile.

passus, perf. part. of pandō, and of patior.

patefacio, -facere, -feci, -factum, pass. patefiō, -fieri, -factus sum (pateō + faciō), open, lay open.

pātēns, -ntis (part. of pateō), adj., open. (Patent.)

pateō, patēre, patui, - be open; extend.

pater, patris, m., father; pl. forefathers, ancestors. (Paternal.)
patior, patī, passus sum, dep., suffer, endure; allow, permil.
(Passive, patient.)
patrius, -a, -um (pater), adj., of a father, father's; of one's ancestors.
patronus, -i (pater), m., patron, protector.
patrius, -a, -um
(pater), adj., of one's ancestors.
patronus, -i
(pater), m., patron, protector.
patrius, -i (pater), m., father's brother, uncle.

paucitas, -tatis (paucus), f., fewness, small number. (Paucity.)
paucus, -a, -um, adj., rarely used in the singular, few.
paulātīm (paulum), adv., little by little, gradually.
paulus, -a, -um, adj., a little, somewhat.
palus (abl. of paulus, little), adv., by a little, a little.
paulum (paulus, little), adv., a very little, slightly.
paulum (acc. of paulus, little), adv., a little, somewhat.
pax, pācis, f., peace.
peccātus, -tatis (paucus), f., fewness, small number. (Paucity.)
peccātus, -tatis (paucus), f., fewness, small number. (Paucity.)
pecus, -a, -um, adj., rare in the singular, few.
paulātīm (paulum), adv., little by little, gradually.

paucitas, -tatis (paucus), f., fewness, small number. (Paucity.)
paucus, -a, -um, adj., rare in the singular, few.

paucus, -a, -um, adj., rarely used in the singular, few.

paucitas, -tatis (paucus), f., fewness, small number. (Paucity.)
peccātus, -tatis (paucus), f., fewness, small number. (Paucity.)
pecus, -a, -um, adj., rare in the singular, few.

paucitas, -tatis (paucus), f., fewness, small number. (Paucity.)
peccātus, -tatis (paucus), f., fewness, small number. (Paucity.)
pecus, -a, -um, adj., rare in the singular, few.

paucitas, -tatis (paucus), f., fewness, small number. (Paucity.)
peccātus, -tatis (paucus), f., fewness, small number. (Paucity.)
pecus, -a, -um, adj., rare in the singular, few.

paucitas, -tatis (paucus), f., fewness, small number. (Paucity.)
peccātus, -tatis (paucus), f., fewness, small number. (Paucity.)
pecus, -a, -um, adj., rare in the singular, few.

paucitas, -tatis (paucus), f., fewness, small number. (Paucity.)
peccātus, -tatis (paucus), f., fewness, small number. (Paucity.)
pecus, -a, -um, adj., rare in the singular, few.

paucitas, -tatis (paucus), f., fewness, small number. (Paucity.)
peccātus, -tatis (paucus), f., fewness, small number. (Paucity.)
pecus, -a, -um, adj., rare in the singular, few.

paucitas, -tatis (paucus), f., fewness, small number. (Paucity.)
peccātus, -tatis (paucus), f., fewness, small number. (Paucity.)
pecus, -a, -um, adj., rare in the singular, few.

paucitas, -tatis (paucus), f., fewness, small number. (Paucity.)
peccātus, -tatis (paucus), f., fewness, small number. (Paucity.)
pecus, -a, -um, adj., rare in the singular, few.

paucitas, -tatis (paucus), f., fewness, small number. (Paucity.)
peccātus, -tatis (paucus), f., fewness, small number. (Paucity.)
pecus, -a, -um, adj., rare in the singular, few.

paucitas, -tatis (paucus), f., fewness, small number. (Paucity.)
peccātus, -tatis (paucus), f., fewness, small number. (Paucity.)
pecus, -a, -um, adj., rare in the singular, few.

paucitas, -tatis (paucus), f., fewness, small number. (Paucity.)
peccātus, -tatis (paucus), f., fewness, small number. (Paucity.)
pecus, -a, -um, adj., rare in the singular, few.

paucitas, -tatis (paucus), f., fewness, small number. (Paucity.)
peccātus, -tatis (paucus), f., fewness, small number. (Paucity.)
pecus, -a, -um, adj., rare in the singular, few.
per-ducō, -ducere, -duxī, -ductum, lead through, conduct, convey; construct, extend, prolong.

perendinus, -a, -um (perendiē, day after to-morrow), adj., of the day after to-morrow; perendinō diē, on the day after to-morrow.

per-eō, perire, peri!, fut. part., periturus, perish, die.

per-equito, -are, -avi, -atum, ride through; ride about.

per-facilis, -e, adj., very easy.

perfectus, perf. part, of perficio.

per-fero, -ferre, -tuli, -latum, carry, bring; report; endure, bear, suffer; pass., arrive at, reach.

perfringo, -fringere, -fregi, -fractum (per + frango), break through.

perfuga, -ae (perfugiō), m., deserter.

per-fugī, -fugere, -fugi, —, flee for refuge, desert.

perfugium, perfūgī (perfugiō), n., place of refuge.

pergō, pergere, perrēxī, pertectum (per + regō, direct), proceed, advance.

periclitor, -āri, -ātus sum (perfectum), dep., make trial; try, make trial of; be in danger.

periculōsus, -a, -um (periculum), adj., dangerous, perilous.

periculum, -ī (perior, try), n., trial, test; danger, risk, peril.

peritus, -a, -um, comp. perītor, sup. perītissimus, adj., experienced, skilled; familiar with.

perlātus, perf. part. of perferō.

perlēctus, perf. part. of perlegō.

per-legō, -legere, -lēgi, -lēctum, read through.

per-luō, -luere, -lūi, -lūtum, wash; in the pass., bathe.

per-magnus, -a, -um, adj., very great, very large.

per-manceō, -manere, -mānsī, -mānsum, remain, continue; abide by. (Permanent.)

per-misceō, -miscere, -miscui, -mixtum, mix thoroughly, mingle.

per-mittō, -mittere, -miṣī, -miṣsum, intrust, commit; permit, allow.

permīxτus, perf. part. of permiscēō.

permūtus, perf. part. of permoveō.

per-moveō, -movēre, -mōvi, -mōtum, move deeply, influence; excite, arouse; alarm.

per-mulceō, -mulcēre, -mulsī, -mulsum, soothe, calm.

permulsus, perf. part. of permulceō.

perniciēs, perniciēi (per, cf. nex), f., destruction, ruin.

per-pauci, -ae, -a, adj., pl., very few.

perpendiculum, -ī (perpendō), n., plumb-line; ad perpendicularum, straight down, perpendicularly.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>perpetior, -peti, -pessus sum (per + patior), dep., bear to the end, bear patiently, endure.</td>
<td>perpertué (perpetuus), adv., permanently, PERPETUALLY.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>perpetuus, -a, -um (per + petō), adj., continuous, uninterrupted, PERPETUAL; whole, unbroken; in perpetuum, forever.</td>
<td>perpetuus, -a, -um (per + peto), adj., continuous, uninterrupted, PERPETUAL; whole, unbroken; in perpetuum, forever.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>perquirō, -quirere, -quisivi, -quisitum (per + quaerō), inquire about carefully.</td>
<td>per-rumpo, -rumpere, -rupi, -ruptum, break, break through.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>per-scribo, -scribere, -scripti, -scriptum, write, describe, report.</td>
<td>per-sequir, -sequi, -secutus sum, dep., follow up, pursue; attack. (PERSECUTE.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>persequor, -sequi, -secutus sum, dep., follow up, pursue; attack. (PERSECUTE.)</td>
<td>per-solvō, -solvere, -solvi, -solvutum, pay in full, pay.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>perspiciō, -spicere, -spexi, -spectum (per + speciō, look), see through; see, observe, notice; learn, become acquainted with, understand. (PERSPICACITY, PERSPECTIVE.)</td>
<td>petitus, perf. part. of petō.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>per-stō, -stare, -stiti, —, fut. part. perstātūrus, stand firm, persist.</td>
<td>petō, petere, petīvi, petītum, seek, try to reach; attack; beg, ask, request. (COMPETE.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>per-suādeo, -suādere, -suāsi, -suāsum, Persuade, induce.</td>
<td>Petrocorii, -orum, m. pl., the Petrocorii, a tribe in central Gaul, living north of the Garumna (Garonne).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>per-terreō, -terrēre, -terruī, -terrītum, TERRIFY, greatly frighten.</td>
<td>Petronius, Petroni, m., Petronius, name of M. Petronius, a Roman centurion.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>perterritus, perf. part. of per-terreō.</td>
<td>Petrosidius, PetrosidI, m., Petrosidius, name of L. Petrosidius, one of Caesar’s standard-bearers.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pertinācia, -ae (pertināx, stub-born), f., stubbornness, PERTINACITY.</td>
<td>phalanx, -angis, f., PHALANX, a body of troops.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pertineō, -tinēre, -tinui, — (per + teneō), extend, stretch; tend, tend to; PERTAIN to, concern.</td>
<td>Pictonēs, -um, m. pl., the PICTONES, a Gallic people living on the Atlantic coast, south of the Liger (Loire).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>perturbātiō, -onis (perturbā), f., disturbance, commotion. (PERTURBATION.)</td>
<td>pietās, -tātis (pius), f., loyalty; patriotism. (PIETY.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>per-turbō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, throw into confusion, disturb, agitate. (PERTURB.)</td>
<td>pilum, -i, n., javelin, pike.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>per-vagor, -āri, -ātus sum, dep., roam about, rove.</td>
<td>pilus, -i (pilum), m., maniple; primus pilus, a maniple of the triarii; primi pilii centuriō, or primus pilus, chief centurion.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
pinna, -ae, f., feather; in military language, battlement.

Pirustae, -arum, m. pl., the Pirustae, a tribe of Illyria.

piscis, piscis, m., fish. (Piscatorial.)

Pisō, -onis, m., Piso, surname of (1) L. Calpurnius Pisō Caesoninus, consul in 112 B.C.; (2) L. Calpurnius Piso, consul in 58 B.C., father-in-law of Caesar; (3) M. Pupius Piso Calpurnianus, consul in 61 B.C.; (4) Piso, an Aquitanian.

pix, picis, f., PITCH.

placēō, placère, placuī, placitum, please; used in Caesar only impersonally; placet, it please; it is determined.

placidē (placidus), adv., quietly.

plācō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, placate, appease.

Plancus, -ī, m., Plancus, surname of L. Munatius Plancus, one of Caesar’s lieutenants.

plānē (plānus), adv., plainly, clearly.

plānītīs, -ēī (plānus), f., level ground, plain.

plānus, -a, -um, comp. plānior, sup. plānissimus, adj., level, flat. (Plain.)

plēbs, plēbis, or plēbēs, plēbei, f., common people, populace. (Plebian.)

plēnē (plēnus), adv., fully, entirely.

plēnus, -a, -um, comp. plēnior, sup. plēnissimus, adj., full.

plērūmque (plērusque), adv., generally, for the most part, as a rule.

plērusque, -raque, -rumque (plērus, very many), adj., commonly pl., very many, most.

Pleumoxii, -orum, m. pl., the Pleumoxii, a tribe of the Belgians.

plumbum, -i, n., lead; plumbum album, tin. (Plumber.)

plūrimus, sup. of multus.

plūrimum (cf. multus), adv., sup., very much; plūrimum posse, to have very great power, be the most powerful.

plūs, plūris, comp. of multus. (Plus.)

pluteus, -i, m., shed for protecting advancing besiegers; breastwork.

pōculum, -i, n., drinking-cup, cup.

poena, -ae, f., punishment, penalty.

pollex, -licis, m., thumb; digitus pollex, thumb.

polliceor, -licērī, -licitus sum (por=prō + liceor, offer), dep., promise, offer.

pollicitātiō, -onis (pollicitator intens. of polliceor), f., promise, offer.

pollicitus, perf. part. of polliceor.

Pompeius, Pompei, m., Pompeius, surname of C. Pompeius Magnus, Pompey the Great, and of C. Pompeius, an interpreter.

pondus, ponderis (cf. pendō), n., weight. (Ponderous.)

pōnō, pōnere, posuī, positum, place, set, put; lay down, lay aside; pass., be situated, lie; depend on. (Position.)

pōns, pontis, m., bridge. (Pontoon.)
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>VOCABULARY</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>populatio</strong>, -onis (populor), f., plundering, pillaging. (Depopulation.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>populor</strong>, -ari, -atus sum, dep., lay waste, ravage, devastate, (Depopulate.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>populus</strong>, -i, m., people, tribe, nation. (Populace.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>porrigo</strong>, -rigere, -rejd, -rectum, (por = prō + regō), stretch out, extend.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>porta</strong>, -ae, f., gate. (Portal.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>porto</strong>, -are, -avi, -atum, carry, bring. (Porter.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>portorium</strong>, portori, n., toll, customs duty.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>portus</strong>, -us, m., harbor, port.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>posco</strong>, poscere, poposci, —, demand.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>positus</strong>, perf. part. of pōnō.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>possessio</strong>, -onis (possideō), f., possession, pl., possessions, lands, property.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>possideō</strong>, -sidère, -sēdī, -sessum (por = prō + sedeō), hold, possess, occupy.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>possidō</strong>, -sidere, -sēdī, -sessum (por = prō + sidō), take possession of.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>possum</strong>, posse, potui, —, be able, can; have influence, be powerful; plurimum posse, be most powerful, have very great power; minimum posse, have very little power; etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>post</strong>, adv. and prep. with acc., after, afterwards; behind; since. (Post-mortem, etc.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>post-eā</strong>, adv., afterwards.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>postea-quam</strong>, conj., after.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>posterus</strong>, -a, -um (post), adj., nom. sing., not in use, following; as subst., posterī, -ūrum, m. pl., descendants.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>post-pōnō</strong>, -pōnere, -posuī, -positum, place after, consider less valuable. (Postpone.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>postpositus</strong>, perf. part. of postpōnō.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>post-quam</strong>, conj., after; often written post quam.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>postremō</strong> (postremus), adv., at last, finally.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>postridēi</strong> (locative of posterus diēs), adv., the following day; postridēi eius diēi, the following day.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>postulātum</strong>, -ī (postulō), n., demand.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>postulō</strong>, -are, -avi, -atum, demand, request. (Expostulate.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>potens</strong>, -ntis, comp. potentior, sup. potentissimus (possum), adj., powerful. (Potent.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>potentātus</strong>, -ūs (potēns), m., chief power. (Potentate.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>potentia</strong>, -ae (potēns), f., power, influence. (Potency.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>potestās</strong>, -tātis (potis, able), f., power, opportunity; permission, privilege.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>potior</strong>, potiri, potitus sum (potis, able), dep., get possession of, secure.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>potissimum</strong>, sup. of potius.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>potius</strong> (potis, able), adv., comp., rather; sup. potissimum, especially.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>prae</strong>, prep. with abl., in comparison with; on account of. In composition, before; very.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>prae-acutus</strong>, -a, -um, adj., sharpened at the end, pointed; very sharp.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| **praebeō**, -bere, -buī, -bitum (prae + habeō), furnish, afford, give; show, cause, occasion.
praé-caveō, -cavēre, -cāvi, -cāutum, take precautions; mag-nopere praecavēre, take great precautions.
praé-cēdō, -cēdere, -cessi, -cessum, go before, precede; surpass, excel.
praéceps, -cipitis (praé+caput), adj., headlong; precipitous.
praecipio, -cipere, -cepi, -ceptum (praé+capio), anticipate; order, command. (Precept, preceptor.)
praecipito, -are, -avi, -atum (praecipuus), throw headlong, PRECIPITATE.
praecipue (praecipuus), adv., especially.
praecipuus, -a, -um (praecipio), adj., special, especial.
praemium, praemī (praem + emo), n., reward, honor. (Premium.)
praecipue, -metuere, —, —, apprehend, be anxious.
praemittō, -mittere, -missi, -missum, send before, send ahead. (Premise.)
praecipue, -are, -āvi, -ātum, seize beforehand, PREOCCUPY.
praecipue, -are, -āvi, -ātum, prefer.
praeparō, -are, -āvi, -ātum, get ready, PREPARE.
praeruptus, -a, -um (part. of praerumpō), adj., steep.
praesens, -ntis (praesum), adj., present, in person.
praesentia, -ae (praesens), f., presence; present; in praesentia, at present, for the present.
praeficio, -ficere, -fēci, -fectum (praef + faciō), place before, put in command of.
praesēns, -ntis (praesum), adj., present, in person.
praesentia, -ae (praesēns), f., presence; present; in praesentia, at present, for the present.
praesentio, -sentire, -sēnsi, -sēnsum, perceive beforehand.
### praesertim (praev + serō, join),
adv., especially, particularly.

praesidium, praesidi (praeses, guard), n., protection, guard, garrison; troops; post, station; fortification.

prae-stō, -stāre, -stītī, -stītum,
surpass, be superior, excel; exhibit, show; perform, do; imper. praestat, it is better.

praesto, adv., present, at hand; praesto esse, be ready for, meet.

praesum, -esse, -fui, —,
his before, be at the head of, be in command of, have charge of.

praeter, prep., with ace, past, beyond; contrary to; except.

(Preternatural.)

praeter-ea, adv., besides, moreover.

praeter-eō, -Ire, -ivi or -ii, -itum, pass over.

praeteritus, -a, -um (part., of praetereō), adj., past; as subst. praeterita, -ōrum, n. pl., the past; lit., "past things." (Preteritive, Preterit.)

praeter-mitto, -mittere, -misi, -missum, pass by, let pass, neglect.

praeter-quam, adv., other than, besides.

praetor, -tōris (for praetor from praeēō), m., general, commander, praetor.

praetorius, -a, -um (praetor), adj., of the general, praetorian; praetoria cohors, praetorian cohort, the general’s body-guard.

praestus, -a, -um (part. of praestūrō), adj., burnt at the end.
VOCABULARY

prior (prior), adv., before, sooner, earlier.

prius-quam, conj., before; often written prius ... quam.

privátim (privátus), adv., privately, personally.

privátus, -a, -um (part. of privó, set apart), private; as subst. privátus, -i, m., a private individual.

prò, prep. with abl., before, in front of; in behalf of; instead of; considering, in proportion to, in comparison with; as, as if. See Introd. 142, 7.

pro-, another form of pró used only in composition.

probó, -áre, -ávi, -átum (probús, good), approve of; prove, show, represent. (Approval.)

pró-cédó, -cédere, -cessi, -cessum, go forward, proceed.

Procillus, -i, m., Procillus, surname of C. Valeritus Procillus, a Roman officer.

pró-clínátus, see pró-clínó.

pró-clínó, -áre, -ávi, -átum, bend forward; perf. pass. part., desperate; rés pró-clínáta, desperate plight.

pró-cónsul, -cónsulis, m., pro-consul, an ex-consul appointed to govern a province.

procul, adv., far off, at a distance, from afar.

pró-cumbó, -cumbere, -cubui, -cubitum, lie down, sink down, lean forward, slope.

pró-cúró, -áre, -ávi, -átum, care for, manage, administer, attend to.

pró-curró, -currere, -cucurri or -curri, -crum, run forward.

pródeó, -ire, -ívi or -i, -itum (pró(d) + eó), come forward, come forth, advance.

pródesse, infin. of prósum.

próditíó, -ónis (pródó), f., betrayal, treason, treachery.

próditor, -óris (pródó), m.; traitor.

próditus, perf. pass. part. of pródó.

pró-dó, -dere, -didi, -ditum, give up, betray; hand down, transmit.

pró-dúcó, -dúcere, - dúxi, -dúctum, lead forth, lead out; prolong, extend. (Produce, product.)

proelior, -ári, -átus sum (proelium), fight.

proelium, proelí, n., battle, fight.

profectíó, -ónis (profeciórus), f., departure, setting out.

profecíus, perf. part. of pró-fíció.

profecíus, perf. part. of pró-fíció.

pro-feró, -ferre, -tuli, -látum, bring forth, produce.

profícíó, -ficere, -fécí, -fectum (pró + fació), effect, accomplish, make. (Proficient.)

profecírus, -ficíscí, -fectus sum (pro-, cf. fació), set out, depart, proceed.

profiteó, -fitéri, -fessus sum (pro- + fateor), promise, offer, volunteer. (Profess.)

pró-flígó, -áre, -ávi, -átum, overthrow, overcome. (Profligate.)

pró-flúo, -fluere, -flúxi, —, flow forth, flow.

pro-fugió, -fugere, -fugí, — (pro- + fugiō), flee, escape.

prófui, perf. ind. of prósum.
prognátus, adj., descended, sprung.
progredior, -gregi, -gressus sum
(pro + gradior, step), advance, proceed. (Progress.)
prohibeo, -hibere, -hibui, -hibitum
(pro + habeo), hold in check, restrain, hinder; defend, protect; shut off, keep off, repel. (Prohibit.)
proicio, -icere, -ieci, -iectum
(pro + iacio), throw, cast; throw down, throw away, abandon. (Project.)
pro-inde, adv., therefore.
pro-mineo, -minere, -minui, —,
 bend forward, project. (Prominent.)
promiscue (promiscuus), adv.,
 promiscuously; in common.
promissus, -a, -um (promittō),
 adj., allowed to grow, long, flowing.
pro-moveo, -movere, -movi, -motum,
 move forward, advance. (Promote.)
prōmptus, -a, -um (prōmō,
 bring forth), adj., ready, quick, prompt.
prōmunturium, promuntūri (prō-
mineō, just forth), n., promontory.
prōnē (prōnus), adv., bending forward, inclined. (Prone.)
prō-nūntiō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum,
 announce, declare; pronounce.
prope, adv., comp. propius, sup.
 proximē, near, almost.
prō-pellō, -pellere, -puli, -pulsum,
 drive away, repel. (Propel, propulsion.)
properō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (pro-
perus, quick), hasten, hurry.
propinquitās, -tātis (propinquus),
f., nearness, propinquity; relationship.
propinquus, -a, -um (prope),
 adj., near, neighboring; related; as subst. propinquus,
 -i, m., relative.
propior, propius (prope), adj.,
 comp., nearer.
propius, comp. of prope, adv., nearer.
prō-pōnō, -pōnere, -posui, -positum,
 set forth, explain, describe; offer, propose; show, display.
proprius, -a, -um (prope), adj.,
one's own, peculiar, characteristic. (Proper.)
propter, prep. with acc., on account of.
propter-eā, adv., on that account,
on this account; propterēa quod, because.
propugnātor, -tōris (propugnō),
m., defender (one who fights for, or in front of).
prō-pugnō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum,
 fight on the defensive, defend oneself.
prō-pulsō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum
(intens. of prōpellō), drive away, ward off. (Propulsion.)
prōra, -ae, f., prow; bow of a ship.
prō-ruo, -ruere, -ruī, -rutum,
 tear down, cast down.
prō-sequor, -sequi,-seciitus sum,
dep., follow, pursue. (Prosecute.)
prōspectus, -ús (prōspiciō), m.,
 view, prospect.
propiciō, -spicere, -spexī, -spectum
(prō + speciō, look), look forward, look out for, provide for. (Prospect.)
pro-sternō, -sternere, -strāvī, -strātum, destroy, ruin. (Pros- 
strate.)

pro-sum, prōdesse, prófui, — (pro and earlier form prōd + sum), be serviceable, help.

prō-tegō, -tegere, -tēxi, -tēctum, protect.

prō-terreo, -terrere, -terrui, -terrim, frighten off.

protinus (prō + tenus, as far as), adv., at once, immediately.

pro-turbo, -are, -avi, -atum, drive off, repulse.

provectus, perf. part. of pro-vehō.

prō-vehō, -vehere, -vexī, -vectum, carry, forward; pass, put out to sea, set sail.

prō-venio, -venire, -veni, -ventum, come forth, grow out.

prōventus, -ús (prōveniō), m., outcome; success (successful outcome).

prō-videō, -vidēre, -vidī, -visum, foresee, provide for, look out for.

prōvīncia, -ae, f., province; often the Province, referring to the Roman province of Gaul.

prōvincialis, -e (prōvīncia), of the province, provincial, referring to the Roman province of Gaul.

prōvisus, perf. part. of prōvideō.

prō-volō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, fly forth, rush forth.

proximē, sup. of prope, adv., nearest, next; lately, recently.

proximus, -a, -um, sup. of propior, adj., nearest, next, following; last. (Proximity.)

prōvidentia, -ae (prōdēns for prōvidēns, foreseeing), f., foresight, prudence.

Ptiānii,-ōrum, m. pl., the Ptiānii, an Aquitanian tribe.

pūber or pūbes, pūberis, adj., adult, grown up.

pūlicē (pūlicus), adv., publicly, as a state.

pūlicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (pūlicus), make public properly, confiscate.

pūlicus, -a, -um (pūbes, youth, citizens), adj., of the people, of the state, public; res publica, public affairs, the commonwealth, the republic.

Pūlius, Públi, m., Publius, a Roman praenōmen, or first name.

pudor, -dōris, m., shame.

puer, puerī, m., boy; ā puerīs, from boyhood.

puerīlis, -e (puer), adj., of a boy, young. (Puerile.)

pugna, -ae, f., fight, battle. (Pugnacious.)

pugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (pugna), fight, engage in battle.

pulcher, -chra, -chrum, adj., beautiful; noble.

Pullō, -onis, m., Pullo, the name of a Roman centurion.

pulsus, perf. part. of pellō.

pulsus, -ús (pellō), m., stroke; rēmōrum pulsus, handling of the oars, rowing, stroke. (Pulse.)

pulvis, -veris, m., dust. (Pulverize.)

puppis, puppis, f., stern of a ship.

pūrgātus, -a, -um (perf. part. of pūrgō), adj., blameless.

pūrgō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (cf. pūrus and agō), make clean, excuse, exonerate. (Purge.)

putō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, think, regard, consider, believe.
**Vocabulary**

**Pyreneus, -a, -um, adj., Pyrenean**; *Pyrenei montes,* the Pyrenees, a range of mountains between Spain and Gaul (France).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Q</th>
<th>Q., abbreviation for Quintus, a Roman first name.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>quà</td>
<td>quà (abl. of qui), adv., where, by which way.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quadrāgēni, -ae, -a (quadrāgintā), distr. num. adj., forty each, forty a piece.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quadrāgintā (quattuor), num. adj., indecl., forty.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quadringentū, -ae, -a (quattuor + centum), adj., four hundred.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quaerō, quaerere, quaesivi, quaesitum, seek; ask, inquire.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quaestīō, -onis (quaerō), f., question, investigation, trial.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quaeestor, -ōris (quaerō), m., quaestor, a Roman official; in the army, quartermaster and paymaster.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quaestus, -ūs (quaerō), m., gain.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quālis, quāle (cf. qui), interrog. adj., of what kind. (Quality.)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quam (acc. of qui), adv. and conj., how; than, as; quam diū, as long as; with a superlative, as possible.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quam diū, see quam.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quam ob rem, used interrogatively and relatively, on account of which thing, for which reason, wherefore, why.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quam-vis, adv., as much as you wish, however much, however.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quandō, adv., at any time, ever.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| quantopere (= quantō opere), adv., how greatly, how much. |
| quantus, -a, -um (quam), adj., interrog. and rel., how great? how much? as great as, as much as; with tantus, as. |
| quantus-vis, -avis, -umvis, adj., as great as you wish or please, however great. |
| quārē, or quā rē, adv., wherefore? why? on account of which. |
| quārtus, -a, -um (quattuor), num. adj., fourth. (Quarter.) |
| quasi (quam + si), adv., as if. |
| quattuor, num. adj., indecl., four. |
| quattuordecim (quattuor + decem), num. adj., indecl., fourteen. |
| -que, conj., enclitic, and. |
| quemadmodum, or quem ad modum, adv., in what way, how? as. |
| queror, queri, questus sum, dep., complain; complain of, bewail. (Querulous.) |
| questus, perf. part. of queror. |
| qui, quae, quod, gen. cuius, rel. and interrog. pron.; as rel., who, which. See Introd. 158. As interrog., what? what kind of a? |
| quicquam, see quisquam. |
| quicumque, quaecumque, quodcumque, indef. pron. and adj., whoever, whatever, whichever. |
| quid, see quis. |
| quidam, quaedam, quōddam or quiddam, indef. adj. and pron., a certain, a certain one. |
| quidem, adv., indeed, at least; nē ... quidem, not even. |
| quiēs, quiēs, f., rest, quiet; sleep. |
VOCABULARY

quiētus, -ā, -um (quiēs), f., QUīET, peaceful.
quent (quiē, abl., + ne, not); conj.; why not, by which not; that
not, that, but that; from, without; qūnt etiam, moreover, many more.

quinam, quaenam, quodnam, what in the world? what possible?
quinam, quaenam, quodnam, what in the world? what possible?
quinam, quaenam, quodnam, what in the world? what possible?
quinam, quaenam, quodnam, what in the world? what possible?
quinam, quaenam, quodnam, what in the world? what possible?
quinam, quaenam, quodnam, what in the world? what possible?
quinam, quaenam, quodnam, what in the world? what possible?
quinam, quaenam, quodnam, what in the world? what possible?
quinam, quaenam, quodnam, what in the world? what possible?
quinam, quaenam, quodnam, what in the world? what possible?
quinam, quaenam, quodnam, what in the world? what possible?
quinam, quaenam, quodnam, what in the world? what possible?
quinam, quaenam, quodnam, what in the world? what possible?
quinam, quaenam, quodnam, what in the world? what possible?
quinam, quaenam, quodnam, what in the world? what possible?
quinam, quaenam, quodnam, what in the world? what possible?
quinam, quaenam, quodnam, what in the world? what possible?
quinam, quaenam, quodnam, what in the world? what possible?
quinam, quaenam, quodnam, what in the world? what possible?
quinam, quaenam, quodnam, what in the world? what possible?
quinam, quaenam, quodnam, what in the world? what possible?
quinam, quaenam, quodnam, what in the world? what possible?
quinam, quaenam, quodnam, what in the world? what possible?
quinam, quaenam, quodnam, what in the world? what possible?
quinam, quaenam, quodnam, what in the world? what possible?
quinam, quaenam, quodnam, what in the world? what possible?
quinam, quaenam, quodnam, what in the world? what possible?
quinam, quaenam, quodnam, what in the world? what possible?
quinam, quaenam, quodnam, what in the world? what possible?
quinam, quaenam, quodnam, what in the world? what possible?
quinam, quaenam, quodnam, what in the world? what possible?
quinam, quaenam, quodnam, what in the world? what possible?
quinam, quaenam, quodnam, what in the world? what possible?
quinam, quaenam, quodnam, what in the world? what possible?
quinam, quaenam, quodnam, what in the world? what possible?
quinam, quaenam, quodnam, what in the world? what possible?
quinam, quaenam, quodnam, what in the world? what possible?
quinam, quaenam, quodnam, what in the world? what possible?
quinam, quaenam, quodnam, what in the world? what possible?
quinam, quaenam, quodnam, what in the world? what possible?
raeda, -ae, f., wagon with four wheels.
ramus, -i, m., branch, bough. (Ramification.)
rapiditas, -tatis (rapidus, swift), f., swiftness, rapidity.
rapina, -ae (rapio), f., pillaging, plundering, rapine.
rarus, -a, -um, adj., scattered, here and there; rare.
rasus, perf. part. of radó.
ratius, recentis, adj., fresh, new; recent.
rectus, -a, -um, (perf.-part., of regó), adj., straight. (Rectify.)
rectus, -a, -um (perf. part. of rectus), adv., rightly; bravely.
recipio, -cipere, -cēpi, -ceptum (re- + capio), take back, recover; admit, receive; se recipere, retreat; recover oneself. (Reception.)
rectó, -äre, -āvi, -ātum, read aloud, recite.
reclinó, -äre, -āvi, -ātum, bend back; pass. and reflexive, se reclinare, lean back (bend oneself back), recline.
recte (rectus), adv., rightly; bravely.
reclino, reci-are, recidi, -atum, bend back; pass., and reflexive, se reclinare, lean back (bend oneself back), recline.
rectus, -a, -um (perf. part. of rectus), adv., straight. (Rectify.)
recuperó, -äre, -āvi, -ātum (re-, cf. capio), recover, regain. (Recover.)
recusó, -äre, -āvi, -ātum (re-, cf. causa), refuse, reject; object.
redactus, perf. part. of redigó.
redditus, perf. part. of reddó.
redó, -dere, -didi, -ditum, give back, return; render, make; appoint.
redemptus, perf. part. of redimó.
red-eo, redire, redii, reditum, go back, return; sink back, slope back; be referred; be reduced.
redigó, -igere, -ēgi, -āctum (red- + agó), drive back; reduce; render, make.
redimó, -inere, -ēmi, -ēemptum (red- + emó), buy, purchase; buy up, farm (of revenues). (Redeem, redemption.)
redintegró, -äre, -āvi, -ātum (red- + integer, whole), renew, restore.
reditio, -onis (redeó), f., returning, return.
reditus, -ūs (redeó), m.; returning, return.
Redones, -um, m. pl., *the Redones*, a tribe living in northwestern Gaul.

re-dúcō, -dúcere, -dúxi, -ductum, lead back, bring back; draw back, extend back. (REDUCE, REDUCTION.)

re-ficitus, perf. part. of referō.

re-légō, -äre, -āvi, -ātum, banish. (RELEGATE.)

relictus, perf. part. of relinquo.

religio, -onis, f., RELIGION, religious observance; superstition; scruple.

re-linquo, -linquere, -liquī, -līctum (re- + linquō), leave behind, leave, RELINQUISH; desert, abandon; leave off, give up; in pass. be left, remain.

reliquus, -a, -um (relinquō), adj., left, remaining, the remaining, the rest of.

remanesco, -manēre, -mānsi, -mānsum, remain behind, remain.

remigis, remīgis (remus + agō), m., rower.

re-migrō, -äre, -āvi, -ātum, move back, go back.

re-miniscor, -minisci, — (cf. me-min-i), dep., remember, recollect. (REMINISCENCE.)

remissus, -a, -um (perf. part. of remittō), adj., relaxed, mild. (REMISS.)

remō, -mittere, -misi, -missum, send back, hurl back; relax, diminish, REMIT; set free.

re-mollēscō, re-mollēscere, —, — (cf. mollis), become soft, become weak or effeminate.

remotus, -a, -um (part. of removeō), adj., distant, REMOTE.

re-moveō, -movēre, -mōvī, -mōtum, move away, send away; REMOVE, dismiss.

remuneror, -āri, -ātus sum (cf. mūnus), dep., REWARD, REMUNERATE.
rēmus, -i, m., oar.
Rēmus, -i, m., one of the Remi; pl., Rēmi, -ōrum, the Remi, a Belgian tribe.
renō, -ōnis, m., reindeer hide.
renovā, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (re- + novus), RENEW.
re-nūntiō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum. bring back word, report, announce.
re-pellō, -pellere, repuli, repulsum, drive back, REPEL, REPULSE.
renovo, -are, -avi, -atum (re-+novus), RENEW.
re-perio, -perire, reperti, repertum, find out, find; discover, learn; invent, originate.
re-peto, -petere, -petivi or -petii, -petitum, ask back, ask again; exact punishment.
re-poscō, -poscere, -poscuitum, demand back, demand.
re-prehendo, -prehendere, -prehendī, -prehēsum, hold back: chide, criticise, blame. (Reprehend, REPREHENSIBLE.)
repressus, perf. part. of repromō.
reprimō, -primere, -pressi, -pressum (re- + premō), hold in check, restrain. (REPRESS.)
re-pudiō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (cf. pēs), reject, scorn. (REPUDIATE.)
re-pugnō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, fight against, resist, oppose; be opposed to. (RepugnANT.)
requirō, -quirere, -quisivi, -quīsitum (re- + quaerō), seek, demand; long for. (REQUIRE.)
res, rēi, f., thing, matter, affair; transaction, business, dealing; rēs militāris, warfare, art of war; rēs novae, a revolution; rēs pūblica, REPUBLIC, state, commonwealth; rēs gestae, deeds, exploits.
re-scindō, -scindere, -scidi, -scissum, cut down, tear down, destroy. (RESCIND.)
respicio, -spicere, -spēri, -spectum (re- + speciō, look), look back; consider, regard. (Respect.)
responsum, -i (respondeo), n., reply, answer, RESPOND.
re-spondeō, -spōndēre, -spōndi, -spōnsum, answer, reply, RESPOND.
re-stinguō, -stinguere, -stinxī, -stinctum, put out, quench.
re-stituō, -stituere, -stituī, -stītūtum, restore, renew; re-build. (Restitution.)
retentus, perf. part. of retineō.
retineō, -tinère, -tinui, -tentum (re- + teneō), hold back, restrain, retain.
re-trahō, -trahere, -traxi, -tractum, drag back, bring back. (Retract.)
re-vellō, -vellere, -vellii, -vul- sum, pull back, pull up. (Re-vulsion.)
reversus, perf. part. of revertor.
re-vertor, -vertī, perf. act. revertī, fut. part. reversūrus, dep., except in the perfect stem, turn back, return. (Revert, reverse.)
re-vincio, -vincire, -vici, -vincitum, bind fast, bind, fasten.
re-vocō, -are, -avi, -atum, call back, recall. (Revoke.)
Rex, regis, m., king. (Regal.)
Rhenus, -i, m., the Rhine.
Rhodanus, -i, m., the Rhone.
ripa, -ae, f., bank of a river.
rivus, -i, m., stream, brook. (Rivulet.)
Robur, roboris, n., oak.
rogo, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, ask, beg, request.
Rōma, -ae, f., Rome.
Rōmanus, -a, -um (Rōma), adj., Roman; as subst., Rōmanus, -i, m., a Roman; pl., the Romans.
Rōscius, Rōsci, m., Roscius, gentile name of L. Rōscius, one of Caesar's lieutenants.
rōstrum, -i (rōdō, gnaw), n., beak of a ship.
rota, -ae, f., wheel. (Rotate, rotation.)
rubus, -i, m., bramble-bush.
Rūfus, -i, m., Rufus, surname of P. Sulpicius Rūfus, one of Caesar's lieutenants.
rumor, -ōris, m., rumor, report.
rūpes, rūpis (rumpō), f., cliff, rock.
rūrus (for reversus from revertō), adv., again, anew; in turn, on the other hand.
Rutēnī, -ōrum, m. pl., the Rutēni, a tribe of central Gaul.
Rutilus, -i, m., Rutilus, surname of M. Sempriōnīus Rut-tilus, one of Caesar's officers.
S
Sabinus, -i, m., Sabinus, surname of Q. Titūrius Sabīnus, one of Caesar's lieutenants.
Sabis, Sabis, m., the Sabis (modern Sambre), a river in Belgic Gaul, a tributary of the Mosa (Meuse).
sacredōs, -dōtis (sacer, cf. dō), m. and f., priest, priestess. (Sacerdotal.)
sacramentum, -i (sacrō), n., oath. (Sacrament.)
sacrificium, sacrifici (sacra, cf. faciō), n., sacrifice.
saepe, comp. saepius, sup. saepissimē, adv., often, frequently.
saepe numerō, or saepe numerō, adv., often, frequently.
saepēs, saepis, f., hedge.
saeviō, saevire, saevii, saevitum (saevus, fierce), rage, be violent.
sagitta, -ae, f., arrow.
sagittārius, sagittāri (sagitta), m., archer, Bowman.
sagulum, -i (dim. of sagum), n., military cloak.
sæl̄us, -ús, m., a wood; pass through mountains.
salūs, salūtis, f., safety, welfare; health. (Salutary.)
Samarobrīva, -ae, f., Samarobrīva, a town of the Ambiani.
sanciō, sancīre, sānxi, sāntcum, make sacred; ordain, enact. (Sanction.)
sānctus, -a, -um (sanciō), adj., sacred, solemn. (Sanctify.)
sanguis, -guinis, m., blood. (Sanguinary.)
sanitas, -tatis (sanus, sound), f., soundness; sanity; good sense.
sand, -are, -avi, -atum (sanus), make sound, remedy.
Santōnes, -um, or Santoni, -orum, m. pi., the Santones or Santoni, a tribe of central Gaul.
sanu̲s, -a, -um, adj., sound, sān̄e.
sapiō, sapere, sapiī, —, taste; have taste; be sensible, understand.
sarcina, -ae (sarcīō), -f., pack; pl., baggage.
sarciō, sarcīre, sarsi, sartum, patch; mend, repair. (Sartorial.)
sarmentum, -i, n., twig; pl. bundle of twigs, fagot.
satis, adv. and indecl. noun: as adv., enough, sufficiently, somewhat; as noun, sufficiency, enough.
satis-faciō, -facere, -fēcí, -factum, satisfy, give satisfaction; make restitution; apologize.
satisfacīō, -onis (satisfaciō), f., satisfaction, apology.
saucius, -a, -um, adj., wounded; as subst., sauciōs, sauci, m., wounded man.
saxum, -i, n., rock.
sclae, -ārum (scandō, climb), f. pl., ladder, in military language, scaling-ladder.
Scaldis, Scaldis, m., the Scaldis, a river in Belgic Gaul, modern Scheldt.
sclerātus, -a, -um (cf. sclerus), adj., wicked.
sclerus, -leris, n., crime, wickedness.
sicienter (sciēns), adv., skilfully.
scientia, -ae (cf. sciō), f., knowledge, skill, science.
scindō, scindere, scidi, scissum, tear; tear down, break down. (Rescind.)
scio, scire, scivi, scitum, know, understand.
scorpiō, -onis, m., scorpion, in military language applied to a hurling-engine.
scribō, scribere, scripsī, scriptum, write. (Inscrip, inscription.)
scrobis, scrobis, m. and f., pit, pitfall.
scūtum, -i, n., shield, buckler.
se, sēsē, see sui.
sē-, sēd-, particle used in composition, apart from, apart, without.
sebum, -i, n., tallow, fat.
secō, secāre, secuī, sectum, cut. (Section.)
secreto (secretus), adv., privately, in secret.
sectō, -onis (secō), f., booty.
sectore, -āri, -ātus sum (intens. of sequor), dep., pursue, hunt for.
sectūra, -ae (secō), f., cutting, digging; quarry, mine.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Term</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>secundum</td>
<td>following, along; according to; besides.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>secundus</td>
<td>following, next, second; favorable, successful.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>secundus</td>
<td>second; favorable, successful.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sed</td>
<td>but; but yet.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sedecim</td>
<td>sixteen.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sedes</td>
<td>place of abode, dwelling, home.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>seditio</td>
<td>dissension, revolt, sedition.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>seditiosus</td>
<td>rebellious.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sedulius</td>
<td>a chief of the Lemnovices.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sedulii</td>
<td>a tribe living among the Alps.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Seduni</td>
<td>a tribe of the Germans.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Segni</td>
<td>a German tribe, living in Belgic Gaul.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Segontiaci</td>
<td>a tribe of Britain.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Segovax</td>
<td>the name of a Briton.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Segusiavi</td>
<td>a tribe living in central Gaul.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>semel</td>
<td>once; semel atque iterum, again and again.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sementis</td>
<td>sowing, planting.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>semper</td>
<td>always, continually.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Term</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sempronius</td>
<td>gentile name of M. Sempronius Rutilus, an officer in Caesar's army.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>senātor</td>
<td>senator.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>senatus</td>
<td>senate.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>senex</td>
<td>old man.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>seni</td>
<td>each, apiece.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Senones</td>
<td>a tribe living in central Gaul, near the Sequana (Seine).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sententia</td>
<td>opinion, view; decision, judgment; purport.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sentio</td>
<td>perceive, think, judge, know.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sentis</td>
<td>thorn-bush, bramble-bush.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>separatim</td>
<td>separately, apart, privately.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>separatus</td>
<td>separate.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>separo</td>
<td>separate.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>septem</td>
<td>seven.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>septemtriō</td>
<td>the seven plough-oxen, a name applied to the constellation of the Great Bear, or &quot;Dipper&quot;; the north.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>septimus</td>
<td>seventh.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>septingenti</td>
<td>seven hundred.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Sequana, -ae, f., the Sequana river, modern Seine.

Sequanus, -a, -um, adj., Sequanian; as subst., Sequanus, -i, a Sequanian; pl., the Sequani, the Sequani, a people living in the eastern part of Gaul.

sequor, sequi, secūtus sum, dep., follow, attend; pursue; take advantage of; select; choose; attach oneself to. (Sequence.)

Ser., abbreviation for Servius, a Roman first name.

sermō, -onis, m., conversation, talk. (Sermon.)

sero (serus), adv., too late, late. serō, serere, sevi, satum, sow, plant.

Sertorius, Sertori, m., Sertorius, gentile name of Q. Sertorius, a Roman leader of the popular party.

servīlis, -e (servus), adj., servile, of the slaves.

serviō, -īre, -ī, -ītum (servus), be slave of, follow, serve.

servitūs, -tūtis (servus), f., slavery, servitude.

servō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, save, keep, maintain; keep watch. (Preserve.)

servus, -i, m., slave, SERV. (SERVANT.)

sescentī = sexcenti.

sēsē, see sui.

sēsquipedālis, -e, adj., a foot and a half in thickness.

sētius, adv, comp., otherwise, less; nihilō sētius, none the less, nevertheless.

seu, see sive.

sevēritās, -tātis (sevērus), f., strictness, severity.

sē-vocō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, call apart, call aside.

sex, num. adj. indecl., six. (SEXTETE.)

sexāgintā (sex), num. adj. indecl., sixty.

sexcenti, -ae, -a (sex + centum), num. adj., six hundred.

Sextius, Sextī, m., Sextius, gentile name of P. Sextius Baculus, a centurion in Caesar's army; and of T. Sextius, one of Caesar's legati.

Sextus, -i, m., Sextus, a Roman first name.

sī, conj., if, whether; quod sī, but if, and if.

Sibuzātēs, -um, m. pl., the Sibuzates, a tribe of Aquitania.

sic, adv., thus, so, in this way; as follows.

siccitās, -tātis (siccus, dry), f., dryness, drouth.

sic-ut, or sic-uti, adv., just as, as.

sīdus, sīderis, n., constellation.

signifer, signiferi (signum + ferō), m., standard-bearer.

significātiō, -onis (significō), f., sign, signal. (SIGNIFICATION.)

significō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (signum, cf. faciō), make a sign; show, indicate. (SIGNIFY.)

signum, -i, n., sign, signal; standard.

Silānus, -i, m., Silanus, surname of M. Silanus, a lieutenant in Caesar's army.

silentium, silenti, n., silence.

Silius, Sili, m., Silius, gentile name of T. Silius, one of Caesar's tribunes.

silva, -ae, f., wood, forest. (Sylvan.)
silvestris, -e (silva), adj., wooded.
similis, -e, adj., like, similar.
similitúdo, -tudinis (similis), f., similarity, resemblance. (SIMILITUDE.)
simul, adv., at the same time, at once; simul atque (and simul), as soon as; simul . . . simul, both . . . and; partly . . . partly. (Simultaneous.)
simulacrum, -i (simulo), n., likeness, image.
simulatio, -onis (simulo), f., pretence, deceit. (Simulation.)
simulatōri, -onis (simulo), m., pretender, simulator.
singillatim (singuli), adv., one by one, individually, singly.
singularis, -e (singuli), adj., single, one by one; singular, extraordinary.
singuli, -ae, -a, distr. num. adj., one each, one by one; separate, single.
sinister, -tra, -trum, adj., left; as subst., sinistra, -ae (sc. manus), f., left hand. (Sinister.)
sinistra, see sinister.
sinistrōrus (sinister + versus = versus), adv., (turned) to the left.
situs, -ūs (sinō), m., situation, location, site.
sive or seu (sī + ve), conj., or if; sive (seu) . . . sive (seu), if . . . or if, whether or, either . . . or.
socer, soceri, m., father-in-law.
societās, -tātis (socius), f., alliance. (Society.)
socius, soci (cf. sequor), m., follower, ally; pl., allies.
sōl, sōlus, m., sun. (Solar.)
solācium, solāci (sōlor, console), n., consolation, solace.
soldarius, soldu'ri, m., follower, retainer.
soleō, solère, solitus sum, semi-dep., be accustomed.
solitūdo, -tūdinis (sōlus), f., solitude, wilderness, waste.
solertia, -ae (sollers, skilful), f., skill.
sollicitō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (sollicitus), excite, arouse; tempt, solicit.
sollicitudō, -tūdnis (sollicitus), f., anxiety, solicitude.
solum, -i, n., ground, soil; of a ditch, bottom.
sōlum (sōlus), adv., only; non sōlum . . . sed etiam, not only . . . but also.
sōlus, -a, -um, gen., sólius, adj., only, alone. (Sole.)
solvō, solvere, solvi, solútum (sē-+ luō, loose), loose; cast off, set sail. (Dissolve, solution.)
sonitus, -ūs (sonō), m., sound.
sonus, -i, m., sound.
soror, sorōris, f., sister. (Sorority.)
sors, sortis, f., lot, chance.
Sōtiātēs, -um, m. pl., the Sotiates, a tribe of Aquitania.
spatium, spati, n., space, distance; space of time, interval; duration.
speciēs, -ēī (speciō), f., sight, appearance, show, pretence; ad speciem, for show; kind, sort. (Species.)
spectō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (intens. of speciō), look at, regard; face. (Spectator.)
speculātor, -ōris (speculor), m., spy, scout.
speculātorius, -a, -um (speculator), adj., spying, scouting; speculātorium nāvigium, spy-boat.
specular, -āri, -āvi, -ātum (spēs), hope, expect.
spēs, spēi, f., hope, expectation.
spiritus, -ūs (spīrō), m., breath, spirit; pl., arrogance, pride, haughtiness; confidence.
spoliō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (spolium), strip, despoil.
sponte, abl., of obsolete noun spōns, adv., used with suā, of one's own accord, voluntarily; by one's own efforts.
stabiliō, -īre, -īvi, -ītum (stabilis), make steady; fix.
stabilitās, -tātis (stabilis), f., steadiness, firmness, stability.
statim (old acc., cf. stō), adv., on the spot, at once, immediately.
statō, -ōnis (stō), f., station, post; picket, guard; in statōne, in stationibus, on guard.
statūō, statuere, statuī, statūtum (status, position), place; determine, resolve; judge, think; decide, pass judgment. (Statute.)
statūra, -ae (stō), f., stature; height.
status, -ūs (stō), m., condition, status.
stimulus, -ī, m., goad; in military language, applied to sharp points fastened in blocks of wood, which were sunk in the ground, caltrops. (Stimulus.)
stipendiārius, -a, -um (stipendiium), adj., tributary; as subst., stipendiārius, -diāri, m., tributary, dependent, subject. (Stipendiary.)
stipendium, -pendī (stips, coin + pendō, pay), n., tribute. (Stipend.)
stipes, stipitis, m., trunk of a tree; stake.
stirps, stirpis, f., stem; race, stock.
stō, stāre, stetī, statum, stand; stand by.
stramentum, -ī (stemo, strew), n., straw; pack-saddle.
strepitus, -ūs (strepō), noise, uproar.
studeō, studēre, studuī, —, be eager, be desirous; give attention to, desire. (Study, student.)
studiose (studiosus), adv., eagerly, busily. (Studiously.)
studium, studī (studeō), n., eagerness, desire, diligence; good-will; pursuit. (Study.)
stultitia, -ae (stultus), f., folly.
sub, prep. with acc. and abl., (1) with acc., under, up to; towards, near, just before; (2) with abl., under, at the foot of. See Introd. 143, 2. (Sub-master, etc.)
subāctus, perf. part. of subīgō.
VOCABULARY

sub-dolus, -a, -um, adj., crafty, cunning.

sub-ducō, -ducere, -dūxī, -ductum, lead up, lead off; draw up on shore, (of ships) beach.

subductiō, subductiōnis (sub-ducō), f., hauling up of ships on land.

sub-eō, -ière, -iī, -itum, go under; come up to, approach; undergo, suffer.

subicio, -icere, -ieci, -iectum (sub + iacii), hurl from below; place underneath; make subject, expose to.

subiectus, -a, -um (part. of subicio), adj., lying near, adjacent. (Subject.)

subigo, -igere, -igil, -actum (sub + ago), drive under, reduce, subject.

subito (sttbitus), adv., sud- denly.

subitus, -a, -um (part. of subed), adj., sudden.

sublatus, see tollō.

sub-levō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, lift up, support; relieve, aid.

sublica, -ae, f., pile, stake.

sub-lūō, -luere, —, -lūtum, wash.

sub-rūō, -ruere, -ruī, -rutum, undermine.

sub-sequor, -sequi, secūtus sum, follow after, follow up, follow closely; succeed. (Subsequent.)

subsidiium, subsī’dī (cf. subsīdō), n., reserve, reinforcement; aid, help, resource. (Subsidy.)

sub-sidō, -sidere, -sēdi, -sessum, remain behind.

sub-sistō, -sistere, -stiti, —, cause to stand, make a stand, halt. (Subsist.)

sub-sum, -esse, —, —, be near, be at hand.

sub-trahō, -trahere, -träxi, -trāctum, withdraw, take away secretly. (Subtract.)

subvectiō, -tiōnis (subvehō), f., transportation.

sub-vehō, -vehere, -vexī, -vectum, bring up.

sub-venīō, -venire, -vēni, -ventum, come under, come to the help of.

succēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, come up, approach; succeed to, take the place of, come next to.

succendō, -cendere, -cendi, -cēnsum (sub + caedō), cut down.

succumbō, -cumbere, -cubui, — (sub + cumbō), yield, succumb.

sucurrō, -currere, -currī, -currum (sub + currō), run under, run to the help of. (Succour.)

sudis, sudis, f., stake.

sūdor, -oris, m., sweat; hard labor.

Suēbus, -a, -um, adj., of the Suebi, Swabian; as subst., Suēba, -ae, f., a Swabian woman; Suēbi, -ōrum, m. pl., the Suebi, the Swabians.

Suessiones, -um, m. pl., the Suessiones, a tribe of the Belgians.

sufficiō, -ficere, -fēci, -fectum (sub + facīō), suffice, endure.

suffodiō, -fodere, -fōdi, -fossum (sub + fodiō), stab underneath, stab in the belly.

suffragium, suffrāgi, n., vote. (Suffrage.)
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Term</th>
<th>Definition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sugambri</td>
<td>Sugambri, -orum, m. pl., the Sugambri, a tribe of the Germans.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>suggestus</td>
<td>suggestus, -ūs (suggerō, build up), platform.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sui, sibi</td>
<td>sui, sibi, sē or sēsē (nom. wanting), reflex. pron., hīmself, herself, itself; pl., themselves; hīm, her, it; pl., them, they.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sulla</td>
<td>Sulla, -ae, m., Sulla, surname of L. Cornēlius Sulla, dictator from 81 to 79 B.C.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sulpicius</td>
<td>Sulpicius, Sulpicius, gentile name of P. Sulpicius Rūfus, one of Caesar's lieutenants.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sum, esse</td>
<td>sum, esse, fuī, —, fut. part. futūrus, be, come to pass.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>summa</td>
<td>summa, -ae (summus), f., sum, total; control, management, conduct.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>summēstrō</td>
<td>summēstrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (sub + ministrō, serve), supply, furnish.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>summittō</td>
<td>summittō, -mittere, -miśi, -mis-sum (sub + mittō), let down; send as aid, help; intrans., aid, help. (Submit.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>summoverō</td>
<td>summoverō, -moveere, -móvī, -móvtum (sub + moveō), move back, remove, repulse.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>summus</td>
<td>summus, -a, -um (see superus).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sūmō</td>
<td>sūmēre, sūmpsi, sūmp-tum, take; take to oneself, assume; undertake; supplēcium sūmere, inflict punishment.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sūmptuosus</td>
<td>sūmptuosus, -a, -um (sūmptus), adj., expensive, costly, sumptu-  ous.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sūmptus</td>
<td>sūmptus, -ūs (sūmō), m., ex-  pense.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>superbē</td>
<td>superbē (superbus, proud), adv. proudly, arrogantly. (Superb, superbly.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>superior</td>
<td>superior, superius, see superus. (Superior.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>superō</td>
<td>superō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (super), be superior; surpass; conquer, defeat, rise above; survive.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>super-sedeō</td>
<td>super-sedeō, -sedēre, -sēdī, -sessum, refrain from.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>super-sum</td>
<td>super-sum, -esse, -fui, —, be over, remain, be left; survive.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>superus</td>
<td>superus, -a, -um (super), adj., high, above. Comp. superior, higher, upper, superior; former; more powerful. Sup. superēmus or summus, highest, greatest, very great, most important; as subst., summmum, -i, n., top, end.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>suppetō</td>
<td>suppetō, -petere, -petīvī or -petīi, -petitum (sub + petō), be at hand.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>supplēmentum</td>
<td>supplēmentum, -i (suppleō), n., reinforcement. (Supple-  ment.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>supplēx</td>
<td>supplēx, -plicis (cf. supplicō, kneel), adj., used as subst., m. and f., suppli-  ant. (Suppli- cant.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>suppli-</td>
<td>suppliātīo, -onis (supplicō, kneel), f., thanksgiving.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>suppli-ter</td>
<td>suppli-ter (supplex), adv., suppli-antly, humble.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>suppli-</td>
<td>suppli-um (supplicō, kneel), n., punishment, execution.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>supportō</td>
<td>supportō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (sub + portō), bring, provide. (Support.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>suprā</td>
<td>suprā, adv. and prep. with acc.: (1) as adv., above; before, previously; (2) as prep., above; before.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>suscipiō</td>
<td>suscipiō, -cipere, -cipī, -ceptum (subs + capiō), undertake, begin; take on oneself, assume.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>suspectus</td>
<td>suspectus, -a, -um, adj., suspected.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Vocabulary 91

suspicio, -onis (sub + specio), f., suspicion.
suspicor, -āri, -ātus sum (cf. suspiciō), suspect.
sustentō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (intens. of sustineō), hold out, sustain, endure.
sustineō, -tinere, -tinui, -tītum (subs + teneo), hold out, bear, endure; check; hold out against, withstand. (Sustain.)
sustuli, perf. of tollō.
suus, -a, -um (cf. sui), his, her, its, one's, their; his own, etc.; with locus, favorable, advantageous; with clēmentia, customary; as subst., sui, -ōrum, m. pl., his men, their men; sua, -ōrum, n. pl., his property, their property, etc.

T

T., abbreviation for Titus, a Roman first name.
tabernaculum, -i (dim. of taberna, shelter), n., tent. (Tabernacle.)
tabula, -ae, f., board, tablet; list. (Table.)
tabulātum, -i (tabula), n., floor; story.
taceo, tacere, tacui, tācitum, be silent, be silent about.
tactus, -a, -um (part. of taceō), adj., silent. (Tacit, Taciturn.)
tālea, -ae, f., rod, bar.
tālis, tāle, adj., such.
tam, adv., so, so very.
tamen, adv., yet, still, nevertheless, however.
Tamesis, Tamesis, m., the Tamesis, modern Thames.
tametsi (tamen + etsī), conj., although, though.
tandem (tam), adv., at length; in questions, pray.
tangō, tangere, tetigi, tāctum, touch; border on. (Tangible.)
tantopere (tanto + opere), adv., so greatly, so much, very greatly.
tantulus, -a, -um (dim. of tactus), adj., so small, so slight, so unimportant.
tantum (acc. of tactus), adv., only; tantum modō, only.
tantum modō, see tantum.
tantundem (tantusdem), adv., so much, so far.
tantus, -a, -um (tam), adj., so great, so much; tātus . . . quantus, as great . . . as, as much . . . as; tantī esse, be of so great value.
Tarbellī, -ōrum, m. pl., the Tarbellī, a people of Aquitania.
tardē, comp. tardius, sup. tardissimē (tardus), adv., slowly, tardily.
tardō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (tardus), hinder, stop, retard, check.
tardus, -a, -um, adj., slow. (Tardy.)
Tarusātēs, -um, m. pl., the Tarusates, a people of Aquitania.
Tasgetius, Tasge'ti, m., Tasgetius, a chief of the Carnutes.
taurus, -i, m., bull.
Taximagulus, -i, m., Taximagulus, a chief of the Britons.
taxus, -i, f., yew-tree.
Tectosagēs, -um, m. pl., the Tectosages, a Gallic tribe, living in the Roman province of Gaul.
tēctum, -i (tegō), n., roof; dwelling, house.
tegimentum, -i (tegō), n., covering.
tego, tegere, tēxī, tēctum, cover; PROTECT.
tēlum, -i, n., dart, spear, javelin.
temerārius, -a, -um (temere), adj., rash, reckless.
temere, adv., blindly, rashly; without good reason.
temeritas, -tatis (temere), f., rashness, TEMERITY.
temō, -mōnis, m., pole of a chariot.
temperantia, -ae (cf. temperō), f., moderation, self-control. (TEMPERANCE.)
temperātus, -a, -um (perf. part. of temperō), adj., TEMPERATE, mild.
temperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (tempus), control oneself, refrain from. (TEMPER.)
tempestās, -tātis (tempus), f., weather; bad weather, storm. (TEMPEST.)
temptō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (intens. of tendō), try, attempt; attack; solicit, TEMPT.
temps, -oris, n., time, season; occasion, opportunity; ad tempus, on time, promptly. (TEMPORARILY.)
Tenceri, -orum, m. pl., the Tenceri, a tribe of the Germans.
tendō, tendere, tetendi, tentum, stretch, EXTEND; pitch a TENT.
tenebrae, -ārum, f. pl., darkness.
teneō, tenēre, tenuī, tentum, hold, keep; restrain; bind; extend; memoria teneō, retain in memory, remember; sē tenēre, keep oneself, remain.
tenēr, -era, -erum, adj., TENDER, young.
tenuis, tenue, sup. tenuissimus, adj., thin; slight; feeble. (EXTENUATE.)
tenuitas, -tātis (tenuis), f., thinness, weakness; poverty.
tenuiter (tenuis), adv., thinly.
ter, num. adv., three times.
teres, teretis (terō, rub), adj., smooth; tapering.
tergum, -i, n., back; a tergō, post tergum, in the rear.
ternī, -ae, -a (ter), distr. num. adj., three each, three apiece.
terra, -ae, f., earth, ground; land, country, region. (TERRESTRIAL.)
Terrasidius, Terrasidius, gentile name of T. Terrasidius, a tribune in Cæsar's army.
terrēnus, -a, -um (terra), adj., of earth.
terreō, terrēre, terrui, territum, frighten, alarm, TERRIFY.
territō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (intens. of terreō), terrify greatly.
terror, -ōris (terreō), m., fear, TERROR.
tertius, -a, -um (ter), num. adj., third. (TERTIARY.)
testamentum, -i (testcr, testify), n., will, TESTAMENT.
testimonium, testimōni (testis), TESTIMONY, PROOF.
testis, testis, m. and f., witness.
testūdō, -dinis (testa, shell), f., tortoise; testudo, a formation of a body of troops so that their shields overlapped; shed, for protecting besiegers.
Teutomatus, -i, m., Teutomatus, a king of the Nitiobroges.
Teutoni, -orum, or Teutonēs, -um, m. pl., the Teutoni or Teutones, a Germanic people.
tignum, -ī, n., beam, timber.
Tigurinus, -a, -um, adj., Tigurinus, of the Tigurini, the name of one of the four cantons of the Helvetii; as subst., Tigurini, -ōrum, m. pl., the Tigurini, inhabitants of the canton called Tigurinus.
timeō, timēre, timui, —, fear, be afraid, be apprehensive; be afraid of.
timidē (timidus), adv., TIMIDLY.
timidus, -a, -um (timeō), adj., TIMID, fearful.
timer, -oris (timeo), m., fear, alarm, apprehension. (Tcopies.)
Titurius, Tituri, m., Titurius, a gentile name of Q. Titurius Sabmus, a lieutenant in Caesar's army.
Titus, -i, m., Titus, a Roman first name, abbreviated T.
tolerō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, bear, endure, sustain. (Tolerate.)
tollō, tollere, sustuli, sublātum, lift, raise, weigh anchor; take, carry; take away, remove, destroy, break off; pass., be elated.
Tolosa, -ae, f., Tolosa, a town in the Roman province of Gaul, modern Toulouse.
Tolosātēs, -ium, m. pl., the Tolosates, the inhabitants of Tolosa.
torrentum, -ī (torqueō), n., engine for hurling missiles; missiles.
torreo, torrēre, torrui, tostum, roast, scorch. (Torrid.)
tot, indecl. adj., so many.
totidem (tot), indecl. adj., just as many.
tōtus, -a, -um, gen. tōtius, adj., the whole, all, all the. (Total.)
trabs, trabis, f., beam, timber.
trāctus, perf. part. of trahō.
trādō, -dere, -didī, -ditum (trāns + dō), hand over, deliver, surrender; commit, entrust; transmit, hand down, teach. (Tradition.)
trādūcō, -ducere, -dūxi, -duc- tum (trāns + dūcō), lead across, lead past, lead over, transfer.
trāgula, -ae, f., spear, javelin.
thrahō, trahere, trāxi, trāctum, drag, drag along.
trāciō, -icere, -iēci, -iectum (trāns + iaciō), throw across; pierce.
trāiectus, perf. part. of trāciō.
trāiectus, -ūs (trāciō), m., passage, journey.
trānō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (trāns + nō, swim), swim across.
tranquillitās, -tātis (tranquil- lus, quiet), f., calm, stillness. (Quickness.)
trāns, prep. with acc., in composition also trā-, across, over; on the other side of. (Transgress, etc.)
Trāns-alpinus, -a, -um, adj., transalpine, beyond the Alps, i.e. north of the Alps.
trānscondō, -scendere, -scendi, — (trāns + scandō, climb), climb across, climb over; board a ship. (Transcend.)
trāns-eō, -ire, -iī, —, fut. part. trānsitūrus, go across, cross, pass over, march across; of time, pass, elapse. (Transit.)
trāns-ferō, -ferre, -tuli, -lātum, carry across, transfer.
trāns-figō, -figere, -fixi, -fixum, TRANSFIX, pierce.
étrou, trés, tria, gen. trium, num. adj., three.
Tréveri, -ōrum, m. pl., the Treveri, a tribe of the Belgians.
Tribocēs, -um, or Triboci, -ōrum, m. pl., the Triboces or Triboci, a German people living in the territory of the Belgians.
tribūnus, -i, m., TRIBUNE, see Introd. 19.
tribuō, -ere, -uī, -ūtum, assign, allot; ATTRIBUTE, ascribe; bestow.
tribūtum; -i (tribuō), tax, TRIBUTE.
triduum, -i (cf. trēs and diēs), n., period of three days, three days.
triennium, triennī (cf. trēs and annus), period of three years, three years. (Triennial.)
trigintā (cf. trēs), indecl. adj., thirty.
trīnī, -ae, -a (cf. trēs), num. adj., three each, three apiece.
Trinobantēs, -um, m. pl., the Trinobantes, a tribe of Britain.
tripertitō (tri-, cf. ter + partitus), adv., in three divisions.
triplex, -plicis (cf. trēs and plicō, fold), adj., threefold, TRIPLE.
triquetrus, -a, -um, adj., three-cornered, triangular.
tristis, -e, adj., sad, sorrowful.
tristitia, -ae (tristis), f., sadness.
Troucillus, -i, m., Troucillus, surname of C. Valerius Troucillus, a Gaul, employed by Caesar as an interpreter.
truncus, -i, m., TRUNK of a tree.
tū, tuī, pers. pron., THOU, you.
VOCABULARY

tube, -ae, f., trumpet. (Tube.)
tueor, tuēri, —, dep., watch;
maintain, guard, defend.
tulli, perf. of ferō.
Tulingi, -ōrum, m. pl., the
Tulingi, a tribe of the Germans.
tum, adv., then, at that time;
besides, moreover; cum . . .
tum, not only . . . but also.
tumultuor, -ārī, -ātus sum
(tumultus), dep., make a
TUMULT.
tumultuosē (tumultuosus), adv.,
in disorder, in confusion, noisily. (TUMULTUOUSLY.)
tumultus, -ūs (tumeō, swell,
rise up), m., uprising, revolt;
tUMULT, confusion.
tumulus, -ī (tumeō, swell, rise
up), m., mound, hillock.
tunc, adv., then.
turma, -ae, f., troop, squad of
cavalry.
Turonī, -ōrum, m. pl., the Turonī,
a tribe of central Gaul, living
on the Liger (Loire).
turpis, -e, adj., comp. turpior,
sup. turpissimus, ugly; dis-
graceful, shameful.
turpiter (turpis), adv., disgrace-
fully, shamefully.
turpitūdō, -tūdīnis (turpis), f.,
shame, disgrace. (TURPI-
TUEDE.)
turris, turris, f., tower, TUR-
RET.
tūtō, comp. tūtius, sup. tū-
tissimē (tūtus), adv., safely,
in safety.
tūtus, -a, -um, comp. tūtior,
sup. tūtissimus (tueor), adj.,
protected, safe, secure.
tuus, -a, -um (tū), poss. adj.,
thy; your.

ubi (ubi), adv., where; when,
as; ubi primum, as soon as.
ubique (ubi + -que), adv.,
anywhere, everywhere. (Ubi-
uitous.)
Ubius, -a, -um, adj., of the Ubiī;
as subst., Ubiī, -ōrum, m. pl.,
the Ubiī, a people of Germany.
ulciscor, ulciscī, ultus sum,
dep., take vengeance on;
avenge; punish.
ūllus, -a, -um, gen. ūllius (dim.
of ūnus), adj., any, any one.
ulterior, ulterius (cf. ultra),
adj., comp. farther, more re-
mote, beyond; Gallia ulterior,
farther Gaul, with reference
to Italy and Rome; ulterior
prōvincia, the farther part
of the Roman province; sup.
ultimus, -a, -um, farthest, most
remote; last, in the rear. (Ul-
terior, ULTIMATE.)
ultrā, prep. with acc., beyond.
(Ultraconservative, etc.)
ultrō, adv., beyond; in addition,
besides; of one’s own accord,
voluntarily; actually; ultrō
. . . citrōque, to and fro, back
and forth.
ultus, perf. part. of ulciscor.
ululātus, -ūs, m., yell, shriek, cry.
umerus, -i, m., shoulder.
umquam, adv., at any time, ever.
ūnā (ūnus), adv., together; ūnā
cum, together with.
unde, adv., whence, from which.
umdecim (ūnus + decem), num.
adj., indecl., eleven.
umdecimus, -a, -um (umdecim),
adj., eleventh.
um-de-quadragintā, num. adj.,
indecl., thirty-nine.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Definition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>undique</td>
<td>(unde + -que), adv., from all sides, on all sides, everywhere.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>universus</td>
<td>-a, -um (unus + versus), adj., all together, whole, entire. (UNIVERSE, UNIVERSAL.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>unus</td>
<td>-a, -um, gen. unus, num. adj., one; only one, alone, sole, single; one and the same. (UNIQUE, UNILATERAL, etc.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>urbs, urbis</td>
<td>f., city; the city of Rome.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>urgeo, urgere, ursi</td>
<td>—, press; press hard, oppress. (URGE.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>urus</td>
<td>-i, m., wild ox.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Usipites</td>
<td>-um, m. pl., the Usipites, a tribe of the Germans.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>usitatus</td>
<td>-a, -um (perf. part. of usitor, intens. of utor), adj., customary.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>usque, adv.</td>
<td>as far as, even; usque ad, up to, until; right up to.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>usus</td>
<td>perf. part. of utor.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uter, utra, utrum, utrius</td>
<td>gen. utriusque, adj., which of the two, which.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>utrique, utraque, utrumque,</td>
<td>gen. utriusque, adj., each, both.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uti, see ut.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>utilis</td>
<td>-e (utor), adj., useful, serviceable.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>utilitas</td>
<td>-tatis (utilis), f., usefulness, advantage, expediency. (UTILITY.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uter, úti, úsus sum</td>
<td>dep., use, employ, avail oneself of; accept; possess, enjoy; exhibit, show.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>utrum (uter), conj., whether; utrum . an, whether . . or; utrum . . . necne, whether . . or not.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uxor, uxoris</td>
<td>f., wife.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**V**

Vacalus, -i, m., the Vacalus river, a branch of the Rhine; modern, Waal.

vacātiō, -tiōnis (cf. vacō), f., freedom from, exemption. (VACATION.)

vacō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, be empty, be VACANT, be unoccupied.

vacuus, -a, -um (vacō), adj., empty, unoccupied; destitute of. (VACUOUS.)

vadum, -i, n., shallow place, ford.

vāgina, -ae, f., sheath, scabbard.

vagor, -āri, -ātus sum, dep., wander about, wander, roam, range. (VAGRANT.)

valezō, valére, valuī, —, fut. part. valētūrus, be strong; have power, have influence; plurimum valēre, have great power. (VALID, VALIDITY.)

Valerius, Vale’ri, m., Valerius, gentile name of the following: (1) C. Valerius Flaccus, a
governor of Gaul; (2) L. Valerius Praecōninus, a Roman officer, defeated and killed in Aquitania about 56 B.C.; (3) C. Valerius Cabārus, a Gaul who received Roman citizenship from 1; (4) C. Valerius Proculius, son of 3; (5) C. Valerius Donnotaurus, son of 3; (6) C. Valerius Troucillus, a Gaul employed by Caesar as an interpreter.

Valetiacus, -i, m., Valetiacus, the name of one of the Aeduans.

valētūdō, -tūdinis (valeō), f., health; ill health. (VALETUDINARIAN.)

vallēs, vallis, f., valley.
vāllum, -i (vālūs), n., wall of stakes, palisade, wall, rampart.
vāllus, -i, m., stake.

Vangiones, -um, m. pl., the Vangiones, a tribe of the Germans.

varietās, -tātis (varius), f., variety; mottled appearance.

varius, -a, -um, adj., various, diverse.

vāstō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (vāstus), lay waste, devastate, ravage.
vāstus, -a, -um, sup. vāstissimus, adj., waste, wild; vast.
vāticinātiō, -tiōnis (vāticinor), f., prophecy.

-ve, conj., enclitic, or.

vectīgal, -gālis (vehō), n., tax on goods carried, tribute, revenue.

vectīgālis; -e (vectīgal), n., tributary.

vectōrius, -a, -um (vehō), adj., for carrying; vectōrium nāvium, transport ship.

vehementer, comp. vehemens, sup. vehementissimē (vehemēns), adv., eagerly, earnestly, vehemently; greatly, very greatly.

vel (volō), conj., or; vel ... vel, either ... or.

Velānius, Velāni, m., Velanius, gentle name of Q. Velanius, a Roman tribune.

Veliocassēs, -ium, or Veliocassi, -ōrum, m. pl., the Veliocasses, a tribe of the Belgians.

Vellaunodūnum, -i, n., Vellaunodīnum, a city of the Senones.

Vellaviī, -ōrum, m. pl., the Velaviī, a tribe of central Gaul.

vēlōcitās, -tātis (vēlōx), f., swiftness. (VELOCITY.)

vēlōciter, comp. vēlōcius, sup. vēlōcissimē (vēlōx), adv., swiftly.

vēlōx, vēlōcis, comp. vēlōcius, sup. vēlōcissimus, adj., swift. (VELOCIPEDE.)

vēlum, -i, n., sail.

vel-ut, adv., just as.

vēnātiō, -tiōnis (vēnor, hunt), f., hunting.

vēnātor, -tōris (vēnor, hunt), hunter.

vēndō, -dere, -didī, -ditum (vēnum, sale + dō), offer for sale, sell. (VENDER.)

Venellī, -ōrum, m. pl., the Venellī, a tribe living in the northwestern part of Gaul.

Veneti, -ōrum, m. pl., the Veneti, a tribe living in northwestern Gaul.

Venetia, -ae, f., Venetia, the country of the Veneti.

Veneticus, -a, -um (Venetia), adj., of the Veneti.
venia, -ae, f., indulgence, pardon, permission. (Venial.)
veniō, venire, vēnī, ventum, come, approach.
ventītō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (intens. of veniō), keep coming, come frequently, resort.
ventus, -ī, m., wind. (Venti-)
ver, veris, n., spring. (Vernal.)
Veragrī, -ōrum, m. pl., the Veragri, a tribe living among the Alps.
Verbigenus, -ī, m., Verbigenus, the name of a canton of the Helvetians.
verbum, -i, n., word; verba facere, speak. (Verb, Verbal.)
Vercassivellaunus, -ī, m., Vercassivellaunus, a chief of the Arverni.
Vercingetorīx, -rīgis, m., Vercingetorix, a chief of the Arverni, commander-in-chief of the united forces of Gaul.
vereor, verērī, veritus sum, dep., fear, be afraid of, dread, stand in awe of. (Reverence.)
vergō, vergere, —, —, slope, extend; lie, be situated. (Verge.)
vergobretus, -ī, m., vergobret, the name of the chief magistrate of the Aedui.
veritus, perf. part. of vereor vérīsimilis, see vērus.
vērō (vērus), adv., in truth, truly; but in truth, but.
versō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (intens. of vērō), turn about; treat, deal with; pass. as dep., be turned about; move about, be busy, be engaged, be involved in; remain, be.

versus, -ūs (vertō), m., line of writing. (Verse.)
versus (vertō), adv. and prep., turned, facing; quōque versus, in every direction; as prep., towards.
Verticō, Verticōnis, m., Vertico, one of the Nervii.
vertō, vertere, vertī, versum, turn; terga vertere, flee.
Verucloetius, Verucloeti, m., Verucloetius, an envoy of the Helvetians.
vērus, -a, -um, adj., true; right, fitting; as subst., vērum, -ī, n., the truth; vēri similis, or vērisimilis, probable. (Veritable, Verisimilitude.)
verūtum, -ī, n., javelin, dart.
Vesontio, Vesontionis, m., Vesontio, a town of the Sequani, the modern Besançon.
vesper, vesperi, m., evening. (Vespers.)
vester, -tra, -trum (vōs), poss. adj., your, yours.
vēstīgium, vēstigiī, n., footprint, track; place, spot, moment; in vēstigiō, on the spot, immediately. (Vestige.)
vestiō, -ire, -īvī, -ītum (vestis), clothe.
vestis, vestis, f., clothing. (Vestment, vest.)
vestitus, -ūs (vestiō), m., clothing.
veterānus, -a, -um (ventus), adj., old, veteran.
vētō, vetāre, vetuī, vetitum, forbid. (Veto.)
vetus, veteris, adj., old, former, ancient, long-standing.
vexillum, -ī (cf. vēlum), n., flag, banner.
vexō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, harass, ravage. (Vex.)
VOCABULARY

via, -ae, f., way, road, route; march, journey. (Via, by way of.)
viátor, -tórís (via), traveller, wayfarer.
vícéni, -ae, -a (cf. vigintí), num. adj., twenty each.
vícésimus, -a, -um (cf. vigintí), num. adj., twentieth.
víciès (cf. vigintí), num. adv., twenty times.
vícinitás, -tátís (vícinus, near), f., neighborhood, vicinity; coll. pl. neighbors.
vícis, vícis, f., def., change, alternation; in vicem, or invicum, in turn. (Vice-president, etc.)
víctima, -ae, f., victim.
víctor, -tórís (vincó), m., victor, conqueror; as adj., victorious.
víctoria, -ae (victor), f., victory.
víctus, perf. part. of vincó.
víctus, -ús (vívó), m., living, manner of life; food. (Vitals.)
vícus, -i, m., village.
vídeo, vidére, vidí, vísum, see, perceive; pass., be seen, seem; seem best. (Visible.)
vídeo, see videó.
Vienna, -ae, f., Vienna, a town of the Allobroges, the modern Vienne.
vigilia, -ae (vigil, watchman), f., watching, being awake, wakefulness, vigil; watch, one of the four divisions of the night. See Introd. 59, 140.
víginti, num. adj., indecl., twenty.
vímen, -minis, n., twig, osier.
vínciò, víncre, vínxi, víctum, bind.
vínci, víncre, víci, víctum, conquer, be victorious; defeat, subdue; prevail, have one's way.
vínculum, -i (vinciò), n., bond, chain, fetter.
víndicó, -áre, -ávī, -átum (vindex, champion), claim, maintain, assert; punish. (Vindicate.)
vínea, -ae, f., vine arbor; shed.
vinum, -i, n., wine.
víolō, -áre, -ávī, -átum (cf. vís), injure, violate; lay waste.
vír, víri, m., man. (Vírile, virility.)
vírēs, see vís.
vírgō, virginis, f., maiden, virgin.
vírgultum, -i (virga, twig), n., brushwood.
Viridovix, -vícis, m., Viridovix, a chief of the Venelli.
víritim (vir), adv., man by man, to every man.
Viromandui, -órum, m. pl., the Viromandui, a tribe of the Belgians.
vírtūs, -tūtis (vir), f., manliness, character; bravery, courage; worth, goodness; pl., manly qualities, virtues.
vísi, gen. wanting, acc. vim, defective, f., power, strength; violence, force; number, multitude; pl., víres, -ium, strength.
vísus, perf. part. of vídeo.
víta, -ae (vívó), f., life. (Vital, vitality.)
víx, adv., scarcely, with difficulty.
Vocâtēs, -ium, m. pl., the
Vocates, a people of Aquitania.

Vocciō, Vocciōnis, m., Voccio,
a king of the Norici.

vocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (cf. vox),
call, summon. (Vocation, vocative.)

Vocontiī, -ōrum, m. pl., the
Vocontiī, a Gallic tribe, living
in the Roman province of Gaul.

Volcae,-ārum, m. pl., the Volcae,
a Gallic tribe, living in the
Roman province of Gaul.

Volcātius, Volcātī, m., Volcatius,
gentile name of C. Volcatius
Tullus, an officer in Caesar's
army.

volō, velle, volūi, —, be willing,
wish, desire; intend.

voluntārius, -a, -um (volō), adj.,
Willing, voluntary; as subst.,
voluntārius, -tāri, m., volunteer.

voluptās, -tātis (volō), f., wish,
desire; permission; goodwill, devotion.

voluptās, -tātis (volō), f.,
pleasure.

Volusēnus, -ī, m., Volusenus,
gentile name of C. Volusēnus
Quadrātus, a tribune in Caes-
sar's army.

Vorenus, -ī, m., Vorenus, name
of a centurion in Caesar's
army, L. Vorēnus.

Vosegus, -ī, m., Vosegus, the
name of a mountain range in
eastern Gaul, now called the
Vosges.

voveō, vovere, vōvī, vōtum, vow.
vōx, vōcis, f., voice, utterance,
word.

Vulcānus, -ī, m., Vulcanus, or
Vulcan, god of fire.

vulgō (vulgus), adv., commonly,
generally, everywhere.

vulgus, -i, n., the common people,
multitude. (Vulgar.)

vulnerō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (vul-
nerus), wound, hurt. (Vulner-
able.)

vulnus, -neris, n., wound.

vultus, -ūs, m., look, expression;
face, features.